

385.4

41

315.475

H98

FIRST LATIN BOOK,

FOR THE USE OF

HIGH SCHOOLS.

475.

BY

John
J. HENDERSON, M.A.

Principal of St. Catharines Collegiate Institute,

AND

John
J. FLETCHER, M.A.

Professor of Latin, Queen's University, Kingston.

Authorized by the Department of Education for Ontario.

TORONTO

PUBLISHED BY THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

1892

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one
thousand eight hundred and ninety-two, by THE COPP, CLARK CO.,
LIMITED, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

5189

PREFACE.

This book contains :—

- (1). A simple statement of Latin Accidence and Syntax, with exercises such as are required of candidates at the Departmental Primary Examination of Ontario.
- (2) Extracts for translation from Caesar, with exercises based on them such as are required of candidates at the Junior Leaving and Junior Matriculation Examinations.

Pupils who have mastered Part I, should be well equipped for beginning Caesar ; pupils who have mastered both parts should be able to go on with the translation of continuous English into Latin Prose.

With the exception of the examples (which should be carefully learned), the rules of syntax are not intended to be committed to memory. When a rule has been orally explained by the teacher and applied in practice by the pupil, no further difficulty is usually found with the principle involved in it. Examples of common constructions should be collected by the pupil for himself from his own reading.

A knowledge of elementary English Grammar is, for the most part, presumed throughout.

In the accidence, we are most indebted to Leighton and Kennedy ; in the syntax, to Madvig, Bradley, Roby, Hime, Key, and Allen and Greenough.

The section in the appendix on *Latin Verb Forms* is by Mr. Nicholson, Lecturer in Philology, in Queen's College.

J. H.
J. F.

August 1st, 1892.

5189.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I - INTRODUCTION

The first chapter of this book is an introduction to the subject of the book. It discusses the importance of the subject and the scope of the book. It also discusses the methods used in the book and the results of the research. The chapter is divided into three sections: the first section discusses the importance of the subject, the second section discusses the scope of the book, and the third section discusses the methods used in the book.

The second chapter of this book is a discussion of the history of the subject. It discusses the development of the subject from its origins to the present day. It also discusses the contributions of various researchers to the field. The chapter is divided into two sections: the first section discusses the history of the subject, and the second section discusses the contributions of various researchers.

The third chapter of this book is a discussion of the theory of the subject. It discusses the various theories that have been developed to explain the subject. It also discusses the strengths and weaknesses of each theory. The chapter is divided into three sections: the first section discusses the theory of the subject, the second section discusses the strengths and weaknesses of each theory, and the third section discusses the contributions of various researchers.

The fourth chapter of this book is a discussion of the practice of the subject. It discusses the various practices that have been developed to study the subject. It also discusses the strengths and weaknesses of each practice. The chapter is divided into three sections: the first section discusses the practice of the subject, the second section discusses the strengths and weaknesses of each practice, and the third section discusses the contributions of various researchers.

The fifth chapter of this book is a discussion of the future of the subject. It discusses the various challenges that the subject faces in the future. It also discusses the opportunities that the subject has in the future. The chapter is divided into two sections: the first section discusses the challenges that the subject faces, and the second section discusses the opportunities that the subject has.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

LESSONS.	PAGES.
I.—The Verb.....	1
II.—First Conjugation	2
III.—The Noun—First Declension	3
IV.—Subject and Object	5
V.—First Declension (<i>Continued</i>)	6
VI.—First Conjugation—Impf. and Fut.	8
VII.—Second Declension.....	9
VIII.—Second Declension (<i>Continued</i>)	11
IX.— “ “ “	13
X.—First Conjugation.—Perf., Plpf., Fut.-pf.	14
XI.—Imperative of First Conjugation	17
XII.—Latin Gender	18
XIII.—Adjectives in US	19
XIV.—Adjectives in ER	22
XV.—Inflection of Sum	24
XVI.—Irregular Adjectives in US and ER ..	26
XVII.—Interrogative Sentences.....	28
XVIII.—Third Declension	30
XIX.—Third Declension (<i>Continued</i>)	33
XX.— “ “ “	36
XXI.— “ “ “	38
XXII.— “ “ “	40
XXIII.— “ “ “	42
XXIV.— “ “ “	44
XXV.—Irregular Nouns of Third Declension.....	45
XXVI.—Gender of Nouns of Third Declension	47
XXVII.—Adjectives of Third Declension	49
XXVIII.— “ “ “ “	52
XXIX.—Comparison of Adjectives	54
XXX.—Irregular Comparison	56
XXXI.— “ “	59

LESSONS.	PAGES.
XXXII.—Adverbial Comparison	60
XXXIII.—Fourth Declension	62
XXXIV.—Fifth Declension	63
XXXV.—Numeral Adjectives and Adverbs	65
XXXVI.—Passive Voice of First Conjugation.....	70
XXXVII.— “ “ “ “ “ “	72
XXXVIII.—Review of Passive Voice	74
XXXIX.—Adverbs	75
XL.—Second Conjugation	78
XLI.—Second Conjugation (<i>Continued</i>).....	81
XLII.—Third Conjugation. Rules for Place	83-85
XLIII.—Formation of Perf. Stems of Third Conjugation	87
XLIV.—Passive of Third Conjugation	89
XLV.—Fourth Conjugation	91
XLVI.—Passive of Fourth Conjugation	94
XLVII.—Cognate Accusative. Acc. with Prepositions in Com- position	95
XLVIII.—Verbs in IO of Third Conjugation	97
XLIX.—The Participle.	100
L.—Passive Participles.	101
LI.—Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	104
LII.—Infinitive	107
LIII.—Accusative with Infinitive.....	109
LIV.—Infinitive with Verbs of <i>Hoping</i>	110
LV.—Acc. with Infinitive (<i>Continued</i>)	111
LVI.—Deponents	113
LVII.—Deponents (<i>Continued</i>).....	116
LVIII.—Demonstrative Pronouns	117
LIX.—Dative with verbs compounded with Prepositions....	120
LX.— <i>Is. Idem. Ipse.</i>	122
LXI.—Genitive with <i>Sum</i>	124
LXII.—Relative Pronouns	125
LXIII.—Correlatives	127
LXIV.—Interrogative Pronouns. Genitive of Quality	129
LXV.—Indefinite Pronouns	132
LXVI.—Dative of Purpose	134
LXVII.—Review Exercise on Pronoun	135
LXVIII.—The Subjunctive. Subjunctive in Simple Sentences .	136
LXIX.—Subjunctive in Simple Sentences (<i>Continued</i>)	139
LXX.—Subjunctive Passive	140

LESSONS.	PAGES.
LXXI.—Compounds of <i>Sum</i>	142
LXXII.—Defective Verbs. <i>Memini. Coepi. Odi. Novi.</i>	145
LXXIII.—Irregular Verbs. <i>Vōlo. Nōlo. Mālo.</i>	147
LXXIV.—Ablative of Price	150
LXXV.— <i>Fero, I carry</i>	152
LXXVI.— <i>Fio, I become</i>	155
LXXVII.— <i>Eo, I go.</i> Abl. of Separation	157
LXXVIII.— <i>Edo, I eat</i>	160
LXXIX.—Impersonal Verbs	161
LXXX.—Passive use of Verbs that Govern the Dat.	164
LXXXI.—Impersonal Verbs (<i>Continued</i>). <i>Miseret. Interest.</i>	165
LXXXII.—Verbs with Acc. and Gen.	167
LXXXIII.—Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.	168
LXXXIV.—Gerund and Gerundive	170
LXXXV.—Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.	172
LXXXVI.—Active Periphrastic Conjugation. Supine.	174
LXXXVII.—Classification of Clauses. Indirect Question	176
LXXXVIII.—Classification of Tenses. Sequence of Tenses	178
LXXXIX.—Noun-clause introduced by <i>Quod</i> or <i>Ut</i>	181
XC.—Final Clauses	183
XCI.— <i>Qui</i> Final. <i>Quominus</i> and <i>Quin.</i> <i>Neve</i>	184
XCII.—Clauses of Result (<i>Consecutive</i>)	187
XCIII.—The Conditional Sentence.	190
XCIV.—Classification of Conditional Sentences	192
XCV.—Comparative and Concessive Clauses	195
XCVI.—Causal Clauses	198
XCVII.—Temporal Clauses	200
XCVIII.—Syntax of <i>Quum</i>	203
XCIX.—Indirect Narration	205
C.—Summary of Rules for Indirect Narration	209
CI.—Passages in Direct and Indirect Narration.	212
CII.—Notes on the Tenses	216
CIII.—Notes on the Participle—Translation of " <i>Without</i> ".	218
CIV.—The Preposition	221

PART II.

Extracts for translation from Caesar	229
Exercises in Latin Prose based on Extracts from Caesar.	254

	PAGES.
Appendix	273
I. Declension of Greek Nouns	273
II. Exceptions to Rules for Gender	275
III. Irregular Nouns	277
IV. Tables of Regular Verbs	281
V. Alo. Inquam. For	288
VI. Latin Alphabet	289
VII. Latin Pronunciation	293
(a) Roman Method	294
(b) English Method	297
VIII. Quantity and Accent	298
IX. Root. Stem. Inflection	299
X. Latin Verb Forms	301
XI. Derivation	302
XII. Summary of Syntax Rules	307
Latin-English Vocabulary	313
English-Latin Vocabulary	365
Index	393

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

PART I.

ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

to
a

c
a

a
a

cl
a

ca

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

LESSON I.

THE VERB.

1. Latin verbs are divided into four classes, called *conjugations*.
2. The first conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ā* before the present infinitive ending *-re*:
as, *amā-re, to love.*
3. The second conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ē* before the present infinitive ending *-re*:
as, *mōnē-re, to advise.*
4. The third conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ē* before the present infinitive ending *-re*:
as, *rēgē-re, to rule.*
5. The fourth conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-i* before the present infinitive ending *-re*:
as, *audī-re, to hear.*

EXERCISE.

Learn the following verbs and state the conjugation to which each belongs :—

amā-re, to love.
délē-re, to destroy.
pūnī-re, to punish.
tēgē-re, to cover.
vēnī-re, to come.
sērē-re, to sow.

vestī-re, to clothe.
tēnē-re, to hold.
quaerē-re, to ask.
tīmē-re, to fear.
laudā-re, to praise.
dūcē-re, to lead.

LESSON II.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The first conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ā* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as, *amā-re*, *to love*.

2. The part of *amā-re* that is left after dropping the ending *-re*, is called the present stem. Thus: *amā-re*, *to love*; present stem, *amā-*.

3. The present indicative active of the first conjugation is as follows:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers., <i>amo</i> , <i>I love</i> .	1. Pers., <i>amā-mus</i> , <i>we love</i> .
2. " <i>ama-s</i> , <i>thou lovest</i> .	2. " <i>amā-tis</i> , <i>you love</i> .
3. " <i>ama-t</i> , <i>he (she, it) loves</i> .	3. " <i>ama-nt</i> , <i>they love</i> .

Note 1. The Latin verb expresses person and number by endings.*

Note 2. The forms of the present indicative represent the indefinite, progressive, and emphatic forms of the English present. Thus: *amo* is either, *I love* (indefinite), *I am loving* (progressive), or, *I do love* (emphatic).

Note 3. *Ama-s*, is *you love* (sing.); *ama-tis*, *you love* (plural).

EXERCISE.

Learn, and inflect like *amo*, the following verbs:—

<i>porto</i> , <i>portā-re</i> , <i>to carry</i> .	<i>dōno</i> , <i>dōnā-re</i> , <i>to give</i> .
<i>laudo</i> , <i>laudā-re</i> , <i>to praise</i> .	<i>clāmo</i> , <i>clāmā-re</i> , <i>to shout</i> .
<i>āro</i> , <i>ārā-re</i> , <i>to plough</i> .	<i>pugno</i> , <i>pugnā-re</i> , <i>to fight</i> .
<i>vōco</i> , <i>vōcā-re</i> , <i>to call</i> .	<i>spēro</i> , <i>spērā-re</i> , <i>to hope</i> .

*These endings were perhaps originally pronouns. Thus:—*amo*=*ama-o-m*: i. e., *ama*, pres. stem (*love*); *-o*, connecting-vowel; and *-m*, *I* (seen in Latin *me*, and English *me*).

Translate into English :—

1. Laudo. 2. Arant. 3. Vocātis. 4. Pugnamus. 5. Donas.
6. Portat. 7. Pugnās. 8. Vocant. 9. Laudas. 10. Speratis. 11. Aramus. 12. Sperant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. I fight. 2. You plough. 3. They praise. 4. We are carrying. 5. He calls. 6. You give. 7. They hope. 8. We praise.
9. He carries. 10. They give. 11. We plough. 12. He fights.
13. You call (*sing.*)

LESSON III.

THE NOUN.

1. Latin nouns have two numbers and three persons. They have, however, six cases : the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

2. The Nominative case is the form the noun has when it is the subject of a sentence.

3. The Genitive is the form the noun has when it expresses the meaning of the English possessive or possessive with *of*.

4. The Dative is the form the noun has when it expresses the meaning of the English indirect object with the prepositions *to* or *for*.

5. The Accusative is the form the noun has when it is the direct object of a verb, or governed by a preposition which takes the accusative.

6. The Vocative is the form the noun has when it expresses the meaning of the English Nominative of address.

7. The Ablative is the form the noun has when it expresses the various relations indicated by the prepositions *with, by, from, or in*.

THE DECLENSIONS.—FIRST DECLENSION.

8. Latin nouns are divided into five classes, called *declensions*,

which are distinguished from each other by the ending of the genitive singular.

9. In the first declension the genitive singular ends in *-ae*; in the second declension in *-i*; in the third declension in *-is*; in the fourth declension in *-ūs*; in the fifth declension in *-ēi*.

10. In the first declension the nominative ends in *-a*, *-e*, *-as*, or *-es*.

Note. Nouns in *-a* and *-e* are feminine; those in *-as* and *-es* are masculine. But words in *-a*, denoting male beings, are masculine: as, *nauta*, a sailor; *agricōla*, a farmer.

11. Nouns in *-a* of the first declension are thus declined:—

Mensa, a table.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>mensā</i> , a table.	<i>mens-ae</i> , tables.
GEN. <i>mens-ae</i> , of a table.	<i>mens-ārum</i> , of tables.
DAT. <i>mens-ae</i> , to or for a table.	<i>mens-is</i> , to or for tables.
ACC. <i>mens-am</i> , a table.	<i>mens-as</i> , tables.
VOC. <i>mens-ā</i> , O table.	<i>mens-ae</i> , O tables.
ABL. <i>mens-ā</i> , with, by, from, or in a table.	<i>mens-is</i> , with, by, from or in tables.

Note. Latin has no article; therefore, *mensa* may mean *table*, a table, or, *the table*.

12. Most nouns of the first declension end in the nominative singular in *-a*. These are all declined like *mensa*, by dropping the *-a* and adding the case-endings of *mensa*. Thus: *Umbra*, a shade; gen., *umbr-ae*; dat., *umbr-ae*, and so on.

EXERCISE.

Learn the following nouns and decline each like *mensa*:

<i>āqua</i> (gen., <i>āqu-ae</i>), water.	<i>rōsa</i> (gen., <i>rōs-ae</i>), a rose.
<i>victōria</i> (gen., <i>victori-ae</i>), victory.	<i>lūna</i> (gen., <i>lūn-ae</i>), the moon.
<i>pūella</i> (gen., <i>pūell-ae</i>), a girl.	<i>nauta</i> (gen., <i>naut-ae</i>), a sailor.
<i>umbrā</i> (gen., <i>umbr-ae</i>), a shade.	<i>agricōla</i> (gen., <i>agricōl-ae</i>), a farmer.
<i>insūla</i> (gen., <i>insūl-ae</i>), an island.	<i>stella</i> (gen., <i>stell-ae</i>), a star.

Translate into English :—

1. Stella. 2. Insulae. 3. Lunarum. 4. Puellis. 5. Aquae. 6. Nautarum. 7. Agricolis. 8. Umbrā. 9. Victoriae. 10. Puella. 11. Rosarum. 12. Lunas. 13. Agricolae. 14. Nautae.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Of stars. 2. With roses. 3. Of a sailor. 4. Of farmers. 5. With water. 6. Of girls. 7. For a farmer. 8. Of the moon. 9. With victories. 10. O girl. 11. To a rose. 12. With a rose. 13. Of a girl. 14. O star.

LESSON IV.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

1. The subject of a finite verb is put in the Nominative : as, *Agricola arat, the farmer ploughs*. Here, *agricola* is the subject of the verb *arat* and is in the Nominative case.

2. The verb agrees with the subject Nominative in number and person : as, *Agricola arat, the farmer ploughs*; here, *agricola* is third person singular, and *arat* agrees with the subject *agricola*. *Agricolae arant, the farmers plough*; *agricolae* is third person plural, and *arant* agrees with *agricolae*.

3. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative : as, *Puella rosam laudat, the girl praises the rose*; here, *rosam* is accusative singular governed by *laudat*. *Puella rosas laudat, the girl praises the roses*; here, *rosas* is accusative plural governed by *laudat*.

4. The indirect object of a transitive verb is put in the dative : as, *Puer epistolam puellae donat, the boy gives a letter to the girl* (or *gives the girl a letter*); here, *puellae* is the indirect object and is in the dative case.

EXERCISE.

Learn and decline the following nouns ; learn, and inflect in the present, the following verbs :—

regina, a queen.
pūella, a girl.
epistōla, a letter.
pēcūnia, money.
terra, the earth, land.

patria, one's native land.
cant-o, āre, sing.
expect-o, āre, expect, look for.
orn-o, āre, adorn.
postūl-o, āre, demand.

Translate into English :—

1. Puella rosam laudat. 2. Agricolae pecuniam postulant. 3. Puellae epistolam expectant. 4. Regina umbram amat. 5. Puella pecuniam donat. 6. Puellae umbram amant. 7. Agricolae terram arant. 8. Nautae lunam expectant. 9. Aquam agricolis donāmus. 10. Nautae patriam amant. 11. Nautae victoriam expectant. 12. Puella reginae cantat. 13. Agricolae cantant. 14. Epistolas reginae laudant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. He is calling the farmer. 2. The farmer ploughs the land. 3. You are praising the victory of the sailors. 4. He gives a rose to the girl. 5. The queen praises the letter of the girl. 6. The farmers love the shade. 7. The sailors are demanding money. 8. We adorn the tables of the queen. 9. The farmer is expecting a letter. 10. The farmers are carrying water. 11. Girls love the shade. 12. The sailors give the maidens crowns. 13. The girls praise the roses of the farmer. 14. They give the sailors money.

LESSON V.

FIRST DECLENSION.—(Continued.)

1. Nouns of the first declension in *-e*, *-as*, and *-es* are borrowed from the Greek. Their declension is given in the Appendix, and they may be learned at a later stage.

2. The following nouns in *-a* of the first declension have *-ābus* for *-is* in the dative and ablative plural:—*Dea, a goddess*; *filia, a daughter*; *liberta, a freedwoman*; *mula, a she-mule*: *as, deābus, filiābus, libertābus, mulābus*.

3. *To*, when it expresses *motion to*, is *ad* (with the acc.); and

for, when it means *in behalf of*, is **pro** (with the abl.): as, **Ad portam**, to the gate; **pro patriā**, for one's country.

EXERCISE.

Learn the following words; decline and state the gender of all the nouns:—

amicitia, friendship.
copia, abundance, fertility.
porta, a gate.
corona, a crown.
Roma, Rome.
patria, one's native land.
sapientia, wisdom.

Gallia, Gaul, France.
pinna, feather.
spect-o, are, gaze at, see.
ad, prep. (with acc.), to, towards.
e (or **ex**), prep. (with abl.), from, out of.
in, prep., with acc., meaning into; with abl., in.
pro, prep. (with abl.), before or for.

Translate into English:—

1. Puella portas Romae laudat. 2. Agricola copiam terrae laudant. 3. Pinnae puellis donatis. 4. Epistolas reginae ad Galliam portamus. 5. Nautae stellas expectant. 6. Mensas reginae ad portam portat. 7. Nautae coronas puellis donant. 8. Amicitiam puellarum laudo. 9. Nautae coronam laudant. 10. Puellarum pinnae laudas. 11. Agricola puellarum coronas laudat. 12. In Galliam epistolas nautae portant. 13. Reginarum filiae amicitiam nautarum laudant. 14. Pro patriā nautae pugnant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We fight for our (*omit*) native land. 2. The farmers give crowns to the girls. 3. The sailors are bearing crowns to the gates of the queen. 4. The daughters of the farmer are gazing at the stars. 5. The farmer praises the crown of his (*omit*) daughter. 6. The farmers give a feather to the girl. 7. The farmer ploughs the land. 8. The sailors praise the fertility of the land. 9. They give roses to the daughters. 10. The sailor praises the wisdom of the farmer. 11. I carry a crown to the gate of the farmer. 12. The girls are carrying water to the gate. 13. We praise the fertility of the earth. 14. He carries crowns from the gate of the queen.

LESSON VI.

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF
THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The imperfect and the future of the indicative active of the first conjugation are formed by adding endings to the present stem. The imperfect indicative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows :—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. Pers., <i>āmā-bam</i> , <i>I was loving.</i>	<i>āmā-bāmus</i> , <i>we were loving.</i>
2. “ <i>āmā-bas</i> , <i>thou wast loving.</i>	<i>āmā-bātis</i> , <i>you were loving.</i>
3. “ <i>āmā-bat</i> , <i>he, (she, it) was loving.</i>	<i>āmā-bant</i> , <i>they were loving.</i>

2. The future indicative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers., <i>āmā-bo</i> , <i>I shall love.</i>	<i>āmā-bīmus</i> , <i>we shall love.</i>
2. “ <i>āmā-bis</i> , <i>thou wilt love.</i>	<i>āmā-bītis</i> , <i>you will love.</i>
3. “ <i>āmā-bit</i> , <i>he, (she, it) will love.</i>	<i>āmā-bunt</i> , <i>they will love.</i>

3. *With*, when it expresses the instrument with which a thing is done, is expressed in Latin by the Ablative : as, *Nautam coronā ornat*, *he is adorning the sailor with a crown.*

EXERCISE.

Learn the following words ; inflect the verbs and decline the nouns :—

<i>ancilla</i> , maid-servant, hand-maiden.	<i>sto</i> , āre, stand.
<i>cōma</i> , hair.	<i>scō</i> , āre, cut.
<i>āquila</i> , an eagle.	<i>vōlo</i> , āre, fly.
<i>silva</i> , a wood.	<i>per</i> , prep. (acc.), through.
<i>via</i> , a way, road.	<i>trans</i> , prep. (acc.), across.
<i>ambūlo</i> , āre, walk.	<i>saepe</i> , adverb, often.
<i>dēcōro</i> , āre, adorn.	<i>semper</i> , adverb, always.

Translate into English :—

1. *Regina epistolam filiae donabat.* 2. *Agricola silvam secābit.*

3. Puellae mensas reginae rosis saepe ornant. 4. Filiae agriculturalum per silvam ambulant. 5. Ancillae comam rosis decorabunt. 6. Aquila trans silvam volabat. 7. Nautae in aqua stant. 8. Agricolae per silvam ambulabunt. 9. Filiae agriculturalum comam decorabunt. 10. Nautae lunam saepe spectabant. 11. Filiae reginae nautas ad mensam vocabunt. 12. Puellae agriculturalum fosas saepe laudabant. 13. Regina comam rosā saepe ornat. 14. Ancilla reginae rosas ex silvā portabat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. You will adorn the table of the queen with roses. 2. The farmer will cut a rose in the wood. 3. The handmaid is adorning the hair of the queen with a rose. 4. The girls often adorn the table of the queen with roses. 5. The eagle flies across the woods. 6. The queen will give the letter to the daughter of the farmer. 7. The queen will always praise the handmaiden. 8. The daughters of the queen were praising the woods of the farmer. 9. The farmers often give roses to the handmaidens of the queen. 10. The handmaiden will adorn the table with roses. 11. I shall give the letter to the handmaiden of the queen. 12. We shall often walk through the wood. 13. The eagle was flying across the road. 14. Sailors often stand in the water.

LESSON VII.

SECOND DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the second declension have the genitive singular in -i. The nominative singular may end in -ūs, -ēr, -īr, or, -um. Nouns in -ūs, -ēr, and -īr are masculine ; those in -um are neuter.

2. Nouns in -us are declined as follows :—

Dōmīnus, a lord, master.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>dōmīnus, a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-i, lords.</i>
GEN. <i>dōmīn-i, of a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-ōrum, of lords.</i>
DAT. <i>dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-is, to or for lords.</i>
ACC. <i>dōmīn-um, a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-ōs, lords.</i>
VOC. <i>dōmīn-ē, O lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-i, O lords.</i>
ABL. <i>dōmīn-ō, with, by, or from a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-is, with, by, or from lords.</i>

VOCABULARY.

(All words in the vocabularies should be learned by heart.)

servus, i, a slave.

amicus, i, a friend.

hortus, i, a garden.

oculus, i, an eye.

animus, i, the mind.

murus, i, a wall.

delecto, Arc, delight.

Italia, ae, Italy.

Roma, ae, Rome.

hodie, adv., to-day.

EXERCISE.

Decline, like *dominus*, all nouns in -us in the above vocabulary.

Translate into English : —

1. Domini hortus oculos delectat.
2. Regina¹ domini hortos laudabit.
3. Dominus servum laudat.
4. Servi dominorum hortos semper laudant.
5. Domine, ancilla reginae mensam rosis decorat.
6. Horti reginae animum semper delectant.
7. Servi dominis epistolas donant.
8. Puella servo rosam donat.
9. Puellae amicis rosas donabunt.
10. Servi epistolas ad dominos portabunt.
11. Horti dominorum animos saepe delectant.
12. Domine, aquilae trans hortos reginae volant.
13. Servus rosas reginae donat.
14. Servi dominos saepe laudabunt.

¹ For words not given in the above list, see vocabulary at end of book.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The slaves often praise their (*omit*) lords.
2. The masters will praise the daughters of the slaves.
3. The slaves adorn the tables of their masters with roses.
4. The girls often praise the handmaidens of the queen.
5. The handmaidens often adorn the queen's table with roses.
6. The queen gives a letter to the slave.
7. The slaves of the master will walk to Italy.
8. They will adorn the walls of Rome with roses.
9. The slave gives a rose to the master.
10. The slaves give letters to-day to the masters.
11. The master's slaves call the friends to the table.
12. The queen gives the daughter's letter to a friend.
13. The slaves will often praise the garden of the master.
14. The master praises the walls of the garden.
15. The master expects friends to day.

LESSON VIII.

SECOND DECLENSION—(Continued).

1. Nouns in *-er* are declined as follows :—

Magister, a master, teacher.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	māgister, a master.
GEN.	māgistr-i, of a master.
DAT.	māgistr-ō, to, or for a master.
ACC.	māgistr-um, a master.
VOC.	māgister, O master.
ABL.	māgistr-ō, with, by, or from a master.

PLURAL.

māgistr-i, masters.
māgistr-ōrum, of masters.
māgistr-is, to or for masters.
māgistr-ōs, masters.
māgistr-i, O masters.
māgistr-is, with, by, or from masters.

Puer, a boy.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	pūer, a boy.
GEN.	pūer-i, of a boy.
DAT.	pūer-ō, to or for a boy.
ACC.	pūer-um, a boy.
VOC.	pūer, O boy.
ABL.	pūer-ō, with, by, or from a boy.

PLURAL.

pūer-i, boys.
pūer-ōrum, of boys.
pūer-is, to, or for boys.
pūer-os, boys.
pūer-i, O boys.
pūer-is, with, by, or from boys.

NOTE. In declining *māgister* the *-e* is dropped ; in declining *puer* the *-e* is retained. The following nouns in *-er* of the second decl. retain the *-e* : (a) Compounds of *-fer* and *-ger* : as *lūcifer* *light-bearer* (gen., *lūciferi*) ; *armiger*, *armour-bearer* (gen., *armigēri*) ; (b) *adulter*, *an adulterer* ; *gēner*, *son-in-law* ; *sōcer*, *father-in-law* ; *vesper*, *evening*.

2. Nouns in *-ir* are declined as follows :—

Vīr, a man.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	vīr, a man.
GEN.	vīri, of a man.
DAT.	vīrō, to or for a man.
ACC.	vīrum, a man.
VOC.	vīr, O man.
ABL.	vīrō, with, by or from a man.

PLURAL.

vīri, men.
vīrōrum, of men.
vīris, to or for men.
vīrōs, men.
vīri, O men.
vīris, with, by or from men.

3. *With*, when it means *together with*, is expressed by the preposition *cum* with the ablative ; as, *cum puero*, *with a boy*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>fāber, fabri, a workman.</i>	<i>cum</i> , prep. (abl.), <i>with, in company with.</i>
<i>āger, āgri, a field.</i>	<i>inter</i> , prep. (acc.), <i>between, in the midst of.</i>
<i>fābūla, ae, a story.</i>	<i>vasto, āre, destroy, devastate.</i>
<i>lūdus, lūdi, a game.</i>	<i>narro, āre, tell.</i>
<i>pōpulus, pōpuli, the people.</i>	
<i>campus, i, plain, field.</i>	
<i>pōēta, ae, a poet.</i>	

EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each.

Translate into English :—

1. Agricola cum pueris agrum arābat.
2. Poeta pueris fabulas narrat.
3. Agricolae cum pueris campos arābunt.
4. Vir cum filiā ludos spectabat.
5. Poeta filiae fabulas narrābit.
6. Pueri agricolae inter silvam ambulabunt.
7. Pueri per campum ambulant.
8. Servus reginae pueros ad hortos vocabat.
9. Fabri cum pueris ludos spectabunt.
10. Puer fabro fabulam in horto narrabat.
11. Puellae cum magistro in campo ambulabant.
12. Pueri per agros ambulabunt.
13. Regina cum ancillis per campum ambulat.
14. Agricolae agros vastabunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The farmer was giving the money to the workman.
2. The man will praise the boy's letter.
3. You will plough the farmer's fields.
4. The master will call the slaves to the garden.
5. The poet will tell a story to the farmer's daughter.
6. The daughters of the farmer will walk through the wood.
7. The man will give a crown to the boy.
8. The farmer with the boys will plough the fields of the master.
9. The boys were giving money to the poet.
10. The girls will praise the poet's crown.
11. The master calls the servants to the field.
12. The fields delight the eye of the master.
13. You will give money to the poets.
14. The farmer's girls will adorn the table of the queen with roses.

LESSON IX.

SECOND DECLENSION.—(Continued.)

1. Nouns of the second declension in *-us* and *-um* often contract *-i* in the genitive singular into *-i*; those in *-us* contract *-io* in the vocative singular also into *-i*: as, *Mercūrius*, (*Mercury*); gen., *Mercūri*; voc., *Mercūri*. *Ingēnium* (*talent*); gen., *ingēni*.

2. *Dēus*, a god, is thus declined: Nom., *dēus*; gen., *dēi*; dat., *dēō*; acc., *dēum*; voc., *dēus*; abl., *dēō*. Plural, nom., *dēi*, *dīi*, *dī*; gen., *dēorum* or *dēum*; dat., *dēis*, *dīs* or *dīs*; acc., *dēos*; voc., *dēi*, *dīi*, or *dī*; abl., *dēis*, *dīs* or *dīs*.

3. Nouns in *-um* are declined as follows:—

Bellum, war (neuter).

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>bellum</i> , a war	<i>bellā</i> , wars.
GEN. <i>belli</i> , of a war.	<i>bellōrum</i> , of wars.
DAT. <i>bellō</i> , to or for a war.	<i>bellis</i> , to or for wars.
ACC. <i>bellum</i> , a war.	<i>bellā</i> , wars.
VOC. <i>bellum</i> , O war.	<i>bellā</i> , O wars.
ABL. <i>bellō</i> , with, by, from, or in a war.	<i>bellis</i> , with, by, from, or in wars.

Note.—Neuter nouns, in *all* declensions, have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and in the plural these cases end in *-ā*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>praemium</i> , <i>praemii</i> , a reward.	<i>oppidum</i> , <i>oppidi</i> , a town.
<i>dōnum</i> , <i>dōni</i> , a gift.	<i>lēgātus</i> , <i>lēgāti</i> , ambassador.
<i>arvum</i> , <i>arvi</i> , ploughed field.	<i>rāna</i> , <i>ae</i> , frog.
<i>ārātrum</i> , <i>ārātri</i> , plough.	<i>cicōnia</i> , <i>ae</i> , stork.
<i>stagnum</i> , <i>stagni</i> , pool.	<i>aula</i> , <i>ae</i> , a hall, court.
<i>aurum</i> , <i>auri</i> , gold.	<i>dēvōro</i> , <i>āre</i> , devour.
<i>templum</i> , <i>templi</i> , temple.	<i>sēco</i> , <i>āre</i> , cut.
<i>lignum</i> , <i>ligni</i> , wood.	<i>aedifico</i> , <i>āre</i> , build.

EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each.

Translate into English:—

1. Amīcus amici arva hodie laudabit.
2. Domini praeemium servorum animos delectat.
3. Ciconiae ranas in stagnis devorant.
4. Servi lignum ad oppidum ex silva portabant.
5. Agricolarum servi campum aratro arant.
6. Puellae lignum ad reginae aulam portabant.
7. Legati reginae templa laudabunt.
8. Hodie templa auro ornāmus.
9. Dona servorum animos delectant.
10. Agricolae terram aratro arabant.
11. Domini servos ad arva vocant.
12. Reginae legatus oppidi muros laudabit.
13. Regina legatos ad aulam vocabit.
14. Legati agricolarum arva laudabunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. The ambassadors were praising the games of the boys.
2. The daughters of the ambassadors will praise the gold of the temples.
3. The farmers will plough the fields.
4. The gifts of masters delight the minds of slaves.
5. The lords will praise the walls of the town.
6. The slaves will build the wall of the town.
7. The men were cutting wood for the masters.
8. The queen's ambassador will often praise the ploughed field of the husbandman.
9. The ambassadors of the queen will call the slaves to the court.
10. The stork often devours frogs in the pool.
11. The queen will often praise the temples.
12. The ambassador was often calling his friend to the temple.
13. The master calls his friends to the hall of the queen to-day.
14. The daughter of the queen will carry wood to the hall.

LESSON X.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE-PERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The stem of the perfect indicative active of the first conjugation is regularly formed by adding -vi to the present stem: as, *amā-re, to love*; present stem *amā-*; perfect stem *amāvi-*.
2. The perfect indicative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows:—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. Pers., *āmāvi*, *I have loved* or *I loved*, *āmāmus*, *we have loved* or *we loved*.
 2. " *āmāvi-sti*, *thou hast loved* or *thou lovedst*, *āmāvi-stis*, *you have loved* or *you loved*.
 3. " *āmāvi-t*, *he (she, it) has loved*, *āmāvērunt*, or *āmāvēre*, *they have loved* or *they loved*.

3. The pluperfect indicative active of the first conjugation is formed by adding *-ram* to the perfect stem, and changing the final *-i* to *-ā*. It is inflected as follows :—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. Pers. *āmāvē-ram*, *I had loved*, *āmāvē-rāmus*, *we had loved*.
 2. " *āmāvē-rās*, *thou hadst loved*, *āmāvē-rātis*, *you had loved*.
 3. " *āmāvē-rat*, *he, (she, it) had loved*, *āmāvē-rant*, *they had loved*.

4. The future-perfect indicative active of the first conjugation is formed by adding *-ro* to the perfect stem and changing *-i* into *-ā*. It is inflected as follows :—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. Pers. *āmāvē-ro*, *I shall have loved*, *āmāvē-rīmus*, *we shall have loved*.
 2. " *āmāvē-ris*, *thou wilt have loved*, *āmāvē-rītis*, *you will have loved*.
 3. " *āmāvē-rit*, *he, (she, it) will have loved*, *āmāvē-rint*, *they will have loved*.

VOCABULARY.

vasto, *āre*, *lay waste*.
hiemo, *āre*, *pass the winter*.
hābito, *to dwell*.
comporto, *āre*, *collect, bring*.
occūpo, *āre*, *seize*.
ursus, *-i*, *a bear*.
rīpa, *-ae*, *a bank*.
lōcus, *-i*, *a place*.

Rōmānus, *-i*, *a Roman*.
cāvum, *-i*, *a cave*.
flūvīus, *-i*, *a river*.
castra, *-ōrum*, *a camp*.
tectum, *-i*, *a dwelling*.
frūmentum, *-i*, *corn*.
et, conjunction, *and*.
-que, conjunction, *and*, (written after word connected).

EXERCISE.

Decline all the nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each. Give the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of all verbs, and inflect them like *amo*.

Translate into English :—

1. Agricola frumentum ad tectum ex agris comportāvit. 2. Viri cum pueris per silvas ambulabunt. 3. Agricolae et filiae in agris ambulavērunt. 4. Romani agricularum agros vastabant. 5. Romani in castris hiemavērint. 6. Aquila trans ripam fluvii volavit. 7. Viri et pueri lignum ad oppidum portavērint. 8. Ursi in cavis saepe hiemaverant. 9. Romanorum pueri ludos ex castris spectabunt. 10. Regina puerorum animos donis delectavit. 11. Romani fluvii ripam occupavērant. 12. Agricolae pueri lignum ex silva ad tectum portavērint. 13. Regina ancillaeque per agros saepe ambulabant. 14. Bellum animos Romanorum semper delectavit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Romans devastated the farmer's fields. 2. The eagle had flown across the stream. 3. The bear often passes the winter in a cave. 4. The boys will have praised the walls of the town. 5. The men will seize the camp of the Romans. 6. The masters of the slaves gave corn to the Romans. 7. The queen with her (*omit*) handmaid often walks in the fields. 8. Gifts often delight the mind of a boy. 9. The queen and her handmaids dwell in the town. 10. The letter of the slaves delighted the mind of the master. 11. The men will have passed the winter in the camp. 12. The daughters of the farmer were walking across the plain. 13. Boys had brought corn to the queen's gate. 14. The master will give crowns to the boys to-day.

LESSON XI.

IMPERATIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The imperative mood is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties.

2. The second singular, present imperative active of the first conjugation has the same form as the present stem. Thus : *āmāre*, to love; present stem, *āmā*; pres. imperative, 2 sing., *āmā*.

3. The present imperative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows :—

SINGULAR.

2 pers., *āmā*, love or love thou.

PLURAL.

2 pers., *āmā-te*, love ye or you.

4. *Ne* is used with the imperative for *not*: as, *Ne vocāte, pueri*, do not call, boys.

VOCABULARY.

caelum, heaven, sky.

ōra, ae, shore, coast.

amicitia, ae, friendship.

diligentia, ae, diligence.

cēna, ae, feast, dinner.

filius, a son.

excito, āre, *excitāvi*, arouse.

pāro, *pārāre*, *pārāvī*, prepare.

nāto, āre, *nātāvī*, swim.

non, adverb, not.

EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each ; inflect all verbs in the indicative and imperative active.

Translate into English :—

1. *Filii agricolarum, stellas spectāte.*
2. *Pueri, in fluvio natate.*
3. *Domine, Romānos ad bellum excitā.*
4. *Puellae, rosas ad reginae aulam portate.*
5. *Aquila per caelum volavit.*
6. *Viri, ne fabulas pueris narrate.*
7. *Amice, in stagno nata.*
8. *Puer, lignum ad agricolae tectum porta.*
9. *Filios agricolarum ad agros vocate.*
10. *Puer, in silvis saepe ambula.*
11. *Magister, filiorum amicitiam*

lauda. 12. Agricola, frumentum ex agris ad tectum porta. 13. Filia, ne cenam para.

Translate into Latin, putting the verb at end of sentence :—

1. O farmer, call the boy to the field. 2. O boy, do not carry water to the men. 3. Arouse, O Romans, the men to war. 4. The camp delights the minds of the Romans. 5. O queen, praise the diligence of the farmers' daughters. 6. Often praise, O master, the diligence of the boys. 7. Carry roses to the dwelling, girls. 8. Adorn, O farmer's daughter, the table of the queen with roses. 9. O sailor, praise the feast of the queen. 10. Call, O Romans, the sons of the sailors to the war. 11. Carry, O sons of the Romans, wood to the camp. 12. Call the farmer's sons to the feast. 13. Do not give a reward to the boy. 14. Delight the mind of the boy with a gift. 15. O girls, prepare a feast for the sailors.

LESSON XII.

LATIN GENDER.

1. Gender in Latin is determined (1) by the meaning of the noun (*natural gender*), (2) by the ending of the noun (*grammatical gender*).

2. General rules for determining the gender of a noun from the meaning are :—

(1). Names of male beings are masculine : as, *puer*, a boy; *vir*, a man; *equus*, a horse; *agricola*, a farmer.

(2). Names of females are feminine : as, *puella*, a girl.

(3). Names of rivers, winds, and mountains are masculine : as, *Rhēnus*, the Rhine; *Eurus*, the east wind; *Olympus*, Mt. Olympus.

(4). Names of countries, towns, islands, gems, and trees are feminine : as, *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Cōrinthus*, Corinth; *Sāmus*, Samos (an island); *fāgus*, a beech; *margārita*, a pearl.

(5). Indeclinable nouns are neuter : as, *fas*, right; *nōlas*, wrong; *nihil*, nothing.

VOCABULARY.

auxilium, i, *aid*.
fēmina, ae, *wife*.
insūla, ae, *island*.
pōēta, ae, *a poet*.
tectum, i, *dwelling*.

libērī, ōrum, *children*.
liber, bri, *book*.
implōro, āre, āvi, *implore, ask*.
a or *ab*, prep. (abl.), *from, by*
 [always *ab* before a vowel].

EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each ;
 inflect all the verbs in the indicative and imperative present

Translate into English :—

1. Viri in tecta ligna portavērunt. 2. Agricolaē puerorum animos
 delectābunt. 3. Pueri magistrique per agros ambulābant. 4.
 Saepe auxilium a Romanis imploravērant. 5. Agricolaē cum
 feminis liberisque insulam habitant. 6. Agros aratro arāte. 7.
 Viris viam non monstrabunt. 8. Pueri magistro libros donant. 9
 Aquilae trans fluvium volaverant. 10. Poetae in oppidum coronas
 portabant. 11. Ne vocate nautas ad oram. 12. Auxilium ab op-
 pido implora.

Note.—The verb in Latin is usually at the end of the sentence.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They have called the sailors into the town. 2. They had
 walked with the boys in the fields. 3. You carried wood to the
 gates. 4. They will ask help from the children. 5. Do not call
 the girl to the gate. 6. The boy had implored aid from the master.
 7. The men will plough the field with a plough. 8. They did not
 give the books to the master. 9. They dwell with their sons and
 daughters in the island. 10. Eagles have often flown over the
 river.

LESSON XIII.

ADJECTIVES in -US.

1. An adjective in Latin (whether attributive or predicative)
 agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun it qualifies.
 Thus : *Vir bōnus*, *a good man* ; *bōnus* is nominative singular mas-
 culine, because *vir* is nominative singular masculine. *Puella bōna*,

a good girl; *bōna* is nominative singular feminine, agreeing with *puella*. So also in *Bellum longum*, *a long war*, *longum* is nominative singular neuter and agrees with *bellum*.

2. Many adjectives (called adjectives in *-us*), have three forms in the nominative for expressing gender,—one in *-ūs*, (for the masculine), one in *-ā* (for the feminine), and one in *-um*, (for the neuter). Forms in *-us* are declined like *Dominus*; forms in *-a*, like *Mensa*; and forms in *-um*, like *Bellum*. Thus:—

Bōnus, good.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	bōnus,	bōnā,	bōnum.
GEN.	bōnī,	bōnae,	bōnī.
DAT.	bōnō,	bōnae,	bōnō.
ACC.	bōnum,	bōnam,	bōnum.
VOC.	bōnē,	bōnā,	bōnum.
ABL.	bōnō,	bōnā,	bōnō.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	bōnī,	bōnae,	bōnā.
GEN.	bōnōrum,	bōnārum,	bōnōrum
DAT.	bōnīs,	bōnīs,	bōnīs.
ACC.	bōnōs,	bōnās,	bōnā.
VOC.	bōnī,	bōnae,	bōnā.
ABL.	bōnīs,	bōnīs,	bōnīs.

3. Decline together *puer cārus, a dear boy*:—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

NOM.	pūer cārus, <i>a dear boy.</i>	pūērī cārī, <i>dear boys.</i>
GEN.	pūērī cārī, <i>of a dear boy.</i>	pūērōrum cārōrum, <i>of dear boys.</i>
DAT.	pūērō cārō, <i>to or for a dear boy.</i>	pūērīs cārīs, <i>to or for dear boys.</i>
ACC.	pūerum cārum, <i>a dear boy.</i>	pūērōs cārōs, <i>dear boys.</i>
VOC.	pūer cārē, <i>O dear boy.</i>	pūērī cārī, <i>O dear boys.</i>
ABL.	pūērō cārō, <i>with, by or from a dear boy.</i>	pūērīs cārīs, <i>with, by or from dear boys.</i>

4. An adjective is often used with the noun understood: as, *Bōnus, a good man*; *bōna, a good woman*; *bōnum, a good thing*.

VOCABULARY.

multus, -a, -um, *much, many.*altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*magnus, -a, -um, *great.*rāpidus, -a, -um, *swift.*densus, -a, -um, *thick.*longus, -a, -um, *long.*clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright, distinguished.*liber, libri, *a book.*saxum, -i, *a rock.*discipulus, -i, *a pupil.*schōla, -ae, *a school.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : puer bonus, vir magnus, puella cāra, mensa alta.

Translate into English :—

1. Agricolae campos magnos aravērunt. 2. Aquilae magnae trans fluvios altos volavērunt. 3. Pueri multi libros non amant. 4. Pueri, libros virorum clarorum amāte. 5. Regina cum filiā carā in silvā densā ambulābit. 6. Nautarum filii stellas claras spectavērunt. 7. Vir pueros bonos semper laudabit. 8. Romani, in castris hiemabūtis. 9. Ursi in silvis densis saepe hiemant. 10. Agricolae cum multis viris frumentum portabant. 11. Libri discipulorum animos saepe delectaverint. 12. Aquila ex silva alta in saxum volaverat. 13. Pueri, libros ad scholam portate. 14. Pueri multi libros viri clari laudavērunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. O boy, praise the diligence of the farmer's son. 2. The boys will have walked across high rocks to-day. 3. The farmer and his sons will gaze at the bright stars. 4. The boy is carrying many books to school. 5. Bears often pass the winter in a thick wood. 6. O masters, praise the diligence of the good boys. 7. The master will give a prize to the good boy. 8. O master, arouse the mind of the boy to diligence. 9. The boy walked across the swift stream. 10. The Romans often wintered in camp. 11. The good daughters of the farmer will give many roses to the queen to-day. 12. The sons of the farmer swam across the deep river.

ng with
nomin-

e forms
for the
(for the
s in -a,

ear boys.
boys.

rom dear

od : as,
thing.

LESSON XIV.

ADJECTIVES in -ER

Of the First and Second Declensions.

1. Besides adjectives in -us, -a, -um, there are others in -er, a, um, belonging to the first and second declensions. These are inflected as follows :—

Aeger, sick.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	aegēr,	aegrā,	aegrum.
GEN.	aegri,	aegrae,	aegri.
DAT.	aegrō,	aegrae,	aegrō.
ACC.	aegrum,	aegram,	aegrum.
VOC.	aegēr,	aegrā,	aegrum.
ABL.	aegrō,	aegrā,	aegrō.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	aegri,	aegrae.	aegrā.
GEN.	aegrōrum,	aegrārum,	aegrōrum.
DAT.	aegris,	aegris,	aegris.
ACC.	aegrōs,	aegrās,	aegrā.
VOC.	aegri,	aegrae,	aegrā.
ABL.	aegris,	aegris,	aegris.

Tēner, tender.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	tēner,	tēnērā,	tēnērum.
GEN.	tēnēri,	tēnērae,	tēnēri,
DAT.	tēnērō,	tēnērae,	tēnērō.
ACC.	tēnērum,	tēnēram,	tēnērum.
VOC.	tēnēr,	tēnērā,	tēnērum.
ABL.	tēnērō,	tēnērā,	tēnērō.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	tēnēri	tēnērae,	tēnērā.
GEN.	tēnērōrum,	tēnērārum,	tēnērōrum.
DAT.	tēnēris,	tēnēris,	tēnēris.
ACC.	tēnērōs,	tēnērās,	tēnērā.
VOC.	tēnēri,	tēnērae,	tēnērā.
ABL.	tēnēris,	tēnēris,	tēnēris.

NOTE.—*Aeger* is inflected in the masculine like *magister*; and, like *magister*, drops *-e* in the cases other than the nominative and vocative. *Tener* is inflected like *puer*, and retains the *-e* throughout. Both are inflected in the feminine like *mensa*, and in the neuter like *bellum*.

2. Most adjectives in *-er* drop *-e* in inflection, and are declined like *aeger*. The following retain the *-e* and are inflected like *tener*: *miser*, *wretched*; *asper*, *rough*; *lacer*, *torn*; *liber*, *free*; *prosper*, *fortunate*; and the compounds of *-fer* and *-ger*: as, *aquillifer* *eagle-bearing*; *armiger*, *armour-bearing*.

VOCABULARY.

niger, -gra, -grum, <i>black</i> .	sūus, -ā, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> .
miser, -ērā, -erum, <i>wretched</i> .	pulcher, -chrā, -chrum, <i>beautiful</i> .
noster, -trā, -trum, <i>our</i> .	confirmo, confirmāre, confirm-
vester, -trā, -trum, <i>your (referring</i>	āvi, <i>establish</i> .
<i>to more than one)</i> .	nunquam, <i>adv., never</i> .
mēus, -ā, -um, (voc. sing. masc., <i>mi</i>),	tectum, -i, <i>a dwelling</i> .
<i>my</i> .	pēricūlum, -i, <i>danger</i> .
tūus, -ā, -um, <i>thy, your (referring</i>	
<i>to one)</i> .	

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *puer tūus, puella nostra, vir miser, dominus vester*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Puer magno cum periculo in fluvio alto natāvit.* 2. *Magister filiarum suarum diligentiam saepe laudāverat.* 3. *Puella libros virorum clarorum hodie laudāverit.* 4. *Agricola puero aegro rosam nunquam donaverat.* 5. *Romani amicitiam cum servis hodie*

confirmaverint. 6. Filius meus libros ad scholam portavit. 7. Legati tecta pulchra oppidi semper laudaverunt. 8. Serve, lignum ad legatorum tectum porta. 9. Amicus tuus cum filio suo stellas claras laudaverat. 10. Servorum diligentia dominorum animos saepe delectavit. 11. Domini, diligentiam servorum saepe laudate. 12. Servus mensas ad reginae aulam portaverat. 13. Aquila trans fluviorum ripas et per saxa alta volaverit. 14. Dominus in horto tuo rosas saepe laudat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The boys give a reward to the farmer's son. 2. The ambassadors of the Romans will have praised the farmers' dwellings. 3. O wretched man, do not carry wood to the queen's hall. 4. Your friends will not have praised the queen's daughters. 5. I shall praise the friendship of the good boys. 6. The beautiful queen will walk in the farmer's garden. 7. Farmers often bring wood from the forest to their dwellings. 8. Carry corn, O farmers, to the dwelling of the sick man. 9. Good pupils always delight the minds of the masters. 10. The good boys of the farmer were carrying wood to the sick man. 11. O Roman, adorn the temples of the gods with gold. 12. Gifts often delight the minds of good men. 13. The gold of the temples will delight the eyes of the ambassadors. 14. O farmer, always praise the diligence of your sons.

LESSON XV.

INFLECTION OF SUM, I AM.

1. The verb *sum*, *I am*, is inflected in the indicative and imperative as follows :—

INDICATIVE

PRESENT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	<i>sum, I am.</i>	<i>sūmus, we are.</i>
2. " "	<i>ēs, thou art.</i>	<i>estis, you are.</i>
3. " "	<i>est, he, (she or it) is.</i>	<i>sunt, they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., <i>eram</i> , <i>I was.</i> | <i>erāmus</i> , <i>we were.</i> |
| 2. " <i>erās</i> , <i>thou wast.</i> | <i>erātis</i> , <i>you were.</i> |
| 3. " <i>erāt</i> , <i>he, (she or it) was.</i> | <i>erant</i> , <i>they were.</i> |

FUTURE.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., <i>ero</i> , <i>I shall be.</i> | <i>erimus</i> , <i>we shall be.</i> |
| 2. " <i>eris</i> , <i>thou wilt be.</i> | <i>eritis</i> , <i>you will be.</i> |
| 3. " <i>erit</i> , <i>he (she or it) will be.</i> | <i>erunt</i> , <i>they will be.</i> |

PERFECT.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Pers., <i>fui</i> , <i>I have been or I was.</i> | <i>fūimus</i> , <i>we have been or we were.</i> |
| 2. " <i>fūisti</i> , <i>thou hast been or thou wast.</i> | <i>fūistis</i> , <i>you have been or you were.</i> |
| 3. " <i>fūit</i> , <i>he, (she or it) has been or was.</i> | <i>fūerunt</i> , or <i>fūere</i> , <i>they have been or they were.</i> |

PLUPERFECT.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Pers., <i>fueram</i> , <i>I had been.</i> | <i>fūerāmus</i> , <i>we had been.</i> |
| 2. " <i>fuerās</i> , <i>thou hadst been.</i> | <i>fūerātis</i> , <i>you had been.</i> |
| 3. " <i>fuerāt</i> , <i>he (she or it) had been.</i> | <i>fūerant</i> , <i>they had been.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Pers., <i>fūero</i> , <i>I shall have been.</i> | <i>fūerimus</i> , <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. " <i>fūeris</i> , <i>thou wilt have been.</i> | <i>fūeritis</i> , <i>you will have been.</i> |
| 3. " <i>fūerit</i> , <i>he (she or it) will have been.</i> | <i>fūerint</i> , <i>they will have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE-PRESENT.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 2. Pers., <i>es</i> , <i>be thou.</i> | 2. Pers., <i>esto</i> , <i>be ye or you.</i> |
|---------------------------------------|--|

2. An adjective used predicatively with the verb *sum*, agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers: as, *Puer est bonus*, *the boy is good*; *puella est bona*, *the girl is good*.

VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>bellicōsus</i> , -a -um, <i>warlike.</i> | <i>Āriovistus</i> , -i, <i>Ariovistus.</i> |
| <i>cāsa</i> , -ae, <i>a cottage.</i> | <i>Rhenus</i> , -i, <i>Rhine.</i> |
| <i>parv-us</i> , -a, -um, <i>small.</i> | <i>Rhōdānus</i> , -i, <i>Rhone.</i> |
| <i>cōpia</i> , ae, <i>abundance, plenty</i> (in sing); <i>forces</i> (in plural). | <i>proellum</i> , -i, <i>a battle.</i> |
| | <i>Germānus</i> , -i, <i>a German.</i> |
| | <i>hēri</i> , adv., <i>yesterday.</i> |

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *casa parva, fluvius rapidus, populus bellicosus.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Agricultorum filii in silva erunt.* 2. *Reginae filiae erant pulchrae.* 3. *Agricultorum casae fuerunt parvae.* 4. *Pueri parvi in Rheno natabant.* 5. *Romani bellicosi saepe fuerunt.* 6. *Ariovistus erat vir bellicosus.* 7. *Magnae erunt in provincia Romanorum copiae.* 8. *Agricultor filiae in silvis fuerunt.* 9. *Reginae filiae in Galliâ fuerint.* 10. *In oppido heri fuimus.* 11. *Fumenti copia in arvo erit magna.* 12. *Multi pueri reginae in agris hodie fuerunt.* 13. *Romani in proeliis multis prosperi erant.* 14. *Germani multi in silva fuerant.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. *We were in the fields yesterday.* 2. *You (sing.) were praising the walls of our town.* 3. *The farmer's son was in your garden.* 4. *The girls will be in the thick forest.* 5. *The good man had been in great danger.* 6. *I have often been in the beautiful garden.* 7. *The farmer's daughter was sick.* 8. *The good scholar will always delight the mind of the master.* 9. *Abundance of corn has always delighted the mind of the farmer.* 10. *The daughters of the queen are beautiful.* 11. *The man will praise the temple of the Romans.* 12. *You will be always good boys.* 13. *We shall be in the little temple to day.* 14. *The man and his daughter were in the forest yesterday.*

LESSON XVI.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES in -US and -ER.

1. The following adjectives in -us and -er have, in all genders, the genitive singular in -ius and the dative in -i: *Alius, alia, aliud, other*; *alter, altera, alterum, other of two*; *totus, tota, totum, whole*; *nullus, nulla, nullum, none*; *ullus, ulla, ullum, any*; *neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither*; *solus, sola, solum, alone*; *unus, una,*

unum, one; ūter, ūtra, ūtrum, which of two? They are thus declined :—

Unus, one.			Ūter, which of two?		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM. <i>unūs,</i>	<i>unā,</i>	<i>unum.</i>	<i>ūter,</i>	<i>ūtrā,</i>	<i>ūtrum.</i>
GEN. <i>unius,</i>	<i>unius,</i>	<i>unius.</i>	<i>ūtrius,</i>	<i>ūtrius,</i>	<i>ūtrius.</i>
DAT. <i>unī,</i>	<i>unī,</i>	<i>unī.</i>	<i>ūtri,</i>	<i>ūtri,</i>	<i>ūtri.</i>
ACC. <i>unum,</i>	<i>unam,</i>	<i>unum.</i>	<i>ūtrum,</i>	<i>ūtram,</i>	<i>ūtrum.</i>
ABL. <i>unō,</i>	<i>unā,</i>	<i>unō.</i>	<i>ūtrō,</i>	<i>ūtrā,</i>	<i>ūtrō.</i>
Alīus, other.			Altēr, other of two.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM. <i>ālīus,</i>	<i>ālīā,</i>	<i>ālīud.</i>	<i>altēr,</i>	<i>altērā,</i>	<i>altērum.</i>
GEN. <i>ālīus,</i>	<i>ālīus,</i>	<i>ālīus.</i>	<i>altērius,</i>	<i>altērius,</i>	<i>altērius.</i>
DAT. <i>ālī,</i>	<i>ālī,</i>	<i>ālī.</i>	<i>altēri,</i>	<i>altēri,</i>	<i>altēri.</i>
ACC. <i>ālīum,</i>	<i>ālīam,</i>	<i>ālīud.</i>	<i>altērum,</i>	<i>altēram,</i>	<i>altērum.</i>
ABL. <i>ālīō,</i>	<i>ālīā,</i>	<i>ālīō.</i>	<i>altērō,</i>	<i>altērā,</i>	<i>altērō.</i>

2. The plural in every case is regular (*i.e.*, like the plural of *bōnus*).

NOTE.—*Alter, other of two*, makes *-ius*, and not *-us*, in the genitive.

VOCABULARY.

<i>bellīcōsus, -a, -um, warlike.</i>	<i>impērium, I, power, sway.</i>
<i>mālus, -a, -um, bad.</i>	<i>doctrīna, learning.</i>
<i>crēber, crēbra, crēbrum frequent.</i>	<i>formō, āre, āvi, mould, fashion.</i>
<i>miser, misēra, misērum, wretched.</i>	<i>convōco, āre, āvi, summon, assemble.</i>

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *alīus vir, una terra, alterum bellum, ullum regnum, alter puer.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Alter vir hodie in castris est.*
2. *Pueri unam stellam in caelo spectant.*
3. *Magister animos discipulorum saepe format.*
4. *Unus puer in scholā hodie non erat.*
5. *Per multas silvas hodie ambulavērunt.*
6. *Neuter puer librum tuum laudavērat.*
7. *Utrum puerum vocābo?*
8. *Ad Britannos frumentum saepe portābant.*
9. *Pueri doctrinam discipulorum saepe laudabunt.*
10. *Pueri, dili-*

gentiam amicorum vestrorum laudāte. 11. Puer solus in silva stellas claras spectavit. 12. Ne, pueri, miseros viros ad bellum excitate. 13. Viri imperium Romanum laudaverunt. 14. Puer alteram pinnam puellae donavit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The other son of the farmer will bring wood to the queen's dwelling. 2. An other boy will swim across the river. 3. Do not, O boy, praise bad men. 4. The warlike queens will assemble their forces. 5. The boys often praise the queen's horses. 6. The scholars of the school prepared a feast for their friends. 7. No boy was in the school to-day. 8. The man is alone in the forest. 9. An other queen will give prizes to the sailors. 10. The Romans pitched an other camp across the river. 11. The Romans built a temple between our camp and the banks of the river. 12. No horses are in the fields to-day. 13. Which of the two will bring the horse to the queen? 14. One man with his sons was walking in the fields.

LESSON XVII.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

NE, NONNE, NUM.

1. Interrogative sentences in Latin (when not headed by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) are usually distinguished by one of the interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nonne*, *num*. The order of words does not, as in English, mark an interrogative sentence.

2. The particle *-ne* (which is written after the first word in the sentence), asks for information : as, *Amatne?* *does he love?* The answer will be either, *amat*, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*), or *non amat*, *he does not love* (i.e., *No*). The particle *-ne* is generally appended to the emphatic word (which is then put first) : as, *Filiusne amat?* *does the son love?* (i. e. = *Is it the son that loves?*)

3. *Nonne* expects the answer *Yes* : as, *Nonne puer amat?* *does not the boy love?* The answer expected is, *amat*, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*). *Nonne* is generally the first word in the sentence.

4. Num expects the answer *No*: as, Num puer amat? *does the boy love?* The answer expected is, non amat, *he does not love*, (i.e., *No*). Num is generally the first word in the sentence.

Note.—*Yes* and *No*, in answer to questions, have no single equivalent in common use. They are usually expressed by repeating the verb, as seen above.

VOCABULARY.

mēdicina, ae, *medicine*.

ēquus, -i, *a horse*.

arvum, -i, *a ploughed field*.

gēner, genēri, *a son-in-law*.

fōrum, -i, *a market-place*.

aedificium, -i, *a building*.

ira, ae, *anger*.

cur, adv. (interrog.) *why?*

mox, adv., *soon*.

uter (interrog. adj.), *which of two?*

EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list and state the gender of each.

Translate into English:—

1. Nonne viri filios ad hortos vocant? 2. Puellane est aegra?
3. Num pueri dominorum iram excitābunt? 4. Agricolaene arva domini heri arābant? 5. Nonne reginae gener in aula mox erit?
6. Vir bonus medicinam puero aegro donābit. 7. Cur in schola heri non fuisti? 8. Nonne agricolae in silva heri erant? 9. Num magistri discipulorum diligentiam laudavērunt? 10. Nonne equi lignum ad oppidi forum portābant? 11. Cur vir puerorum iram hodie excitavit? 12. Discipline in schola beati erunt? 13. Puellaene in reginae aula ambulābunt? 14. Num agricolae filius in horto magno fuerat?

Translate into Latin:—

1. Was not the boy in the school to-day? 2. Will the queen walk in the large garden? 3. Will the farmer praise the diligence of his sons? 4. Will the moon and the stars be bright? 5. Is not the daughter of the sailor good? 6. Does not the farmer plough his fields? 7. Will the farmer be in the market-place to-day? 8. Was not the man in great danger? 9. Did not the eagle fly across the stream? 10. Was the cottage of the farmer small? 11. O farmer, was not your son in the battle? 12. Will my daughter soon carry

the beautiful roses into the building? 13. Did the boy excite the anger of the slave? 14. Will not the master praise the diligence of the pupils? Yes.

LESSON XVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1. In the third declension, the genitive singular ends in *-is*: as, *princeps, a chief*; gen., *princip-is*.

2. The third declension is harder than the 1st or 2nd, because it is harder to get the part of the noun to which the case-endings are to be added. Examples of the common types of declension are given under the usual classification; but, to beginners, no rule is of much value but the following: *Learn by heart the nom. and gen. of every noun of the 3rd decl. you meet.* If the nom. and gen. are known, the noun is easily declined.

3. Nouns of the 3rd decl. are divided into two wide classes, according as the stem (*i. e.* the part of the word to which the endings are added) ends in a consonant or in *-i*. Rules will be given below for recognizing *-i* stems; and when these are known, all others will, of course, be *consonant* stems.

CONSONANT STEMS.

4. Consonant stems* are divided into four classes:—

- (1) Labial stems (*i. e.*, stems ending in *p, b, m*).
- (2) Dental stems (*i. e.*, “ “ “ *t, d, s, n*).
- (3) Lingual stems (*i. e.*, “ “ “ *r, l*).
- (4) Guttural stems (*i. e.*, “ “ “ *c, g*).

*The nominative of nouns of this class generally ends in *-s*, which, however, is dropped after *l, n, r, s*, or combines with the gutturals *c, g*, to form *x* (*cs* or *gs = x*): as, *regs = rex, king*; *arcs = arx, citadel*. *T* or *d* disappears before *s*: as, *milit + s = militis = milis*, or (with a change of vowel) *miles, soldier*. The nominative of neuter nouns is the same as the stem: as, *fulgur, gen., fulgur-is, lightning*.

5. The first class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a labial (p, b, m).

Princeps (masc.), *chief, prince.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. princeps , <i>a chief.</i>	princĭp-ēs , <i>chiefs.</i>
GEN. princĭp-is , <i>of a chief.</i>	princĭp-um , <i>of chiefs.</i>
DAT. princĭp-i , <i>to, or for, a chief.</i>	princĭp-ibus , <i>to, or for, chiefs.</i>
ACC. princĭp-em , <i>a chief.</i>	princĭp-ēs , <i>chiefs.</i>
VOC. princeps , <i>O chief.</i>	princĭp-ēs , <i>O chiefs.</i>
ABL. princĭp-ē , <i>with, by, or from a chief.</i>	princĭp-ibus , <i>with, by, or from, chiefs.</i>

NOTE.—The nominative and vocative (singular and plural) are always alike in the 3rd declension.

Trabs (fem.), *a beam.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. trabs , <i>a beam.</i>	trāb-ēs , <i>beams.</i>
GEN. trāb-is , <i>of a beam.</i>	trāb-um , <i>of beams.</i>
DAT. trāb-i , <i>to, or for, a beam.</i>	trāb-ibus , <i>to, or for beams.</i>
ACC. trāb-em , <i>a beam.</i>	trāb-ēs , <i>beams.</i>
VOC. trabs , <i>O beam.</i>	trāb-ēs , <i>O beams.</i>
ABL. trāb-ē , <i>with, by, from, or in a beam.</i>	trāb-ibus , <i>with, by, from, or in beams.</i>

Hiems (fem.), *winter.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. hiems , <i>winter.</i>	hiēm-ēs , <i>winters.</i>
GEN. hiēm-is , <i>of winter.</i>	hiēm-um , <i>of winters.</i>
DAT. hiēm-i , <i>to, or for winter.</i>	hiēm-ibus , <i>to, or for winters.</i>
ACC. hiēm-em , <i>winter.</i>	hiēm-ēs , <i>winters.</i>
VOC. hiems , <i>O winter.</i>	hiēm-ēs , <i>O winters.</i>
ABL. hiēm-ē , <i>with, by, from or in winter.</i>	hiēm-ibus , <i>with, by, from, or in winters.</i>

NOTE.—Nouns of the 3rd declension are declined by dropping the **-is** of the genitive singular and adding to the part of the noun remaining the case-endings given above.

VOCABULARY.

Gallus, i, a Gaul.

verbum, i, a word

sagittā, ae, an arrow.

lōco, lōcāre, lōcāvi, place, pitch.

pāro, āre, āvi, prepare.

vulnēro, vulnērāre, vulnērāvi, wound.

contrā, prep. (acc.), against, over against.

circum, prep. (acc.), in the neighborhood of, around.

EXERCISE.

Decline together : princeps magnus, hiems longa, trabs alta, sagitta una.

Translate into English :—

1. Puer, ne principem sagittā¹ vulnerā. 2. Pueri cum principe contra Romam hiemābunt. 3. Agricola trabs ex silvis ad principis aedificium portavērunt. 4. Galli bellum contra principes excitābunt. 5. Ne pecuniam principibus donā. 6. Viri, ne principum iram verbis¹ excitate. 7. Romani castra contra oppidum locavērunt. 8. Gallorum principes copias contra Romanos parābunt. 9. Trabs multas ex silvis portate. 10. Pueri ursos sagittis¹ vulneravērunt. 11. Nonne agricolarum filii in silva ambulabunt? 12. Puerne principem sagittā vulnerāvit? 13. Num Romani castra circum oppidum locavērunt? 14. Agricola, trabem ad ripam fluvii portate.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Did the boy wound the chief with an arrow? 2. Will not the boys carry the beam to the farmer's dwelling? 3. The chiefs pitched their camp around the walls of the town. 4. Do not, O man, arouse the anger of the chief with words. 5. In Gaul the winters are clear. 6. We shall soon be in the town. 7. The queen and her handmaiden will praise the winters of Gaul. 8. O boy, call the farmer to the prince's hall. 9. The servants of the prince will have wintered around the walls of the town. 10. The princes of the Gauls will not carry beams for the Romans. 11. Will not the Romans carry corn to their chiefs? 12. The Gauls had seized a town of the Romans. 13. Did the prince's slave wound the eagle with an arrow? 14. The walls of Rome are beautiful.

¹ See p 8, 3.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

CONSONANT STEMS.

The second class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a dental (t, d, s, n).

Miles (masc.), *a soldier*.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	<i>mīles</i> , <i>a soldier</i> .
GEN.	<i>mīlītis</i> , <i>of a soldier</i> .
DAT.	<i>mīlīti</i> , <i>to or for a soldier</i> .
ACC.	<i>mīlitem</i> , <i>a soldier</i> .
VOC.	<i>mīles</i> , <i>O soldier</i> .
ABL.	<i>mīlītē</i> , <i>with, by or from</i> <i>a soldier</i> .

PLURAL.

<i>mīlītēs</i> , <i>soldiers</i> .
<i>mīlītum</i> , <i>of soldiers</i> .
<i>mīlītibus</i> , <i>to or for soldiers</i> .
<i>mīlītēs</i> , <i>soldiers</i> .
<i>mīlītēs</i> , <i>O soldiers</i> .
<i>mīlītibus</i> , <i>with, by or from</i> , <i>soldiers</i> .

Pēs (masc.), *a foot*.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	<i>pēs</i> , <i>a foot</i> .
GEN.	<i>pēdis</i> , <i>of a foot</i> .
DAT.	<i>pēdi</i> , <i>to or for a foot</i> .
ACC.	<i>pēdem</i> , <i>a foot</i> .
VOC.	<i>pēs</i> , <i>O foot</i> .
ABL.	<i>pēdē</i> , <i>with, by or from a foot</i> .

PLURAL.

<i>pēdēs</i> , <i>feet</i> .
<i>pēdum</i> , <i>of feet</i> .
<i>pēdībus</i> , <i>to or for feet</i> .
<i>pēdēs</i> , <i>feet</i> .
<i>pēdēs</i> , <i>O feet</i> .
<i>pēdībus</i> , <i>with, by or from feet</i> .

Note. The letters M., F., and N., will be used hereafter for masc., fem., and neuter, respectively.

Flos (M.), *a flower*.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	<i>flōs</i> , <i>a flower</i> .
GEN.	<i>flōris</i> , <i>of a flower</i> .
DAT.	<i>flōri</i> , <i>to, or for a flower</i> .
ACC.	<i>flōrem</i> , <i>a flower</i> .
VOC.	<i>flōs</i> , <i>O flower</i> .
ABL.	<i>flōrē</i> , <i>with, by, from, or in a</i> <i>flower</i> .

PLURAL.

<i>flōrēs</i> , <i>flowers</i> .
<i>flōrum</i> , <i>of flowers</i> .
<i>flōribus</i> , <i>to or for flowers</i> .
<i>flōrēs</i> , <i>flowers</i> .
<i>flōrēs</i> , <i>O flowers</i> .
<i>flōribus</i> , <i>with, by, from, or in</i> <i>flowers</i> .

Opus (N.), a work.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>ōpūs, a work.</i>	<i>ōpērā, works.</i>
GEN. <i>ōpēris, of a work.</i>	<i>ōpērum, of works.</i>
DAT. <i>ōpēri, to, or for a work.</i>	<i>ōpēribus, to, or for works.</i>
ACC. <i>ōpūs, a work.</i>	<i>ōpērā, works.</i>
VOC. <i>ōpūs, O work.</i>	<i>ōpērā, O works.</i>
ABL. <i>ōpērē, with, by, from, or in a work.</i>	<i>ōpēribus, with, by, from, or in works.</i>

Corpus (N.), a body.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>corpus, a body.</i>	<i>corpōrā, bodies.</i>
GEN. <i>corpōris, of a body.</i>	<i>corpōrum, of bodies.</i>
DAT. <i>corpōri, to, or for a body.</i>	<i>corpōribus, to, or for bodies.</i>
ACC. <i>corpus, a body.</i>	<i>corpōrā, bodies.</i>
VOC. <i>corpus, O body.</i>	<i>corpōrā, O bodies.</i>
ABL. <i>corpōrē, with, by, from, or in a body.</i>	<i>corpōribus, with, by, from, or in bodies.</i>

*Regio (F.), a district.**Virgo (F.), a maiden.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>rēgio,</i>	<i>rēgiōnēs.</i>	<i>virgo,</i>	<i>virginēs.</i>
GEN. <i>rēgiōnis,</i>	<i>rēgiōnum.</i>	<i>virginis,</i>	<i>virginum.</i>
DAT. <i>rēgiōni,</i>	<i>rēgiōnibus.</i>	<i>virgini,</i>	<i>virginibus.</i>
ACC. <i>rēgiōnem,</i>	<i>rēgiōnēs.</i>	<i>virginem,</i>	<i>virginēs.</i>
VOC. <i>rēgio,</i>	<i>rēgiōnēs.</i>	<i>virgo,</i>	<i>virginēs.</i>
ABL. <i>rēgiōnē,</i>	<i>rēgiōnibus.</i>	<i>virginē,</i>	<i>virginibus.</i>

¹The stems of the above nouns respectively are *pēd-*, *millit-*, *flōr-*, *ōpēr-*, *corpōr-*, *rēgiōn-*, *virgin-*.

The dentals -t and -d are dropped in the nominative before -s. Thus: *pēs* = peds; *miles* = milits (with a change of vowel).

Between two vowels -s becomes -r. Thus: *hōnos* (later form honor) has the genitive *hōnōris* for *hōnōsis*; *corpōris* is for *corpōsis*.

The -s is sometimes dropped in the nominative and vocative, as in *rēgio*, *virgo*. Nominatives in -o have also lost the final -n of the stem. Thus the stem of *rēgio* is *rēgiōn-*.

VOCABULARY.

caput, capitis (N.), <i>head.</i>	fulgur, fulguris (N.), <i>lightning.</i>
flumen, fluminis (N.), <i>a river.</i>	causa, ae, a <i>cause, reason.</i>
virtus, virtutis (F.), <i>valor.</i>	telum, i, <i>dart.</i>
gēnūs, gēneris (N.), <i>a kind.</i>	rōgo, rōgāre, rōgāvi, ask.
nōmen, nōminis (N.), <i>a name.</i>	

EXERCISE.

Decline together : **caput altum, flos tener, opus magnum, virtus magna, causa clara, virgo pulchra.**

Translate into English :—

1. Milites virorum nomina saepe rogavērunt. 2. Agricola, fulgūra in caelo spectāte. 3. Milites per alta flumina hodie ambulavērunt. 4. Nonne flos pulcher in horto meo est? 5. Romanine multos telis suis vulnerābant? 6. Hodie Romani militum suorum virtutem laudabant. 7. Princeps, militum tuorum virtutem spectā. 8. Nonne caput floris altum erat? 9. Reginae causa militum animis cara fuit. 10. Milites opera magna trans flumen altum aedificavērunt. 11. Regio circum flumen erat pulchra. 12. Regina militum nomina rogavērit. 13. Virgines pulchrae in aula reginae erunt. 14. Nonne fulgūra in caelo clara fuerunt?

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldier will walk across deep rivers to-day. 2. Were not the cottages of the soldiers small? 3. Were the bodies of the Germans large? 4. Did not the queen praise the valor of the soldiers in the battle? 5. The soldiers will build a great work across the river. 6. Did you not ask the name of the flower? 7. Will not the boy praise the beautiful maiden? 8. Was the cause of the soldiers just? 9. The soldiers wounded many Romans with darts. 10. The boy had wounded his foot with a dart. 11. Were the flowers in the master's garden beautiful? 12. Was not the boy in school to-day? 13. O sailor, is not the lightning bright? 14. Did not the farmer praise the beautiful flowers in the thick wood?

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

CONSONANT STEMS.

1. The third class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a lingual (-r or -l).

Victor (M.), a conqueror.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	victor , a conqueror.
GEN.	victōris , of a conqueror.
DAT.	victōri , to, or for a conqueror.
ACC.	victōrem , a conqueror.
VOC.	victor , O conqueror.
ABL.	victōre , with, by, or from a conqueror.

PLURAL.

victōrēs , conquerors.
victōrum , of conquerors.
victōribus , to, or for conquerors.
victōrēs , conquerors.
victōrēs , O conquerors.
victōribus , with, by, or from conquerors.

Sol (M.), sun.

Consul (M.), consul.

Passer (M.), sparrow.

Pater (M.), father.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	sol
GEN.	sōlis
DAT.	sōli
ACC.	sōlem
VOC.	sol
ABL.	sōlē

SINGULAR

consul
consūlis
consūli
consūlem
consul
consūlē

SINGULAR.

passer
passēris
passēri
passērem
passer
passērē

SINGULAR

pāter
pātris
pātri
pātre
pāter
pātrē

PLURAL.

NOM.	sōlēs
GEN.	sōlum
DAT.	sōlibus
ACC.	sōlēs
VOC.	sōlēs
ABL.	sōlibus

PLURAL.

consūlēs
consūlum
consūlibus
consūlēs
consūlēs
consūlibus

PLURAL.

passērēs
passērum
passēribus
passērēs
passērēs
passēribus

PLURAL.

pātrēs
pātrum
pātribus
pātrēs
pātrēs
pātribus

2. An appositive noun agrees in case with the noun to which it refers : as, *Cicerōnem oratōrem necant*, they are killing the orator Cicero.

VOCABULARY.

impērātor, impērātōris (M.), a	Cicēro, ōnis (M.), Cicero.
<i>commander.</i>	tīmor, tīmōris (M.), fear.
lūmen, lūminis (N.), a light.	Britannus, -i, a Briton.
agger, aggeris (M.), a mound.	ōcēānus, -i, ocean.
frāter, frātris (M.), a brother.	sūpēro, sūpērāre, sūpērāvī, sur-
Caesar. Caesāris (M.), Caesar.	<i>pass, overcome, conquer.</i>
sōror, sōrōris (F.), a sister.	contra, prep. (acc.), against.
ōrātiō, oratiōnis (F.), an oration.	cum, prep. (abl.), with, along with.
ōrātor, ōrātōris (M.), an orator.	

EXERCISE.

Decline together : sol clārus, sōror cāra, consul noster, victor nullus, impērātor magnus.

Translate into English :—

1. Estne sol lumen clarum? 2. Nonne Cicero consul populi Romani fuit? 3. Pueri Ciceronis consulis orationes claras saepe laudavērunt. 4. Milites castrorum Romanorum aggeres hodie occupavērunt. 5. Caesar, Gallorum victor, in consulis castris mox erit. 6. Timorne militum magnus erat? 7. Num consulis sorores in horto magno fuērunt? 8. Caesar, Romanorum imperator, Britannos in proelio superāvit. 9. Nonne milites Romani aggerem altum circum oppidi muros aedificavērunt? 10. Pater, fili tui periculum magnum spectā. 11. Nonne consul Romanus copias magnas contra Germanos parāvit? 12. In oceāno erant multae insulae. 13. Caesar Ariovistum, Germanorum imperatorem, in proelio superābit. 14. Nonne fulgur hodie erat clarum?

Translate into Latin :—

1. O boy, praise the diligence of Cicero, the Roman orator. 2. Caesar, the commander of the Romans, will soon seize the town of the Gauls. 3. The beautiful sister of the Roman commander praised the walls of the town. 4. The brothers of the Roman consul were in the battle. 5. The soldiers will conquer the forces of the Germans in battle to-day. 6. Were the sisters of the consul walking among the flowers? 7. Are there not many sparrows in the town? 8. The sun was bright to-day. 9. The sons of the farmer built a high mound around their father's garden. 10. The Britons conquered the commander of the Romans in many battles. 11. Cicero, the brother of the orator, was commander along with

Caesar. 12. Many men praise the orations of Cicero, the orator.
13. Caesar was a distinguished commander of the Romans. 14. The soldiers will soon be in the camp.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

CONSONANT STEMS.

The fourth class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a guttural (-c or -g).

Iudex, a judge.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>iudex, a judge.</i>	<i>iudicēs, judges.</i>
GEN. <i>iudicis, of a judge.</i>	<i>iudicum, of judges.</i>
DAT. <i>iudici, to, or for a judge.</i>	<i>iudicibus, to, or for judges.</i>
ACC. <i>iudicem, a judge.</i>	<i>iudicēs, judges.</i>
VOC. <i>iudex, O judge.</i>	<i>iudicēs, O judges.</i>
ABL. <i>iudicē, with, from, or by a judge.</i>	<i>iudicibus, with, from, or by judges.</i>

Rēx (M.), a king. Rādix (F.), a root. Dux (M. or F.), a leader.
Lex (F.), a law.

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	<i>rex</i>	<i>rādix</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>lex</i>
GEN.	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>rādīcis</i>	<i>dūcis</i>	<i>lēgis</i>
DAT.	<i>rēgi</i>	<i>rādīci</i>	<i>dūci</i>	<i>lēgi</i>
ACC.	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>rādīcem</i>	<i>dūcem</i>	<i>lēgem</i>
VOC.	<i>rex</i>	<i>rādix</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>lēx</i>
ABL.	<i>rēgē</i>	<i>rādīcē</i>	<i>dūcē</i>	<i>lēgē</i>
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>rādīcēs</i>	<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
GEN.	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>rādīcum</i>	<i>dūcum</i>	<i>lēgum</i>
DAT.	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>rādīcibus</i>	<i>dūcibus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>
ACC.	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>rādīcēs</i>	<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
VOC.	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>rādīcēs</i>	<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
ABL.	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>rādīcibus</i>	<i>dūcibus</i>	<i>lēgibus</i> ¹

¹ The stems of these nouns are respectively : *iudīc-*, *rēg-*, *radīc-*, *dūc-*, and *lēg-*.

VOCABULARY.

vox, vōcis (F.), a voice.

carmen, carmīnis (N.), a song.

lēo, lēōnis (M.), a lion.

arbor, arbōris (F.), a tree.

cōmes, cōmītis (M.), a companion.

lēgio, lēōnis (F.), a legion.

accūso, accūsāre, accūsāvi,
accuse.prōmulgo, prōmulgāre, prōmul-
gāvi, to enact.

lēco, āre, āvi, to place.

EXERCISE.

Decline together : cōmes aeger, lex nulla, dux bōnus, rādix
tēnēra, arbor altēra.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne puellae carmina cantābant ? 2. Num arbōres in hortō
parvo magnae erant ? 3. Regisne comites fuērunt multi ? 4.
Arboris radīces in terra altae erant. 5. Num regis filii agricolam
accūsavērunt ? 6. Rex Romanus leges populo promulgāvit. 7.
Nonne leo magnus in silvā densā erat ? 8. Caesar Ariovistum,
ducem Germanorum, in proelio superavit. 9. Nonne arbor magna
inter Romanorum copias et flumen erat ? 10. Poetaene carmina
pueris hodie cantabant ? 11. Magistri discipuli libros Ciceronis
oratōris laudabant. 12. Romani iudīcis lēges saepe laudavērunt.
13. Nonne puer agricolae comitem accusavit ? 14. Caesārem,
Romanorum imperatorem, accusābas. 15. Ducis filii frumentum
in reginae tectum portant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The sons of the king will place a high tree in the garden.
2. Will not the companions of the farmer praise the diligence of
their sons ? 3. The roots of the tree were long. 4. Did the kings
of the Romans enact laws for the people ? 5. Caesar, the dis-
tinguished commander of the Romans, often defeated the Britons
in battle. 6. Were there large trees between the town and the
camp of the Romans ? 7. Will the daughters of the farmer sing
songs to the consul's sons ? 8. The river was deep around the
walls of the town. 9. The boys often praised the voice of Caesar,
the leader of the Romans. 10. Did not the father often blame the
sons of the consul ? 11. The poets will sing songs in the queen's
hall to-day. 12. The Romans always praised the orations of
Cicero, the Roman consul. 13. The laws of your judge were just.
14. The songs of the poet always delighted the mind of the farmer.

ne orator.
14. The

ending in a

r judges.

om, or by

, a leader.

GULAR.

lex

lēgis

lēgī

lēgem

lēx

lēgō

PLURAL.

lēgēs

lēgum

lēgībus

lēgēs

lēgēs

lēgībus

ūc-, and lēg-

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

I-STEMS.

The second great class of nouns of the third declension, consists of nouns whose stem ends in -i: as, *turrīs*, a tower; stem, *turri*. These are called i-stems and include:—

- (1) Nouns in -is or -es not increasing in the genitive (*i.e.*, with the same number of syllables in genitive and nominative).
- (2) Neuter nouns ending in -e, -al, or -ar.
- (3) Monosyllables with stems ending in two consonants: as, *urbs*, a city.
- (4) Most nouns ending in -ns, or -rs: as, *amans*, a lover.

They are thus declined:—

Turrīs (F.), a tower.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>turrīs</i> , a tower.	<i>turrēs</i> , towers.
GEN. <i>turrīs</i> , of a tower.	<i>turrīum</i> , of towers.
DAT. <i>turri</i> , to or for a tower.	<i>turrībus</i> , to or for towers.
ACC. <i>turrem</i> (or <i>turrim</i>), a tower	<i>turrēs</i> (or <i>turrīs</i>), towers.
VOC. <i>turrīs</i> , O tower.	<i>turrēs</i> , O towers.
ABL. <i>turrē</i> (or <i>turrī</i>), with, by, from, or in a tower.	<i>turrībus</i> , with, by, from, or in towers.

NOTE.—Nouns of this class (i-stems) are declined like consonant stems (*i.e.*, by dropping the -is of the genitive, and adding the case-endings); but they show the -i of the stem in the genitive and accusative plural, and often in the accusative and ablative singular.

Ignis (M.), <i>fire.</i>	Hostis (M. or F.), <i>enemy.</i>	Nubēs (F.), <i>a cloud.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM. ignīs	hostīs	nūbēs
GEN. ignīs	hostīs	nūbīs
DAT. igni	hosti	nūbi
ACC. ignem	hostem	nūbem
VOC. ignīs	hostīs	nūbēs
ABL. ignē (-i)	hostē	nūbē
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM. ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN. ignium	hostium	nūbium
DAT. ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACC. ignēs (-is)	hostēs (is)	nūbēs (is)
VOC. ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
ABL. ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus

VOCABULARY.

cānis, cānis (M. or F.), <i>a dog.</i>	latro, latrāre, latrāvi , <i>bark.</i>
hostis, hostis (M. or F.), <i>an enemy.</i>	servo, servāre, servāvi , <i>preserve,</i> <i>keep.</i>
collis, collis (M.), <i>a hill.</i>	ante , prep. (acc.), <i>before.</i>
nāvis, nāvis (F.), <i>a ship.</i>	contra , prep. (acc.), <i>against.</i>
civis, civis (M.), <i>a citizen.</i>	inter , prep. (acc.), <i>between.</i>
lux, lūcis (F.), <i>light.</i>	pro , prep. (abl.), <i>before, for.</i>
nūmērus, -i , <i>number.</i>	fortiter , adv., <i>bravely.</i>
fāber, bri , <i>a workman.</i>	

EXERCISE.

Decline together : **cānis magnus, collis altus, lux clāra, nūmērus ingens, civis bōnus, turris alta, ignis clārus.**

Translate into English :—

1. Canis domini in aula latrat.
2. Nonne milites collem altum pro oppido occupavērunt?
3. Inter Romanorum castra et hostium erat flumen altum.
4. Milites pro patria fortiter pugnābant.
5. Nonne cives Romani pro Italia contra hostes pugnābunt?
6. In hostium numero semper fuērunt.
7. Caesar turrem altam pro oppidi portis locāvit.
8. Inter fines Gallorum et Germanorum est flumen Rhenus.
9. Nonne viri pro libertate pugnabant?
10. Viri, libertatem populi Romani servāte.
11. Hostes arva Gallorum vas-

tabunt. 12. Numerus magnus hostium in castris erit. 13. Lunae lumen clarum fuit. 14. Cives Romani ludos saepe spectabunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. O Romans, save the liberty of the people. 2. The soldiers often fought for their native land. 3. The Romans pitched their camp before the gate of the town. 4. The dogs bark in the dwelling of the farmer. 5. The light of the moon will be clear. 6. Between the hill and the plain the Romans pitched their camp. 7. The slaves of the king seized a high hill in-front-of (*pro + abl.*) the town. 8. The farmer's sons gazed-on the camp of the enemy from (*ex + abl.*) the high hill. 9. The citizens will often praise the valor of the boy in the battle. 10. The workmen of the Romans built many ships. 11. The camp of the enemy was between the town and the river Rhone. 12. The enemy will build many towers on (*in + abl.*) the high hills.

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

I-STEMS.

Neuter nouns in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar* are declined as follows :—

Māre (N.), *a sea*. **Ānīmal** (N.), *an animal*. **Calcar** (N.), *spur*.

	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.
NOM.	māre		ānīmal		calcar
GEN.	māris		ānīmālis		calcāris
DAT.	mārī		ānīmālī		calcārī
ACC.	māre		ānīmal		calcar
VOC.	māre		ānīmal		calcar
ABL.	mārī		ānīmālī		calcārī
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.
NOM.	māria		ānīmālia		calcāria
GEN.	mārium		ānīmālīum		calcārīum
DAT.	mārībus		ānīmālībus		calcārībus
ACC.	māria		ānīmālia		calcāria
VOC.	māria		ānīmālia		calcāria
ABL.	mārībus		ānīmālībus		calcārībus

Note.—Neuters in *-e*, *-al* and *-ar* have the ablative singular in *-i* and the genitive plural in *-ium*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>tōlēro, tōlērare, tōlērāvi, bear, endure.</i>	<i>rūpes, rūpis (F.), a rock.</i>
<i>crēmo, crēmāre, crēmāvi, burn.</i>	<i>long-us, -a, -um, long.</i>
<i>custos, custōdis (M.), a guard.</i>	<i>aequ-us, -a, -um, just.</i>
<i>iūs, iūris (N.), right, law.</i>	<i>apud, prep. (acc.), near.</i>
<i>litus, litōris (N.), shore.</i>	<i>Graecus, -i, Greek.</i>

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *Ius Graecum, animal tēnerum, rūpes alta, litus longum.*

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne milites Romani aggērem altum in alto mari aedificābunt?
2. Consul in castris Romanis hodie erit.
3. Num agriculturalium pueri lignum in forum portavērant?
4. Rupes in litore altae erant.
5. Iura Romana aequa erant.
6. Animalia magna in mari alto sunt.
7. Nonne pueri lignum in patris sui tecto cremavērunt?
8. Leo est rex animalium omnium.
9. Nautae frumentum multum in navibus ad Italiam portabunt.
10. Graeci regem hostium superaverunt.
11. Animālia multa per mare natant.
12. Custodes multos in rupe alta locavisti.
13. Solis lux est clara.
14. Multa animalia in silvis densis hiemant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will the sailors endure the dangers of the sea?
2. The soldiers of the Romans will seize a part of the city.
3. The consul's sons were in the city to-day.
4. The king's brother stands on (*in + abl.*) the shore of the great sea.
5. The farmers will burn the wood before the gates of the city.
6. The rocks in the river were high.
7. The dwellings of the farmers will be large.
8. The guards of the Roman soldiers will keep the shore.
9. The sons of the farmer burnt the wood in the dwelling.
10. The winters are long in Gaul.
11. The Roman soldier endured the cold of the long winters.
12. Did the soldiers preserve the walls of the town?

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

Many nouns in *-s* and *-x* (originally *-i*-stems) have in the singular the declension of consonant stems, and in the plural that of *-i* stems. They are chiefly monosyllables ending in two consonants, like *urbs, urbis, a city*; or nouns ending in *-ns* or *-rs*, like *amans, amantis, a lover*. They are declined as follows:—

Urbs (F.), <i>a city</i> .		Nox (F.), <i>night</i> .		Amans, <i>lover</i> .	
SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
NOM.	urbs		nox		amans
GEN.	urbis		noctis		amantis
DAT.	urbi		nocti		amanti
ACC.	urbem		noctem		amantem
VOC.	urbs		nox		amans
ABL.	urbē		noctē		amantē (-or i)
PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
NOM.	urbēs		noctēs		amantēs
GEN.	urbium		noctium		amantium
DAT.	urbibus		noctibus		amantibus
ACC.	urbēs (is)		noctēs (is)		amantēs (is)
VOC.	urbēs		noctēs		amantēs
ABL.	urbibus		noctibus		amantibus

VOCABULARY.

mons, montis (M.), <i>a mountain</i> .	āter, ātra, ātrum, <i>black</i> .
pars, partis (F.), <i>a part</i> .	finitimus, -i, <i>neighbor</i> .
pax, pacis (F.), <i>peace</i> .	Rōmulus, -i, <i>Romulus</i> .
clar-us, -a, -um, <i>famous</i> .	musca, -ae, <i>a fly</i> .
sermo, sermōnis (M.), <i>discourse, speech</i> .	recito, recitare, recitavi, <i>to read aloud</i> .
	compāro, āre, āvi, <i>collect</i> .
agmen, agminis (N.), <i>army (on the march)</i> .	prope, prep. (acc.), <i>near</i> .
	dē, prep. (abl.), <i>from, concerning</i> .

EXERCISE.

Decline together : mons altus, pars magna, urbs pulchra, sermo longus, tectum altum, agmen longum.

Translate into English:—

- Romani pacem cum finitimis suis confirmaverunt.
- Romulus urbem prope fluminis ripas in colle alto aedificavit.
- Nonne

in caelo nubes atrae erant? 4. Cicero, orator clarus, litteras in foro recitavit. 5. Puer de monte in mare ambulat. 6. Prope urbem erat mons altus. 7. Milites Romani urbis partem hodie occupābunt. 8. Romulus hostium arces multas occupavit. 9. Fratres in maris litore cum sororibus ambulabunt. 10. Bellum contra finitimos in pace parāmus. 11. Milites hostium arcem hodie occupabunt. 12. Stellae in caelo ante solis lucem spectabāmus. 13. Milites consulem ad forum vocavērant.

Translate into Latin :

1. The Romans praised the speech of Cicero, the consul. 2. The enemy wounded many Roman soldiers in the battle. 3. The speeches of Cicero, the Roman consul, were famous. 4. The Roman consul burned many cities of the Gauls. 5. The arrows of the enemy wounded your king. 6. A sparrow was devouring a small fly. 7. In peace the Romans often collected large forces. 8. The Romans pitched their camp before the camp. 9. Did not the pupils praise the famous discourse of Cicero? 10. The commander will summon the soldiers to the citadel. 11. Will the man read the letter of the consul aloud to the soldiers? 12. The soldiers pitched their camp on (*in + ablative*) a high hill. 13. There was a dark cloud in the sky to-day. 14. The men will build a part of the town.

LESSON XXV.

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The chief irregular nouns of the third declension are inflected as follows:

Bos (M.), *ox*. **Vis** (F.), *strength*. **Sus** (M. or F.), *swine*. **Nix** (F.), *snow*.

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	bos	vis	sūs	nix
GEN.	bōvis	vis (rare)	sūis	nivis
DAT.	bōvi	vi (rare)	sūi	nīvi
ACC.	bōvem	vim	sūem	nīvem
VOC.	bos	vis	sūs	nix
ABL.	bōvē	vi	sūē	nīvē

	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	bōvēs	virēs	sūēs	nīvēs
GEN.	{bōvum bōum	virium	sūum	nīvium
DAT.	{bōbus būbus	viribus	{sūibus sūbus	nīvibus
ACC.	bōvēs	virēs	sūēs	nīvēs
VOC.	bōvēs	virēs	sūēs	nīvēs
ABL.	{bōbus būbus	viribus	{sūibus sūbus	nīvibus
Sēnex (M.), <i>an old man.</i> Iūpiter (M.), <i>Jupiter.</i> Iter (N.), <i>journey.</i>				

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	sēnex	Iūpiter	Iter
GEN.	sēnis	Iōvis	Itinēris
DAT.	sēni	Iōvi	Itinēri
ACC.	sēnem	Iōvem	Iter
VOC.	sēnex	Iūpiter	Iter
ABL.	sēnē	Iōvē	Itinērē
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	sēnēs		Itinērā
GEN.	sēnum		Itinērum
DAT.	sēnibus		Itinērībus
ACC.	sēnēs		Itinērā
VOC.	sēnēs		Itinērā
ABL.	sēnibus		Itinērībus

VOCABULARY.

hōmo, hōminis (M.),	<i>a man.</i>	grāt-us, -a, -um,	<i>pleasing.</i>
mūlier, mūliēris (F.),	<i>a woman.</i>	dēcīm-us, -a, -um,	<i>tenth.</i>
nāvis, nāvis (F.),	<i>a ship.</i>	obseruo, āre, āvi,	<i>watch.</i>
frigus, frigōris (N.),	<i>cold, frost.</i>	appello, āre, āvi,	<i>call.</i>
lātus, lātēris (N.),	<i>side.</i>	prōpēro, āre, āvi,	<i>hasten.</i>
sīnister, sīnistra, sīnistrum,	<i>left.</i>	ob, prep. (acc.),	<i>on account of,</i>
dexter, dextra, dextrum,	<i>right.</i>		<i>owing to.</i>
mātūrus, -a, -um,	<i>ripe.</i>	nam, conj.,	<i>for.</i>

EXERCISE.

Decline together : pars dextra, hōmo magnus, mūlier pulchra, legio dēcīma, nāvis longa.

Translate into English :—

1. Populus Romānus senem amicum appellābat. 2. Hostes cum navibus multis ad Caesarem, imperatorem Romanum, properavērunt. 3. Nam ob frīgōra frumentum in agris non erat maturum. 4. Romani Ariovistum, regem Germanorum, amicum appellabant. 5. Caesar decimam legionem in parte agminis sinistrā locāvit. 6. Hostes nostrum iter observabant. 7. Caesar naves ad unum locum convocavit. 8. Regina hostium agros regis vastat. 9. Epistola hostium imperatori Romanorum non grata est. 10. Hostes cum parvis copiis agros Romanos vastābunt. 11. Frater meus multas boves reginae donat. 12. Rex nautis et militibus multa praemia donabit. 13. Pueri agricolae montes altos spectant. 14. Milites mei fili virtutem laudant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. In Gaul the corn was not ripe on-account-of the frost. 2. The Roman people often praised the man's strength. 3. Caesar often praises the valor of the enemy. 4. The soldiers of the Romans watched the ships of the enemy. 5. The woman gave a rose to the king's son. 6. On the right side, Caesar placed the soldiers of the tenth legion; on the left, the forces of the allies. 7. He hastens to the city with all his friends. 8. The soldiers of the tenth legion were hastening to Caesar. 9. The Romans will not watch the camp of the enemy. 10. The ships of the Romans were not large. 11. The king of the Romans praised the valor of the Germans. 12. The snow is often deep in winter.

LESSON XXVI.

GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.*

1. Most nouns of the third declension ending in **-er, -or, -os, -es**, (increasing in the genitive), **-o** (except **-do, -go, -io**) are *masculine*: as, *carcer Romanus, a Roman prison; honor magnus, a great honor;*

* Exceptions to the rules will be found in the Appendix.

flos albus, a white flower; paries altus, a high wall; sermo Latinus, the Latin language.

2. Most nouns of the third declension which end in *-do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es* (not increasing in the genitive), *-s* (preceded by a consonant), *-ūs* (in words of more than one syllable), are *feminine*: *as, multitudo magna, a great multitude; imāgo cerēa, a wax image; orātiō longa, a long speech; aestas callida, a warm summer; avis rara, a rare bird; laus parva, small praise; vox magna, a loud voice; clādes nostra, our defeat; plēbs Romana, the Roman populace; virtūs divīna, divine valor.*

3. Most nouns of the third declension which end in *-c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs, ūs* (in words of one syllable), are *neuter*: *as, lac album white milk; pōēma longum, a long poem; cāput suum, his own head; māre magnum, a great sea; ānīmāl fērum, a wild animal; limen altum, a high threshold; calcar acūtum, a sharp spur; fulgur clārum, a bright flash; tempūs antiquum, ancient time; iūs magnum, a great right.*

EXERCISE.

State the gender of all nouns in the following list, giving the rule for each:—

nāvis, nāvis, a ship.

nix, nivis, snow,

litus, litōris, a shore

onus, onēris, a load.

fulgur, fulgūris, a flash.

frigus, frigōris, frost.

hiems, hiēmis, winter.

cāput, cāpītis, a head.

orātiō, orātiōnis, a speech.

carmen, carminis, a song.

vox, vōcis, a voice.

rādix, rādicis, a root.

ānīmāl, ānīmālis, an animal.

māre, mārīs, sea.

rūs, rūris, country.

turris, turris, a tower.

plēbs, plēbis, the populace.

aedifico, aēre, aēvi, to build.

curvus, a, um, winding.

āmoenus, a, um, beautiful (of scenery).

saevus, a, um, cruel.

Translate into English:—

1. Pueri in nive altā ambulābant.
2. Regis filii navem longam aedificant.
3. Meam pulchram orationem laudātis.
4. Boves per litōra amoena errābunt.
5. Carmen gratum magnā voce cantabant.
6. Multae radīces in silva fuērunt.
7. Nonne fulgūra clara in caelo

hodie erant? 8. Magnum erat nomen plebis Romanae. 9. Multa animalia in mari alto sunt. 10. Saevum est frigus hiemis nostrae. 11. Milites turres altas aedificaverunt. 12. Parvum ōnus in capite suo portat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The country was beautiful. 2. The cattle wandered along (per with acc.), the winding shore. 3. The cruel populace called him with a loud voice to the gate. 4. They did not praise Cicero's long speech. 5. Do not walk through the deep snow. 6. Many bodies of men were in the thick wood. 7. Do they not build beautiful ships? 8. He wounded his head with an arrow. 9. Your ship will carry a great load. 10. They had placed the large beam on (*in*) the shore. 11. We will build a high tower on the road. 12. Many Roman legions were in camp.

LESSON XXVII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of the third declension are declined like nouns of the third declension. They are called adjectives of one, two, or three terminations respectively, according as they have one, two, or three forms in the nom. sing. for expressing gender.

2. Adjectives of the third declension in *-er*, are of three terminations, and are declined as follows :—

Acēr, sharp, severe.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīā
GEN.	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīum	ācrīum	ācrīum
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrībūs	ācrībūs	ācrībūs
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīā
VOC.	ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīā
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrībūs	ācrībūs	ācrībūs

Note.—All adjectives of the third declension in *-er* are declined like *acer*; all (except *celer*, *cēlōris*, *swift*,) drop the *-e* before *-r* in the oblique cases (*i. e.*, in all but the nom. and voc.) They are all *-i*-stems, and, therefore, have the abl. sing. in *-i*, the gen. plur. in *-ium*, and the nom. plur. neuter in *-ia*.

3. Adjectives of two terminations in *-is*, *-e* are declined as follows:—

Mitis, mild.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	mitis	mitē	mitēs	mitiā
GEN.	mitis	mitis	mitium	mitium
DAT.	miti	miti	mitibus	mitibus
ACC.	mitem	mitē	mitēs (-is)	mitiā
VOC.	mitis	mitē	mitēs	mitiā
ABL.	miti	miti	mitibus	mitibus

Note.—Adjectives in *-is*, *-e*, have always *-i* in the abl. sing., *-ium* in the gen. plur., and *-ia* in the nom. and acc. neuter plur.

4. The comparative degree of the Latin adjective (which regularly ends in *-ior* for the masc. and fem., and *-ius* for the neut.) is an adjective of two terminations. It is thus declined:—

Mitior, milder

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	mitior	mitius	mitiōrēs	mitiōrā
GEN.	mitiōris	mitiōris	mitiōrum	mitiōrum
DAT.	mitiōri	mitiōri	mitiōribus	mitiōribus
ACC.	mitiōrem	mitius	mitiōrēs (is)	mitiōrā
VOC.	mitior	mitius	mitiōrēs	mitiōrā
ABL.	mitiōrē (-i)	mitiōrē (-i)	mitiōribus	mitiōribus

Note.—All comparatives have the abl. sing. in *-ē* or *-i*, the gen. plur. in *-um*, and the neut. plur. nom. in *-a*. They are all inflected like *mitior*, except *plus*, *more*, which is inflected as follows:—

are declined
e -e before
voc.) They
-i, the gen.

declined as

	Plus, more.			
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūrā
GEN.	_____	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	_____	_____	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	_____	plūs	plūrēs (is)	plūrā
VOC.	_____	_____	plūrēs	plūrā
ABL.	_____	plūrē	plūribus	plūribus

VOCABULARY.

Neut.	ēquester, ēquestris, ēquestrē,	ūtīlis, utīlē, <i>useful.</i>
mitiā	<i>cavalry.</i>	brēvis, -ē, <i>short.</i>
mitium	silvester, -tris, -trē, <i>woody.</i>	omnis, omnē, <i>all.</i>
mitibus	vōlūcer, -cris, -crē, <i>winged.</i>	immortālis, -ē, <i>immortal.</i>
mitiā	ālācer, ālācris, ālācrē, <i>active,</i>	fortis, -ē, <i>brave.</i>
mitiā	<i>brisk.</i>	Sicilia, -ae, <i>Sicily.</i>
mitibūs	cēlēr, -is, -ē, <i>swift.</i>	āpud, prep. (acc.), <i>at, near.</i>
	nāvālis, nāvāle, <i>naval.</i>	

the abl. sing.,
euter plur.

e (which regu-
or the neut.) is
d :—

EXERCISE.

Decline together : frigus ācre, terra silvestris, Gallia omnis, tempus brēve, sēnex mitior, bos magnus.

Translate into English :—

1. Multi boves in locis silvestribus errābant. 2. Romani proelia navalia apud insulam Siciliam pugnāvērunt. 3. Breve, pueri, est vitae tempus. 4. Caesar omnes copias ad mare convocābit. 5. Timor magnus milites omnes occupāvit. 6. Consul Romanus militum fortium virtutem hodie laudabat. 7. Proelium equestre in ripa fluvii pugnāvērunt. 8. Custōdes fortes ante castorum portas fortiter pugnauerunt. 9. Leges omnibus hominibus sunt utiles. 10. Imperator Romane, hostes in proelio navali superā. 11. Num milites Romani Britannos fortes in multis proeliis superāvērunt? 12. Milites Romani multa proelia cum magno periculo pugnauerunt. 13. Di immortāles multa bona hominibus bonis donabunt. 14. In magnis periculis, pueri, fortes este. 15. Omnibus hominibus mors est communis. 16. Insula magna silvestris-que est Sicilia.

AL.

Neut.
mittōrā
mittōrum
mittōribus
mittōrā
mittōrā
mittōribus
or -i, the gen
are all inflected
follows :—

Translate into Latin :—

1. The snow in the woody places is deep to-day. 2. The Romans fought many battles near their ships. 3. The corn was not ripe in the fields, for the frost in Gaul was severe. 4. Caesar called the soldiers of the tenth legion brave men (*acc.*) 5. The general will place all the brave soldiers on (*in abl.*) the right bank of the river. 6. There are many cities on the island. 7. In winter the nights are long and the cold severe. 8. The rocks on the right bank of the river are high and sharp. 9. O boy, the laws of your masters are severe. 10. Many animals are not swift. 11. Caesar fought a cavalry battle near the sea. 12. Are not many old men mild?

LESSON XXVIII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—

(Continued.)

Many adjectives of the third declension have only one form in the nominative singular to express gender. These generally end in *-s* or *-x*. They are consonant stems, but follow in part the declension of *-i* stems, having *-i* or *-e* in the ablative singular; *-um* in the genitive plural, and *-ia* in the neuter plural. Thus :—

<i>Audax, bold.</i>			<i>Félix, fortunate.</i>	
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
GEN.	audācis	audācis	fēlicis	fēlicis
DAT.	audāci	audāci	fēlici	fēlici
ACC.	audācem	audāx	fēlicem	fēlix
VOC.	audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
ABL.	audācē (or -ī)	audācē (or -ī)	fēlicē (or -ī)	fēlicē (or -ī)
PLURAL.			PLURAL.	
NOM.	audācēs	audācia	fēlices	fēlicia
GEN.	audācium	audācium	fēlicium	fēlicium
DAT.	audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
ACC.	audācēs (is)	audācia	fēlicēs (is)	fēlicia
VOC.	audācēs	audācia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
ABL.	audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus.

		<i>Vetus, old.</i>		<i>Ōriens, rising.</i>	
		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
NOM.		<i>vētus</i>	<i>vētus</i>	<i>ōriens</i>	<i>ōriens</i>
GEN.		<i>vētēris</i>	<i>vētēris</i>	<i>ōrientis</i>	<i>ōrientis</i>
DAT.		<i>vētērī</i>	<i>vētērī</i>	<i>ōrientī</i>	<i>ōrientī</i>
ACC.		<i>vētērem</i>	<i>vētus</i>	<i>ōrientem</i>	<i>ōriens</i>
VOC.		<i>vētus</i>	<i>vētus</i>	<i>ōriens</i>	<i>ōriens</i>
ABL.		<i>vētērē (or -ī)</i>	<i>vētērē (or -ī)</i>	<i>ōrientē (or -ī)</i>	<i>ōrientē (or -ī)</i>
		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
NOM.		<i>vētērēs</i>	<i>vētēra</i>	<i>ōrientēs</i>	<i>ōrientia</i>
GEN.		<i>vētērum</i>	<i>vētērum</i>	<i>ōrientium</i>	<i>ōrientium</i>
DAT.		<i>vētērībus</i>	<i>vētērībus</i>	<i>ōrientibus</i>	<i>ōrientibus</i>
ACC.		<i>vētērēs</i>	<i>vētēra</i>	<i>ōrientēs</i>	<i>ōrientia</i>
VOC.		<i>vētērēs</i>	<i>vētēra</i>	<i>ōrientēs</i>	<i>ōrientia</i>
ABL.		<i>vētērībus</i>	<i>vētērībus</i>	<i>ōrientibus</i>	<i>ōrientibus</i>

Note.—All adjectives of the third declension have *-ia* in the neuter plural except comparatives and *vetus*. Most adjectives have *-ium* in the genitive plural when the preceding syllable is long : as, *audāx*, *audācium*; *ācer*, *ācium*. But when the preceding syllable is short, they have *-um*: as, *dives*, *rich*, *divitum*; *pauper*, *poor*; *pauperum*. *Pār*, however, has *pārium*.

VOCABULARY.

*recens, recentis, recent, fresh.**flens, flentis, weeping.**dives, divitis, rich.**par, pāris, equal.**ingens, ingentis, large, tall.**vētērānus, a, um, veteran.**bēātus, a, um, happy.**ignāvīa, ae, sloth, cowardice.**lūmen, luminis, light.**grex, grēgis (M.), a flock, herd.**factum, i, deed.**implōro, āre, āvi, implore.**culpo, āre, āvi, blame, find fault with.**specto, āre, āvi, gaze on, look at.**appello, āre, āvi, call by name.**ōro, āre, āvi, pray for.**cras, adv., to-morrow.**saepe, often.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *puer flens, vir audax, āger fēlix, sol ōriens, regnum vētus, grex magnus.*

Translate into English :—

1. Puella flores recentes hodie spectabat.
2. Milites in Caesaris castris erant audaces.
3. Romani milites veteres appellavērunt.

he Romans
not ripe in
called the
general will
of the river.
the nights
ght bank of
our masters
sar fought a
n mild?

ENSION.—

ly one form
ese generally
y in part the
ive singular;
al. Thus :—

unate.

Neut.

fēlix

fēlicis

fēlici

fēlix

fēlix

fēlicē (or -ī)

L.

fēlicia

fēlicium

fēlicibus

fēlicia

fēlicia

fēlicibus.

veteranos. 4. In insula sunt serpentes magni. 5. Agricolae filii solem orientem cras spectabunt. 6. Grex ingens bovum in campo errat. 7. Mulieres flentes hostium Caesarem, ducem Romanorum, implorabant. 8. Viri, facta audacia clarorum hominum laudāte. 9. Multi Romani consilium ducis non laudabunt. 10. Pater infelix filii ignāviam culpavit. 11. Viro diviti pecuniam donat. 12. Nonne mulier ob filii mortem tristis erit? 13. Num homines pro libertate in proeliis pugnavērunt? 14. Caesar milites veterānos in colle alto cras locabit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The general gives equal parts of the land to the veteran soldiers. 2. Will not the weeping women implore the aid of the general? 3. The Germans were tall and bold. 4. Was not the sun bright yesterday? 5. Caesar will assemble all the veteran soldiers on the plain to-day. 6. Did the master blame the sloth of the boy? 7. The bold sailors often implore the gods in dangers. 8. The boys were wandering in the field and gazing-at the fresh flowers. 9. O boy, praise the bold deed of the Roman soldier. 10. Rich men are not often happy. 11. Old men often find-fault-with boys. 12. The men implored the aid of the bold Roman. 13. The farmer's flocks were wandering in the thick wood. 14. Caesar called the soldiers of the tenth legion veterans (*acc.*) 15. We often gazed-at the rising lights of heaven.

LESSON XXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives in Latin are compared, as in English, by means of endings (*terminational comparison*) as the adverbs *māgis*, *more*, and *maxīme*, *most*, to the positive (*adverbial comparison*).

2. Most adjectives are compared by means of the endings -ior (masc. and fem.), -ius (neut.), for the comparative, and -issimus (a, -um) for the superlative : as, *Altus*, *high*; *altior*, *higher*; *altissimus*, *highest*; *grāvis*, *heavy*, *severe*; *gravior*, *gravissimus*.

3. Most adjectives in *-us* (*-a*, *-um*), most adjectives in *-is* (*-is*, *-e*), and most adjectives of the third declension of one termination, are compared like *altus*. Thus:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>doctus, learned,</i>	<i>doctior,</i>	<i>doctissimus.</i>
<i>dulcis, sweet,</i>	<i>dulcior,</i>	<i>dulcissimus.</i>
<i>atrox, dark,</i>	<i>atrocior,</i>	<i>atrocissimus.</i>

Note.—All these adjectives are compared by dropping the *-i*, or the *-is*, of the genitive singular of the positive, and adding *-ior* or *-issimus* to the part remaining.

4. Comparatives (except *plus*, p. 51) are all declined like *mitior* (p. 50); superlatives, like *bonus* (p. 20).

5. *Than* after a comparative is *quam*, which takes the same case after it as the corresponding word before it¹: as, *Lupus est saevior quam canis, the wolf is fiercer than the dog.* *Lupum saeviozem quam canem aestimo, I consider the wolf fiercer than the dog.* *Quam*, however, is frequently omitted, and then the noun following the comparative is put in the ablative: as, *Lupus saevior cane est, the wolf is fiercer than the dog*; *lupum saeviozem cane aestimo, I consider the wolf fiercer than the dog.*

Note.—*Quam* can only be omitted when the noun or pronoun before the comparative is in the nominative or accusative: as, *Caesari potius quam Balbo donabit, he will give to Caesar rather than to Balbus* (here *quam* must be used).

VOCABULARY.

<i>fortis, -is, -e, strong.</i>	<i>finis, finis (M.), end; pl., territories.</i>
<i>brevis, is, -e, short.</i>	<i>lux, lucis (F.), light.</i>
<i>sapiens, sapientis, wise.</i>	<i>iudex, iudicis, judge.</i>
<i>velox, velocis, swift.</i>	<i>vita, vitae, life.</i>
<i>aër, aëris (M.), air.</i>	<i>festin-o, -äre, -ävi, hasten.</i>
<i>ventus, i, wind.</i>	<i>loc-o, äre, ävi, place, pitch.</i>

¹The word after *quam*, if the subject of a verb, will of course be in the nom.: as, *He carries a heavier load than Balbus (carries), portat onus gravius quam Balbus (portat).*

EXERCISE.

Compare all the adjectives in the above list. Decline together :
vir doctior, homo brevissimus, iudex sapiens, navis velox.

Translate into English :—

1. Leges inter Romanos gravissimae erant. 2. Omnium Gallorum fortissimi sunt. 3. Felicior est pater quam filius. 4. Iudex sapientior rege est. 5. Rhenus, flumen altissimum, inter Gallorum et Germanorum fines est. 6. Magister, homo doctissimus, fabulas longissimas pueris saepe narrabat. 7. Consulis oratio omnibus militibus gratissima erat. 8. In Britannia noctes sunt breviores. 9. Principes inter Germanos erant fortissimi. 10. Vita hominum est brevissima. 11. Milites Romani in proeliis audaciores sunt quam Germani. 12. Inter Graecos erat doctissimus. 13. Solis lux est clarior quam lux lunae. 14. Roma fuit clarissima urbs.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Were not the Roman soldiers braver than the Germans? 2. Light is swifter than wind. 3. The Roman is wiser than the German. 4. In the battle the soldiers of the tenth legion were bravest. 5. Cicero was the most learned orator among the Romans. 6. The sailors swam in the deepest water to the shore. 7. The farmer walked through a very thick forest to the bank of the river. 8. You are more powerful than the sons of kings. 9. Water is heavier than air. 10. The ships of the Romans were swifter than the ships of the enemy. 11. The bravest soldiers hastened to the town. 12. On a high hill the soldiers pitched their camp. 13. The swiftest ships of the enemy are in the deep river. 14. Between the territories of the Gauls and Germans (*gen.*) there is a deeper river.

LESSON XXX.

ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

1. Adjectives in *-er* form their comparative regularly in *-ior*; but their superlative is formed by adding *-rimus* to the nominative singular masculine of the positive : as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>acer, sharp,</i>	<i>acrior,</i>	<i>acerrimus.</i>
<i>miser, wretched,</i>	<i>miserior,</i>	<i>miserrimus.</i>
<i>celer, swift,</i>	<i>celerior,</i>	<i>celerissimus.</i>
<i>pulcher, beautiful,</i>	<i>pulchrior,</i>	<i>pulcherrimus.</i>
<i>niger, black,</i>	<i>nigrior,</i>	<i>nigerrimus.</i>

Note.—*Vetus, veteris, old*, has no comparative, but has *veterissimus* in the superlative. *Maturus, ripe*, has both *maturissimus* and *maturissimus*.

2. The following adjectives in *-ilis* form their comparative regularly in *-ior*, but their superlative in *-issimus*:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis, easy,</i>	<i>facillior,</i>	<i>facillimus.</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult,</i>	<i>difficillior,</i>	<i>difficillimus.</i>
<i>similis, similar, like,</i>	<i>simillior,</i>	<i>simillimus.</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike,</i>	<i>dissimillior,</i>	<i>dissimillimus.</i>
<i>gracilis, slender,</i>	<i>gracillior,</i>	<i>gracillimus.</i>
<i>humilis, low,</i>	<i>humillior,</i>	<i>humillimus.</i>

3. Adjectives in *-dicus* (*saying*), *-ficus* (*doing*), or *-völus* (*willing*), form their comparative and superlative from the corresponding participle in *-ens*: as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>maledicus, slanderous,</i>	<i>maledicentior,</i>	<i>maledicentissimus.</i>
<i>münificus, lavish,</i>	<i>münificentior,</i>	<i>münificentissimus.</i>
<i>benevölus, kind,</i>	<i>benevolentior,</i>	<i>benevolentissimus.</i>

Note.—*Egēnus, needy*, has *egentior, egentissimus*; and *providus, foreseeing*, has *providentior, providentissimus*.

4. The following adjectives are irregular in their comparison:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>bōnus, good,</i>	<i>mēllor, better,</i>	<i>optimus, best.</i>
<i>mālus, bad,</i>	<i>pēlor, worse,</i>	<i>pessimus, worst.</i>
<i>magnus, great,</i>	<i>mālor, greater,</i>	<i>maximus, greatest.</i>
<i>parvus, small,</i>	<i>mīnor, less,</i>	<i>minimus, least.</i>
<i>multus, much, many,</i>	<i>plūs more,</i>	<i>plūrimus, most.</i>
<i>dives, } rich,</i>	<i>divitior, } richer,</i>	<i>divitissimus, } richest,</i>
<i>dis, }</i>	<i>ditior, }</i>	<i>ditissimus, }</i>

Note.—From *iuvēnis*, *young man*, comes *iunior*, *younger*; and from *sēnex*, *old man*, comes *sēnior*, *older*. *Youngest* is *nātū mīnīmus* (= *least by birth*); *oldest* is *nātū maximus*, (= *greatest by birth*.)

5. The English *rather* with an adjective, is expressed in Latin by the comparative; the English *very*, by the superlative: as, *Vita hominum brevior est*, *the life of man is rather short*; *vita hominum brevissima est*, *the life of man is very short*.

6. The ablative is used with the comparative or superlative to express the amount of difference: as, *Puer uno anno senior fratre erat*, *the boy was one year older than his brother* (= *older by one year*).

VOCABULARY.

pes, pēdis (M.), *a foot*.

mos, mōris (M.), *manner, custom*.

dōlor, dolōris (M.), *grief*.

iter, itīnēris (N.), *march*.

collis, collis (M.), *a hill*.

lingua, ae, *tongue, language*.

dives, divītis, *rich*.

tōtus, a, um, *whole*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *puer mellior, collis altior, vir dives, pes longus*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Puella matre gracilior est.* 2. *Omniū puerorū optīmus est.*
3. *Nonne lingua Romana difficillima est?* 4. *Mores Gallorū et Germanorū dissimillimi sunt.* 5. *Iter militū nostrorū difficillimum fuit.* 6. *Pueri non sunt semper meliores patribus.* 7. *Turris est muro altior multis pedibus* (p. 58, 6). 8. *Toto capite altior est quam puer.* 9. *Caesar maximus fuit Romanorū omnium.* 10. *Num nostri milites plures erunt quam hostes?* 11. *Stellas e colle altissimo spectabant.* 12. *Dolor omnium minor est.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. The boy is taller than his father. 2. Was not the march easier among the hills? 3. The rose is the most beautiful of all flowers. 4. The feet of the girl are very small. 5. Was not the slave richer than the master? 6. The boy is one year older than the girl. 7. He was the worst of all. 8. We shall view the stars from a higher hill. 9. They are better to-day than they were yesterday. 10. Are not the hills very low? 11. Is not the man most kind? 12. The neediest are not always the most wretched.

LESSON XXXI.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—(Continued.)

1. The following adjectives are irregular in the superlative:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
extērus , outward,	extērior ,	extrēmus and extīmus .
infērus , lower,	infērior ,	infīmus and īmus .
sūpērus , higher,	sūpērior ,	suprēmus and summus .
postērus , behind,	postērior ,	postrēmus and postūmus .

Note.—**Mons infīmus** is the lowest mountain (of a range); **mons īmus**, the bottom of the mountain. **Suprēmus mons** is, the highest mountain (of a group of mountains); **summus mons**, the top of the mountain

2. Some adjectives have no positive : as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
—	cītērior , hither,	cītīmus , hithermost.
—	dētērior , worse,	dētērrīmus , worst.
—	intērior , inner,	intīmus , innermost.
—	ōcīor , swifter,	ōcīssīmus , swiftest.
—	prior , former,	primus , first.
—	prōpīor , nearer,	proxīmus , next, nearest.
—	ultērior , farther,	ultīmus , farthest, last.

Note.—The superlative with **quam** denotes the highest degree possible : as, **Quam plurimi**, as many as possible.

VOCABULARY.

argentum , silver.	tempus , tempōris (N.), time.
aurum , gold.	antiquus , a, um, ancient.
sēnex , sēnis , old man.	hic , adv., here.
ōpus , ōpōris (N.), work.	

EXERCISE.

Decline together : **ōpus facile**, **tempus antiquum**, **aurum grave**, **Gallia citerior**.

Translate into English :—

1. **Senex tempora antiqua laudat**, nostra ci. 2. **Aurum est argento gravius**. 3. **Opera tua difficillima sunt**. 4. **Gallia citerior**.

est proxima. 5. Reges Gallorum pacem cum proximis civitatibus confirmavērunt. 6. Leges bonae meliores quam milites fortissimi sunt. 7. In summo monte Romani castra sua locavērunt. 8. Sol est maior quam luna. 9. Itinēra per citeriorem Galliam fuērunt difficillima. 10. Mons primus fuit supremus omnium. 11. Hostes cum maximis copiis agros nostros vastabunt. 12. Urbs Roma clarissima in Italia est. 13. Nostrae filiae sunt pulcherrimae. 14. Puer minor fratre fuit. 15. Plurimi milites in urbe ambulābant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. On the top of the mountain the soldiers built a very high citadel. 2. The moon is smaller than the earth. 3. In the sea are very large and very many animals. 4. He is the oldest of all the poets. 5. The king was younger than his brother. 6. In the islands the nights are longer than here. 7. The journey through Gaul was very difficult to our soldiers. 8. The swiftest men are not always first. 9. The soldiers of the tenth legion were the best of all. 10. On the highest place the general pitched the camp of the Romans. 11. He was the richest of all the citizens. 12. In war the farmer was very wretched. 13. Caesar was the most distinguished general among the Romans. 14. The cities in Gaul are very small.

LESSON XXXII.

ADVERBIAL COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives in *-us* preceded by a vowel, usually form their comparative and superlative by means of the adverbs *māgis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*, respectively : as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Idōnēus, <i>fit, suitable</i> .	māgis Idōnēus,	maximē Idōnēus.
dūbīus, <i>doubtful</i> ,	māgis dūbīus,	maximē dūbīus.

But adjectives in *-quus*, form the comparative and superlative regularly : as, *antiquus*, *ancient*, *antiquior*, *antiquissimus*.

2. Adjectives followed in English by *to* or *for*, are usually followed by a dative in Latin : as, *Utilis civitatī*, *useful to the state*; *aptus bello*, *fit for war*; *similis patri*, *like (to) the father*.

3. Adjectives followed in English by *of*, are usually followed in Latin by the genitive: as, *Avidus laudis*, *greedy of praise*; *plenus militum*, *full of soldiers*. *Dignus* (*worthy*), however, takes the abl.: as, *Dignus poenā*, *worthy of punishment*.

VOCABULARY.

amicus, -a, -um, *friendly*.

avidus, *greedy, fond*.

inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly*.

similis, -e, *like* (with the dat.)

carus, -a, -um, *dear*.

dissimilis, -e, *unlike* (with the dat.)

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *homo amicus*, *opus plenum*, *terra similis*, *miles fortissimus*, *puella pulchrior*.

Translate into English:—

1. Urbs frumenti plena erat. 2. Dux omnibus Gallis amicus erit. 3. Puer patri simillimus fuit. 4. Locus magis idoneus castris quam urbi est. 5. Caesar omnibus Romanis carissimus fuit. 6. Castra Romanorum quam hostium propiora erant. 7. Locus est maxime idoneus castris. 8. Poeta optimus omnibus hominibus carus est. 9. Populus Romanus avidissimus belli erat. 10. Urbes tum erant plenae hominum clarorum. 11. Filius patri simillimus erat; puella matri. 12. Omnium Gallorum fortissimi sunt. 13. Milites nostri maxime dubii erant. 14. Epistola filiae carior fuit matri quam filii.

Translate into Latin:—

1. The Roman leader was very friendly to the Gauls. 2. The soldiers of the Roman legion were dear to Caesar. 3. The Romans were more friendly to the Greeks than to others. 4. The place was more suitable for a temple than for a camp. 5. He was the best poet among the Romans. 6. Was not the last king very like his brother? 7. The Gauls were next to the Germans. 8. He was very fond of the praise of the citizens. 9. The Romans seized a town full of corn. 10. The hill was very suitable for a camp. 11. Was not the boy very unlike his father? 12. The soldier was very like his brother. 13. The boy hastened to the nearest city. 14. The largest boys are not always the best.

LESSON XXXIII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the fourth declension have the genitive singular in -ūs.

2. Nouns of this declension end in the nominative singular in -ūs or -ū. Nouns in -ūs are masculine ; those in -ū are neuter.

3. Nouns in -us are declined as follows :—

Fructus (M.), *fruit*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. fruct-ūs, <i>fruit</i> .	fruct-ūs, <i>fruits</i> .
GEN. fruct-ūs, <i>of fruit</i> .	fruct-ūum, <i>of fruits</i> .
DAT. fruct-ūi, <i>to or for fruit</i> .	fruct-ibus, <i>to or for fruits</i> .
ACC. fruct-um, <i>fruit</i> .	fruct-ūs, <i>fruits</i> .
VOC. fruct-ūs, <i>O fruit</i> .	fruct-ūs, <i>O fruits</i> .
ABL. fruct-ū, <i>with, by or from fruit</i> .	fruct-ibus, <i>with, by or from fruits</i> .

4. Nouns in -u are declined as follows :—

Cornu (N.), *a horn*.

SINGULAR	PLURAL.
NOM. cornū, <i>a horn</i> .	corn-ūa, <i>horns</i> .
GEN. corn-ūs, <i>of a horn</i> .	corn-ūum, <i>of horns</i> .
DAT. corn-ū, <i>to or for a horn</i> .	corn-ibus, <i>to or for horns</i> .
ACC. corn-ū, <i>a horn</i> .	corn-ūa, <i>horns</i> .
VOC. corn-ū, <i>O horn</i> .	corn-ūa, <i>O horns</i> .
ABL. corn-ū, <i>with, by or from a horn</i> .	corn-ibus, <i>with, by or from horns</i> .

5. The following nouns have -ūbus instead of -ibus in the dative and ablative plural : *Artus*, *a joint* ; *portus*, *a harbor* ; *tribus*, *a tribe* ; *vēru*, *a spit* ; and all dissyllables in -eus, as *lācus*, *a lake*.

6. *Dōmus* (F.), *a house*, is irregular and is inflected as follows :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. dōm-ūs.	dōm-ūs.
GEN. dōm-ūs.	dōm-ūum (or dōm-ōrum).
DAT. dōm-ūi (or dōm-ō).	dōm-ibus.
ACC. dōm-um.	dōm-ōs (or dōm-ūs.)
VOC. dōm-ūs.	dōm-ūs.
ABL. dōm-ō (or dōm-ū).	dōm-ibus.

VOCABULARY.

exercitus, ūs, an army.**lŭsus, ūs, sport, play.****equitatus, ūs, cavalry.****arcus, ūs, a bow.****currus, ūs, a chariot.****sēnatus, ūs, the senate.****conspectus, ūs, sight, view.****pēditatus, ūs, infantry.****lātus, ā, um, broad, wide.****impēdimenta, ōrum, baggage.**

EXERCISE.

Decline together : **exercitus magnus, dŏmus lāta, currus cēler.**

Translate into English :—

1. Imperātor Rŏmānus peditatum equitatumque in locis superioribus locāvit.
2. Senātŭs populi Romani virtutem exercitŭs laudat.
3. Domus mea altior quam tua est.
4. Caesar militum virtutem in senatu laudābit.
5. Milites in ducis conspectu pugnābant.
6. Fructŭs in agricolarum hortis maturi erant.
7. Lusŭs animos puerorum saepe delectat.
8. Milites multi cum impedimentis in urbem properavērunt.
9. Nonne cornua magna sunt?
10. In urbe sunt multae domŭs.
11. Frater constŭlis altam domum in urbe aedificāvit.
12. Britanni contra peditatum Romanum pugnāvērunt.
13. Arcus nostri sunt longiores quam Romanorum.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Sport always pleases boys.
2. The bows of the Romans were shorter than ours.
3. The general often praised the cavalry of the Roman army.
4. Your house is larger than mine.
5. No army is in the territory of the enemy.
6. The senate of the Roman people will praise the infantry of your army.
7. The hill was in sight of our soldiers.
8. The army of the Romans is better than yours.
9. The Romans built very many ships.
10. The soldiers carried the corn to the camp.
11. The Senate gave many rewards to the soldiers.
12. The chariots of the Gauls were very long and broad.
13. The boy's bow is full of joints.
14. The soldiers praised the valor of the general.

LESSON XXXIV.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the fifth declension have the genitive singular in -ēi. The nominative singular always ends in -ēs.

2. All nouns of this declension are fem., except *meridies* (*noon*), which is masc. and *dies* (*day*), which is masc. or fem. in the sing., and masc. in the plural. Nouns in *-es* are declined as follows:—

Rēs (F.), a thing, matter.		Diēs (M. or F.), a day.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>rē-s,</i>	<i>rē-s.</i>	<i>dīē-s,</i>	<i>dīē-s.</i>
GEN. <i>rē-i,</i>	<i>rē-rum.</i>	<i>dīē-i,</i>	<i>dīē-rum.</i>
DAT. <i>rē-i,</i>	<i>rē-bus.</i>	<i>dīē-i,</i>	<i>dīē-bus.</i>
ACC. <i>re-m,</i>	<i>rē-s.</i>	<i>dīe-m,</i>	<i>dīē-s.</i>
VOC. <i>rē-s,</i>	<i>rē-s.</i>	<i>dīē-s,</i>	<i>dīē-s.</i>
ABL. <i>rē</i>	<i>rē-bus.</i>	<i>dīē,</i>	<i>dīē-bus.</i>

3. In *respublica* (F.), *the commonwealth*, both parts are inflected:—

<i>Res-publica</i> (F.), <i>the commonwealth, country.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>rēs-publica,</i>	<i>rēs-publicae.</i>
GEN. <i>rēi-publicae,</i>	<i>rērum-publicārum.</i>
DAT. <i>rēi-publicae,</i>	<i>rēbus-publicis.</i>
ACC. <i>rem-publicam,</i>	<i>rēs-publicas.</i>
VOC. <i>rēs-publica,</i>	<i>rēs-publicae.</i>
ABL. <i>rē-publicā,</i>	<i>rēbus-publicis.</i>

ABLATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

4. The following adjectives govern the ablative: *Dignus, worthy*; *indignus, unworthy*; *contentus, contented*; *praeditus, endowed with*; *frētus, relying on*; *liber, free from*: as, *Miles coronā dignus est, the soldier is worthy of a crown*; *pūer ingēnio praeditus est, the boy is endowed with ability.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>fīdes, fīdēi, faith, loyalty.</i>	<i>mercātor, ōris, merchant.</i>
<i>spēs, spēi, hope, expectation.</i>	<i>rāmus, i, a branch.</i>
<i>perniciēs, -ēi, ruin, bane.</i>	<i>luxūria, -ae, luxury.</i>
<i>portus, -ūs, a harbor.</i>	<i>nōtus, -a, -um, known.</i>
<i>ūsus, -ūs, experience.</i>	<i>occūpo, āre, āvi, seize.</i>
<i>tīmor, -ōris (M.), fear.</i>	<i>nunquam, adv., never.</i>

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *dies clāra*; *res magna*; *portus idōnēus*; *respublica nostra.*

Translate into English:—

1. *Milites fide imperatoris freti erant.*
2. *Mercatores omnem*

rem Romanis nuntiavērunt. 3. Timor magnus rempublicam occupavit. 4. Magna erat spes victoriae in animis militum. 5. Puer patre suo indignus est. 6. Nautae, spe freti, mare magnum navigant. 7. Mercator nunquam in portu est; mare altum navigat. 8. Miles fortis omni laude dignus fuit. 9. Muri urbis nostrae altiores quam hostium sunt. 10. Usus in omnibus rebus est utilis, sed utilissimus in bello. 11. Luxuria est maxima perniciēs reipublicae. 12. Puer omni culpā liber est. 13. Imperator maximas res exercitui nuntiābit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The hope of the soldiers was very great. 2. The general, relying on his valor, seized the camp of the enemy. 3. All the harbors were very well known (*superl.*) to our sailors. 4. They called the son of the general, the hope of the commonwealth. 5. The man was worthy of death on-account-of (*ob+acc.*) his unworthy life. 6. The men were free from fear. 7. The son of the general was endowed with great ability. 8. He was contented with a golden crown. 9. The leader, relying on the loyalty of his soldiers, seized the camp of the enemy. 10. Luxury is a bane to all commonwealths. 11. Small birds often build on the tops of (p. 59, 1) trees. 12. The soldier is worthy of the greatest praise on account of his valor. 13. The master built large houses for his slaves.

LESSON XXXV.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

1. Numerals in Latin are divided into adjectives and adverbs. Numeral adjectives are divided into three classes :—

(a) Cardinals, answering to the question, *how many?* as, unus, one; duo, two.

(b) Ordinals, answering to the question, *which in order?* as, primus, first.

(c) Distributives, answering to the question, *how many each?* as, Singuli, one by one; bini, two by two.

2. Numeral adverbs answer to the question, *how often?* Thus : Semel, once; bis, twice; ter, thrice.

TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Arabic Symbol.	Roman Symbol.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
1	I.	ūnus, a, um, <i>one</i> .	primus, a, um, <i>first</i> .	singŭlī, ae, a, <i>one by one</i> .	sēmel, <i>once</i> .
2	II.	dŭo, dŭae, dŭo, <i>two</i> .	secundus, a, um (or alter), <i>second</i> .	binī, ae, a, <i>two by two</i> .	bis, <i>twice</i> .
3	III.	trēs, tria, <i>three</i> .	tertius, a, um, <i>third</i> .	trinī or ternī	ter
4	IV.	quattuor	quartus	quaternī	quāter
5	V.	quinque	quintus	quinī	quinquēns
6	VI.	sex	sextus	sēni	sexiens
7	VII.	septem	septimus	septēni	septiens
8	VIII.	octo	octāvus	octōni	octiens
9	IX.	nōvem	nōnus	nōvēni	nōviens
10	X.	dēcem	dēcimus	dēni	dēciens
11	XI.	undēcim	undēcimus	undēni	undēciens
12	XII.	dūdēcim	dūdēcimus	dūdēni	dūdēcians
13	XIII.	trēdēcim	tertius decimus	ternī dēni	{ terdēcians or trēdēcians
14	XIV.	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaternī dēni	quattuordecians
15	XV.	quindēcim	quintus decimus	quinī dēni	quindēcians
16	XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēni dēni	sēdecians
17	XVII.	septendēcim	septimus decimus	septēni dēni	septēnsdecians
18	XVIII.	dūdēviginti	dūdēvicesimus	dūdēvicēni	dūdēviciens
19	XIX.	undeviginti	undēvicesimus	undēvicēni	undēviciens
20	XX.	viginti	vicesimus	vicēni	vicēns
21	XXI.	{ unus et viginti or viginti unus	primus et vicesimus or vicesimus primus	viceni singuli	{ semel et vicēns or vicēns semel
28	XXVIII.	dūdetrīginta	duodetrigesimus	duodetricēni	duodetriciens
29	XXIX.	undetrīginta	undetrigesimus	undetricēni	undetriciens
30	XXX.	trīgintā	tricesimus	tricēni	triciens

20	XX.	unus et viginti or viginti	primus et vicesimus or vicesimus primus	vicini singuli	viciens semel
21	XXI.	viginti unus	vicesimus primus	duodetricesimi	duodetriciens
28	XXVIII.	duodetriginta.	duodetricesimus	undetricesimi	triciens
29	XXIX.	undetriginta.	undetricesimus		
30	XXX.	triginta.	tricesimus		
40	XL.	quadraginta.	quadragésimus	quadrageni	quadragiens
50	L.	quinquaginta.	quinquagésimus	quinquageni	quinquagens
60	LX.	sexaginta.	sexagésimus	sexageni	sexagens
70	LXX.	septuaginta.	septuagésimus	septuageni	septuagens
80	LXXX.	octoginta.	octogésimus	octogeni	octogens
90	XC.	nonaginta.	nonagésimus	nonageni	nonagens
100	C.	centum	centésimus	centeni	centiens
101	CI.	(centum unus or centum et unus	centésimus primus or centésimus et primus	centeni et singuli or centeni singuli	centiens semel
200	CC.	ducenti, ae, a	ducentésimus	ducenti	ducentiens
300	CCC.	trecenti, ae, a	trecentésimus	trecenti	trecentiens
400	CCCC.	quadringenti, ae, a	quadringentesimus	quadringeni	quadringentiens
500	D. or I.D.	quingenti, ae, a	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingentiens
600	DC.	sexcenti, ae, a	sexcentésimus	sexcenti	sexcentiens
700	DCC.	septingenti, ae, a	septingentesimus	septingeni	septingentiens
800	DCCC.	octingenti, ae, a	octingentesimus	octingeni	octingentiens
900	DCCCC.	nongenti, ae, a	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongentiens
1,000	M. or C.D.	mille	millésimus	singula millia	milliens
2,000	MM.	duo millia	bis millésimus	bina millia	bis milliens
5,000	I.C.	quinque millia	quinquies millesimus	quina millia	quinquiesmilliens
10,000	CC.I.C.	decem millia	decies millesimus	dena millia	decies milliens
100,000	CCC.I.C.C.	centum millia	centies millesimus	centena millia	centies milliens

¹ Another form of numeral adverbs in **-ens** is in **-ēs**: *quinquies, sexies*.

4. Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except (1) *ūnus*, *one*; *dūo*, *two*; *trēs*, *three*; (2) the hundreds, beginning with *dūcenti*, *two hundred*; (3) the plural of *mille*, *a thousand*.

Unus, *one*, has already been declined (p. 27). *Dūo* and *trēs* are declined as follows :—

Duo, two.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	dūo	dūae	dūo
GEN.	dūōrum	dūārum	dūōrum
DAT.	dūōbus	dūābus	dūōbus
ACC.	dūōs or dūo	dūās	dūo
Voc.	dūo	dūae	dūo
ABL.	dūōbus	dūābus	dūōbus

Tres, three.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	trēs	triā
GEN.	trīum	trīum
DAT.	trībus	trībus
ACC.	trēs (is)	triā
Voc.	trēs	triā
ABL.	trībus	trībus

5. *Mille*, *a thousand*, is indeclinable in the singular, but in the plural is declined as follows :—

NOM. millia,	GEN. millium,	DAT. millibus,
ACC. millia,		ABL. millibus.

Note.—*Mille*, in the singular, may be either an adjective, or a noun with the word depending on it in the genitive : as, *Mille hōmīnes* or *mille hōmīnum*, *a thousand men*. In the plural it is always a noun : as, *Decem millia hōmīnum*, *ten thousand men* (=ten thousand of men).

6. Compound numbers like 21, 22, &c., when between 20 and 100, are written *ūnus et viginti*, *duo et viginti*, or *viginti unus*, *viginti duo*, &c.

Above *one hundred*, the greater number precedes (with or without et) : as, *dūcenti unus*, or *dūcenti et unus*, *two hundred and one*.

7. The ordinals are declined like the singular of *bonus* (p. 20), and the distributives like the plural of *bonus*.

8. The distributive numerals are used :—

(a) To express our *so many at a time, so many each*, with a cardinal numeral : as, *Pūeris binos libros dōnāvit, he gave the boys two books apiece.*

(b) To express multiplication : as, *Bis bina, twice two.*

(c) With substantives that have a different meaning in the singular and plural, respectively : as, *Bina castra, two camps.* (*Castrum is a fort; duo castra, would mean two forts.* See Appendix).

EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE.

9. Duration of time and extent of space are usually expressed by the accusative : as, *Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit, Romulus reigned thirty-seven years; nix quattuor pedes alta, snow four feet deep.* (*Per, through, is added to the accusative of time to express precision.*)

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

10. The partitive genitive expresses the whole of which a part is taken : as, *Pars militum, part of the soldiers; unus militum, one of the soldiers; decem millia passuum, ten thousand paces (=ten Roman miles).*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *ūnus miles, duae dōmūs, tria millia passuum, alter hōmo.*

Translate into English (for vocabulary, see end of book) :—

1. *Milites binis telis contenti erunt.* 2. *Arbor quadraginta pedes alta est.* 3. *Rex annum jam tertium et vicesimum regnat.* 4. *Caesar castra decem millia passuum ab hostibus locavit.* 5. *Graeci urbem Troiam decem annos ob unam mulierem oppugnabant.* 6. *Locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos aberat.* 7. *Quaestōris hiberna castra aberant ab imperatore millia passuum viginti quinque.* 8. *Duodeviginti annos tyrannus Syracusanorum fuit Dionysius.* 9. *Agger pedes trecentos longus erat, altus duodecim.* 10. *Per tres menses nullum mare mercatoribus nostris tutum erat.* 11. *Quinque horas nostri milites cum hostibus pugna-*

vērunt. 12. Cives Romulurn conditōrem urbis Romae appellaverunt. 13. Puer duo millia passuum ambulavit. 14. Milites in oppido multas horas pugnabant. 15. Fagus in silva multos pedes alta est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion walked through snow two feet deep. 2. The camp of the enemy is ten miles distant from the river. 3. The tree is higher than the mound of the camp. 4. The city was about a mile distant from the sea. 5. The Romans pitched their camp on the top of a hill. 6. The general will give the soldiers of the seventh legion two crowns apiece on account of their valor. 7. Geneva is a town very near the territories of the Helvetii. 8. The tree is one hundred feet high. 9. The boy walked many miles across high mountains. 10. The general collected ten thousand soldiers at the foot of the hill. 11. A marsh two thousand feet wide and three miles long was between our camp and the camp of the enemy. 12. The plain is distant from the city about eighteen miles. 13. The town is eight miles distant from the camp. 14. The Roman general was endowed with great ability. 15. The wall was ten miles long and eighteen feet high.

LESSON XXXVI.

PASSIVE VOICE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE.

1. The present, imperfect, and future indicative of the passive voice, are formed by adding endings to the present stem. These tenses are inflected as follows :—

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	āmor, <i>I am (being) loved.</i>	āmāmur, <i>we are (being) loved.</i>
2. “	āmāris or amāre, <i>thou art loved.</i>	āmāmini, <i>you are loved.</i>
3. “	amātur, <i>he (she, it) is loved.</i>	amantur, <i>they are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., **āmābār**, *I was (being) loved.* **āmābāmur**, *we were (being) loved.*
 2. " **āmābāris** or **āmābāre**, *thou wast loved.* **āmābāminī**, *you were loved.*
 3. " **āmābātūr**, *he (she, it) was loved.* **āmābantur**, *they were loved.*

FUTURE.

1. " **āmābor**, *I shall be loved.* **āmābīmur**, *we shall be loved.*
 2. " **āmābēris** or **āmābēre**, *thou wilt be loved.* **āmābīminī**, *you will be loved.*
 3. " **āmābitūr**, *he (she, it) will be loved.* **āmābuntur**, *they will be loved.*

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

2. The agent after a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **a** or **ab**: as, **Vir a sociis laudatur**, *the man is praised by his comrades.*

ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT.

3. Cause, manner, means, and instrument are denoted by the ablative without a preposition: as, **Puer pallidus irā fuit**, *the boy was pale with rage* (abl. of cause); **magno fletu Caesarem orant**, *they beseech Caesar with much weeping* (abl. of manner); **Gallorum animos verbis confirmat**, *he encourages the minds of the Gauls by his words* (abl. of means); **puerum gladio vulnerat**, *he wounds the boy with a sword* (abl. of instrument).

EXERCISE.

Decline together: **primum agmen**; **urbs alta**; **tanta virtus**; **Karthāgo**, **urbs antiqua**; **Scipio**, **vir prudens**.

Translate into English:—

1. **Pueri boni a magistris suis laudabuntur.** 2. **Hostium agri totam hiemem a militibus Romanis ferro et igni vastantur.** 3. **Karthago, urbs antiqua, a Scipione expugnabatur.** 4. **Ab omnibus bonis viris laudabor.** 5. **Num epistola tui patris ab meo socio laudatur?** 6. **Res a fugitivis nuntiatur.** 7. **Puerum alii (some) culpant, alii laudant.** 8. **Puer a patre suo educabatur.** 9. **A tuo patre et matre laudābēris.** 10. **Nonne militum animi timore perturbantur?** 11. **Tanta scientia erat imperatoris Romani.** 12. **Castra a Caesare, duce Romano, in summo monte locantur.**

13. Milites legionis septimae in colle altissimo castra locaverunt.
 14. Num castra ab militibus nostris in summo monte locantur?

Translate into Latin :—

1. I shall be praised by the soldiers of the first legion. 2. Did not the boy blame the soldier? 3. Caesar will be praised by all the soldiers. 4. Many battles were being fought by the Romans in Gaul. 5. The city is saved by a faithful slave. 6. The Gauls devastated the fields of the Romans with fire and sword. 7. The good pupil is praised by his master. 8. He will be praised by all citizens on account of his valor. 9. O boy, praise the valor of the Roman soldiers. 10. The skill of the Romans in war is praised by all men. 11. The waves of the sea are disturbed by the wind. 12. Scipio took Karthage, a very rich city, by storm. 13. Some of the soldiers fought against the Gauls for ten years. 14. The king reigned twelve years in the state.

LESSON XXXVII.

PASSIVE VOICE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION. (Continued.)

1. The perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of the indicative passive are formed from the perfect participle passive with *sum*, *to be*. Thus :

	SINGULAR.	PERFECT.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	<i>āmātus sum</i> , <i>I have been,</i> <i>or was, loved.</i>	<i>āmātī sūmus</i> , <i>we have been, or</i> <i>were, loved.</i>	
2. “	<i>āmātus es</i> , <i>thou hast been,</i> <i>or wast, loved.</i>	<i>āmātī estis</i> , <i>you have been, or were,</i> <i>loved.</i>	
3. “	<i>āmātus est</i> , <i>he has been, or</i> <i>was, loved.</i>	<i>āmātī sunt</i> , <i>they have been, or were,</i> <i>loved.</i>	

	PLUPERFECT.	
1. “	<i>āmātus eram</i> , <i>I had been</i> <i>loved.</i>	<i>āmātī erāmus</i> , <i>we had been loved.</i>
2. “	<i>āmātus eras</i> , <i>thou hadst</i> <i>been loved.</i>	<i>āmātī erātis</i> , <i>you had been loved.</i>
3. “	<i>āmātus erat</i> , <i>he had been</i> <i>loved.</i>	<i>āmātī erant</i> , <i>they had been loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. Pers., *āmātus ēro*, *I shall have been loved.* *āmāti ērimus*, *we shall have been loved.*
2. " *āmātus eris*, *thou wilt have been loved.* *āmāti eritis*, *you will have been loved.*
3. " *āmātus erit*, *he will have been loved.* *āmāti erunt*, *they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

2. The present imperative passive is inflected as follows:—

2. Pers., *āmāre*, *be thou loved.* *āmāmini*, *be ye loved.*

Note.—The perfect participle passive is regularly formed by adding *-tus* to the present stem: as, *āmā-re*, *to love*; present stem, *ama-*; perfect participle passive, *āmā-tus*. The perfect participle passive is inflected like the adjective *bonus*, and agrees with the noun to which it refers, in gender, number and case: as, *Puer amatus est*, *the boy has been loved*; *amatus* is nominative singular masculine, agreeing with *puer*. *Puella amata est*, *the girl has been loved*; *amata* is nominative singular feminine, agreeing with *puella*.

3. From the perfect participle passive, by the change of *-us* into *-um*, is formed the *supine in -um*. The supine in *-um* has the force of the English infinitive used to express *purpose*; but it is used only after *verbs of motion*: as, *Puerum portavit ludos spectātum*, *he brought the boy to see the games* (*spectātum* is the supine in *-um* after the verb of motion *portavit*.)

Note.—The *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *perfect indicative*, and the *supine*, are called *the principal parts of the verb*. The : *āmo*, *āmāre*, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, are the principal parts of *āmo*.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *porto*, *āro*, *dono*, *vōco*, *laudo*.

Translate into English :—

1. Pueri ad matrem vocati sunt. 2. Ager ab agricola aratus est.
3. Liber parvus puero donatus erit. 4. Cena a puellis parata erit.
5. Nonne viri ad hortum vocati erant? 6. Cur a pueris laudatus

es? 7. Num agricolae filii in hortum vocati sunt? 8. Floresne militibus a regina donati sunt? 9. Pugna a militibus bene pugnata est. 10. A pulchra virgine laudatus eris. 11. Nomina hominum a nauta rogata erant. 12. Galli a Romanis superati erunt. 13. Vocavit agricolam agros aratum (*supine*).

Translate into Latin :—

1. Have you been praised by the master? 2. Did he give the books to the boy? 3. Had the little book been given to the judge? 4. Was the farmer called to plough (*supine*) the field? 5. Had the meal been prepared for the sailor by the girl? 6. The brave soldiers had all been killed by the sword. 7. The fields will have been ploughed in summer. 8. Was not the fight very badly fought? 9. Have the girls been surpassed by the boys? 10. Was not the house built for the queen? 11. The beautiful girl had been praised by all. 12. Did he not bring the boy to walk among the flowers?

LESSON XXXVIII.

REVIEW OF THE PASSIVE OF AMO.

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN.

A point of time (*time when*) is expressed by the ablative: as,
Hieme noctes sunt longae, in winter the nights are long.

EXERCISE.

Decline together: Virgo pulchra, ōnus grāve, ver nōvum, ācies longa, aestas brevis.

Translate into English :—

1. Auctumno noctes sunt longiores quam aestate. 2. Omnes milites in exercitu Romano a duce laudantur. 3. Agricolae agros vērō arant. 4. Nostra consilia hostibus a servis nuntiabantur. 5. Milēs sagittis hostium vulneratur. 6. Magna copia frumenti a servis ad urbem Romam aestate proximā portabitur. 7. Pater patriae a Senatu populoque Romano appellaris. 8. Hieme mediā castra ab imperatore in collibus altissimis locantur. 9. Caesar multos annos imperator in Gallia fuit. 10. Hieme Romani in

castris erant; vere imperator ad bellum legiones excitabit. 11. Onera gravia a militibus trans montes portantur. 12. Dux hostium telo vulnerabatur. 13. Primo anno Romani Brutum consulem creaverunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. The brave boy swam across the deep river. 2. On (in) dark nights the clouds hide the moon. 3. The birds sing songs in spring among the woods. 4. The days in winter are shorter than in summer; the frost is keener than in spring. 5. You were being praised at that time (*tum*) by all the citizens. 6. The house of the farmer is smaller than that¹ of my father. 7. At daybreak the camp was pitched in the plain by the Romans. 8. The maidens were often praised by the queen on account of (*ob + acc.*) their diligence. 9. The master will be praised by all the servants. 10. The maiden was beloved by all her sisters. 11. The boy was wounded by the arrow of his brother. 12. In autumn a large quantity of corn was brought to the city by the farmers. 13. Did not the Romans collect (*compāro*) three thousand cavalry and six thousand infantry in the spring?

LESSON XXXIX.

ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs are formed from adjectives in *-us* and *-er* of the first and second declensions, by changing the genitive singular of the adjective into *ē*. Thus:—

ADJECTIVE.	GENITIVE.	ADVERB.
<i>cārus, dear,</i>	<i>cār-i,</i>	<i>cār-ē, dearly.</i>
<i>dignus, worthy,</i>	<i>dign-i,</i>	<i>dign-ē, worthily.</i>
<i>pulcher, beautiful,</i>	<i>pulchr-i,</i>	<i>pulchr-ē, beautifully.</i>
<i>miser, wretched,</i>	<i>miser-i,</i>	<i>miser-ē, wretchedly.</i>

2. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by changing the *-is* of the genitive singular into *-iter*, or—*if the adjective ends in -ns—into -ter*. Thus:—

¹Omit that.

ADJECTIVE.	GENITIVE.	ADVERB.
fortis, <i>brave,</i>	fort-is,	fort-iter, <i>bravely.</i>
gravis, <i>heavy,</i>	grav-is,	grav-iter, <i>heavily.</i>
acer, <i>sharp,</i>	acr-is,	acr-iter, <i>sharply.</i>
ferox, <i>fierce,</i>	fērōc-is,	fērōc-iter, <i>fiercely.</i>
sāpiens, <i>wise,</i>	sāpiēnt-is,	sāpiēnt-er, <i>wisely.</i>
prūdens, <i>prudent,</i>	prūdēnt-is,	prūdēnt-er, <i>prudently.</i>

3. Some adverbs have two forms, one in -e and one in -ter :
as,

ADJECTIVES.	ADVERBS.
dūrus, <i>hard,</i>	dūr-ē, dūr-iter.
firmus, <i>firm,</i>	firm-ē, firm-iter.
largus, <i>bounteous,</i>	larg-ē, larg-iter.
hūmānus, <i>courteous,</i>	hūmān-ē, hūmān-iter.
miser, <i>wretched,</i>	mīsēr-ē, mīsēr-iter.

4. The neuter accusative singular of many adjectives is used as an adverb : as,

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus, <i>much,</i>	multum.
fācilis, <i>easy,</i>	fācilē.
rēcens, <i>fresh,</i>	rēcens.
dulcis, <i>sweet,</i>	dulcē.

4. The neuter singular comparative of the adjective is used as the comparative of the adverb. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective, by changing the genitive singular ending to -ē. Thus :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
{ ADJ. cārus, <i>dear,</i>	cārīor,	cārissimus.
{ ADV. cārē,	cārīus,	cārissimē.
{ ADJ. miser, <i>wretched,</i>	mīsērīor,	mīserrīmus.
{ ADV. mīsērē,	mīsērīus,	mīserrimē.
{ ADJ. ācer, <i>sharp,</i>	ācīor,	ācerrīmus.
{ ADV. ācīter,	ācīus,	ācerrimē.
{ ADJ. prūdēns, <i>prudent,</i>	prūdēntīor,	prūdēntissimus.
{ ADV. prūdēnter,	prūdēntīus,	prūdēntissimē.

7. Some adverbs are formed irregularly from adjectives : as,

ADVERBS.

ADJECTIVE.	POSITIVE.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
bōnus, <i>good</i> ,	bēne, <i>well</i> ,	mēlius,	optimē.
mālus, <i>bad</i> ,	māle, <i>badly</i> ,	pēlus,	peccimē.
multus, <i>much</i> ,	multum, <i>much</i> ,	plūs,	plurimē or plurimum.
parvus, <i>small, little</i> ,	pārum, <i>little</i> ,	minus,	minimē.
magnus, <i>great</i> ,	magnōpēre, <i>greatly</i> ,	māgis,	maximē.

8. Some adverbs, not derived from adjectives, are compared : as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
dīū, <i>long</i> ,	dīūtius,	dīūtissimē.
saepē, <i>often</i> ,	saepius,	saepissimē.

EXERCISE.

Form adverbs from the following adjectives, and compare both adjectives and adverbs : Cēler, *swift*; altus, *high*; aeger, *sick*; similis, *like*; libens, *willing*; audax, *bold*.

Decline together : aquila celeris, dies clarior, eques fortissimus, vita mellior.

Translate into English :—

1. Romani multos annos contra Karthaginienses fortiter pugnaverunt. 2. Vere imperator unam legionem celeriter comparabit. 3. Una legio ab duce Romano aestate celerrime comparatur. 4. Homo saepe est poenā gravissimā dignus. 5. Virtus militum ab Caesare maxime laudatur. 6. Italia, nostra patria, ab omnibus civibus carissime amatur. 7. Homo in meo consulatu a Senatu saepissime laudabatur. 8. Galli magnas equitum et peditum copias celerrime comparant. 9. Locus proelio maxime idoneus est. 10. Timor maximus omnes milites exercitus saepissime occupavit. 11. Die decimo Caesar omnia arma ad oppidum celerius portabit. 12. Reliquas legiones pro castrorum portis hodie locavit. 13. Imperatorem tela hostium gravissime vulneraverunt. 14. In una¹ virtute nostra spes victoriae est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The snow was four feet deep on² the top of the mountain. 2.

1. Alone. 2. Use *in* with abl.

The army of the Romans is often defeated in war. 3. Ten legions are quickly collected by the general against the enemy. 4. The soldiers fought very bravely for four hours. 5. The general praised greatly the valor of his soldiers. 6. The generals pitched the camp in a very suitable place. 7. The man is contented with all his friends. 8. The commander thought the plain a very suitable place for a camp. 9. The Gauls were very fond of war and for many years fought very fiercely against the Germans. 10. On the next day, the soldier quickly hastened to the camp. 11. Our general is more skilled in war (*gen.*) than the leader of the enemy. 12. The town is very near a high hill (*dat.*) 13. The road to the top of the mountain is very difficult. 14. Caesar posted (*lōco*) the soldiers of the tenth legion on the right wing.

LESSON XL.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Indicative and Imperative Active.

1. The second conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ē* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as,

mōnēo, I advise,

pres. inf., *mōnē-re, to advise.*

hābēo, I have,

pres. inf., *hābē-re, to have.*

2. The part that is left after dropping the ending *-re*, is called the present stem; and the present, imperfect and future indicative are formed from it, as in the first conjugation.

3. The perfect is sometimes formed, as in the first conjugation, by adding *-vī* to the present stem: as,

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. STEM.	PERFECT.
<i>dēlēo, I destroy,</i>	<i>dēlē-re,</i>	<i>dēlē-</i>	<i>dēlēvī.</i>

4. Most verbs, however, form the perfect by dropping the final *-ē* of the present stem and adding *-vī*: as,

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. STEM.	PERFECT.
<i>mōnēo, I advise,</i>	<i>mōnē-re,</i>	<i>mōnē-</i>	<i>mōnūī.</i>

5. Some verbs drop the *-ē* of the present stem and add *-si* : as,

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. STEM.	PERFECT.
<i>mānēo, I remain,</i>	<i>mānē-re,</i>	<i>mānē-</i>	<i>man-si.</i>
<i>iūbēo, I order,</i>	<i>iūbē-re,</i>	<i>iūbē-</i>	<i>ius-si (=iub-si).</i>

6. The present imperative is got, as in the other conjugations, by dropping the *-re* of the infinitive : as,

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT IMPERATIVE.
<i>mōnēo, I advise,</i>	<i>mōnē-re,</i>	<i>mōnē.</i>
<i>iūbēo, I order,</i>	<i>iūbē-re,</i>	<i>iūbē.</i>

7. The indicative and imperative active of *mōnēo* are inflected as follows :—

Mōnēo, I advise.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers., <i>mōnēo</i>	<i>mōnēmus</i>
2. " <i>mōnēs</i>	<i>mōnētis</i>
3. " <i>mōnet</i>	<i>mōnent</i>

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>mōnēbam</i>	<i>mōnēbāmus</i>
2. " <i>mōnēbās</i>	<i>mōnēbātis</i>
3. " <i>mōnēbat</i>	<i>mōnēbant</i>

FUTURE.

1. Pers., <i>mōnēbo</i>	<i>mōnēbīmus</i>
2. " <i>mōnēbis</i>	<i>mōnēbītis</i>
3. " <i>mōnēbit</i>	<i>mōnēbunt</i>

PERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>mōnūī</i>	<i>mōnūīmus</i>
2. " <i>mōnūīsti</i>	<i>mōnūīstis</i>
3. " <i>mōnūit</i>	<i>mōnūērunt or mōnūēre</i>

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>mōnūēram</i>	<i>mōnūērāmus</i>
2. " <i>mōnūērās</i>	<i>mōnūērātis</i>
3. " <i>mōnūerat</i>	<i>mōnūērant</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers., mōnūēro	mōnūērīmus
2. " mōnūēris	mōnūērītis
3. " mōrūērit	mōnūērīnt

IMPERATIVE.

2. Pers., mōnē	mōnēte
----------------	--------

Note.—The supine of mōneo is mōnītum; and the principal parts are : mōneo, mōnēre, mōnui, mōnītum.

EXERCISE.

Decline together : hora brevis, mons altior, summus collis, ager felix, flumen altum, pater suus.

Translate into English :—

1. Hostium exercitus arcem sex menses tenuit. 2. Summum montem milites primae legionis habuērunt. 3. Magister discipulum multos annos docuit. 4. In conspectu nostri exercitus agri vastati sunt. 5. Milites naves multas frumento vinoque complēvērant. 6. Nix duos pedes alta in montibus iacet. 7. Hostium adventus militum pavorem augēbit. 8. Ab (=on) una parte Gallos flumen Rhenus, et ab altera parte montes Pyrēnaii cōtinent. 9. Pater meus in Italia multos annos mansit. 10. Veris adventus omnibus animalibus gratissimus est. 11. Equitatus hostium multas horas collem tenēbat. 12. Karthaginienses multas naves Romanorum apud insulam Siciliam delevērunt. 13. Hodie exercitus Romanus magnam spem victoriae habet.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The army of the enemy held our territories. 2. My father will remain in Italy for six months. 3. The river Garonne, the Pyrenees mountains and the Ocean bound Gaul. 4. Caesar had great hope of victory. 5. The soldiers have very great experience in war¹. 6. The lieutenant held the top of the hill for many days. 7. The thing was told to the enemy by a soldier of the legion. 8. The Gauls will quickly destroy all the houses. 9. I shall remain ten days in the city. 10. The victory of the soldiers will be pleasing to the general. 11. For many years the master

¹ Use the genitive.

taught the sons of the old man. 12. On the next day Caesar moved the army forward² ten miles and remained there for ten days. 13. The enemy pitched their camp in the plain.

² To move forward, *prömövĕo*.

LESSON XLI.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—(*Continued*).

Indicative and Imperative Passive.

The indicative and imperative passive of verbs of the second conjugation are inflected as follows :—

Mönĕor, *I am advised.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular.

1. Pers., mönĕor
2. " mönĕris or mönĕre
3. " mönĕtur

Plural.

- mönĕmur
mönĕmĭni
mönĕntur

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., mönĕbar
2. " mönĕbāris or mönĕbāre
3. " mönĕbātur

- mönĕbāmur
mönĕbāmĭni
mönĕbantur

FUTURE.

1. Pers., mönĕbor
2. " mönĕbĕris or mönĕbĕre
3. " mönĕbĭtur

- mönĕbĭmur
mönĕbĭmĭni
mönĕbuntur

PERFECT.

1. Pers., mönĭtus sum
2. " mönĭtus ĕs
3. " mönĭtus est

- mönĭti sūmus
mönĭti estis
mönĭti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., mönĭtus ĕram
2. " mönĭtus ĕrās
3. " mönĭtus ĕrat

- mönĭti ĕrāmus
mönĭti ĕrātis
mönĭti ĕrant

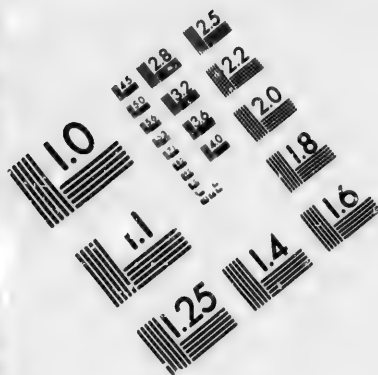
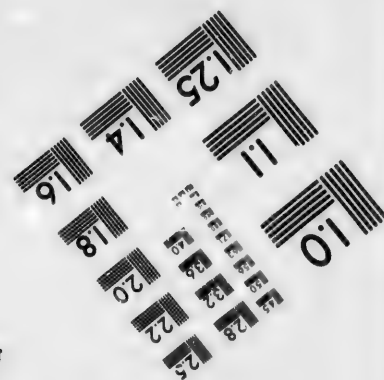
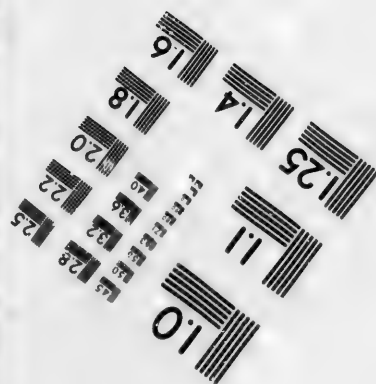
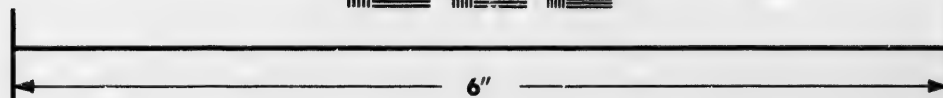
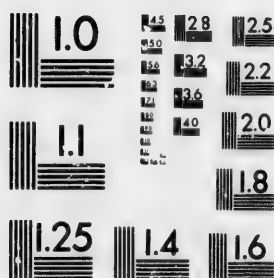


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

28
25
22
20
18

10
01

FUTURE-PERFECT.

- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. Pers., | mōnitus ēro | mōniti ērimus |
| 2. “ | mōnitus ēris | mōniti ēritis |
| 3. “ | mōnitus ērit | mōniti ērunt |

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

- | | | |
|------|--------|----------|
| 2. “ | mōnere | mōnēmini |
|------|--------|----------|

RULES FOR EXPRESSING TIME.

1. *A point of time* is expressed by the ablative : as, *Hieme noctes sunt longae, in winter the nights are long.*

2. *Within* a point of time is expressed either by the simple ablative, or by the accusative with *inter* or *intra* : as, *Paucis diebus, inter paucos dies, intra paucos dies, within a few days.*

3. *Many years after* is, *multis annis post*; *many years before* is, *multis annis ante*; as, *Multis annis post urbs expugnata est, the city was taken many years after.*

Note.—*Post multos annos* is also used for *many years after*; and *ante multos annos* for *many years before*.

4. Duration of time is expressed by the accusative : as, *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, Romulus reigned for thirty-seven years. (post is an adverb).*

5. *Ago* is expressed by *abhinc* followed by the words expressing time in the accusative or ablative : as, *Abhinc decem dies (or abhinc decem diebus) Caesar castra movit, ten days ago Caesar moved his camp.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *prima lux, quaestor fortis, summus mons, dies serenus, duo pedes.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Prima luce milites legionis summum collem tenent.* 2. *Paucis diebus post res Caesari nuntiata est.* 3. *Abhinc viginti annos oppidum a duce deletum est.* 4. *Agamemnon cum universa Graecia vix decem annis urbem Troiam expugnavit.* 5. *Hasdrubal, dux Karthaginiensium, octo fere annos imperium obtinuerat.* 6.

Multos continuos dies copiae Romanorum in castris tenebantur. 7. Urbs Karthago a Scipione abhinc multis annis est deleta. 8. Caesar castra sua ex summo monte ad planitiem movebit. 9. Mille fere et quingentos passus castra ab hostibus promota sunt. 10. Multis diebus ante de coniuratione senatum monuit servus. 11. Hostes tela sex pedes longa et unum pedem lata habēbant. 12. Multis annis post milites summum collem tenuerant. 13. Decem annis a militibus Graecis urbs Troia deleta est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. On the next day at daybreak Caesar moved his camp to the foot of the hill. 2. The hill is held by the enemy for five hours. 3. The army of Scipio destroyed Karthage, a very wealthy city, many years ago. 4. Was not the city taken by storm five years after? 5. Within ten years the general has fought many battles against the enemy. 6. The forces of the enemy are two miles distant from the city. 7. You are all silent, my friends; do you fear the decision of the judge? 8. The birds in spring build their nests in the tall trees. 9. The arrival of spring is welcome to all. 10. Within fifty years the Romans destroyed two very fierce nations. 11. The number of the soldiers was increased by a levy at the beginning of spring. 12. At the beginning of summer, the boy was seen in the fields daily. 13. The town was destroyed by the Roman commander ten years ago.

LESSON XLII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Indicative and Imperative Active.

1. The third conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ē* before the present infinitive ending *-re*. The present stem is obtained by dropping *-re*; and from it the verb stem, which always ends in a consonant or *-u*, is obtained by dropping the characteristic *-ē*: as,

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT STEM.	VERB STEM.
rēgere, to rule,	rēgē-	rēg-
mīnūere, to lessen,	mīnūē-	mīnū.

2. The perfect is formed regularly by adding *-si* to the verb stem :
as,

PRES. INFIN.	PRES. STEM.	VERB STEM.	PRES. INDIC.
rēgēre	rēgē-	rēg-	rexī (=regsi)

3. The future is formed by adding *-am* to the verb stem : as,

PRES. INFIN.	PRES. STEM.	VERB STEM.	PRES. INDIC.
rēgēre	rēgē-	rēg-	rēg-am

4. The indicative and imperative active of *rēgo*, *I rule*, are inflected as follows :—

Rēgo, I rule.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers., rēgo	rēgīmus
2. " rēgis	rēgītis
3. " rēgit	rēgunt ¹

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., rēgēbam	rēgēbāmus
2. " rēgēbās	rēgēbātis
3. " rēgēbat	rēgēbant

FUTURE.

1. Pers., rēgam	rēgēmus
2. " rēgēs	rēgetis
3. " rēget	rēgent

PERFECT.

1. Pers., rexī	rexīmus
2. " rexisti	rexistis
3. " rexit	rexērunt or rexēre

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., rexēram	rexērāmus
2. " rexērās	rexērātis
3. " rexerat	rexerant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers., rexēro	rexērīmus
2. " rexēris	rexērītis
3. " rexerit	rexerint

¹The characteristic *-ē* is changed to *-i* or *-u*.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers., *rĕgĕ**rĕgĭte*

RULES FOR EXPRESSING PLACE.

1. *Place to which* is regularly expressed by the *accusative with a preposition*, unless before the names of towns and small islands : as, *Ad Galliam, ad urbem contendit, he hastens to Gaul, to the city.* With the names of towns and small islands, *place to which* is regularly expressed by the *accusative without a preposition* : as, *Romam, Corinthum, Karthaginem, Aeginam, contendit, he hastens to Rome, Corinth, Karthage, Aegina.*¹ So also *domum (home), rus (to the country)*, are used without a preposition : as, *Domum, rus ambulat, he walks home, to the country.*

2. *Place from which* is regularly expressed by the *ablative with a preposition*, unless before the names of towns and small islands : as, *Ab Gallia, ab urbe contendit, he hastens, from Gaul, from the city.* But with the names of towns and small islands, *from* is regularly expressed by the *ablative without a preposition* : as, *Romā, Corintho, Karthagine, Aeginā contendit, he hastens from Rome, Corinth, Karthage, Aegina.* So also *domo, is from home; rure, from the country.*

3. To express *place in which*, a preposition is required, unless with the names of towns and small islands : as, *In Gallia, in urbe, vivit, he lives in Gaul, in the city.* But to express *place in which* with the names of towns or small islands, the so-called *locative*² case is used. This case has the form of (a) the genitive, if the noun is of the first or second declension singular ; (b) the ablative, if the noun is of the third declension singular or if the noun is plural : as, *Romae, at Rome; Corinthi, at Corinth; Karthagine, at Karthage; Athēnis, at Athens (Athenae, pl.); Delphis, at Delphi (Delphi, pl.); Curibus, at Cures (Cures, pl.)*

¹ When *ad* is used before the name of a town, it means *towards* or *in the neighborhood of* : as, *Ad Romam contendit, he hastens towards Rome or to the neighborhood of Rome.*

² A case which became obsolete in the later language.

So, too, *domi*, at home; *humi*, on the ground; *belli*, in war; *ruri*, in the country; *militiae*, on military service, abroad.

4. When *urbs* or *oppidum* is used in apposition to the name of a town, the preposition should be expressed : as, *Ad urbem Rōmam contendit*, he set out for the city of Rome; *ex urbe Romā properavit*, he hastened from the city of Rome; *in urbe Roma vixit*, he lived in the city of Rome. (Latin says : *The city Rome* for our *city of Rome*.)

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *proximus collis*, *puer diligens*, *extrema aestas*, *domus parva*, *primum ver*, *exercitus magnus*, *puella prudens*.

Translate into English :—

1. Caesar copias suas ad proximum collem subduxit. 2. Romae consules a civibus quotannis creantur. 3. Dīonysius pueros Corinthi abhinc multis annis docēbat. 4. Imperator ad Italiam extremā aestate contendit. 5. Vir erat non solum domi, sed etiam belli clarissimus. 6. Dux hostium fossam, duo millia passuum longam, ex castris ad flumen perduxit. 7. Vere multos dies ruri puer mansit. 8. Milites plurimi ad Karthaginem, urbem omnium rerum plenam, aestate comparati sunt. 9. Primo vere Pompeius omnes copias hostium terrā marique superavit. 10. Plato multos annos Athenis vixit. 11. In Gallia citeriore decem diebus duae legiones a Caesare comparatae sunt. 12. Lacedaemon erat honestissimum domicilium senectūtis. 13. Aestate legatus decimam legionem Romae conscripsit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. At Ephesus there was a splendid temple of Diana. 2. He was even more distinguished at home than abroad. 3. At the end of summer two legions were collected (*comparo*) at Athens. 4. He walks within five hours from the city to his home. 5. The general led his army from Rome to Athens within four months. 6. Was not the boy advised by his teacher many days ago? 7. Was he living in the beginning of spring at Rome? 8. Romulus reigned in the city of Rome for thirty-seven years. 9. Pompey hastened from Brundisium in the beginning of night. 10. The top of the hill was held by Labienus, a brave lieutenant of Caesar. 11. The general in the middle of summer enrolled (*conscribo*) three legions at Lucca,

a town of hither Gaul. 12. Within fifty days the pirates were defeated (*supero*) by Pompey. 13. The man was wounded in the battle by the darts of the enemy.

LESSON XLIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—(*Continued.*)

Formation of the Perfect Active and Supine Stems.

Note.—The principal parts of all verbs of the 3rd conjugation should, owing to their irregularity, be carefully committed to memory as they occur.

1. The perfect indicative active is regularly formed by adding *-sī*, and the supine by adding *-tum*, to the verb stem: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
régō,	rêgêre,	rexī (=regsi),	rectum, (=regtum)

2. But some verbs have a *reduplicated* perfect: *i. e.*, the first consonant of the word is prefixed with a vowel (generally *-ê*) added: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
cādo, I fall,	cādêre,	cē-cīdī,	cāsum. (=cad-tum)

Note.—The stem vowel is often weakened as in this case (*-ă* passing to *-i*).

3. Sometimes, too, the reduplication has been lost: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
findo, I cleave,	findêre,	fīdī (=fi-fidi)	fissum.

4. The stem vowel is sometimes lengthened for the perfect: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
āgo, I do,	āgêre,	ēgī,	actum.
lêgo, I choose,	lêgêre	lēgī,	lectum.

5. Sometimes, to form the perfect, an *-i* is added to the verb stem: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
rūo, <i>I rush,</i>	rūere,	rūi,	rūtum.
verto, <i>I turn,</i>	vertere,	verti,	versum.

6. Learn the principal parts of :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
mitto, <i>send,</i>	mittere,	misi,	missum.
dico, <i>tell,</i>	dicere,	dixi,	dictum.
claudio, <i>shut,</i>	claudere,	clausi,	clausum.
pello, <i>drive,</i>	pellere,	pēpuli,	pulum.
carpo, <i>pluck,</i>	carpere,	carpsi,	carptum.
pōno, <i>place,</i>	ponere,	pōsi,	pōsitum.
ālo, <i>rear,</i>	ālere,	ālui,	altum.
dūco, <i>lead,</i>	dūcere,	duxi,	ductum.
scando, <i>climb,</i>	scandere,	scandi,	scansum.
trāho, <i>draw,</i>	trāhere,	traxi,	tractum.
scribo, <i>write,</i>	scribere,	scripsi,	scriptum.
vivo, <i>live,</i>	vivere,	vixi,	victum.

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *frigus acre, servus fidēlis, tristior vultus, res maxima, respublica incolumis.*

Translate into English :—

1. Puer ad patrem Romam binas litteras quotidie misit. 2. Vespēri imperator Romanus portas castrorum claudet. 3. Primā luce nostri milites copias hostium e si mmo colle pellent. 4. Abhinc multos annos pomum in tuo horto carpsi. 5. Hieme in summis Alpihus frigus acerrimum est. 6. Hostes primum copias suas contra exercitus nostri dextrum cornu posuerunt ; deinde nostros milites in fugam magno clamore verterunt. 7. Magnis corporibus Germanorum nostri milites terrebantur. 8. Multi hostes in proeliis ceciderunt. 9. Britannii ansērem et gallinam alunt. 10. Post paucos menses Caesar copias suas ex Britannia duxit. 11. Annos circiter trecentos quinquaginta Romani insulam Britanniam tenuerunt. 12. Miles, virtute fretus, muros urbis altos scandit. 13. Omnium gentium Galli sunt belli cupidissimi.

Translate into Latin :—

1. During the winter the Romans drew their ships to the shore and remained there many months. 2. The boy wrote three letters

daily. 3. Many illustrious¹ men lived formerly at Athens, but none was more illustrious than the orator Demosthenes. 4. The king lived at Rome for many years. 5. The house of my father is three miles distant from the city. 6. On the next day, scouts told the matter to our commander. 7. Many thousands of the enemy fell in the battle. 8. At home and abroad he was equally beloved by his fellow-citizens. 9. The sun is larger than the earth. 10. After many years he will live in Corinth. 11. The father lived ten years at Karthage with his son. 12. The father sent his son to Delphi, a very rich city. 13. The farmers plucked many apples in the beginning of autumn.

LESSON XLIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION.--(Continued.)

Indicative and Imperative Passive.

1. The indicative and imperative passive of *rēgo*, *I rule*, are inflected as follows :—

Rēgor, *I am ruled*.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers., <i>rēgor</i>	<i>rēgimur</i>
2. " <i>rēgēris</i> or <i>rēgēre</i>	<i>rēgimīni</i>
3. " <i>rēgītur</i>	<i>rēguntur</i>

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>rēgēbar</i>	<i>rēgēbāmur</i>
2. " <i>rēgēbāris</i> or <i>rēgēbāre</i>	<i>rēgēbāmīni</i>
3. " <i>rēgēbātur</i>	<i>rēgēbantur</i>

FUTURE.

1. Pers., <i>rēgar</i>	<i>rēgēmur</i>
2. " <i>rēgēris</i> or <i>rēgēre</i>	<i>rēgēmīni</i>
3. " <i>rēgētur</i>	<i>rēgentur</i>

¹ Say "many" and "illustrious."

PERFECT.

1. Pers., rectus sum	recti sūmus
2. " rectus es	recti estis
3. " rectus est	recti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., rectus eram	recti ēramus
2. " rectus erās	recti erātis
3. " rectus erat	recti erant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers., rectus ero	recti erimus
2. " rectus eris	recti eritis
3. " rectus erit	recti erunt

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers., rēgēre	rēgimīni
-------------------------	-----------------

2. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, naming, regarding* and *showing*, take two accusatives in the active : as, **Populus Romanus Ciceronem consulem creavit**, *the Roman people elected Cicero consul*. Here **Ciceronem** is the direct object, and **consulem** is a part of the predicate and is called the **predicate accusative**.

In the passive, these verbs take two nominatives ; the direct object of the active becomes the subject nominative, and the predicate accusative of the active becomes the predicate nominative of the passive : as, **Cicero consul a populo Romano creatus est**, *Cicero was elected consul by the Roman people*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together : **noster miles, alter consul, fortitudo magna, bellum atrox, magister optimus**.

Translate into English :—

1. **Populus Romanus Camillum consulem postēro anno lēgit.**
2. **Camillus consul postero anno ab populo Romano lectus est.**
3. **Nonne Cicero unā voce ab omnibus consul declarabītur?**
4. **Parentes puerum Scipionem nominabunt.**
5. **Omnium virtutum maxima inter homines habita est fortitudo.**
6. **Romani duo bella**

atrocissima cum finitimis gentibus centum annos gesserunt. 7. Titus Lartius primus dictātor et Spurius Cassius magister equitum creatus est. 8. Num epistola ad patrem suum a puero Athenas missa est? 9. Romulus urbem Romam ex suo nomine appellavit. 10. Num civitas a rege crudelissimo quam a consule mitissimo melius regetur? 11. Abhinc multos annos Roma, urbs clarissima, a Romulo condita est. 12. Alter (*one*) consul domi mansit; alter bellum contra hostes patriae gessit. 13. Socrates homo sapientissimus totius orbis terrarum est habitus. 14. Urbis portae vesp̄ri clausae sunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. He was chosen consul by the votes of all the citizens. 2. Two consuls are chosen yearly by the Roman people. 3. The soldiers were considered worthy of a golden crown. 4. The father will call his son Scipio from the name of his grandfather. 5. The Karthaginians carried on wars for two hundred years against the Roman people. 6. The general took-by-storm the camp of the enemy at daybreak. 7. He will live for four years at Cures, a small town. 8. The Athenians considered Socrates the wisest of men. 9. He set out at night for Gaul accompanied-by (*cum + abl.*) his little son. 10. The man was declared consul by all the citizens. 11. Shall we not choose Caesar, the greatest commander of the Roman people? 12. Was the general chosen by the Roman people? 13. Caesar stayed a few days at Brundisium on-account-of (*ob + acc.*) the storm.

LESSON XLV.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Indicative and Imperative Active.

1. The fourth conjugation includes all verbs that have -ī (-i long) before the present infinitive ending -re. The present stem is obtained by dropping -re of the present infinitive: as,

PRESENT INFINITIVE

audire

PRESENT STEM.

audi-

2. The indicative and imperative active are inflected as follows:—

Audio, *I hear.*

PRESENT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	audio	audimus
2. “	audis	auditis
3. “	audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audiebam	audiebamus
2. “	audiebās	audiebātis
3. “	audiebat	audiebant

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	audiam	audiemus
2. “	audies	audietis
3. “	audiet	audient

PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audivi	audivimus
2. “	audivisti	audivistis
3. “	audivit	audiverunt or audivere

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audiveram	audiverāmus
2. “	audiverās	audiverātis
3. “	audiverat	audiverant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audivero	audiverimus
2. “	audiveris	audiveritis
3. “	audiverit	audiverint

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers.,	audi	audite
-----------	------	--------

VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.

3. Verbs of *asking*, *teaching* and *concealing* take two accusatives in the active, one of the person and another of the thing: as, *Pater filium musicam docuit*, *the father taught his son music*.

In the passive, the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained: as, *Fillus musicam a patre doctus est*, *the son was taught music by his father*.

Note.—*Pēto*, *I ask*, and *postūlo*, *I demand*, take the accusative of the thing and the ablative of the person with *a* (or *ab*), *from*: as, *Pacem ab Romanis petiverunt*, *they asked the Romans for peace* (= *they asked peace from the Romans*); *librum ab amico postulavit*, *he demanded a book from his friend*. *Quaero*, *to ask, seek*, takes the accusative of the thing and the ablative of the person with *a* (or *ab*), *e* (or *ex*), or *de*: as, *Causam e viro quaesivit*, *he asked a reason from the man* (or, *he asked the man for a reason*).

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *malum facinus, magna vox, moenia alta, fossa longa, partes tres, consul clarissimus*.

Translate into English:—

1. Magister puerum sententiam rogavit. 2. Puer a magistro sententiam rogātus est. 3. Catilīna iuventutem multa facinōra docebat. 4. Cicero per legatos de consiliis hostium doctus est. 5. Per silentium noctis vocem magnam in silvis audivērunt. 6. Nonne dux consilium nostros milites celavit? 7. Hostes castra fossā valloque munivērunt. 8. Orationem Ciceronis, viri clarissimi, cras audiet. 9. Romani duo bella atrocissima unā aestate finivērunt. 10. Mulieres pacem ab hostibus petunt. 11. Ariovistus, in Caesaris consulatu, rex atque amicus appellatus est. 12. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres. 13. Audite, O Romani, multa et praeclara facta maiōrum nostrorum.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Cato was asked his opinion about (*de + abl.*) the conspiracy. 2. Necessity teaches man many arts. 3. Caesar had demanded corn from the enemy ten days before. 4. On the next day the enemy asked the Britons for aid. 5. O citizens, hear the words of Socrates, the wisest of men. 6. Did not the citizens hear the speech of the consul? 7. They have demanded soldiers from the Gauls within fifty days. 8. He lived many years at Athens as¹ a

¹Omit *as*.

boy. 9. Did you hear of (*de*) the defeat of the Roman army? 10. The boy was sleeping on the ground for two hours. 11. Will our general finish the war in the summer? 12. Shall we punish the innocent and acquit the guilty? 13. The people had chosen Ancus king, ten years before.

LESSON XLVI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Indicative and Imperative Passive.

The indicative and imperative passive of *audio*, *I hear*, are inflected as follows:—

Audior, I am heard.

PRESENT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	audior	audimur
2. " "	audiris or audire	audimini
3. " "	auditur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
2. " "	audiēbāris or audiēbāre	audiēbāmini
3. " "	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	audiar	audiemur
2. " "	audieris or audiere	audiemini
3. " "	audietur	audientur

PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	auditus sum	auditi sūmus
2. " "	auditus es	auditi estis
3. " "	auditus est	auditi sunt

SUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	auditus eram	auditi ēramus
2. " "	auditus erās	auditi erātis
3. " "	auditus erat	auditi erant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	auditus ōro	auditi ōrimus
2. "	auditus ōris	auditi ōritis
3. "	auditus ōrit	auditi ōrunt

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers.,	audire	audimini
-----------	--------	----------

EXERCISE.

Conjugate like *audio*: *Punto*, *punish*; *munto*, *fortify*; *erudio*, *educate*; *vestio*, *clothe*; *servio*, *be a slave*.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne pelle leonis vestitus est? 2. Castra a multis viris muniebantur. 3. Legiōnes Romanæ nunquam servient. 4. Cur non taces? A magistro puniēris. 5. Nonne castra multis arboribus munita erant? 6. Num colles ab hostibus muniuntur? 7. Plebs Romana ignaviae serviēbat. 8. Nonne pueri a magistris erudiuntur? 9. Nonne pueri audaces graviter punientur? 10. Turris altissima a Caesare munita erit. 11. Servi nostri a fabris optime eruditi sunt. 12. O pueri virtute vestimini.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The shouts of the enemy were often heard. 2. Are not the boys being educated by their master? 3. The camp was fortified on a high hill. 4. Will you not be silent? You will be heard by the master. 5. They were clothed with the skins of lions. 6. The shout of the soldiers will be heard in the city. 7. The birds were heard in the wood. 8. Were not the boys well educated? 9. The messengers were being punished by the general. 10. Be clothed, soldier, with courage. 11. You will not be heard, boys, by the master. 12. Do not punish, O master, the best boy.

LESSON XLVII.

COGNATE ACCUSATIVE. ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

1. Verbs are often followed by an accusative of kindred origin or meaning: as, *Turpissimam vitam vivit*, *he lives a very base life*; *mirum somnium somniavit*, *he dreamt a wonderful dream*;

proellum pugnāt, he fights a battle. This is called the *cognate accusative*.

2. Many intransitive verbs, especially those expressing motion and compounded with the preposition *ad* (*to*), *circum* (*around*), *per* (*through*), *praeter* (*past*), *trans* (*across*), or *super* (*above*), take an accusative after them : as, *Cato rostra advolat, Cato flies to the hustings; equites Romani senatum circumstant, Roman knights surround the senate; murmur contionem pervasit, a murmur went through the assembly.* (Here the accusative depends on the preposition. The sentences might have been expressed thus : *Ad rostra Cato volat; equites Romani circum senatum stant; murmur per contionem vasisit*).

3. The transitive verbs, *transduco* (or *traduco*), *I lead across*, and *transporto*, *I bear across*, may take two accusatives in the active, one depending on the verb and the other on the preposition : as, *Hannibal copias Ibērum traduxit, Hannibal led the forces across the Ebro; Caesar milites navibus flumen transportat, Caesar conveys his soldiers across the river in ships.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *media aestas, album lac, dura servitus, summum consilium, omnes boni cives.*

Translate into English :—

1. Caesar omnes copias Rhenum mediā aestate traduxerat. 2. Tres jam partes copiarum Helvetii flumen traduxerunt. 3. Plerique frumenta non serunt ; pellibus vestiti sunt. 4. Naves Romanae oram Siciliae praetervectae sunt. 5. Catilina cum sociis sceleratis senatum circumstat. 6. Cato primus sententiam in senatu rogitur. 7. Hannibal nonaginta milia hominum flumen Iberum transducit. 8. Num Galli multos annos durissimam servitutem servant? 9. Summum senatūs consilium ab Romanis appellatum est. 10. Mercator hieme mare navigabit. 11. Xerxes Hellespontum exercitum traduxit. 12. Ab omnibus bonis civibus auditus eram.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Romans did not sail the sea in the middle of winter. 2. Did not the general with all his forces fly to the city? 3. The citizens stand round the temple of Jupiter. 4. The Germans led

their forces across the Rhine. 5. Will he be contented with his lot? 6. Was not a large army led across the mountains into Gaul? 7. The enemy fought a fierce battle in the middle of the plain. 8. The man lived at Athens for many years, but he was brought up at Rome. 9. In early spring Hannibal will lead a large army across the Alps. 10. He was heard by the noblest men of our state. 11. The Romans were taught the art of war by necessity. 12. Did not Marius make a very long journey in the middle of summer?

LESSON XLVIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—(*Continued*),

Verbs in -io.

1. A few verbs of the third conjugation form the present indicative in -io (active), -ior (passive), like verbs of the fourth conjugation except that -i is short (-i) throughout the present : as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE
cāpio, I take,	cāpere,	cēpi,	captum.

Cāpio, I take.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRESENT.			
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers., cāpio	cāpimus	cāpior	cāpimur
2. " cāpis	cāpitis	{ cāperis or capere	cāpimīni
3. " cāpit	cāpiunt		cāpītur
			cāpiuntur

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., cāpiēbam	cāpiēbāmus	cāpiēbar	cāpiēbāmur
2. " cāpiēbās	cāpiēbātis	{ cāpiēbāris or cāpiēbāre	cāpiēbāmīni
3. " cāpiēbat	cāpiēbant	cāpiēbātur	cāpiēbantur

FUTURE.

1. Pers., cāpiam	cāpiēmus	cāpiar	cāpiēmur
2. " cāpiēs	cāpiētis	{ cāpiēris or cāpiēre	cāpiēmīni
3. " cāpiet	cāpient	cāpiētur	cāpientur

PERFECT.

1. Pers., cēpi	cēpimus	captus sum	capti sūmus
2. " cēpisti	cēpistis	captus es	capti estis
3. " cēpit	{ cēpērunt or cēpere	captus est	capti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., cēpēram	cēpērāmus	captus ēram	capti ērāmus
2. " cēpērās	cēpērātis	captus ērās	capti ērātis
3. " cēpērat	cēpērant	captus ērat	capti ērant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers., cēpēro	cēpērīmus	captus ēro	capti ērīmus
2. " cēpēris	cēpērītis	captus ēris	capti ērītis
3. " cēpērit	cēpērīnt	captus ērit	capti ērunt

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers., cāpē	cāpīte	cāpēre	cāpimīni
----------------	--------	--------	----------

Conjugate like *capio* the following verbs :—

fūgio,	fūgēre,	fūgi,	fūgitum, <i>flee.</i>
fācio,	facēre,	fēcī,	factum, <i>do.</i>
lācio,	lācēre,	lēcī,	lactum, <i>throw.</i>
rāpio,	rāpēre,	rapūi,	raptum, <i>seize.</i>

2. Many verbs that are intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, especially verbs of *emotion*, *taste* or *smell*: as, *Sequāni Ariovisti crudelitatem horrēbant*, *the Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus*; *haec oratio antiquitatem olet*, *this speech smacks of antiquity*; *piscis mare sapit*, *the fish tastes of the sea*.

3. An adjective or a verb may take an accusative to define its meaning: as, *Puer caput vulneratur*, *the boy is wounded in the head*; *imperator dextram manum lotus est*, *the general was struck on the right hand*. Here *caput* and *manum* define the

meaning of the verbs *vulneratur* and *ictus est*. Such accusatives are called *accusatives of specification* or *closer definition*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *locus superior*, *dies clarus*, *duo consules*, *magnae copiae*; *Cicero*, *orator clarissimus*.

Translate into English :—

1. *Cives mali honores semper desperabunt.* 2. *Matronae annum, ut parentem, Brutum lugēbunt.* 3. *Omnes boni cives mortem Ciceronis maerēbant.* 4. *Salūtem reipublicae consul in bello Karthaginensi desperavit.* 5. *Nonne pueri patris mortem dolēbunt?* 6. *Miles dextrum humerum telo vulneratus est.* 7. *Puer patri vultum simillimus est.* 8. *Unus e militibus ab hoste femur vulneratur.* 9. *Puer dextram manum lapide ictus est.* 10. *Agamemnon, dux Graecorum, tempore belli Troiani vixit.* 11. *Cicero a senatu populi Romani pater patriae appellatus est.* 12. *Ciceronem unā voce universus populus consulem declaravit.* 13. *Nonne hostes, virtute freti, copias Rhenum transducent?* 14. *Maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transducitur.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will he not despair of the safety of the state? 2. Did not all the citizens mourn over the death of the noble consul? 3. The man smiled-at the losses of his friend, but mourned over his own. 4. One of the soldiers of the seventh legion was wounded in the arm by a javelin. 5. Did not the soldier wound the boy in the right knee? 6. We all shudder at the cruelty of the Roman commander. 7. He will be called the father of his country by all good men. 8. Was not the man very like his father in countenance? 9. The hill was held for many hours by the soldiers. 10. Caesar took within fifteen months many thousands of the enemy. 11. Did not all the citizens mourn over the sad death of Cicero? 12. He was elected consul by the votes of the whole people. 13. Was not the brave soldier wounded severely in the head by the dart of the enemy? 14. Were you throwing a spear?

LESSON XLIX.

THE PARTICIPLE.

1. The Latin participle has partly the nature of a verb, and partly that of an adjective. Hence the name (from *pars* and *capio*).

Like a verb, it has voice, tense, and number, and governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived ; like the adjective, it has declension and gender, and agrees with nouns.

2. Transitive verbs have, in the active, a present and a future participle ; and in the passive, a perfect and a future participle.

3. The present participle active always ends in the nominative in *-ns*, and is declined like *oriens* (p. 53) ; the future participle active ends in *-tūrus*, and is declined like *bonus* (p. 20).

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Conj., <i>āma-ns</i> , <i>loving</i> . | <i>āmā-tūrus</i> , <i>about to love</i> . |
| 2. “ <i>mōne-ns</i> , <i>advising</i> . | <i>mōnī-tūrus</i> , <i>about to advise</i> . |
| 3. “ <i>rēge-ns</i> , <i>ruling</i> . | <i>rec-tūrus</i> , <i>about to rule</i> . |
| 4. “ <i>audīe-ns</i> , <i>hearing</i> . | <i>audī-tūrus</i> , <i>about to hear</i> . |

4. The present participle expresses an act that takes place simultaneously with that of the main verb : as, *Caesar, ex urbe decēdens, legionem conscribit*, *Caesar, while leaving the city, enrolls a legion*. (Here *decēdens* is nom. sing. masc., agreeing with *Caesar*.)

5. The present participle is often used with the *case absolute* which in Latin is the *ablative*, and not, as in English, the nominative : as, *Coniuratio facta est, Tarquinio regnante*, *the conspiracy was formed in the reign of Tarquin (i.e., Tarquin reigning)*.

Note.—The future participle active often expresses *intention* : as, *Urbem capturi sumus*, *we are about to take the city (= we intend)*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Hostes, e loco superiore in nostros milites venientes, tela iaciunt
2. Patrem canentem audiui. 3. Vir suae civitatis imperium ob-

tenturus erat. 4. Milites pugnaturi clamorem faciunt. 5. Magnam multitudinem hostium fugientium nostri interfecerunt. 6. Milites, victoriam desperantes, in castris manebant. 7. Princeps pacem a Caesare flens petebat. 8. Pater filium suum decedens monuit. 9. Hostes in castra fugientes interfecimus. 10. Puerum audituri sumus. 11. Oppidum in deditionem imperator accepturus est. 12. Bellum contra Gallos gesturi eramus. 13. Legiones in oppidum reducturi sunt Romani.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar intends to carry-on war against the Gauls in spring. 2. All weeping begged peace of Caesar. 3. The Romans made an attack on the flying enemy. 4. Caesar attacked the enemy while fortifying (*part.*) their camp. 5. He praised the soldiers while bravely resisting the attack of the enemy. 6. Our men intend to make a march through the territories of the enemy. 7. Ariovistus, despairing of victory, sent messengers to Caesar. 8. Our men found many thousands of the enemy devastating the fields of the allies. 9. He intends to advise the commander. 10. They fought with the enemy while they were attacking (*part.*) our camp. 11. Many of the enemy were killed fighting. 12. They sought pardon from Caesar as he was coming (*part.*) to the camp. 13. We did not see the man coming to town.

LESSON L.

PARTICIPLES PASSIVE.

Substitutes for Perf. Part. Act.

1. There are two participles in Latin in the passive voice, the perfect ending in *-tus*, and the future in *-ndus*. Both are declined like *bonus*.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

Present stem and <i>-tus</i> . (In 3rd conj., verb stem <i>+tus</i> .)	{	1. Conj.,	<i>āmā-tus</i> , having been loved.
		2. “	<i>mōnī-tus</i> , having been advised (<i>-ē</i> of stem changed to <i>-ī</i>).
		3. “	<i>rec-tus</i> , having been ruled (= <i>reg-tus</i>).
		4. “	<i>audī-tus</i> , having been heard.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

Present stem and -ndus.	{	1. Conj.,	ama-ndus, about to be loved.
		2. "	mone-ndus, about to be advised.
		3. "	rege-ndus, about to be ruled.
		4. "	audie-ndus, about to be heard (I changed to -ie in stem).

2. The perfect participle passive expresses an act completed before that of the verb to which it is joined : as, **Homo, ab amico monitus, coniurationem fecit**, *the man, advised by his friend, formed a conspiracy*. (Here the "advising" must precede the "forming of the conspiracy.")

This participle is often used with an *ablative absolute* : as, **Opère perfecto, suos reduxit**, *the work finished, he led back his men*. But the ablative absolute should not be translated literally. Thus : **opere perfecto** is *on (or after) finishing the work, or when he had finished the work*.

3. Latin has no perfect participle active. Its place is supplied by (1) the ablative absolute with the perfect participle passive : as, **Urbe captâ, copias reduxit**, *having taken the city, he led back his forces* (i.e., *the city having been taken*); (2) **postquam** with the perf. indic. : as, **Postquam urbem cepit, copias reduxit** *after he took the city, he led back his forces*¹.

Note.—Two nouns, or an adjective and a noun, in the ablative absolute are used (as **sum**, *I am*, has no present participle) without a copula : as, **Tullo rege**, *when Tullus was king*; **Caesâre consule**, *in the consulship of Caesar*; **caelo sereno navigâmus**, *we sail when the sky is clear (=the sky being clear)*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Dâto signo, nostri milites impetum in hostes fecerunt. 2. Omnibus captivis traditis, in fines hostium postero die pervenit.

¹ **Quum**, *when*, with the past subjunctive—a very common substitute for the perf. part. act.—will be mentioned later on. Thus : *Having taken the city, he led back his forces* = **Quum urbem cepisset, copias reduxit**.

3. Re frumentariā¹ comparatā, castra movet et diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervēnit. 4. Solis occasu suas copias, multis acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. 5. Castris munitis, duas ibi legiones reliquit. 6. Responsis ad Caesarem portatis, iterum legatos cum mandatis mittit. 7. Oratione habitā, princeps concilium dimittit. 8. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fuis, imperator oppidum in deditionem accepit. 9. Milites, agris hostium vastatis, in fines Trēvīrorum perveniunt. 10. Interim nostri milites impetum amplius² horas quattuor, paucis vulneribus acceptis, sustinuērunt. 11. Bellum, Caesāre imperatore, contra Gallos decem annos gerebātur. 12. Cives cum hostibus urbem oppugnantes acriter dimicabunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldiers, having hurled their darts, broke through the line of the enemy. 2. When the news (*res*) was reported, Caesar set out into hither Gaul with five legions. 3. After all Gaul had been subdued (*abl. abs.*), Caesar hastened to Rome at the beginning of winter. 4. Having been elected consul, he left the city. 5. The soldiers fled into the thick woods, because their leader was killed (*abl. abs.*). 6. The soldiers of the enemy broke through our line after hurling their spears. 7. I saw the boy standing near the temple of Jupiter. 8. After the speech was delivered, the consul left the city. 9. Caesar, having lost his father, was taught all the arts of the Romans by his mother. 10. In the consulship of Marius, the Romans defeated Jugurtha, king of Numidia. 11. The boy was advised by his father, a most excellent man. 12. Will he not be called king by the Senate? 13. The boy was wounded in the head by a dart of the enemy.

¹ *Res frumentaria*, supply of corn; ablative absolute. ² *More than*; it has no effect on the syntax.

LESSON LI.

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The pronoun of the first person, *ēgo, I*, is inflected as follows :—

	SINGULAR.	<i>Ego, I.</i>	PLURAL.
NOM.	<i>ēgo, I.</i>		<i>nōs, we.</i>
GEN.	<i>mēi, of me.</i>		<i>nōstrum or nōstri, of us.</i>
DAT.	<i>mihī, to or for me.</i>		<i>nōbis, to or for us.</i>
ACC.	<i>mē, me.</i>		<i>nōs, us.</i>
VOC.	Wanting.		Wanting.
ABL.	<i>mē, with, from, or by me.</i>		<i>nōbis, with, from, or by us.</i>

2. The pronoun of the second person, *tū, thou*, is inflected as follows :—

	SINGULAR.	<i>Tū, thou, you (sing.)</i>	PLURAL.
NOM.	<i>tū, thou, you.</i>		<i>vōs, you or ye.</i>
GEN.	<i>tuī, of thee or you.</i>		<i>vestrum or vestri, of you.</i>
DAT.	<i>tibi, to or for thee or you</i>		<i>vōbis, to or for you.</i>
ACC.	<i>tē, thee, you.</i>		<i>vōs, you.</i>
VOC.	<i>tū, thou.</i>		<i>vōs, you.</i>
ABL.	<i>tē, with, from, by thee or you.</i>		<i>vōbis, with, by or from you.</i>

Note.—The genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum* are always used partitively (p. 69, 10) : as, *Unus nostrum, one of us*. Otherwise *nostri* and *vestri* are used : as, *Mēmor nostri, mindful of us*.

3. The pronouns of the first and second persons are rarely expressed, except for emphasis or contrast : as, *Ego laudo sed tu vitupēras, I praise, but you blame* (or, if the emphasis is to be brought out distinctly, *It is I that praise, but you that blame*.)

4. The personal pronouns of the third person are wanting, but are supplied by the demonstratives *hic, ille, is, this, that* (p. 117).

5. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of a verb : as, *Te laudas, you praise yourself*. (Here *te* is a reflexive, referring to the subject of *laudas*.) The first and second personal

pronouns are used as reflexives of the first and second persons : as, *Ego me laudo, I praise myself; nos nos laudāmus, we praise ourselves; tu te laudas, you praise yourself; vos vos laudatis, you praise yourselves.*

6. The reflexive pronoun of the third person is as follows :—

Sui, of himself.

NOM. Wanting.

GEN. *sui, of himself, (herself, itself, themselves).*

DAT. *sibi, to himself, (herself, itself, themselves).*

ACC. *se, himself, (herself, itself, themselves).*

VOC. ———

ABL. *se, with, from, by himself (herself, itself, themselves).*

Note.—*Sese* is often used for *se* in the accusative.

7. The forms of *sui* refer to the subject of the verb : as, *Caesar se laudat, Caesar praises himself; milites se laudant, the soldiers praise themselves.*

8. The preposition *cum, with*, when used with the ablative of a personal or reflexive pronoun, is written as a suffix : as, *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, with me, you, etc.*

VERBS GOVERNING A DATIVE

9. The dative is used in Latin with many verbs that in English govern the accusative. This is usual with verbs meaning *to please, favor, trust, assist* and their contraries ; also, *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon, be angry* : as, *Res omnibus hominibus placuit, the thing pleased all men; Fortuna fortibus favet, Fortune favors the brave; legibus paruit consul, as consul he obeyed the laws.*

Note.—The following, however, govern the accusative :—

Iuvo, adiuvo, I aid; delecto, I delight, laedo, offendo, I harm; iubeo, I order; vëto, prohibeo, I forbid; rego, guberno, I rule, I direct : as, *Libris me delecto, I delight myself with books; multa oculos laedunt, many things hurt the eyes.*

Fido and *confido, I trust*, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing : as, *Non tibi, sed exercitu meo confido, not you, but my army I trust.*

10. Verbs compounded with *bene*, *male*, *satis* govern the dative : as, *Optimo viro maledixit*, *he reviled a most excellent man* ; *mihi nunquam satisfecit*, *he never satisfied me*.

11. Latin puts a pronoun of the first person before one of the second, and one of the second before one of the third. A verb, therefore, referring to several subjects will be plural and agree with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third : as, *Ego et tu valémus*, *you and I are well* (note the order of the Latin) ; *tu et Tullia valētis*, *Tullia and you are well*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *exercitus meus*, *magnum præmium*, *omnis vicus*, *hostis noster*, *duæ legiones*.

Translate into English :—

1. Interdum fortuna nobis favet, sæpe nostris consiliis obstat. 2. Urbe expugnatâ, milites hostium ne nobis quidem¹ parcent. 3. Omnes civitates nobis obsides dēdērunt. 4. Pater meus tibi abhinc multos annos legionem donavit. 5. Nonne vestri amici tecum Romae manēbunt? 6. Caesar paucos dies in hostium finibus mansit ; omnibusque vicis incensis, se in castra sua recepit. 7. Nonne puer patris sui mandato parebit? 8. Num homo mihi maledixit? 9. Caesar multos annos legionibus Romanis in Gallia imperavit. 10. Nos omnes Ciceronis orationes laudavimus. 11. Tibi omnibusque malis hominibus diffido. 12. Oppido expugnato, imperator suas legiones in castra reduxit. 13. Ego et pater meus tuis consiliis paruius.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Marcus and I stayed at Rome for three years. 2. We shall all remain in the city for one year. 3. My friend easily persuaded me. 4. The scout announced to us the arrival of Caesar. 5. After the town was taken² by our men, we seized all the baggage of the enemy. 6. He sent the scout with us into Gaul. 7. He envied his brother, and did not obey the commands of the Roman people. 8. Shall we resist the legions of the Romans? 9. We resisted the

¹ Ne-quidem, *not even* (with the emphatic word intervening). ² Ablative absolute.

forces of the enemy for three months. 10. Wisdom will not always help you. 11. Caesar led his forces from the camp. 12. You and I will stay in the country in summer. 13. Will not the good citizen obey the laws of his country?

LESSON LII.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. *Sum, I am*, has three infinitive forms, viz., the present infin., *esse, to be*; the perfect infin., *fūi-esse, to have been*; and the future infin., *fūtūrus esse, to be about to be* (*fū-tūrus=fut. part.*).

2. Transitive verbs usually have three infinitive forms in the active in Latin and three in the passive: viz., the present, perfect, and future infinitive.

ACTIVE INFINITIVES.

In the active voice the infinitive is thus formed:—

Pres. infin. = pres. stem + -re,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ amā-re, to love.} \\ 2. \text{ mōnē-re, to advise.} \\ 3. \text{ rēgē-re, to rule.} \\ 4. \text{ audi-re, to hear.} \end{array} \right.$
Perf. infin. = perf. stem + -sse.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ amāvi-esse, to have loved.} \\ 2. \text{ mōnui-esse, to have advised.} \\ 3. \text{ rexi-esse, to have ruled.} \\ 4. \text{ audi-vi-esse, to have heard.} \end{array} \right.$
Future infin. = future part. act. + esse, to be.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amātūrus esse, to be about to love.} \\ \text{mōnitūrus esse, to be about to advise.} \\ \text{rectūrus esse, to be about to rule.} \\ \text{auditūrus esse, to be about to hear.} \end{array} \right.$

3. In the passive voice the infinitives are thus formed:—

PASSIVE INFINITIVES.

Present infinitive = present stem + -ri (except in third conj. which adds -i to verb stem).	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ amā-ri, to be loved.} \\ 2. \text{ mōnē-ri, to be advised.} \\ 3. \text{ rēg-i, to be ruled.} \\ 4. \text{ audi-ri, to be heard.} \end{array} \right.$
---	--

Perf. infin. = perf. part. pass. + esse , to be.	1. āmātus esse , to have been loved.
	2. mōnītus esse , to have been advised.
	3. rectus esse , to have been ruled.
	4. auditus esse , to have been heard.
Future infin. = supine + iri (pres. infin. passive of eo , I go).	1. āmātum iri , to be about to be loved.
	2. mōnītum iri , to be about to be advised.
	3. rectum iri , to be about to be ruled.
	4. audītum iri , to be about to be heard.

4. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as a noun in the neuter singular, and may be the subject or object of another verb : as, **Laudari ab aliis gratum est**, to be praised by others is a pleasant thing. (Here **laudari** is used as an indeclinable neuter noun, subject of **est**; and **gratum** agrees with it)

Note.—In this way *abstract* nouns in English are often rendered into Latin : as, **Fallere est semper turpe**, deceit (i.e., to deceive) is always base ; **parentes amare est laudabile**, filial affection is praiseworthy.

5. Many verbs take an infinitive to complete their meaning : as, **Bellum gerere parat**, he is preparing to carry on war ; **omnes discēdere iubet**, he orders all to depart.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Caesar milites suos castra vallo fossaque munire iussit. 2. Imperator cum suis militibus in provinciam pervenire contendit. 3. Iter per provinciam facere parat. 4. Constituērunt iumentorum quam maximum numerum comparare. 5. Caesar omnes equites ad castra primā luce venire iubēbit. 6. Docēre est discere. 7. Nos contra Gallos bellum gerere non dubitamus. 8. Te domum venire veto. 9. Humanum est errare. 10. Nonne tu rus cum tuo fratre venire constituisti? 11. Num vera discere cupivistis? 12. Bellum contra Romanos gerere est semper periculosum. 13. Cantūs avium audire nos saepe delectat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Order the soldier to come home. 2. The Romans are preparing to carry on war against the Gauls. 3. To hesitate in battle is to be defeated. 4. It is better to give than to receive. 5. We

desire to reach the top of the hill before daybreak. 6. Writing (*inf.*) letters to friends is a pleasant thing. 7. The senate forbade the soldiers to wage war beyond the province. 8. Why do you hesitate to read the book? 9. Teach me to seek wisdom. 10. It is often safer to run away than to fight. 11. It is pleasant to walk in the fields in spring. 12. We did not order the soldiers to obey the general.

LESSON LIII.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. The infinitive is often used with an accusative for a subject where English has a noun-clause introduced by *that*. This is the regular construction after verbs of *knowing, thinking, saying*, and the like, and with such expressions as *it is manifest, it is certain, it is true*: as, *Sentimus ignem calere, we know that fire is hot* (literally = *we know fire to be hot*); *hostes adesse dicit, he says that the enemy are near* (literally = *he says the enemy to be near*); *fratrem tuum esse fortem intellego, I understand that your brother is brave*; *certum est liberos a parentibus amari, it is certain that children are loved by their parents*; *manifestum est albam esse nivem it is evident that snow is white*. This construction is called the *accusative with infinitive*, and is one of the commonest in Latin.

2. The *tense* of the infinitive after a verb of *saying* or *thinking* in past time, is often a difficulty. Thus: *He said that the boy was at Rome* is, *Puerum Romae fuisse dixit*, if the exact words of the speaker were, *the boy was at Rome*. But if the speaker's words were, *the boy is at Rome*, then, *he said that the boy was at Rome* is, *Puerum Romae esse dixit*. The tense used by the speaker is the tense required for the infinitive.

3. The participles used in the future inf. act. and the perfect inf. pass. must agree in gender, number and case with the noun to which they refer: as, *Dixit se ab omnibus amatum esse, he said that he had been loved by all*; *audio copias a Caesare eductas esse, I hear that the forces have been led out by Caesar*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English

1. Dixit se omnia pro patria fecisse. 2. Exploratores nuntiavērunt oppidum ab Romanis captum esse. 3. Caesar pontem rescindi iubet. 4. Nuntiabit Romanos a Gallis superatos esse. 5. Negat Caesarem oppidum cepisse. 6. Legatus dicit consulem castra servavisse. 7. Puto copias hostium ignavas esse. 8. Putavistine consules fuisse iniustos? 9. Custodes nuntiavērunt hostes arcem occupavisse. 10. Nonne tibi dixērunt se copias Rhenum transduxisse? 11. Num omnes tuos milites bellum gerere iussisti? 12. Exploratoresne nuntiant hostes nostris legatis pāruisse? 13. Nonne consul tibi dixit se milites suos monuisse?

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldier says that the enemy are approaching. 2. He said that the enemy were approaching. 3. The men said that the town would be taken. 4. They said that the town had been taken. 5. He says that he has received a letter from his brother. 6. Cicero said that he had saved his native land. 7. He said that he was saving his native land. 8. They reported that the enemy were taking the town. 9. The poet says that wisdom is better than gold. 10. He said that he had always been a friend. 11. He said that the teacher praised the boy. 12. The man thought that the hills were high. 13. The king said that his soldiers were brave. 14. He thought that you were coming.

LESSON LIV.

INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF HOPING.

1. Verbs signifying *to hope, promise, undertake or swear*, take in Latin the future infinitive and the accusative of the pronoun : as, *Sperat se Romam venturum esse, he hopes to come to Rome* (literally = *he hopes that he will come to Rome*); *promitto me libros ad te missurum esse, I promise to send books to you*; *suscipis te bella gesturum esse, you undertake to carry on wars*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Imperator promittit se pacem nobiscum facturum esse. 2. Omnes milites sperant se paucis diebus oppidum capturos esse. 3. Caesar dixit se eos in deditionem recepturum esse. 4. Promittunt se neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos esse. 5. Caesar Helvetios temperaturos esse ab injuria non aestimabat. 6. Consul putavit se ab omnibus bonis civibus amatum iri. 7. Nuntiatum est oppidum captum iri. 8. Existimavērunt iter Helvetiorum magno cum periculo provinciae futurum esse. 9. Caesar respondit se civitatem conservaturum esse. 10. Obsidibus acceptis, Caesar dixit se liberis mulieribusque parcurum esse. 11. Speramus milites consulis Genevam occupaturos esse. 12. Sperasne te hodie in oppidum perventurum esse? 13. Dixit iter longum futurum esse.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Romans will demand hostages. 2. He said that the Romans would demand hostages. 3. The town will be taken by our soldiers. 4. He announced that the town would be taken by our soldiers. 5. They will remain two years at Rome. 6. They answered that they would remain two years at Rome. 7. The enemy pitched their camp at (*ad+acc.*) the foot of the hill. 8. The scouts brought word that the enemy would pitch their camp at the foot of the hill. 9. He undertook to come to the town. 10. He hopes that his friend will come to you. 11. Caesar will arrive on the fifth day. 12. He says that Caesar will arrive on the fifth day. 13. He said that the temple would be built in a few days.

LESSON LV.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.—(*Continued*).

The following are additional examples of the *Accusative with Infinitive* :—*Dicit virum scribēre*, he says that the man is writing (=the man to be writing); *dicit virum scripsisse*, he says that the man was writing, wrote, or has written; *dicit virum scripturum esse*, he says that the man will write. But : *Dixit virum scribere*,

he said that the man was writing (exact words of speaker : **Vir scribit**) ; *dixit virum scripsisse*, *he said that the man was writing, wrote, or had written*, (according as the exact words of the speaker were : **Vir scribebat**, **vir scripsit**, or **vir scripserat**) ; *dixit virum scripturum esse*, *he said that the man would write* (exact words of speaker : **Vir scribet**, *the man will write*).

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Itaque ex legionibus fabros arcessiri iubet. 2. In insulis scripserunt dies brevissimos esse. 3. Interfectos esse legatos magnamque partem exercitus in proelio cecidisse nuntiavit. 4. Omnibus rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum cum duabus legionibus pervenit. 5. Fallere alios est semper turpe. 6. Manifestum est hostes agmen mediâ nocte esse transducturos. 7. Milites legionis septimae locum ceperunt hostesque, paucis vulneribus acceptis, ex silvis expleverunt. 8. Iubet legionem mediâ nocte castra vallo fossaque munire. 9. Caesar, acceptis litteris, horâ circiter undecimâ diei statim nuntium ad hostes mittit. 10. Exploratores omnes exercitum magnum hostium in unum locum cogi nuntiaverunt. 11. Legati Aeduos omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnes equites amisisse dixerunt. 12. Gallos a populo Romano paucis annis victos esse Caesar dicit. 13. Ad Galliam magnis itineribus contendere paravit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They said that the Romans had led their forces across the river at daybreak. 2. I hear that your friend has been sick for many days. 3. I thought that the man was coming to Rome. 4. We know that the country is cold in winter and hot in summer. 5. At Rome the days are shorter in summer than they are in Britain. 6. The bravest of the Roman soldiers were slain in the battle by the cavalry of the Germans. 7. It was evident to all that our men were braver than the enemy in battle. 8. We believe that the soul of man is immortal. 9. When Caesar was consul (*abl. abs.*), the army was led against the Gauls. 10. They relate that Rome was founded by Romulus many years ago. 11. After Cicero was expelled from Rome (*part.*), he sailed to Greece. 12. To lie is base ; to speak the truth is always praiseworthy.

LESSON LVI.

DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Many verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. These are called **deponent verbs** (*verba deponentia*), because they lay aside (*depōnere*) their active form and their passive meaning : as, *Miror, I admire.*

2. Deponents occur in all four conjugations. In the first, second and fourth conjugations they have the characteristic vowel of their conjugation before the pres. infinitive pass. ending -ri. In the third conjugation this infinitive is formed by adding -i to the verb stem : as,

1st Conj.,	<i>mirā-ri, to admire,</i>	—conjugated like	<i>ama-ri.</i>
2nd "	<i>vērē-ri, to fear,</i>	" "	<i>mone-ri.</i>
3rd "	<i>sēqu-i, to follow,</i>	" "	<i>reg-i.</i>
4th "	<i>blandī-ri, to flatter,</i>	" "	<i>audī-ri.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT

Singular.

1. Pers.,	<i>miror</i>	<i>vērēor</i>	<i>sēquor</i>	<i>blandior</i>
2. "	<i>mirāris or mirāre</i>	<i>vērēris or vērēre</i>	<i>sēquēris or sēquere</i>	<i>blandīris or blandire</i>
3. "	<i>mirātur</i>	<i>vērētur</i>	<i>sēquitur</i>	<i>blanditur</i>

Plural.

1. Pers.,	<i>mirāmur</i>	<i>vērēmur</i>	<i>sēquimur</i>	<i>blandimur</i>
2. "	<i>mirāminī</i>	<i>vērēminī</i>	<i>sēquiminī</i>	<i>blandiminī</i>
3. "	<i>mirantur</i>	<i>vērentur</i>	<i>sēquantur</i>	<i>blandiuntur</i>

IMPERFECT.

Singular.

1. Pers.,	<i>mirābar</i>	<i>vērēbar</i>	<i>sēquēbar</i>	<i>blandiēbar</i>
2. "	<i>mirābāris or mirābare</i>	<i>vērēbāris or vērēbare</i>	<i>sēquēbāris or sēquēbare</i>	<i>blandiēbāris or blandiēbare</i>
3. "	<i>mirābātur</i>	<i>vērēbātur</i>	<i>sēquēbātur</i>	<i>blandiēbātur</i>

Plural.

1. Pers.,	<i>mirābāmur</i>	<i>vērēbāmur</i>	<i>sēquēbāmur</i>	<i>blandiēbāmur</i>
2. "	<i>mirābāminī</i>	<i>vērēbāminī</i>	<i>sēquēbāminī</i>	<i>blandiēbāminī</i>
3. "	<i>mirābantur</i>	<i>vērēbantur</i>	<i>sēquēbantur</i>	<i>blandiēbantur</i>

FUTURE.

Singular.

1. Pers.,	mirābor	vērēbor	sēquar	blandiar
2. "	mirābēris or mirābēre	vērēbēris or vērēbēre	sēquēris or sēquēre	blandiēris or blandiēre
3. "	mirābitur	vērēbitur	sēquētur	blandiētur

Plural.

1. Pers.,	mirābimur	vērēbimur	sēquēmur	blandiēmur
2. "	mirābimīni	vērēbimīni	sēquēminī	blandiēmīni
3. "	mirābuntur	vērēbuntur	sēquentur	blandientur

PERFECT.

Singular.

1. Pers.,	mirātus sum	vērītus sum	sēcūtus sum	blanditus sum
2. "	mirātus es	vērītus es	sēcūtus es	blanditus es
3. "	mirātus est	vērītus est	sēcūtus est	blanditus est

Plural.

1. Pers.,	mirāti sūmus	vērīti sūmus	sēcūti sūmus	blanditi sūmus
2. "	mirāti estis	vērīti estis	sēcūti estis	blanditi estis
3. "	mirāti sunt	vērīti sunt	sēcūti sunt	blanditi sunt

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.

1. Pers.,	mirātus eram	vērītus eram	sēcūtus eram	blanditus eram
2. "	mirātus erās	vērītus erās	sēcūtus erās	blanditus erās
3. "	mirātus erat	vērītus erat	sēcūtus erat	blanditus erat

Plural.

1. Pers.,	mirāti ērāmus	vērīti ērāmus	sēcūti ērāmus	blanditi ērāmus
2. "	mirāti ērātis	vērīti ērātis	sēcūti ērātis	blanditi ērātis
3. "	mirāti ērant	vērīti ērant	sēcūti ērant	blanditi ērant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

Singular.

1. Pers.,	mirātus ero	vērītus ero	sēcūtus ero	blanditus ero
2. "	mirātus eris	vērītus eris	sēcūtus eris	blanditus eris
3. "	mirātus erit	vērītus erit	sēcūtus erit	blanditus erit

Plural.

1. Pers.,	mirati	veriti erimus	secuti erimus	blanditi
	erimus			erimus
2. "	mirati eritis	veriti eritis	secuti eritis	blanditi eritis
3. "	mirati erunt	veriti erunt	secuti erunt	blanditi erunt

IMPERATIVE-PRESENT.

Singular.

mirare	verere	sequere	blandire.
---------------	---------------	----------------	------------------

Plural.

miramini	veremini	sequemini	blandimini
-----------------	-----------------	------------------	-------------------

PARTICIPLES.

Present,	mirans, admiring	verens	sequens	blandiens
Perfect,	miratus, having admired.	veritus	{ sequutus or secutus	blanditus
Future,	{ miraturus, about to admire.	veriturus	sequuturus	blanditurus
	{ mirandus, about to be admired.	verendus	sequendus	blandiendus

Note.—Deponents have a perf. part. act., but with a passive form : as, *Caesar locutus tacuit, Caesar, having spoken, was silent.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *flos recens, prima lux, vox magna, oppidum vetus, puer memor.*

Translate into English :—

1. Puella flores in silva mirata est.
2. Caesar cum omnibus copiis prima luce profectus est.
3. Milites legionis hortatus, aciem instruxit.
4. Polliciti sunt se obsides duros esse.
5. Ne conemur in fines hostium ingredi.
6. Angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur.
7. Vestigia ursi ad cavum sequuntur.
8. Puer, viam virtutis arduam sequere.
9. Voce magna audita, pueri veriti sunt.
10. Imperator dixit se vespere profecturum esse.
11. In fines suos Helvetios venire patiuntur.
12. Arbitrati sunt se ad profectionem paratos esse.
13. Manifestum est hostes e castris profectos esse.
14. Omnes pollicentur se ad oppidum cum impeditis esse venturos.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The enemy will attempt to make a march through our province.
2. Do not attempt to set out from Italy, but hasten with all your forces to Rome.
3. They thought that they were ready for all dangers.
4. Caesar will not suffer the Aedui to come into the province.
5. Caesar, with two legions, set out from Rome.
6. They promised to give hostages to our commander.
7. They tried to take the town.
8. He said that he would follow the leader of the legion.
9. They thought that the boy had followed the tracks of the bear.
10. Having promised to give hostages, the ambassador set out for home.
11. All set out from home with their baggage.
12. They attempted to take the city of Rome.
13. It was evident that they had left for Gaul.

LESSON LVII.

DEPONENT VERBS.—(*Continued.*)

The deponents *ūtōr* (*use*), *fruor* (*enjoy*), *fungor* (*discharge*), *pōtior* (*obtain*), *vescor* (*eat*), govern the ablative: as, *Plurimis rebus fruimur et utimur*, *we enjoy and use very many things*; *magnā praedā est potitus*, *he obtained a large booty*; *lacte et carne vescebantur*, *they lived on milk and flesh*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *imperator noster*, *homo sapiens*, *signum datum*, *primum agmen*, *via ardua*, *omnis pars*, *dextra manus*.

Translate into English :—

1. Omnes virtutem imperatoris nostri in proelio mirari audivimus.
2. Homo sapiens ratione optime utitur.
3. Puer, occasione tua melius utere.
4. Britanni lacte et carne vescuntur pellibusque vestiuntur.
5. Hostium impedimentis castrisque potiēmur.
6. Nonne navibus, nautae, utimini?
7. Dicit Germanos equis non usos esse.
8. Caesar, cognito consilio hostium, ad flumen Tamēsim profectus est.
9. Imperator cum unā legione oppido potiri conatus est.
10. Dux nuntiat duas legiones ab oppido profectas esse.
11. Nonne hostes sequēmur et oppido potiemur?

12. Ex omnibus partibus hostes nostros milites aggressi sunt.
 13. Platōnem, virum sapientem, philosophiam Athenis docuisse
 audivimus. 14. Nonne puerum dextram manum lapide vulner-
 atum esse dixerunt? 15. Romae natus est sed mortuus est Athenis.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Our men obtain possession of (*potior*) the enemy's camp during the night. 2. They said that the Gauls set out from their camp at daybreak. 3. It is very easy to obtain possession of the sovereignty of Gaul. 4. The boy followed the tracks of the bear to the foot of the tree. 5. Did you not employ guides for (*gen.*) the route? 6. The boy did not employ his time well. 7. After the death of his father, the man went to Athens. 8. When the city was taken, the wives and children of the conquered were all killed. 9. We shall follow our leader to the top of the hill. 10. We hope that the general will gain possession of the camp of the enemy. 11. He says that the Britons live on milk and flesh. 12. They hoped to gain possession of the town by treachery. 13. When his forces were drawn up (*abl. abs.*), he attacked the enemy vigorously.

LESSON LVIII.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Besides *is, ea, id* (*this, that*) which will be given in Lesson LX., there are in Latin three demonstrative pronouns : *Hic, this near me; iste, that near you; ille, that near him* (her or it.) They are declined as follows :—

Hic, this, i.e., this one near me (the speaker.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
GEN.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
ACC.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
ABL.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

Istē, *that near you* (the person spoken to.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	istē	istā	istud	istī	istae	istā
GEN.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istis	istis	istis
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	istā
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istis	istis	istis

Illē, *that near him* (her, it—the person or thing spoken of).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	illē	illā	illud	illī	illae	illā
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illā
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

2. **Hic** is the demonstrative of the 1st person. It refers to the person or thing near me (the speaker): as, **Hic liber**, *this book*. So too, **Haec patria**, *this land of ours*; **haec vita**, *this present life*; **his sex diebus**, *within the last six days*.

3. **Iste** is the demonstrative of the 2nd person. It refers to the person addressed: as, **Iste liber**, *that book near you*; **ista opinio**, *that opinion you hold*; **iste amicus**, *that friend of yours*. It often has the idea of contempt.

4. **Ille**, *that yonder*, is the demonstrative of the 3rd person. It refers to a person or thing other than those present. It may express therefore:—

(a) The remote in time, as opposed to the present (which is expressed by **hic**): as, **Illa antiquitas**, *that far-off past*; **illis diebus**, *in those bygone days*.

(b) *That well known, the celebrated*: as, **Illa Medea**, *the far-famed Medea*; **ille Caesar**, *the renowned Caesar*

(c) An emphatic *he, she, or it*: as, **Illos negligis**, *those (whom all men know) you disregard*.

5. *Hic* and *ille* are often contrasted. They may be used :—

(a) Of two persons already mentioned. In this case *hic* relates to the nearer, *the latter*; *ille*, to the more remote, *the former*: as, *Romulum Numa excēpit*; *hic* pace, *ille* bello melior fuit, *Numa succeeded Romulus; the latter excelled in peace, the former in war.*

(b) For *the one* and *the other*: as, *Neque hoc neque illud*, *neither the one nor the other*; *et hic et ille*, *both the one and the other* (*et.... et=both.... and*).

(c) For *some* and *others*: as, *Hi pacem, illi bellum cupiunt*, *some wish peace, others war.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *hic homo, illa muller, iste vir, illud tempus, haec vita.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Estne hic homo amicus tuus?* 2. *Istum librum esse pulchrum dixit.* 3. *Illa antiquitas a multis laudata est.* 4. *Haec arma secum ex oppido portabunt.* 5. *Ob hanc rem Caesar Romam legatos misit.* 6. *Neque hic neque ille Romae erat.* 7. *De istis rebus ad te scribam.* 8. *Hoc proelio nuntiato, omnes legiones ad Galliam duxit.* 9. *Nonne puer nuntiavit epistolam ad patrem meum missam esse?* 10. *Cicero et Caesar viri illustres erant; hic bello melior erat, ille eloquentiā.* 11. *Nos diximus milites ad omnia haec pericula esse paratos.* 12. *Illo die hunc Athenis fuisse manifestum est.* 13. *His decem diebus ad illud oppidum pervēnimus.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will not that man write me a letter about those affairs of yours? 2. This man is the best of all the citizens. 3. Are those your arms? 4. They said that that book of yours was the best of all. 5. That well-known Cicero was very eloquent. 6. Did he not say that he intended to set out for Gaul within six days? 7. Those soldiers devastated the lands of the enemy. 8. On account of this defeat we were forced to give up our arms. 9. Were those books written by you? 10. Caesar told his soldiers that he would devastate the land. 11. Neither the one nor the other was at Athens in

this year. 12. I have not seen this man within the last four days.
 13. Will not that woman be praised by all? 14. We all think that
 Caesar was greater than Pompey.

LESSON LIX.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—(Continued.)

DATIVE WITH VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

1. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **con** (for **cum**), **in**, **inter**, **ob**, (*on, against*), **post**, **prae** (*before*), **sub** (*under*), or **super** (*above*), often govern an accusative of the direct and a dative of the indirect object : as, **Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intulit**, *the Roman people made war on the Gauls*.

Note.—In the passive the direct object of the active becomes the subject, while the indirect object is still retained : as, **Bellum Gallis a populo Romano illatum est**, *war was made on the Gauls by the Roman people*.

2. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-mentioned prepositions, often govern the dative : as, **Caesar exercitum praefuit**, *Caesar commanded the army*; **consiliis consulis obstat**, *he opposes the plans of the consul*.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

3. The dative is used with the verb **sum**, *I am*, to express possession : as, **Mihi est liber**, *I have a book* (literally, *there is a book to me*.)

4. The compounds of **sum** (except **possum**, *I can*) govern the dative : as, **Tibi adsum**, *I aid you*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together : **hic bonus homo**, **haec pulchra dies**, **illa legio ista soror**, **istud tempus**, **illud mare**, **iste vir**.

Translate into English :—

1. Ego et tuus amicus tibi in omnibus periculis adersimus.
2. Caesar Labienum hibernis praefecit.
3. Hic locus ab horto circiter passus sexcentos aberat.
4. Hi, nostros disiectos adorti, proelium renovaverunt.
5. Illi divinis rebus intersunt, sacrificia procurant, religiones interpretantur.
6. His omnibus Druidibus praeest unus qui summam habet auctoritatem.
7. Nostro adventu permoti, Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.
8. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi iussit.
9. Ab his cognoscit non longe oppidum Cassivelauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munitum.
10. Legiones Latinae longā societate militiam Romanam edoctae sunt.
11. Rebus male gestis, fortuna imperatori defuit.
12. Legati sese Caesari dedituros esse atque imperata facturos polliciti sunt.
13. Vere primo Caesari in Gallia ulteriore duae legiones erant.
14. Num verum est te primo vere Romae fuisse?

Translate into Latin :—

1. Was not the general present at the battle on that day?
2. Some lack courage; others opportunity.
3. Fortune often opposes the designs of these men.
4. The Romans for many years carried on war against the Karthaginians.
5. Labienus commands the soldiers of this legion.
6. The women and children begged the Romans for peace.
7. In the consulship of Caesar, war was declared against the Gauls.
8. No man will prefer disgrace to honor.
9. In ancient times the Karthaginians had many colonies, large fleets, and great wealth.
10. These legions were drawn up in three lines in front of the camp.
11. They had already led their forces through the territory of the Sequāni.
12. The celebrated (p. 118, 4) Demosthenes is considered the greatest orator among the Greeks.
13. After subduing Greece, the celebrated Alexander defeated large forces of the Persians at the river Granicus.

LESSON LX.

IS, IDEM, IPSE.

1. The pronoun *is*, *this, that (he, she, it)*, is declined as follows :—

Is, that, (he, she, it).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>is</i>	<i>ēā</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ēī</i> or <i>īī</i>	<i>ēae</i>	<i>ēā</i>
GEN.	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>ēōrum</i>	<i>ēārum</i>	<i>ēōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>ēī</i>	<i>ēī</i>	<i>ēī</i>	<i>ēīs</i> or <i>īīs</i>	<i>ēīs</i> or <i>īīs</i>	<i>ēīs</i> or <i>īīs</i>
ACC.	<i>ēum</i>	<i>ēam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ēōs</i>	<i>ēās</i>	<i>ēā</i>
ABL.	<i>ēō</i>	<i>ēā</i>	<i>ēō</i>	<i>ēīs</i> or <i>īīs</i>	<i>ēīs</i> or <i>īīs</i>	<i>ēīs</i> or <i>īīs</i>

2. The pronoun *idem*, *the same*, is declined as follows :—

Idem, the same.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>idem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>ēīdem</i> or <i>īīdem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>
GEN.	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>ēōrundem</i>	<i>ēārundem</i>	<i>ēōrundem</i>
DAT.	<i>ēīdem</i>	<i>ēīdem</i>	<i>ēīdem</i>	<i>ēīsdem</i> or <i>īīsdem</i>	<i>ēīsdem</i> or <i>īīsdem</i>	<i>ēīsdem</i> or <i>īīsdem</i>
ACC.	<i>ēundem</i>	<i>ēandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>ēōsdem</i>	<i>ēāsdem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>
ABL.	<i>ēōdem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>	<i>ēōdem</i>	<i>ēīsdem</i> or <i>īīsdem</i>	<i>ēīsdem</i> or <i>īīsdem</i>	<i>ēīsdem</i> or <i>īīsdem</i>

3. The pronoun *ipse*, *self, himself*, is declined as follows :—

Ipse, self, himself.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ipsē</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
GEN.	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
ACC.	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsā</i>
ABL.	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

4. *Is* is a pronoun of reference, simply referring to some person or thing mentioned before : as, *Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus*

et ditissimus fuit Orgētōrix; is coniurationem nobilitatis fecit, among the *Helvetians*, *Orgetorix* was by far the noblest and most wealthy; he formed a conspiracy among the nobility. (Here is refers to *Orgetorix*.) It is often used as the personal pronoun of the 3rd person.

5. *Idem*, same, is often used to express our *also*, at the same time, at once: as, *Cicero orator erat idemque philosophus*, *Cicero was an orator and, at the same time, a philosopher*.

6. *Ipse*, self, may be added for emphasis to a noun, pronoun or numeral: as, *Caesar ipse imperavit*, *Caesar himself commanded*; *tu ipse hoc fecisti*, *you yourself did this*; *se ipsum interfecit*, *he killed himself*; *ipse navem aedificavit*, *he built the ship by himself*; *triginta ipsi dies*, *exactly thirty days*; *adventu ipso hostes terruit*, *by his mere (very) arrival he frightened the enemy*; *ipse hoc vidi*, *I saw this with my own eyes*.

Ipse is also added in the genitive singular or plural to a possessive pronoun to express *own*: as, *Mea ipsius culpa*, *my own fault*; *sua ipsius domus*, *his own house*; *vestra ipsorum amicitia*, *your own friendship*. (This gen. is in apposition with the gen. implied in the possessive.)

EXERCISE.

Decline together. *ipsa oratio*, *is obses*, *idem vir*, *ipse imperator*, *eadem mulier*, *ipsum tempus*, *ea domus*, *ipse deus*, *ea filia*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Nos ipsi illum virum pugnantes vidimus*. 2. *Decem ipsis diebus oppidum expugnavit*. 3. *Hic vir deos immortales esse negat*. 4. *Pollicetur se iis arma daturum esse*. 5. *Tu ipse quattuor dies Karthaginis mansisti*. 6. *Homo ipse dixit se paucis diebus venturum esse*. 7. *Eadem dona ad imperatorem missa sunt*. 8. *Homo servum suum vocavit et opus eius (his) laudavit*. 9. *Cicero fuit inter Romanos orator eloquentissimus; idem maximus philosophus fuit*. 10. *Dixerunt eundem virum multa bella in Italia gessisse*. 11. *Ipse vidi puerum ex urbe Roma excedentem*. 12. *Eodem die castra movit et copias ad flumen duxit*. 13. *Ipsa hac die Caesar Romae erat*. 14. *Caesar illud oppidum magno cum exercitu tribus diebus expugnavit*.

Translate into Latin :—

1. On that very night the army took the town by storm. 2. Caesar himself said that he would lead the army. 3. Did you not see the same soldiers at Rome? 4. Were the soldiers of this legion on that day at Athens? 5. Those very towns will be taken by him. 6. By his mere order he liberated the man. 7. My own house was burned by the soldiers on that day. 8. For this reason he led his army out of the camp. 9. Those same men were always very friendly to the Romans. 10. He said that they had sent one legion against the Gauls. 11. That legion remained for three months in camp. 12. It is plain that they will not start for Rome within ten days. 13. He sent the same man from Athens to Italy.

LESSON LXI.

GENITIVE WITH SUM, I AM.

1. The genitive is used with the verb *sum*, *I am*, to express our *belongs to*: as, *Haec domus est mei patris*, *this house belongs to my father*. This genitive may be used to express our *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token*: as, *Iudicis est sequi verum*, *it is the duty of a judge to follow the truth* (literally: *to follow the truth is of*, i.e., *belongs to a judge*); *hoc est praeceptoris*, *this is the business of an instructor*; *sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre*, *it is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation* (literally: *with an even mind*).

Note.—With possessive pronouns, this genitive is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive adjective: as, *Tuum* (not *tui est*) *vidēre*, *it is your duty to see*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *Is audax vir, eadem virgo, hoc ipsum tempus, illa bona mulier, ista domus, ea oratio antiqua*.

Translate into English :—

1. *Est Caesaris, obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem hostes accipere.* 2. *Semper est huius militis*

imperatorī parere. 3. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est se eam rem esse facturum. 4. Eodem die castra promovit et contra hostes contendit. 5. Castra hostium esse maxima dixit. 6. Manifestum est iudicis esse verum sequi. 7. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 8. Haec eodem tempore Caesari nuntiata sunt. 9. Hoc responso dato, de provincia decessit. 10. Consulis est senatum in curiam vocare. 11. Meum est imperatori parere. 12. Ipse horā diei quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attingit atque ibi in omnibus collibus copias armatas conspexit. 13. Abhinc triginta ipsis annis, ille Corinthi mortuus est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. This man told Caesar that the Belgae had crossed the river on the same day. 2. It is the duty of a commander to fight bravely for his native land. 3. The commander himself within the last ten days has taken two cities. 4. At the same time ambassadors were sent by the general from the camp. 5. He placed a lieutenant over the legion, but he himself set out for Gaul. 6. Caesar said that he had sent forward all the cavalry at the third watch. 7. It is the characteristic of a soldier to obey his general in all things. 8. It is the duty of a wise man to obey the laws. 9. It is your duty to favor the good. 10. We saw that the attack of the enemy was checked by his mere arrival. 11. On the same day, Caesar collected the same forces as before and marched against the enemy. 12. He said that it was the part of the people to put the best man at the head of the army (use *praeficio*, appoint.)

LESSON LXII.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The relative pronoun refers to some noun or pronoun preceding called the antecedent. The relative in Latin is *qui* (M.), *quae* (F.), and *quod* (N.)

Qui, *who*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	qui	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūlus	cūlus	cūlus	quōrum	quōrum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quībus	quībus	quībus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quībus	quībus	quībus

2. *Quisquis* and *quicumque*, *whoever*, are called indefinite relatives, the suffix *-cumque* (or *-cunque*) added to the simple relative *qui*, forming an indefinite relative, just as *-ever* added to *who*, *which*, does in English. *Quicumque* is inflected like *qui*; *quisquis* is usually found only in the forms *quisquis*, *quidquid* or *quicquid*, *quoquo*.

AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

3. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender*, *number* and *person*; but its case is determined by the verb of its own clause: as, *Puer, qui magistrum amat, bonus est*, *the boy who loves his master is good*; *puer, quem magister amat, bonus est*, *the boy whom the master loves is good*; *ego, qui te laudavi, rex sum*, *I, who praised you, am king*; *ego, quem tu laudavisti, rex sum*, *I, whom you praised, am king*.

Note 1.—The relative in the objective case, so often omitted in English, is never omitted in Latin: as, *Hic est liber quem tu mihi dedisti*, *this is the book you gave me*.

Note 2.—*Cum*, *with*, is appended to the relative, as to the personal pronouns: as, *Quicum (=quocum), quaecum, quibuscum* (not *cum quo*, &c.)

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *Quae urbs, hoc flumen, prima lux, duae legiones, filia mea, ille liber, illud oppidum, primum ver*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Urbs, quam vides, Roma est*. 2. *Tres legiones, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit*. 3. *Milites, quorum virtus magna fuit, contra hostes a Caesare missi sunt*. 4. *Dixit se*

copias flumen primā luce esse transducturum. 5. Cum quattuor legionibus, quas secum habebat, in castra properavit. 6. Dux legiones, quarum virtute urbs servata erat, laudavit. 7. Quisquis contra hostem fortiter pugnabit, coronam auream habebit. 8. Puellae, quas te vidisse dixisti, filiae meae sunt. 9. Belgae proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum saepe bellum gerunt. 10. Nonne dixisti hunc librum esse meum? 11. Milites, a quibus urbs expugnata erat, fortes fuerunt. 12. Eā re nuntiātā, Caesar legiones, quas secum habebat, praemisit. 13. Illis oppidis expugnatis, Caesar primo vere in fines hostium profectus est. 14. Vir, quicum venisti, hic est.

Translate into Latin : —

1. That house which you saw, is mine. 2. At daybreak, he led out of the camp two legions which he sent at once against the enemy. 3. He led into camp the troops, which he had assembled there. 4. They reported that the forces of the enemy had departed at the beginning of night. 5. He hastens to Rome with the legions which were then wintering at Massilia. 6. The tenth legion, which had often saved the state, was sent forward by Caesar. 7. Whoever said that he had seen me on that day, spoke falsely. 8. The city was taken by the soldiers whom he brought with him from Gaul. 9. To Caesar they sent ambassadors of whom the chief was Divico. 10. I told him that this man had often led the soldiers to battle. 11. The Aeduans, whose fields had been laid waste almost in sight of the Roman army, sent ambassadors to Caesar. 12. I will give you the book you sent me yesterday. 13. The boy you praised is the best of all.

LESSON LXIII.

CORRELATIVES.

1. Many demonstrative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs in a principal clause have corresponding relative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs in a subordinate clause. These are called *correlatives*.

2. The following correlatives should be learned : *Idem...qui*,

the same as; talis...qualis, such as; tantus...quantus, as great as; tot...quot, as many as; as, Idem est qui semper fuit, he is the same as he always was; res eodem statu quo antea stat, the matter stands in the same position as before; talis est qualis semper fuit, he is of the same character as he always was; tantam voluptatem habeo quantam tu, I have as much pleasure as you; tot erant milites quot fluctus maris, the soldiers were as many as the waves of the sea.

3. The adverbs *such, so* (limiting adjectives or adverbs) are expressed by *tam*: *as, Tam bonus homo, such a good man. As good as you, is tam bonus quam tu.*

4. The following correlative adverbs should also be learned: *Ibi...ubi, there...where; inde...unde, thence...whence; eo...quo, thither...whither; eā...quā, in that direction in which; as, Ubi natus est, ibi mortuus est, where he was born, there he died; unde profectus est, eodem properavit, he hastened to the spot from which he set out.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *quae res, qui dies, idem homo, haec mulier.*

Translate into English:—

1. Ubi adolescens abhinc multis annis educatus est, ibi senex his paucis diebus mortuus est. 2. Tantas divitias non habet quantas paucis ante annis. 3. Eadem utilitatis quae honestatis est regula. 4. Nunquam tantam contionem vidi quanta nunc haec est. 5. Eodem naves, unde profectae sunt, properavērunt. 6. Nonne hodie tanti sunt fluctus quanti heri erant? 7. Hodie homines iidem sunt qui quondam erant. 8. Talis est qualis semper fuit. 9. Quā nocte Alexander Magnus natus est, eādem templum Dianae Ephesiae deflagavit. 10. Ubi Cicero natus est, ibi C. Marius. 11. Quā dux milites duxit, eā hostes iter fecerunt. 12. Eodem anno quo Caesar copias suas in Britanniam duxit, Vergilius togam virilem sumpsit.

Translate into Latin:—

1. He lived in the place in which (use *idem qui*) he was born. 2. The farmer has not so large a harvest as he had last year. 3. We shall never see such waves as we beheld yesterday. 4. Did you not

read as many books as your sister? 5. Were not the Greeks the same in former times as they are now? 6. The same year in which the father died, the son left Italy. 7. We came to Rome on the same night as he set out for Greece. 8. They all reached the same spot as they had left a few days before. 9. The enemy followed our men by the same route as we had taken a few years before. 10. He killed as many soldiers as you. 11. He is not the same to-day as he was a year ago. 12. They remained in the same place in which they had pitched their camp a few days before. 13. The waves were such as we had never before seen.

LESSON LXIV.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The interrogative pronouns *quis*, *quæ*, *quid*, and *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *who?* *what?* are used in asking questions. They are inflected as follows:—

Quis, who?

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>quis</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quæ</i>
GEN.	<i>cūlus</i>	<i>cūlus</i>	<i>cūlus</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quæ</i>
ABL.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

2. The interrogative pronoun *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* is inflected like the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* (see p. 126).

3. *Quis* is generally used substantively and rarely as an adjective: as, *Quis hominum hoc dubitat?* *what man doubts this?* (i. e., *who of men*). *Qui* interrogative is used adjectively in agreement with its noun: as, *Qui homo hoc fecit?* *what man did this?* *quod facinus fecit?* *what crime did he commit?*

Note.—*Quis* and *qui* are often strengthened by the addition of *-nam*; *quisnam*, *quinam* are therefore emphatic interrogatives meaning *who, pray?* *who, then?*

4. *Which of two?* is *uter, utra, utrum*: as, *Uter vestrum?* *which of you two?* (see p. 27).

5. In replying to a question, where we use the simple *Yes* or *No*, the Latins repeat the verb or some emphatic word: as, *Vēnitne?* *did he come?* *Non vēnit, No; vēnit, Yes.*

Note.—They also say, however, *vero etiam, ita, certe, sane*, for *Yes*; and *non, minime, minime vero*, for *No*.

6. *Whether....or*, in a double question, is usually *utrum....an*: as, *Utrum vir lēgit an scribit?* *whether does the man read or write?*

Note.—*Or not*, after *whether*, is *annon* in principal interrogative sentences: as, *Utrum amat patriam annon?* *whether does he love his native land or not?*

GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

7. A noun in the genitive (called the *genitive of quality*) is often added to another noun to denote a quality: as, *Vir est summæ fortitudinis*, *he is a man of the highest courage*; *vir erat maximæ sapientiae*, *he was a man of the greatest wisdom*.

Note.—The noun in the genitive expressing quality has invariably an adjective with it. Thus, *a man of wisdom* is not *vir sapientiae* but *vir sapiens*. But, where the corresponding adjective is wanting, *praeditus, endowed with*, may be used with the simple ablative: as, *Homo virtute praeditus*, *a man of (endowed with) valor*.

8. The genitive of quality is chiefly used to denote *number, amount, dimension, age, time*: as, *Septuaginta navium classis*, *a fleet of seventy ships*; *viginti pedum in altitudinem est agger*, *the embankment is twenty feet high* (literally, *is of twenty feet in height*); *puer tredecim annorum*, *a boy thirteen years of age*.

Note.—Other constructions may be used for the genitive of quality: as, *Viginti pedes altus est agger*, *the embankment is high twenty feet* (acc. of extent of space); *puer tredecim annos natus*, *a boy of thirteen years of age* (i.e., *a boy born thirteen years*). So, too: *Cicero trium et quadraginta annorum consul fuit*, or *Cicero, tres et quadraginta annos natus, consul fuit*, *Cicero at the*

age of forty-three was consul; mensa est trium pedum in latitudinem, or mensa est tres pedes lata, the table is three feet wide.

9. The ablative is used, like the genitive, to express quality, especially when external qualities of dress or appearance are mentioned : as, *Homo magno capite, ore rubicundo, magnis pedibus, a man with a large head, red face, and big feet; Caesar erat excelsâ statūrâ, Caesar was of tall stature.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : *qui homo bonus? quod facinus malum? qui vir prudens? quæ urbs pulchra?*

Translate into English :—

1. *Quid proximâ, quid superiore nocte egisti?* 2. *Uter consulum nobis amicus est?* 3. *Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites hostibus occurrebant.* 4. *Utram in partem flumen fluit?* 5. *Erat inter Labienum atque hostium castra difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeceptis.* 6. *Quod periculum eo die vitavisti?* 7. *Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.* 8. *Nonne nuntiatum est omnem peditatum et levis armaturae Numidas pontem ab duce transductos esse?* 9. *Utrum patrem an patriam plus amat?* 10. *Quem Caesar hibernis eâ hieme praefecit?* 11. *Num Romanis classis viginti navium erat?* 12. *His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. *Who gave a golden crown of great weight to this soldier?* 2. *Are not serpents of great size found in that island?* 3. *Whether was this boy born at Rome or at Karthage?* 4. *The Germans were said to be men of great strength.* 5. *Two generals were chosen by the Athenians, Pericles, a man of great valor, and Sophocles, a poet of undying fame.* 6. *Was not Cimon a man of great liberality?* 7. *You possess a man of remarkable modesty, well-known valor, and approved fidelity.* 8. *It is the characteristic of a foolish man to condemn the faults of others and to be blind to (non videre) his own.* 9. *Which of the two boys is more like his father?* 10. *Will not the Romans remain at Ravenna all winter?* 11. *By whom were the Romans conquered in battle?* 12. *Who was at home on that day?* 13. *Did he not come to Rome that night? Yes.*

LESSON LXV.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. Pronouns that do not refer to any particular person or thing are called *indefinite pronouns*. The more common are :—

Quis, quae or **qua**, **quid** or **quod**, *any* (especially after *si*, *if*, *nisi*, *unless*).

Aliquis, aliquae or **aliqua**, **aliquid** or **aliquid**, *some one*.

Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or **quidquam**, *any one*.

Ullus, ulla, ullum, *any* (see p. 26), used as the adjectival form of **quisquam**.

Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam**, *a certain one*.

Quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, *each*.

Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque or **unumquodque**, *each one, each individual*.

Uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, both*.

Quivis, quaevis, quidvis or **quodvis**, *any one you like*.

Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or **quodlibet**, *any one you like*.

Utervis, utravis, utrumvis, *either of the two you like*.

Uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, *either of the two you like*.

Nemo, no one; nihil, nothing; nullus, nulla, nullum, none (p. 26).

2. In declining the above, the following rules may be observed :—

The forms in **quis** and **qui** are declined like interrogative **quis** and relative **qui**, but have **qua** or **quae** in the fem. sing., and **quid** or **quod** in the neuter singular. Forms in **quod** are adjectival, those in **quid** substantival. Thus :—

Tempus aliquod, *some time*; **temporis aliquid**, *some time* (literally, *something of time*).

Unusquisque is declined in both parts and used in the singular only; **uterque, utriusque**, is declined in the first part only.

Nemo is declined like **virgo** (p. 34), but has **nullius** for the gen. and **nullo** or **nulla** for the abl.

Nihil is neuter and used only in the nominative and accusative sing.

3. **Quisquam** (adjectival, **ullus**) is used in sentences that contain a negative, in interrogative sentences implying a negative answer,

or in comparative clauses : as, *Nec quisquam me vidit, nor did anyone see me ; nec ullus homo me vidit, nor did any man see me ; num quisquam me vidit ? did anyone see me ? num ullus homo me vidit ? did any man see me ? fortior est quam quisquam vestrum, he is braver than any of you.*

EXERCISE.

Decline together : unusquisque puer, uterque homo, mulier quaedam, miles aliquis, nullum animal.

Translate into English :—

1. Num quisquam Ciceronem eo tempore laudavit? 2. Ad puerum, cuius pater in bello interfectus est, aliquod donum mitte.
3. Homo quidam mihi dixit eum eo anno esse mortuum. 4. Uterque puer in schola erat. 5. Num ullum animal sine sensu est? 6. Nemo ei nuntiavit urbem ab hostibus esse captam. 7. Nuntiat unumquemque ab eo esse occisum. 8. Nihil temporis ab hoc puero amittitur. 9. Nemo omnium militum, qui legionis septimae sunt, a me laudabitur. 10. Nuntiat Gallos in sinistro cornu agminis locatos esse. 11. Putavisti utrumque puerum domo decessisse. 12. Duces quosdam praemisit, qui viam monstravērunt. 13. Omnes, in quibus aliquid dignitatis fuit, eō convēnērunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Some one has given a sword to each soldier. 2. Did any one say that these men were brave? 3. I heard that some Roman soldiers set out from the camp on that day. 4. A certain one told me that he had seen you on the top of the hill. 5. Both the consuls commanded an army in that year. 6. Each one of us was praised by the general. 7. Some one brought word to the camp that we had been defeated. 8. Will not some one lead us against the enemy? 9. Who will say that this general was not better than all other generals? 10. Choose any man you like (use *quisvis*) for this war. 11. Did any one of the soldiers say that he was brave? 12. Both wars were carried on by the two generals in the same year.

LESSON LXVI.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—(*Continued*).

DATIVE OF PURPOSE.

1. The dative is used to express *purpose, intention, and destination*: as, *Malo est hominibus avaritia*, *avarice is an evil* (literally, *for an evil*) *to men*; *quinque cohortes castris idio reliquit*, *he left five cohorts to guard the camp* (= *for a guard to the camp*). This is called the *dative of purpose*.

The following uses of this dative should be noted: *Vēnit nobis auxilio*, *he came to aid us* (i. e., *for an aid*); *Pericles agros suos dono reipublicae dedit*, *Pericles gave his lands as a gift to the state*; *Gallis magno erat impedimento*, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls*.

2. The dative is often used in Latin instead of the English possessive: as, *Omnes flentes Caesari sese ad pedes prolēcerunt*, *all in tears threw themselves at Caesar's feet*. This dative gives more prominence to the person mentioned: as, *Hoc mihi minu' em*, *this lessened my hope*.

EXERCISE.

Decline together: *pater meus, totus ille dies, is consul, idem beatus homo, vir quidam Romanus, eadem navis, quis nauta, homo quivis, Cicero ipse, orator clarissimus*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Hoc aliquis dicet, nec errabit.* 2. *Locus silvestris spem salutis aliquam praebebat.* 3. *Plerumque Gallis, prae magnitudine corporum suorum, brevis nostra contemptui est.* 4. *Hic homo cuiusquam iniuriae sibi non conscius est.* 5. *Neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam habetur.* 6. *Consensu eorum omnium, pace facta, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerant.* 7. *Quem locum nostri castris delegerunt?* 8. *His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militaris.* 9. *Caesar, principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se vocatis, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit.* 10. *Quisque eorum milium hoc die coronam auream ab imperatore donatus est.* 11. *Haec culpa magno dedecori tibi fuit.* 12. *Labienus,*

castris hostium potitus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit.

13. Caesar pollicitus est eam rem sibi curae esse futuram.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Romans learned some facts (*res*) from a deserter. 2. Nor have they any clothing¹, except skins. 3. Caesar had sent some soldiers of each legion to aid the allies. 4. There is timber² of every kind in Britain except beech and fir. 5. Each of the scouts came to the general and promised to aid him in the matter. 6. When he had learned these facts, he called to him some of the chiefs of the state. 7. Were there any of the chiefs present at the council of the Gauls? 8. He came to aid the Athenians in the war. 9. I have a book which, many years ago, you gave me as a present. 10. Who will not attribute this to you as a fault? 11. Civil wars have always been a great loss to a state. 12. In the consulship of Caesar this chief came with many followers to aid the Romans. 13. Of the two consuls, one fell in that battle, the other is still of great service to the state.

LESSON LXVII.

REVIEW EXERCISE ON THE PRONOUN.

Translate into English :—

1. Itaque ille legatum in Treviros, qui proximi flumini sunt, cum equitatu mittit. 2. Quibus rebus coacti, legatos ad eum de pace mittunt. 3. In fines Ambianorum pervenit qui se sine mora dederunt. 4. Unde die priore profectus est, eo pervenit. 5. Ubi puer natus educatusque erat, ibi senex mortuus est. 6. Hi proximi sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. 7. In fines Gallorum legionem cui Galba praeerat misit. 8. Sulla cum equitibus quos habebat in castra venit. 9. Helvetii legatos ad eum mittunt quorum Divico princeps fuit. 10. Illi, cum iis quae retinuerant armis, eruptionem fecerunt. 11. Longe sunt humanissimi qui Cantium incolunt. 12. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae.

¹Say "anything of clothing." ²Materia.

Translate into Latin :—

1. He persuades Castīcus, whose father had held sovereign power (*regnum*) among the Sequani for many years. 2. He said that on that day these Helvetii had sent two ambassadors to Caesar. 3. Meanwhile, by means of the legion which he had with him and the soldiers who had assembled from the province, he runs a wall from Lake Geneva to Mount Jura. 4. At daybreak he arrived at-the-place (*eo*) from which he had started the previous night. 5. The man who trusts all men is often deceived. 6. The ground (*locus*) which our men had selected as a place suitable for the camp, was of-this-character (*hic*). 7. Was not the poet Ovid born in the same year in which Cicero the orator died? 8. They said that the poet Ovid was born at Sulmo, a small town among the Peligni. 9. After the murder of Caesar (use *abl. abs.*). Brutus and Cassius fled to Asia. 10. Brutus and Cassius were defeated at Philippi by Marcus Antonius and Octavianus. 11. Cassius being informed of (*de*) the arrival of the enemy, led all his army across the bridge at daybreak. 12. He surrendered all his forces to the Roman commander, and gave up all the arms he had with him. 13. After learning these facts, he sent forward all the cavalry to the number of six thousand.

LESSON LXVIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. The subjunctive mood of *sum*, *I am*, is inflected as follows:—

		PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,		<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
2. “		<i>sis</i>	<i>sitis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
3. “		<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>
		PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,		<i>fūerim</i>	<i>fūerimus</i>	<i>fūissem</i>	<i>fūissēmus</i>
2. “		<i>fūeris</i>	<i>fūeritis</i>	<i>fūissēs</i>	<i>fūissētis</i>
3. “		<i>fūerit</i>	<i>fūerint</i>	<i>fūisset</i>	<i>fūissent</i>

2. The subjunctive active of regular verbs of the four conjugations is inflected as follows :—

PRESENT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmēm	āmēmus	mōnēam	mōnēāmus
2. “	āmēs	āmētis	mōnēās	mōnēātis
3. “	āmet	āment	mōnēat	mōnēant
1. Pers.,	rēgam	rēgāmus	audīam	audīāmus
2. “	rēgās	rēgātis	audīās	audīātis
3. “	rēgat	rēgant	audīat	audīant

IMPERFECT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmārem	āmārēmus	mōnērem	mōnērēmus
2. “	āmārēs	āmārētis	mōnērēs	mōnērētis
3. “	āmāret	āmārent	mōnēret	mōnērent
1. Pers.,	rēgērem	rēgērēmus	audīrem	audīrēmus
2. “	rēgērēs	rēgērētis	audīrēs	audīrētis
3. “	rēgēret	rēgērent	audīret	audīrent

PERFECT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmāvērīm	āmāvērīmus	mōnūērīm	mōnūērīmus
2. “	āmāvērīs	āmāvērītis	mōnūērīs	mōnūērītis
3. “	āmāvērīt	āmāvērīnt	mōnūērīt	mōnūērīnt
1. Pers.,	rexērīm	rexērīmus	audīvērīm	audīvērīmus
2. “	rexērīs	rexērītis	audīvērīs	audīvērītis
3. “	rexērīt	rexērīnt	audīvērīt	audīvērīnt

PLUPERFECT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmāvissem	āmāvissemus	mōnūissem	mōnūissemus
2. “	āmāvisseēs	āmāvissetis	mōnūisseēs	mōnūissetis
3. “	āmāvisset	āmāvisissent	mōnūisset	mōnūissent
1. Pers.,	rexissem	rexissemus	audivissem	audivissemus
2. “	rexisseēs	rexissetis	audivisseēs	audivissetis
3. “	rexisset	rexissent	audivisset	audivissent

3. The subjunctive, as opposed to the indicative (which represents the action of the verb as a fact), is said to represent the action of the verb as something only *supposed*. But this rule is of

little practical value. The meanings and uses of the subjunctive must be carefully mastered in detail.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

4. The following are three main uses of the subjunctive in simple sentences :—

(a) In *exhortations* : as, *Semper iidem simus*, *let us always be the same*. The negative is *nē* : as, *Ne hoc faciat*, *let him not do this*.

(b) In *commands*, especially negative commands (with *nē* for *not*) : as, *Ne multa discas sed multum*, *do not learn many things but much*.

Note.—Unless in general maxims like the above, the perfect is more usual here than the present : as, *Ne id dixeris*, *do not say that*.

(c) To express a *wish* : as, *Beātus sis*, *may you be happy*. When the wish may still be realized, the present or perfect is used ; when the wish is vain and can not be realized, the imperfect or pluperfect. *Utinam* (*O! that*) usually introduces a wish : as, *Adsit* or *utinam adsit*, *O! that he may be here* ; *utinam adfuerit* *O! that he may have been here* ; *utinam adesset*, *O! that he were here (now)* ; *utinam adfuisset*, *O! that he had been here (then)*. The negative in expressing a wish is usually *nē* : as, *Nē vivam si scio*, *may I not live, if I know*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Discedant ab armis omnes qui in Italia sunt.
2. Valeant, valeant cives mei ; sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati ; stet haec urbs praeclara mihi quae patria carissima.
3. Utinam P. Clodius non modo viveret, sed etiam praetor, consul, dictator esset.
4. Mali discernant se a bonis.
5. Non Romae, sed Karthagine hiemet.
6. Ne in Italia sed Syracusis hiemet.
7. Utinam ne mercatores eas res ad Belgas importavissent.
8. Exercitus noster hostes hoc proelio vincat.
9. Ne copiae Romanae a barbaris vincantur.
10. Utinam vos omnes amici Caesaris essetis.
11. Exploratores nos de adventu hostium moneant.
12. Utinam domi eo die fuisset.
13. Filius patris sui vocem audiat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. O ! that we may take this town within a few days. 2. Would that we had been living at that time ! 3. May we not be sailing the sea in the middle of winter ! 4. O ! that we may conquer our enemies in this battle. 5. Let us hear our teacher. 6. Would that we had seized the citadel ! 7. May we all love our parents who have taught us everything ! 8. O ! that the enemy may be defeated. 9. May you dwell with us a long time in this city ! 10. O ! that you may refrain from wrong-doing. 11. Do not expect to see me to-morrow. 12. Would that he had not seen me at Rome ! 13. Do not ask the boy his name.

LESSON LXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

(Continued.)

The subjunctive is also used in simple sentences :—

(a) In questions of *doubt, astonishment, or deliberation* : as, *Quid dicam? what shall I say? what am I to say? Quid dicerem? what should I have said? what was I to say?* This is called the *deliberative subjunctive*. It is often introduced by *an* : as, *An ego non venirem? ought I not to have come?*

(b) To soften an assertion, or make a concession : as, *Crēdas, you would believe; crēderes, you would have believed; hoc dixerim, I would have said this; aliquis dicat, some one may say.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Pacem petamus (p. 138, 4), nam exercitus noster superatus est. 2. Nostras copias hoc flumen audacter transducamus ; hostes enim nostro adventu fugient. 3. Milites Romani contra hostes audacter pugnent. 4. Hoc affirmaverim, eum Romam venisse. 5. Utinam, puer, optima ames. 6. Illo die Romanos esse victos crederes. 7. Hoc sine ullā dubitatione affirmaverim eloquentiam rem esse omnium difficillimam. 8. Ego censeam Catilinam cum suis sociis in Etruriam esse profecturum. 9. Nemo, his rebus cognitis, hoc

dixerit. 10. An huic cedamus? An huius condiciones audiamus? 11. An superbiam prius commemorem? 12. Quis credat animos hominum non immortales esse?

Translate into Latin :—

1. O ! that this man had warned us of (*de + abl.*) the danger. 2. What was I to do in so great a danger? 3. Am I to love the enemies of the state? 4. Are we to throw away liberty and honor? 5. Let us fight bravely for our native land. 6. Let us retreat to the nearest hill, for the number of the enemy is great. 7. You would have said that the Gauls were desirous of war. 8. Let us punish this man severely. 9. Who can deny that Caesar was the greatest general among the Romans? 10. After defeating the barbarians, let us seize their town. 11. Would that the consul were living! 12. Let them send ambassadors to Caesar concerning (*de + abl.*) peace. 13. Let him remain at home this day.

LESSON LXX.

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.

The subjunctive passive of the four conjugations is inflected as follows :—

PRESENT.

1. Pers., āmer	mōnēar	rēgar	audiar
2. " āmeris or āmere	mōnēāris or mōnēāre	rēgāris or rēgāre	audiāris or audiāre
3. " āmētur	mōnēātur	rēgātur	audiātur
1. Pers., āmēmur	mōnēāmur	rēgāmur	audiāmur
2. " āmēmīni	mōnēāmīni	rēgāmīni	audiāmīni
3. " āmentur	mōnēantur	rēgantur	audiāntur

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., āmārer	mōnērer	rēgērer	audirer
2. " āmārēris or āmārēre	mōnērēris or mōnērēre	rēgērēris or rēgērēre	audirēris or audirēre
3. " āmārētur	mōnērētur	rēgērētur	audirētur
1. Pers., āmārēmur	mōnērēmur	rēgērēmur	audirēmur
2. " āmārēmīni	mōnērēmīni	rēgērēmīni	audirēmīni
3. " āmārentur	mōnērentur	rēgērentur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	āmātus sim	mōnītus sim	rectus sim	auditus sim
2. "	āmātus sis	mōnītus sis	rectus sis	auditus sis
3. "	āmātus sit	mōnītus sit	rectus sit	auditus sit
1. Pers.,	āmāti simus	mōnīti simus	recti simus	auditi simus
2. "	āmāti sitis	mōnīti sitis	recti sitis	auditi sitis
3. "	āmāti sint	mōnīti sint	recti sint	auditi sint

PLUPERFECT.

1. P.,	āmātus essem	mōnītus essem	rectus essem	auditus essem
2. "	āmātus essēs	mōnītus essēs	rectus essēs	auditus essēs
3. "	āmātus esset	mōnītus esset	rectus esset	auditus esset
1. P.,	āmāti essēmus	mōnīti essēmus	recti essēmus	auditi essēmus
2. "	āmāti essētis	mōnīti essētis	recti essētis	auditi essētis
3. "	āmāti essent	mōnīti essent	recti essent	auditi essent

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Ne tanta occasio a vobis amittatur.
2. Utinam ne vincantur.
3. Cur mali amentur?
4. Utinam, pueri, moniti essetis.
5. Ne a malis amemini.
6. Utinam ab iis ne auditi essent.
7. Ne putaveris te tantam occasionem semper habiturum esse.
8. Utinam optimi missi essent.
9. An orationes utilissimae reipublicae semper habeantur?
10. Oppido incenso, hostium agros vastavimus.
11. Hoc potius dixerim, te nunquam monitum esse.
12. Omnes moriamur ; ne vincamur.
13. Utinam ne infelices sitis.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Do not tell me that the man has been killed.
2. O ! that he were more loved.
3. Would that you had been sent yourself!
4. Let us always be the same as (*qui*) we have ever been.
5. Let not this opportunity be lost.
6. Are such men as these to be considered brave?
7. Let the boys be well taught by the master.
8. After taking the town, he led the army over the river.
9. You would rather say this, that all the villages had been burned by him.
10. Let it not be thought that your work is done.
11. Do not think that he will revile the good.
12. O ! that you may all be fortunate.

LESSON LXXI.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

1. All the compounds of *sum* are inflected like *sum*, except *possum*, *I am able, I can* (*pōtis*, *able + sum, I am*), and *prōsum*, *I benefit*.

Possum, I am able, I can is thus inflected :—

Possum, I am able, I can.

PRESENT.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>possum</i>	<i>possūmus</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>possimus</i>
2. “	<i>pōtēs</i>	<i>pōtestis</i>	<i>possis</i>	<i>possitis</i>
3. “	<i>pōtest</i>	<i>possunt</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>pōtēram</i>	<i>pōtērāmus</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>possēmus</i>
2. “	<i>pōtērās</i>	<i>pōtērātis</i>	<i>possēs</i>	<i>possētis</i>
3. “	<i>pōtērat</i>	<i>pōtērant</i>	<i>posset</i>	<i>possent</i>

PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>pōtūi</i>	<i>pōtūimus</i>	<i>pōtūerim</i>	<i>pōtūerimus</i>
2. “	<i>pōtūisti</i>	<i>pōtūistis</i>	<i>pōtūeris</i>	<i>pōtūeritis</i>
3. “	<i>pōtūit</i>	<i>pōtūerunt or</i> <i>pōtūere</i>	<i>pōtūerit</i>	<i>pōtūerint</i>

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>pōtūeram</i>	<i>pōtūērāmus</i>	<i>pōtūissem</i>	<i>pōtūissēmus</i>
2. “	<i>pōtūērās</i>	<i>pōtūērātis</i>	<i>pōtūissēs</i>	<i>pōtūissētis</i>
3. “	<i>pōtūērat</i>	<i>pōtūērant</i>	<i>pōtūisset</i>	<i>pōtūissent</i>

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	<i>pōtēro</i>	<i>pōtērīmus</i>
2. “	<i>pōtēris</i>	<i>pōtērītis</i>
3. “	<i>pōtērit</i>	<i>pōtērunt</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>pōtūero</i>	<i>pōtūērīmus</i>
2. “	<i>pōtūeris</i>	<i>pōtūērītis</i>
3. “	<i>pōtūerit</i>	<i>pōtūerint</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
posse	pōtūisse	potens (used as an adjective = <i>powerful</i> .)

Note.—*Quam, as*, by an ellipsis of *possum* (which however is often retained), is often used with superlatives as an intensive : as, *Quam maximis* (potest) *itineribus in Italiam contendit, he hastens to Italy by as long marches as possible.*

2. *Prōsum, I help, I benefit*, is inflected like *sum* but retains its original -d (*prosum*=*prod-sum*) before a vowel and loses it before a consonant. It is inflected as follows :—

Prōsum, I help, I benefit.

PRESENT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers., <i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsūmus</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsīmus</i>
2. " <i>prōdēs</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
3. " <i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>prōdēram</i>	<i>prōdērāmus</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>	<i>prōdessēmus</i>
2. " <i>prōdērās</i>	<i>prōdērātis</i>	<i>prōdessēs</i>	<i>prōdessētis</i>
3. " <i>prōdērat</i>	<i>prōdērant</i>	<i>prōdesset</i>	<i>prōdessent</i>

PERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>prōfui</i>	<i>prōfūimus</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>	<i>prōfuerimus</i>
2. " <i>prōfūisti</i>	<i>prōfūistis</i>	<i>prōfueris</i>	<i>prōfueritis</i>
3. " <i>prōfuit</i>	<i>prōfuerunt</i> or <i>prōfūere</i>	<i>prōfuerit</i>	<i>prōfuerint</i>

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>prōfueram</i>	<i>prōfuerāmus</i>	<i>prōfuissem</i>	<i>prōfuissemus</i>
2. " <i>prōfuerās</i>	<i>prōfuerātis</i>	<i>prōfuisēs</i>	<i>prōfuisētis</i>
3. " <i>prōfuerat</i>	<i>prōfuerant</i>	<i>prōfuisset</i>	<i>prōfuisSENT</i>

FUTURE.

1. Pers., <i>prōdēro</i>	<i>prōdērīmus</i>
2. " <i>prōdēris</i>	<i>prōdērītis</i>
3. " <i>prōdērit</i>	<i>prōdērunt</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. Pers., | prōfūēro | prōfūērīmus |
| 2. " | prōfūēris | prōfūērītis |
| 3. " | prōfūērit | prōfūērīnt |

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

- | | | |
|------|--------|----------|
| 2. " | prōdēs | prōdeste |
|------|--------|----------|

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

prōdesse

PERFECT.

prōfuisse

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

prōfūtūrus, a, um

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Hoc facere non potuit. 2. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves tempestate rejectas cursum tenēre non potuisse. 3. Quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit. 4. His legatis Gallorum persuadēre non potērit. 5. Quis tantum numerum militum illi provinciae imperare possit? (p. 139). 6. Id oppidum ex itinere oppugnare conatus, propter muri altitudinem expugnare non potuit. 7. Caesar ex provincia quam maximas copias militum comparavit. 8. Quis mihi in tanto periculo prosit? 9. Caesar, corparata re frumentaria, quam celerrime ad Ariovistum contendit. 10. Non tibi proderit contra naturam niti. 11. Quid tibi tempus in his rebus consumere profuit? 12. Quid in tanto discrimine reipublicae facere possim? 13. Primo vere omnes gentes Gallicae in unum locum a duce Romano coactae sunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Shall I not be able to help you at that time? 2. It will benefit the state to collect all the forces possible at the beginning of summer. 3. Were not the Romans able to conquer the Gauls? 4. It will be of great advantage to you to reach Italy on that day. 5. Were you not able to reach Rome on the same night? 6. What can I do when so many enemies crowd around me (*abl. abs.*)? 7. Am I to throw away my arms or boldly march against them?

8. The Aedui were the most powerful nation of all Gaul. 9. Assemble as many troops as possible and advance boldly against the enemy. 10. On that day he gave each of his soldiers two bushels of corn. 11. He learned from the scouts that the ships of the enemy could not reach the river. 12. Caesar replied as briefly as possible to the words of the ambassador. 13. I could not speak for (*prae + abl.*) tears.

LESSON LXXII.

DEFECTIVE VERBS—MEMINI, COEPI, ŌDI, NŌVI.

1. Verbs that are wanting in some of their parts are called *defective verbs*. The following are used only in the perfect and tenses derived from the perfect: **Mēmini**, *I remember*; **coepl**, *I begin*; **ōdi**, *I hate*; **nōvi**, *I know*. They are inflected as follows:—

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	mēmini, isti, &c.	coepl	ōdi	nōvi
Pluperfect.	mēmīnēram	coepēram	ōdēram	nōvēram
Fut. Perfect.	mēmīnēro	coepēro	ōdēro	nōvēro

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	mēmīnērim	coepērim	ōdērim	nōvērim
Pluperfect.	mēmīnissem	coepissem	ōdissem	nōvissem

IMPERATIVE.

Fut., 2. Sing.	memento	Wanting.	Wanting.	Wanting.
2. Pl.	mementōte			

INFINITIVE.

Perfect	mēmīnisce	coepisce	ōdisce	nōvisce
Future.	Wanting.	coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse	Wanting.

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect Pass.	Wanting.	coeptus	ōsus	nōtus
Fut. Active.	Wanting.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus	

2. **Nōvi** is properly the perfect of *nosco* (*-gnosco* in compounds), *I begin to know*.

3. Each of the above verbs has in the perfect, a present meaning, in the pluperfect, an imperfect meaning, and in the future

perfect, a future meaning : as, *Coepi, I begin ; coepēram, I began ; coepero, I shall begin.* (*Coepi, however, means both I begin and I began.*)

4. *Coepi* (active form) is used when an active infinitive follows : as, *Urbem aedificare coepit, he began to build the city ;* while *coeptus sum* (passive form) is used when a passive infinitive follows : as, *Urbs aedificari coepta est, the city began to be built.*

5. Other defective verbs are : *Aio, I say ; fari, to speak ;* *inquam, I say.* These are given in the Appendix.

6. *Inquam* is used, like the English *says he*, in direct quotations : as, "*Ego,*" inquit, "*cras veniam,*" "*I,*" he says, "*shall come to-morrow.*" The nominative, if expressed, comes after *inquam*, inquit.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

7. The following verbs usually take a genitive after them :—*Misērōr, miseresco, (feel pity), meminī (remember), obliviscor (forget), reminiscor (remember) :* as, *Miserēre labōrum, pity sufferings ; huius diēi meminero, I shall remember this day.*

Note.—*Misērōr, āri, ātus sum (express pity for),* takes the accusative : as, *Casum suum miseratur, he bewails his misfortune.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Nec unquam obliviscar illius noctis.* 2. *Forum magno numero interfecto, imperator ex itinere oppidum hostium oppugnare coepit.* 3. *Re frumentariā comparatā, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat.* 4. *Nunquam virtutis Romanorum obliviscar.* 5. *Semper in civitate, quibus opes multae sunt, vetera odere, nova exoptant.* 6. *Helvetii nostros proelio lacerare coeperunt.* 7. *In murum lapides iaci coepti sunt.* 8. *Quam (how) multa meminērunt senes !* 9. *Eundem legatum omnibus copiis praefecit.* 10. *Solent homines ea bene meminisse quae pueri didicerunt.* 11. *Potestne, inquit Epicurus, quidquam voluptate esse melius ?* 12. *Non cuiusvis hominis est iniuriarum oblivisci.* 13. *Illi, cum equitatu ad flumen progressi, e loco superiore nostros prohibere coeperunt.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. They began to follow and attack our men in the rear. 2. We

cannot forget the old wrongs of our ancestors. 3. Let the Roman people remember the ancient valor of the Gauls. 4. At midday a large quantity of dust began to be seen. 5. Remember (*pl.*) us and our wrongs. 6. He hated the Roman people on-account-of (*ob*) their cruelty. 7. At daybreak Caesar began to move forward the engines against the town. 8. O ! that he may not forget your kindness. 9. Pity the many sufferings which we have endured. 10. "I will never," he says, "betray my native land to its bitterest enemies." 11. The general began to lead his forces across the river a few hours ago. 12. Stones began to be thrown against our men by the enemy. 13. Can anything be sadder than his death ?

LESSON LXXIII.

IRREGULAR VERB—VŎLO, NŎLO, MĀLO.

1. The irregular verbs *vŏlo*, *I wish, will*, and its compounds *nŏlo* (*nē, not + vŏlo*), *I am unwilling*, and *mālo* (*magis, more + vŏlo*), *I prefer*, are thus inflected :—

PRESENT.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>vŏlo</i>	<i>vŏlŭmus</i>	<i>vĕlim</i>	<i>vĕlimus</i>
2. "	<i>vis</i>	<i>vultis</i>	<i>vĕlis</i>	<i>vĕlitis</i>
3. "	<i>vult</i>	<i>vŏlunt</i>	<i>vĕlit</i>	<i>vĕlint</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>nŏlo</i>	<i>nŏlŭmus</i>	<i>nŏlim</i>	<i>nŏlimus</i>
2. "	<i>non vis</i>	<i>non vultis</i>	<i>nŏlis</i>	<i>nŏlitis</i>
3. "	<i>non vult</i>	<i>nŏlunt</i>	<i>nŏlit</i>	<i>nŏlint</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>mālo</i>	<i>mālŭmus</i>	<i>mālim</i>	<i>mālimus</i>
2. "	<i>māvis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>	<i>mālis</i>	<i>mālitis</i>
3. "	<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālunt</i>	<i>mālit</i>	<i>mālint</i>

IMPERFECT.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>vŏlēbam</i>	<i>vŏlēbāmus</i>	<i>vellem</i>	<i>vellēmus</i>
2. "	<i>vŏlēbās</i>	<i>vŏlēbātis</i>	<i>vellēs</i>	<i>vellētis</i>
3. "	<i>vŏlēbat</i>	<i>vŏlēbant</i>	<i>vellet</i>	<i>vellent</i>

1. Pers.,	nōlēbam	nōlēbāmus	nollem	nollēmus
2. "	nōlēbās	nōlēbātis	nollēs	nollētis
3. "	nōlēbat	nōlēbant	nollet	nollent
1. Pers.,	mālēbam	mālēbāmus	mallem	mallēmus
2. "	mālēbas	mālēbātis	mallēs	mallētis
3. "	mālēbat	mālēbant	mallet	mallent

FUTURE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	vōlam	vōlēmus	None
2. "	vōlēs	vōlētis	None
3. "	vōlet	vōlent	
1. Pers.,	nōlam	nōlēmus	
2. "	nōlēs	nōlētis	
3. "	nōlet	nōlent	
1. Pers.,	mālam	mālēmus	
2. "	mālēs	mālētis	
3. "	mālet	mālent	

PERFECT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	vōlūi	vōlūimus	<i>Singular.</i>
2. "	vōlūisti	vōlūistis	<i>Plural.</i>
3. "	vōlūit	vōlūerunt or vōlūere	
1. Pers.,	nōlūi	nōlūimus	vōlūerim
2. "	nōlūisti	nōlūistis	vōlūerimus
3. "	nōlūit	nōlūerunt or nōlūere	vōlūeris
1. Pers.,	mālūi	mālūimus	vōlūeritis
2. "	mālūisti	mālūistis	vōlūeritis
3. "	mālūit	mālūerunt or mālūere	vōlūerint
1. Pers.,	mālūi	mālūimus	mālūerim
2. "	mālūisti	mālūistis	mālūerimus
3. "	mālūit	mālūerunt or mālūere	mālūeris
			mālūeritis

PLUPERFECT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	vōlūeram	vōlūerāmus	<i>Sing.</i>
2. "	vōlūerās	vōlūerātis	<i>Plural.</i>
3. "	vōlūerat	vōlūerant	
1. Pers.,	vōlūeram	vōlūerāmus	vōlūissem
2. "	vōlūerās	vōlūerātis	vōlūissemus
3. "	vōlūerat	vōlūerant	vōlūissetis
			vōlūisset
			vōlūissent

1. Pers.,	nōlūēram	nōlūērāmus	nōlūissem	nōlūissēmus
2. "	nōlūērās	nōlūērātis	nōlūissēs	nōlūissētis
3. "	nōlūērat	nōlūērant	nōlūisset	nōlūissent
1. Pers.,	mālūēram	mālūērāmus	mālūissem	mālūissēmus
2. "	mālūērās	mālūērātis	mālūissēs	mālūissētis
3. "	mālūērat	mālūērant	mālūisset	mālūissent

FUTURE-PERFECT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	vōlūēro	vōlūērīmus	None
2. "	vōlūēris	vōlūērītis	
3. "	vōlūērit	vōlūērīnt	
1. Pers.,	nōlūēro	nōlūērīmus	
2. "	nōlūēris	nōlūērītis	
3. "	nōlūērit	nōlūērīnt	
1. Pers.,	mālūēro	mālūērīmus	
2. "	mālūēris	mālūērītis	
3. "	mālūērit	mālūērīnt	

IMPERATIVE.

Present	nōlī	nōlīte
---------	------	--------

INFINITIVE.

Present	velle	nolle	malle
Perfect	vōlūisse	nōlūisse	mālūisse

PARTICIPLES.

Present	vōlens (used as an adjective= <i>willing</i> .)	nōlens (used as an adjective= <i>unwilling</i> .)
---------	--	--

2. Vōlo, nōlo and mālō are followed by an infinitive without an accusative : as, *Romam venire vult, he wishes to come to Rome; ad Galliam venire non vult, he is unwilling to come to Gaul.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Caesar cum Helvetiis bellum gerere volebat. 2. Consules civem Romanum interficere voluērunt. 3. Milites eo die maluerunt in castris manēre quam (=rather than) pugnare. 4. Mons, quem Caesar a Crasso teneri volebat, ab hostibus tenebatur. 5. Num Ariovistus in proelio cum Romanis contendere voluit? 6.

Quis mare hieme navigare velit? 7. Utinam hostes bellum contra Romanos gerere vellent. 8. Dixit se velle eum regem illius civitatis facere. 9. Caesar se ab Gallia discedere nolle dixit. 10. Nonne hiemem Romae agere vultis? 11. Utrum pugnare an fugere mavis? 12. Nonne domi esse quam in urbe hostium male-tis? 13. "Mālo," inquit Cicero, "cum Platōne errare quam cum aliis recte facere."

Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar wished to finish the war before winter. 2. Why do you wish to do such things? 3. We are unwilling to do it, for it will injure our friends. 4. He preferred to remain in the country in summer; in winter, at Rome. 5. Who was willing to sail the sea in winter? 6. Would that he were willing to do it! 7. Were they willing to surrender their arms to us? 8. He wished to reach Rome before night but he was unable. 9. Their scouts wished to discover the plans of our general. 10. Why are you unwilling to tell me the truth? 11. Did Caesar refuse to be called king? 12. He said that he was willing to be called king by the citizens.

LESSON LXXIV.

ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF PRICE.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

1. Price, with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, is expressed by the ablative when the price is definitely stated: as, *Viginti talentis unam orationem vendidit Isocrates, Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents; multo sanguine haec victoria nobis stat, this victory costs us much blood* (literally, *stands to us at much blood*).

Note.—With verbs of *exchange*, the thing received in exchange is usually in the accusative and the thing given in exchange in the ablative: as, *Exilium patriā mutavit, he received exile in exchange for his native land* (= *he went into exile*).

GENITIVE OF PRICE.

2. When the price for which a thing is bought or sold is not stated definitely, *price* is usually expressed by the genitive, especi-

allv with the words **magni** (*at a great price*), **parvi** (*at a low price*), **pluris** (*at a greater price*), **minōris** (*at a less price*), **tanti** (*at so great a price*), **quantī** (*at as great a price*): as, **Hortos tanti quanti tu ēmit**, *he bought gardens at as high a price as you*; **frumentum pluris vendo**, *I sell corn at a higher price*.

Note.—Do not use **multi** or **maioris**, but **magni**, **pluris**, for *at a high price, at a higher price*.

Translate into English :—

1. **Frumenti modius in Sicilia aestimatus est ternis sestertiis.**¹ 2. **Illo die frumentum exercitui metiri coeperunt.** 3. **Utinam Romam mecum ire voluisset.** 4. **Cum finitimis civitatibus pacem facere quam bellum gerere mavult.** 5. **Num boni cives patriam suam auro vendere volent?** 6. **Minimi frumentum in his locis vendunt.** 7. **Noli putare pacem gemmis venalem esse.** 8. **Quis ab Aeduis frumentum hoc tempore postulare vult?** 9. **Utrum Romam ire an domi manere hodie vis?** 10. **Voluptatem virtus minimi aestimat.** 11. **Homines suā parvi pendere, aliena cupere solent** 12. **Haec civitas est magnae auctoritatis inter Gallos.** 13. **Eo die Romā ad Graeciam proficisci voluit.** 14. **Nulla pestis humano generi pluris stat quam irā.**

Translate into Latin :—

1. He was unwilling to sell his corn at so high a price. 2. Was he not willing to lead the army against the Gauls? 3. He preferred to sail to Greece rather than remain at Rome. 4. The Germans were of tall stature, and of great skill in arms. 5. He bought corn at three sesterces a bushel. 6. This man sold his native land for gold. 7. This gem was valued by my father at one hundred denarii.² 8. Will he be willing to command an army? 9. You have a man of remarkable modesty, well-tried valor, and approved fidelity. 10. It is your interest to aid the state as much as possible. 11. It is a great disgrace to the country to sell its honour for gold. 12. He preferred to carry on war for many years against the Gauls. 13. He was unwilling to remain at home during the whole winter.

¹ Roman silver coin worth nearly 5 cents.

² Roman silver coin worth nearly 20 cents.

LESSON LXXV.

FĒRO, I CARRY.

1. The verb *fĕro*, *I carry*, is irregular. It is inflected as follows :—

Fĕro, I carry, bear.

Principal parts—*Fĕro, ferre, tŭlli, lātum.*

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	
1. Pers., <i>fĕro</i>	<i>fĕram</i>	<i>fĕror</i>	<i>fĕrar</i>
2. " <i>fers</i>	<i>fĕrās</i>	<i>ferris or ferre</i>	<i>fĕrāris or fĕrāre</i>
3. " <i>fert</i>	<i>fĕrat</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>fĕrātur</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers., <i>fĕrimus</i>	<i>fĕrāmus</i>	<i>fĕrimur</i>	<i>fĕrāmur</i>
2. " <i>fertis</i>	<i>fĕrātis</i>	<i>ferimīni</i>	<i>fĕrāmīni</i>
3. " <i>fĕrunt</i>	<i>fĕrant</i>	<i>fĕruntur</i>	<i>fĕrantur</i>

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	
1. Pers., <i>fĕrĕbam</i>	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>fĕrĕbar</i>	<i>ferrer</i>
2. " <i>fĕrĕbās</i>	<i>ferrēs</i>	<i>fĕrĕbāris or fĕrĕbāre</i>	<i>ferrēris or ferrĕre</i>
3. " <i>fĕrĕbat</i>	<i>ferret</i>	<i>fĕrĕbātur</i>	<i>ferrĕtur</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers., <i>fĕrĕbāmus</i>	<i>ferrĕmus</i>	<i>fĕrĕbāmur</i>	<i>ferrĕmur</i>
2. " <i>fĕrĕbātis</i>	<i>ferrētis</i>	<i>fĕrĕbāmīni</i>	<i>ferrēmīni</i>
3. " <i>fĕrĕbant</i>	<i>ferrent</i>	<i>fĕrĕbantur</i>	<i>ferrentur</i>

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	
1. Pers., <i>fĕram</i>	None.	<i>fĕrar</i>	None.
2. " <i>fĕrēs</i>		<i>fĕrēris or fĕrĕre</i>	
3. " <i>fĕret</i>		<i>fĕrĕtur</i>	
<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers., <i>fĕrĕmus</i>		<i>fĕrĕmur</i>	
2. " <i>fĕrētis</i>		<i>fĕrēmīni</i>	
3. " <i>fĕrent</i>		<i>fĕrentur</i>	

PERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
tūli	tūlōrim	lātus sum	lātus sim
tūlisti	tūlōris	lātus es	lātus sis
tūlit	tūlōrit	lātus est	lātus sit
tūlimus	tūlōrimus	lāti sumus	lāti simus
tūlistis	tūlōritis	lāti estis	lāti sitis
tūlērunt or tūlēre	tūlōrint	lāti sunt	lāti sint

PLUPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
tūlēram	tūlissem	lātus ēram	lātus essem
tūlērās	tūlissēs	lātus ērās	lātus essēs
tūlērat	tūlisset	lātus ērat	lātus esset
tūlērāmus	tūlissēmus	lāti ērāmus	lāti essēmus
tūlērātis	tūlissētis	lāti ērātis	lāti essētis
tūlērant	tūlissent	lāti ērant	lāti essent

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
tūlēro	None.	lātus ēro	None.
tūlēris		lātus ēris	
tūlērit		lātus ērit	
tūlērīmus		lāti ērīmus	
tūlērītis		lāti ērītis	
tūlērīnt		lāti ērunt	

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
2. Sing.,	fer	ferre
2. Plural,	ferte	fērimīni

INFINITIVE.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Present,	ferre	ferri
Perfect,	tūlissee	lātus esse
Future,	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Present,	fērens	Perfect,	lātus, a, um
Future,	lātūrus, a, um	Future,	fērendus, a, um ¹

¹ Fēro is of the third conjugation : ferre = fērēre (the e being dropped); so also ferrem = ferērem. The vowel -i is dropped in feris, fert (= fertis), and fertis (= feritis). The forms fēro, tūlērūm, are derived from three independent stems.

2. The compounds of *fēro* are given for reference :—

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>affēro</i> (ad + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>afferre</i> ,	<i>attūli</i> ,	<i>allātum</i> , <i>bring to</i> .
<i>aufero</i> (ab + <i>fēro</i>)	<i>auferre</i> ,	<i>abstūli</i> ,	<i>ablātum</i> , <i>carry away</i> .
<i>confēro</i> (con, <i>together</i> , + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>conferre</i> ,	<i>contūli</i> ,	<i>collātum</i> , <i>to bring together</i> .
<i>effēro</i> (ex + <i>fēro</i>).	<i>efferre</i> ,	<i>extūli</i> ,	<i>elātum</i> , <i>carry out</i> .
<i>infēro</i> (in + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>inferre</i> ,	<i>intūli</i> ,	<i>illātum</i> , <i>carry into</i> .
<i>offēro</i> (ob, <i>on, to</i> , + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>offerre</i> ,	<i>obtūli</i> ,	<i>oblātum</i> , <i>present</i> .
<i>prōfēro</i> (prō + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>prōferre</i> ,	<i>protūli</i> ,	<i>prolātum</i> , <i>carry forward</i> .
<i>rēfēro</i> (re, <i>back</i> , + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>rēferre</i> ,	<i>retūli</i> ,	<i>relātum</i> , <i>carry back</i> .
<i>diffēro</i> (dis, <i>apart</i> , + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>differre</i> ,	<i>distūli</i> ,	<i>dilātum</i> , <i>differ</i> .
<i>suffēro</i> (sub, <i>under</i> , + <i>fēro</i>),	<i>sufferre</i> ,	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublātum</i> , <i>endure</i> .
<i>tollo</i> ,	<i>tollere</i> ,	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublatum</i> , <i>lift, take away</i> .

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Onus gravissimum a servo domum fertur. 2. Dicit iniurias a nobis diu esse latas. 3. Nos omnes scimus onera a servis ferri. 4. Negabant socii se castris auxilium laturos esse. 5. Negabant se vultus Germanorum ferre posse. 6. Hostes primum impetum nostrorum militum ferre non poterant. 7. Dona et praemia ad milites primae legionis lata sunt. 8. Fer, puer, hos liberos ad patrem. 9. Ferre labores est viri fortis. 10. Dicit hostes in unum locum impedimenta contulisse. 11. Quae mutari non possunt, patienter feramus. 12. Imperator impedimenta in unum locum conferri iussit. 13. Haec responsa ad Caesarem ab exploratoribus lata sunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The baggage was brought together into one place. 2. The slave carried a heavy load home. 3. He said that the Romans had endured wrongs for-a-long-time (*diu*). 4. You all know that the slaves carried arms to the enemy. 5. The allies will bring aid to us to-day. 6. We were not able to bear so heavy a load. 7. The soldiers of the tenth legion carried wood to the camp. 8. Bear, O boys, these orders to your master. 9. Let men bear what they

cannot change. 10. O ! that he may be willing to bear this burden.
 11. Let us bring aid to our soldiers who have fought bravely
 against the enemy. 12. Word was brought to the general that the
 soldiers were unwilling to fight.

LESSON LXXVI.

FIO, I BECOME.

1. The irregular verb *fio*, *I am made, I become* (passive of *facio*, *make*), is inflected as follows :—

Principal parts—*Fio, fieri, factus sum.*

PRESENT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>fio</i>	<i>fiam</i>
<i>fis</i>	<i>fias</i>
<i>fit</i>	<i>fiat</i>
<i>fimus</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
<i>fitis</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiānt</i>

PERFECT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
<i>factus es</i>	<i>factus sis</i>
<i>factus est</i>	<i>factus sit</i>
<i>facti sumus</i>	<i>facti simus</i>
<i>facti estis</i>	<i>facti sitis</i>
<i>facti sunt</i>	<i>facti sint</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fiērem</i>
<i>fiēbās</i>	<i>fiērēs</i>
<i>fiēbat</i>	<i>fiēret</i>
<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>fiērēmus</i>
<i>fiēbātis</i>	<i>fiērētis</i>
<i>fiēbant</i>	<i>fiērent</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>factus ēram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>
<i>factus ērās</i>	<i>factus essēs</i>
<i>factus ērat</i>	<i>factus esset</i>
<i>facti ērāmus</i>	<i>facti essēmus</i>
<i>facti ērātis</i>	<i>facti essētis</i>
<i>facti ērant</i>	<i>facti essent</i>

FUTURE.

<i>fiam</i>	None.
<i>fiēs</i>	
<i>fiet</i>	
<i>fiēmus</i>	
<i>fiētis</i>	
<i>fient</i>	

FUTURE-PERFECT.

<i>factus ēro</i>
<i>factus ēris</i>
<i>factus ērit</i>
<i>facti ērimus</i>
<i>facti ēritis</i>
<i>facti ērunt</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Present,	<i>fi</i>	<i>fite</i>
----------	-----------	-------------

INFINITIVE.

Present, <i>fieri,</i>	Perfect, <i>factus esse,</i>	Future, <i>factum iri.</i>
------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, <i>factus, a, um.</i>	Future, <i>faciendus, a, um.</i>
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

2. **Fio** is used as the passive of **facio**, *I make*, which is regular except that it omits **-ē** in the 2nd singular present imperative: as, **Fac**, *do thou*; **fācite**, *do ye or you*.¹

3. **Facio**, when compounded with a preposition, changes **-a** to **-i**, and makes its passive regularly in **-ficio**: as, **perficio** (from **perficio**, *finish*), **efficio** (from **efficio**, *effect*).

In other cases, the **-a** remains unchanged, and the passive is **-fio**: as, **satisfacio**, *satisfy*; pass., **satisfio**.

ABLATIVE OF SOURCE OR ORIGIN.

4. The English *from*, expressing *source*, is generally expressed by the ablative with the preposition **a** (or **ab**), **e** (or **ex**): as, **Hoc audi vi e meo patre**, *I have heard this from my father*. The English *from*, expressing *origin*, (except with the names of remote ancestors) is generally expressed by the ablative without a preposition: as, **Ille optimis parentibus ortus est**, *that man is descended from very noble parents*. But: **Belgae a Germanis orti sunt**, *the Belgae are descended from the Germans*.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of: **gigno**, **orior**, **nascor**, **ēdo**, **facio**.

Translate into English:—

1. **Haec nullo modo fieri possunt**. 2. **Hic vir, nobili patre natus, consul fiet**. 3. **Dixit hoc fieri posse**. 4. **Ne impetus in hostes fiat**. 5. **Utinam Cicero illo tempore consul factus esset**. 6. **Tum Caesar litteris certior fiebat Belgas contra populum Romanum coniurare**. 7. **Utinam vos ipsi amici Caesaris essetis**. 8. **Undique uno tempore impetus in hostes fiebat**. 9. **Helvetii de Caesaris adventu certiores facti sunt**. 10. **Utinam Romulus, optimo parente genitus, nunc esset rex**. 11. **Hoc Caesaris voluntate non fit**. 12. **Ille a populo Romano consul est factus**. 13. **Copias ex castris duc; et contra hostes pugnā**.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Many things become easy by practice. 2. Let nothing be done without the consent of Caesar. 3. He is not able to do this

¹So too **dico**, *I say*; **duco**, *I lead*, and **fero**, *I carry*, make the imperative 2nd sing. in **dic**, pl. **dicite**; **duc**, **ducite**; **fer**, **ferite**.

without your aid. 4. These men, born from illustrious parents, sold the city for gold. 5. He says that this could have been done by you. 6. Let not attacks against our camp be made. 7. O ! that you were able to make an attack against the town at daybreak. 8. Caesar was informed by spies that the enemy were attacking the town. 9. The enemy made an attack against our forces from all sides. 10. The Romans were said to be descended from the Trojans. 11. These things were not done with my consent. 12. O consuls, lead out your troops and make an attack upon the enemy. 13. O boy, tell these things to your father.

LESSON LXXVII.

EO, I GO.

1. The irregular verb *ĕo*, *I go*, is inflected as follows :—

Ėo, *I go*.

Principa' parts—*Ėo*, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*.

PRESENT.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
1. Pers.,	<i>ĕo</i>	<i>ĕam</i>
2. "	<i>iŕ</i>	<i>ĕās</i>
3. "	<i>it</i>	<i>ĕat</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>imus</i>	<i>ĕāmus</i>
2. "	<i>itis</i>	<i>ĕātis</i>
3. "	<i>ĕunt</i>	<i>ĕant</i>

PERFECT.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	<i>ivi</i> or <i>ii</i>	<i>ivĕrim</i> or <i>iĕrim</i>
	<i>ivisti</i> or <i>iisti</i>	<i>ivĕris</i> or <i>iĕris</i>
	<i>ivit</i> or <i>iit</i>	<i>ivĕrit</i> or <i>iĕrit</i>
	<i>ivimus</i> or <i>iimus</i>	<i>ivĕrimus</i> or <i>iĕrimus</i>
	<i>ivistis</i> or <i>iistis</i>	<i>ivĕritis</i> or <i>iĕritis</i>
	<i>ivĕrunt</i> or <i>iĕrunt</i>	<i>ivĕrint</i> or <i>iĕrint</i>
	<i>ivĕre</i> or <i>iĕre</i>	

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>ibam</i>	<i>irĕm</i>
2. "	<i>ibās</i>	<i>irĕs</i>
3. "	<i>ibat</i>	<i>irĕt</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>irĕmus</i>
2. "	<i>ibātis</i>	<i>irĕtis</i>
3. "	<i>ibant</i>	<i>irĕnt</i>

PLUPERFECT.

	<i>ivĕram</i> or <i>iĕram</i>	<i>ivisse</i> or <i>iisse</i>
	<i>ivĕrās</i> or <i>iĕrās</i>	<i>ivissēs</i> or <i>iissēs</i>
	<i>ivĕrat</i> or <i>iĕrat</i>	<i>ivisset</i> or <i>iisset</i>
	<i>ivĕrāmus</i> or <i>iĕrāmus</i>	<i>ivissēmus</i> or <i>iissēmus</i>
	<i>ivĕrātis</i> or <i>iĕrātis</i>	<i>ivissētis</i> or <i>iissētis</i>
	<i>ivĕrant</i> or <i>iĕrant</i>	<i>ivissent</i> or <i>iissent</i>

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	ibo
2. "	ibis
3. "	ibit
1. Pers.,	ibimus
2. "	ibitis
3. "	ibunt

None.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ivēro or iēro
ivēris or iēris
ivērit or iērit
ivērīmus or iērīmus
ivērītis or iērītis
ivērint or iērint

None.

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

2. Sing., i

2. Plural, ite

INFINITIVE.

Present, ire,

Perfect, ivisse or iisse,

Future, itūrus esse.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres., iens (Gen., ēuntis),

Fut. Act., itūrus, a, um,

Fut. Pass., ēundus, a, um.

Note.—A common compound of *ēo*, is *vēnēo* [*vēnum*, *to sale* (obsolete adverb), and *eo*], *be sold*. Principal parts : *Vēnēo*, *vēn-ire*, *vēnī*, *vēnitum*.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

2. The English *from*, expressing separation, is—except with the names of towns and small islands—generally expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* (*ab*), *e* (*ex*), or *de* : as, *A rege Pyrrho ex Italia legati vēnērunt*, *ambassadors came from king Pyrrhus in Italy* (literally, *from Italy*). But, *Romā profectus est*, *he set out from Rome* (p. 85).

Note.—The preposition is generally omitted after :—

(1) Verbs meaning *to desist from*, *relieve from*, *deprive of*, *need*, *be without*, *free from* : as, *Conātu destitit*, *he desisted from the attempt*; *lōvā me hoc onēre*, *relieve me from this burden*; *oculis se privavit*, *he deprived himself of eyes*; *non ēgēo medicinā*, *I want no medicine*; *homo culpā vacat*, *the man is without a fault*.

(2) Adjectives signifying *want*, or *freedom from* : as, *Animus liber curā*, *a mind free from care*; *puer est expers metu*, *the boy is free from fear*; *urbs est nudā praesidio*, *the city is destitute of defence*.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : eo, in eo, contendo, desisto, transeo, redeo, cognosco.

Translate into English :—

1. L. Brutus, patre nobilissimo natus, civitatem dominatu regio liberavit. 2. Hoc conatu Romani destitērunt et domum iverunt. 3. Helvetii, hoc metu liberati, contra hostes iērunt. 4. Illi e finibus suis exire voluērunt. 5. Nemo ante Hannibalem cum exercitu Alpes transiit. 6. Omnium Romanorum princeps Horatius contra hostes ibat. 7. I, lictor, hunc hominem delīgā et me timore liberā. 8. Tum omnes magno tumultu ex castris exivērunt. 9. Mens sapientis est curā liberā. 10. Num consul hanc urbem praesidio nudam relinquit? 11. Post hanc infelicem pugnam exercitus domum rediit. 12. Milites duobus itineribus domo exire poterant. 13. Omnium rerum naturā cognitā, levamur superstitione. 14. Omnes milites ex castris ivisse dixit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will you go home with me? 2. The consul went out of the camp with all his troops free-from (*expers*) fear. 3. Let us go across the river to the house of my friend. 4. Go, messenger, tell the Roman Senate that we will not obey their laws. 5. O! that the consul had defended us on that day. 6. A man free from care is a joy (*dat.*) to his friends. 7. Corn was never sold cheaper. 8. Caesar says that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 9. The Germans said that they would cross the river and devastate the lands of the Roman people. 10. The number of those who returned home was three hundred. 11. He freed his native land from slavery. 12. The consul went to the army and protected it from attack. 13. We shall go against the enemy relying on the aid of the immortal gods.

LESSON LXXVIII.

ĒDO, I EAT.

The irregular verb *ēdo*, *I eat*, is inflected as follows :—

Ēdo, *I eat*.

Principal parts—*Ēdo*, *ēdere*, *ēdi*, *ēsum*.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
1. Pers.,	<i>ēdo</i>	<i>ēdam or ēdim</i>	<i>ēdi</i>	<i>ēderim</i>
2. " "	<i>ēdis or es</i>	<i>ēdās or ēdis</i>	<i>ēdisti</i>	<i>ēderis</i>
3. " "	<i>edit or est</i>	<i>ēdat or edit</i>	<i>edit</i>	<i>ederit</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>ēdimus</i>	<i>ēdāmus or ēdimus</i>	<i>ēdimus</i>	<i>ēderimus</i>
2. " "	<i>editis or estis</i>	<i>ēdātis or editis</i>	<i>edistis</i>	<i>ēderitis</i>
3. " "	<i>edunt</i>	<i>ēdant or edint</i>	<i>ēderunt or ēdere</i>	<i>ēderint</i>

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>ēdebam</i>	<i>ēderem or essem</i>	<i>ēderam</i>	<i>ēdissem</i>
2. " "	<i>ēdebās</i>	<i>ēderēs or essēs</i>	<i>ēderās</i>	<i>ēdissēs</i>
3. " "	<i>ēdebat</i>	<i>ēderet or esset</i>	<i>ēderat</i>	<i>ēdisset</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>ēdebāmus</i>	<i>ēderēmus or essēmus</i>	<i>ēderāmus</i>	<i>ēdissēmus</i>
2. " "	<i>ēdebātis</i>	<i>ēderētis or essētis</i>	<i>ēderātis</i>	<i>ēdissētis</i>
3. " "	<i>ēdebānt</i>	<i>ēderent or essent</i>	<i>ēderant</i>	<i>ēdissent</i>

FUTURE.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>ēdam</i>	None.	<i>ēdero</i>	None.
2. " "	<i>ēdēs</i>		<i>ēderis</i>	
3. " "	<i>edet</i>		<i>ederit</i>	
1. Pers.,	<i>ēdēmus</i>		<i>ēderimus</i>	
2. " "	<i>edētis</i>		<i>ēderitis</i>	
3. " "	<i>edent</i>		<i>ēderint</i>	

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

Present, 2nd sing., *ēde or es* 2nd pl., *ēdite or este*

INFINITIVE.

Present, *ēdere or esse*. Perfect, *ēdisse*. Future, *ēsūrus esse*

PARTICIPLES.

Present, *ēdens* Future, *ēsūrus, a, um*

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *ēdo*, *fio*, *defendo*, *edūco*, *subsēquor*, *possum*, *capio*, *iubeo*, *noio*.

Translate into English :—

1. Multi barbari carnem humanam *ēdunt*. 2. Num, puer, cibum hunc edes? 3. Utinam hunc cibum, qui a servo mihi datus est, edissem. 4. Haec res a consule eo die fiet. 5. Nonne viri hi optimi, claris parentibus orti, consulem defendent? 6. Ipse omnes copias ex castris eduxit equitatumque subsequi iussit. 7. Vespere domum ire voluit. 8. Utinam eā aestate Romam ire noluisset. 9. Hunc cibum *ēdēre* non potest. 10. Hostes castra Romanorum capere non potērunt. 11. Num collem summum equitatu occupare potuērunt? 12. Quis nos impetu militum defendat? 13. Quis vos telis hostium defendet?

Translate into Latin :—

1. Did he say that he would return to Rome? 2. He freed the state from slavery. 3. Shall we not go against the enemy, relying on our own valor? 4. He was a man of great ability but he lacked (*expers esse*) prudence. 5. O! that I had not eaten the food. 6. The general took the city which was without a guard. 7. Caesar led away his forces from the city which he had liberated from siege. 8. Was he unwilling to return home that day? 9. O! that he were willing to go with us to Gaul. 10. Shall we not go against an enemy who, for so many years, has devastated our fields? 11. Go, soldiers, against the enemy with firm courage. 12. Who will say that corn has ever been sold at a higher price? 13. These laws were passed¹ by the citizens in their assembly.

LESSON LXXIX.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Verbs used only in the third person singular are called *impersonal*: as, *ningit*, *it snows*.

2. Impersonal verbs are conjugated like other verbs of the con-

¹To pass a law, *ferre legem*.

jugation to which they belong, but they are often defective in the supine and participle : as,

Constat, <i>it is admitted.</i>	Principal parts :	constat,	constāre,	constitit.
Licet, <i>it is allowed.</i>	" "	licet,	licēre,	licuit.
Accidit, <i>it happens.</i>	" "	accidit,	accidēre,	accidit.
Ēvenit, <i>it happens.</i>	" "	ēvenit,	ēvēnīre,	ēvenit.

3. Constat, licet, accidit, ēvenit, are inflected as follows :—

INDICATIVE.

Present,	constat	licet	accidit	ēvenit
Imperfect,	constābat	licēbat	accidēbat	ēvēniēbat
Future,	constābit	licēbit	accidet	ēvēniēt
Perfect,	constitit	licuit	accidit	ēvenit
Pluperfect,	constitērat	licuērat	accidērat	ēvēnērat
Future-Perfect,	constitērit	licuērit	accidērit	ēvēnērit

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present,	constet	licēat	accidat	ēvēniat
Imperfect,	constaret	licēret	accidēret	ēvēnīret
Perfect,	constitērit	licuērit	accidērit	ēvēnērit
Pluperfect,	constitisset	licuisset	accidisset	ēvēnisset

INFINITIVE.

Present,	constāre	licēre	accidēre	ēvēnīre
Perfect,	constitisse	licuisse	accidisse	ēvēnisse
Future,	constātūrum esse	licītūrum esse	—	ēvētūrum esse

Note.—By after *it is admitted* is inter : as, Inter omnes constat, *it is admitted by all, or all admit.*

4. The English *ought* may be expressed by the impersonal oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *it is needful* : as, Te hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this*; te hoc facere oportēbat or oportuit, *you ought to have done this*; te hoc facere oportēbit, *you ought to do this* (in the future).

Note.—Instead of the impersonal oportet with the accusative, the personal dēbeo, *I owe*, may be used : as, Hoc facere dēbes, *you ought to do this*; hoc facere debēbas or debūisti, *you ought to have done this*; hoc facere debēbis, *you ought to do this* (in the future).

5. The English *may* and *might* (expressing *permission*) are translated by *licet*, *it is allowed*, *licēre*, *licuit*: as, *Mihi hoc facere licet*, *I may do this* (literally, *it is allowed to me to do this*); *tibi hoc facere licēbat* or *licuit*, *you might have done this*; *ei hoc facere licebit*, *he will be allowed to do this* (in the future).

Note.—The tense of the infinitive after *possum*, *licet*, *debeo*, *oportet*, does not change in Latin as in English: as, *Hoc facere potui*, *I could have done it*.

6. A predicate adjective after *esse* (*to be*) governed by *licet*, agrees in gender, number and case with the noun or pronoun to which it refers: as, *Aliis esse ignāvis licet*, *others may be cowards* (literally, *it is allowed to others to be cowards*). So also with *necesse esse* (*it is necessary*), *expēdit* (*it is expedient*), *libet* (*it is pleasing*): as, *Necesse est nobis esse fortibus*, *it is necessary for us to be brave*; *ei esse otioso non expēdit*, *it is not expedient for him to be at leisure*; *ei libebit esse amico*, *it will please him to be a friend*.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of: *licet*, *expedit*, *libet*, *oportet*, *debeo*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Licet nobis bellum cum iis gerere*. 2. *Licebit iis nobiscum bella multa gerere*. 3. *Oportet me omnia fortiter ferre*. 4. *Eum ad mortem duci oportuit*. 5. *Nobis non expedit esse otiosis*. 6. *Romam eo tempore ire debuēre*. 7. *Privati agri apud eos nihil est; neque longius anno remanere uno in loco licet*. 8. *Liberi eorum in servitutem abduci non debent*. 9. *Non tibi esse ignavo licebit*. 10. *Tibi Romae manere non libet*. 11. *Inter omnes constat Ciceronem eloquentissimum oratorem esse*. 12. *Helvetiis iter per provinciam Romanam facere non licuit*. 13. *Constat inter omnes Romam caput orbis terrarum fuisse*.

Translate into Latin:—

1. You might have done this. 2. I could have remained at Rome all the winter. 3. We ought to bear the hardships of life bravely. 4. You ought, Catiline, long ago to have been put to death. 5. O! that it were expedient for me to be at leisure. 6. We were not permitted to attack the enemy. 7. Did not the

Romans permit us to make a march through the province? 8. All admit that the moon is smaller than the earth. 9. Did not all admit that Homer was a greater poet than Vergil? 10. Ought not the general to have attacked the enemy? 11. It is admitted by all that Caesar will fight with the Gauls in the spring. 12. The sick man is not allowed to see his friends. 13. He ought to have seen his father on that day.

LESSON LXXX.

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS THAT GOVERN THE DATIVE.

1. Verbs that govern a *dative* in the active (p. 105), are used *impersonally* in the passive: as, *Ego tibi impero, I command you; ego tibi credo, I believe you.* But in the passive: *Tibi imperatur, you are commanded* (literally, *it is commanded to you*); *tibi creditur, you are believed* (not *tu imperaris, tu crederis*).

2. Intransitive verbs are often used in the passive impersonally: as, *Itur, people go* (literally, *it is gone*); *curritur, they run* (literally, *it is run*); *pugnatum est, a battle was fought.*

Note 1.—With such verbs the agent is generally omitted; if it is expressed, it may be in the dative or in the ablative with *a* (or *ab*): as, *Helvetiis* (or *ab Helvetiis*) *pugnatum est, a battle was fought by the Helvetii.*

Note 2.—Such verbs are often best translated by substituting an appropriate noun as subject: as, *Clamatum est, a shout was raised.*

3. Some verbs that are impersonal in English are personal in Latin: as, *Cicero eo anno consul fuisse videtur, it seems that Cicero was consul in that year*; *urbs Roma a Romulo esse condita dicitur, it is said that the city of Rome was founded by Romulus.* So too, *Putor, I am supposed*; *feror, I am said.*

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of: *credo, persuadeo, pareo, ignosco, parco, capio, curro, trado, venio.*

Translate into English :—

1. Solon esse sapientissimus dictus est. 2. Homērus multis annis ante Vergilium vixisse traditus est. 3. Omnibus mulieribus liberisque parcetur. 4. Nonne tibi a magistro creditum est? 5. Num hoc oppidum ab hostibus eo anno captum esse dicitur? 6. Tibi a bonis non ignoscitur. 7. Imperatori a militibus non parebatur. 8. Omnibus ad portam curritur. 9. In eo loco multas horas acriter pugnatum est. 10. Duci a militibus decimae legionis non parebitur. 11. Mihi ab amico persuasum est. 12. Ille vir doctissimus fuisse dicitur. 13. Romam nobis vespere ventum est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. It was said that Cicero was the most eloquent of all the Romans. 2. You were believed by all the soldiers in the army. 3. They will be pardoned by the general. 4. I was easily persuaded by my friend. 5. It seems that he was the bravest of the soldiers. 6. It is related that Athens, the capital of Greece, was founded by Cæcrops. 7. A battle was fought on the plain by the Romans. 8. All ran to the gates of the camp. 9. You were not obeyed by the boys. 10. It is said that Vergil lived at the same time as Horace. 11. Will not all the prisoners be pardoned by the general? 12. Will not the messenger be believed by all the soldiers? 13. Did it not seem that he was the most learned of the Romans?

LESSON LXXXI.

IMPERSONAL VERBS—(Continued).

1. The construction of the following verbs expressing *feeling* should be noticed : *Misæret* (*it excites pity*), *poenitet* (*it repents*), *pūdet* (*it shames*), *taedet* (*it wearies*), *pīget* (*it vexes*). They are used with the *accusative of the person affected* and the *genitive of the object causing the feeling* : as, *Eorum nos miseret*, *we pity them* (literally, *it excites one's pity of them*) ; *hos homines ignaviae pūdet*, *these men are ashamed of their idleness* ; *te stultitiae poenitet*, *you repent of your folly* ; *me dubitationis huius taedet*, *I am weary of this hesitation*.

2. *Ōpus est* and *ūsus est*, *there is need*, are generally used impersonally with the *dative* of the person to whom there is need and the *ablative* of the thing needed : as, *Cibo mihi opus est*, *I have need of food* (literally, *there is need to me with food*) ; *viginti talentis tibi usus est*, *you have need of twenty talents*.

3. The impersonals *intērest* and *réfert*, *it is of importance*, have the genitive of the person to whom the matter is of importance : as, *Clodii intererat Milōnem perire*, *it was of importance to Clodius that Milo should die*. But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun is used in Latin : as, *Id meā interest*, *this is of importance to me* ; *hoc tuā intererat*, *this was of importance to you*. The degree of importance is expressed either by an adverb (e.g., *multum*, *magnopere*, *plurimum*, etc.), or by a genitive of price (e.g., *tanti*, *magni*, *parvi*, etc.) : as, *Multum meā interest*, *it is of much importance to me* ; *magni tuā intererat*, *it was of great importance to you*.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *pudet*, *poenitet*, *miseret*, *taedet*.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne te stultitiae tuae pudet? 2. Nobis armis opus est. 3. Tui flagitii poenitere te oportet. 4. Omnium civium a consule servari intererat. 5. Magistratibus igitur nobis opus est, sine quorum prudentiā esse civitas non potest. 6. Vestrā intererat, commilitones, castris hostium potiri. 7. Hodie omnibus praesidio tuo opus est. 8. Magni meā interest te mihi adesse. 9. Hunc hominem scelerum poenitebit. 10. Nos illius viri miseret. 11. Ad salutem civitatis intererat nos quam maximas copias comparare. 12. Magni intererit tuā amicos quam plurimos habere. 13. Eius stultitiae me eo tempore puduit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. I am ashamed of his cowardice. 2. You have need of friends. 3. We ought all to be ashamed of our defeat. 4. It is of great importance that the city should be saved. 5. We have all need of friends without whose aid we cannot do good to others. 6. It is to their interest to help their friends in danger. 7. It is of the

highest interest to you to aid your brother. 8. Did he not repent of his undertaking? 9. He said that it was his interest to remain at Rome. 10. You ought to collect as many soldiers as possible. 11. You ought to repent of your wicked deeds. 12. We are not ashamed of our forefathers. 13. He pitied the sorrows of the old man.

LESSON LXXXII.

VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

Verbs of *accusing, acquitting, condemning, reminding, and admonishing* take, in the active, the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing : as, *Te impietatis absolvo, I acquit you of impiety; arguit me furti, he accuses me of theft; cives eum proditiōis accusaverunt, the citizens accused him of treachery; iudices hunc furti condemnant, the jury condemn this man for theft; Catilina eos egestatis admonebat, Catiline reminded them of their needy condition; nos officii nostri admonuit, he reminded us of our duty.*

Note.—In the passive, these constructions become respectively : *Tu impietatis ab me absolvēris; furti ab eo arguor; is proditiōis a civibus accusatus est, hic furti ab iudicibus condemnatur; ei egestatis a Catilina admonebantur; nos officii nostri ab eo admoniti sumus.*

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *dico, solvo, parco, cado, occīdo, licet.*

Translate into English :—

1. Themistocles absens proditiōis damnatus est. 2. Iudex eum iniuriarum absolvit. 3. Nonne omnes eum furti accusaverunt? 4. Me officii mei admonere licuit. 5. Nos omnes stultitiæ nostræ poenitere oportet. 6. Num puer ab iudice furti absolutus est. 7. Huius post mortem populum iudicii sui poenitebit. 8. Catilina coniurationis contra patriam ab Cicerone condemnatus est. 9. Opus est omnibus nobis sapientiā. 10. Alium (one) stultitiæ, alium sceleris

admonet. 10. Magni nostrā interest milites quam plurimos comparare. 11. Quam plurimos occidisse dixit. 12. Nonne omnibus liberis a militibus parceretur? 13. Tuo praesidio nobis usus erat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They condemned the boy for theft. 2. They acquitted him of treachery. 3. Was he accused of cowardice? 4. He was unwilling to remind them of their folly. 5. Was Verres not accused of extortion by Cicero? 6. Did he pity the sorrows of the wretched man? 7. Cicero accused him of treachery. 8. We are all in need of foresight in danger. 9. It was of great importance that they should repent of their crimes. 10. Were not the wretched men spared by the soldiers? 11. It was said that he was acquitted of this charge by the judge. 12. We all needed your help on that day. 13. O! that he had repented of his folly.

LESSON LXXXIII.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

1. The usual word for *he, she, it, they, &c.*, when they are expressed at all, is *is, eā, id*, (p. 122, 4) : as, *Is hostis esse dicebatur, he was said to be an enemy; id tibi affirmo. I assure you of it; in eos officia conferunt, on them they bestow kindnesses.*

2. When *he, she, it*, etc., are to be strongly emphasized they are expressed by *hic, iste, ille* (p. 118) : as, *Hoc illud est, that is it; ille vitam in otio egit, he passed his life in idleness.*

3. *He, she, it*, etc., referring to the subject of a verb, are expressed by the reflexive *sui* (p. 105) : as, *Caesar dicit se id fecisse, Caesar says that he (Caesar) did it* (eum would mean someone else than Caesar); *Caesar eum sibi legatum esse iubet, Caesar orders him to be legate to him (Caesar).*

Note.—In a complex sentence, *ipse* is used to refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, if ambiguity would arise from the use of *sui* : as, *Rogat cur de ipsis desperent, he asks them why they despair of themselves* (de se would mean of him).

4. The forms of *sui* may, however, refer to the object of a verb, if no ambiguity results : as, *Reliquos cogit se convertere*, *the rest he compels to turn* (literally, *to turn themselves*).

5. *His, her, its, their*, are usually expressed by the genitive of *is*: as, *Dixit se eorum amicum esse*, *he said that he was their friend*. But *his, her*, etc., referring to the subject of a verb is expressed by *suus*: as, *Domum suam vendit*, *he sells his house*.

Note 1.—In a complex sentence the genitive of *ipse* is used for *his*, etc., to refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, if ambiguity would arise from the use of *suus*: as, *Rogat cur se ipsorum inimicis tradere velint*, *he asks why they want to surrender him to their enemies*.

Note 2.—The possessive is not expressed in Latin, if no ambiguity arises from its omission : as, *Patri pārē*, *obey your father*.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *mitto, credo, parco, relinquo, curro, possum, mōveo, video, sentio, contemno*.

Translate into English :—

1. *Caesar ducem clarissimum contra se lectum esse credebat.*
2. *Sentit animus se vi suā moveri.* 3. *Clamavit eum cecidisse.*
4. *Nonne eum flentem vidisti?* 5. *Credit eum semper nostri memorem esse.* 6. *Eos eorum copias educere iubet.* 7. *Rēge dimisso, Caesar copias suas in eius fines duxit.* 8. *Marcus et Quintus fratres fuērunt ; hic fortior, ille prudentior fuit.* 9. *Pueri et¹ senem et consilia eius contemnunt.* 10. *Oppido relicto, Caesar in eos iter fecit.* 11. *Dixit eum haec vidisse.* 12. *Nonne is sum qui id feci?*

Translate into Latin :—

1. He threw himself upon them.
2. Having sent forward the cavalry, he led the infantry into their territory.
3. Caesar said that he would spare them.
4. Did he not think that they would help him?
5. He promised that he would make war upon their towns.
6. That prison could not hold them.
7. The old man says that he despises both himself and them.
8. Did he think that he was believed?
9. He knew that they were worthy of death.
10. He said that some rivers ran deep.
11. These people think that they are happy.
12. He has taken all their cities.

¹*Et....et, both....and.*

LESSON LXXXIV.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

1. One form of the Latin verb remains to be discussed. This is the *gerund*.¹ The gerund is a verbal noun, corresponding to the English participial noun in *-ing*. It is inflected as follows :—

FIRST CONJUGATION.

GEN. *āmāndī, of loving.*
 DAT. *āmāndō, to or for loving.*
 ACC. *āmāndum, loving.*
 ABL. *āmāndō, with, by, from, or in*
loving

SECOND CONJUGATION.

mōnendī, of advising.
mōnendō, to or for advising.
mōnendum, advising.
mōnendō, with, by, from or in
advising.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

GEN. *rēgendī, of ruling.*
 DAT. *rēgendō, to or for ruling.*
 ACC. *rēgendum, ruling.*
 ABL. *rēgendō, with, by, from or*
in ruling.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

audiendī, of hearing.
audiendō, to or for hearing.
audiendum, hearing.
audiendō, with, by, from or in
hearing.

2. The gerund has partly the nature of a noun and partly that of a verb. As a noun, it may be governed by another noun in the genitive, or by an adjective, or by a preposition. It resembles a verb in governing a case and in being limited by an adverb : as, *Ius vocandi senatum, the right of summoning the senate*. (Here the gerund is governed in the genitive by *ius*, and governs *senatum* in the accusative, because *vocāre* governs that case); *docendo discimus, we learn by teaching*; *natus ad regendum, born for ruling*; *parcendo inimicis gloriam paravit, he won distinction by sparing his enemies*.

Note.—The nominative of the gerund is supplied by the infinitive : as, *Ambulare iucundum est, walking is delightful*.

GERUNDIVE.

3. Instead of the gerund with an accusative, Latin often uses a peculiar construction of its own. Thus : *Born for ruling men* is not often expressed by *natus ad viros regendum*, but by *natus ad viros*

¹ The word is derived from *gero*, *carry*, because, apparently, it expresses the action of the verb as being “carried on.”

regendos, where **regendos** agrees with **viros** in gender, number, and case, and is called the *gerundive*. So too: In **epistolis scribendis** (*in writing letters*) is used for in **scribendo epistolas** and **consilium urbis capiendae** (*the plan for taking the city*), for **consilium capiendi urbem**.

4. The gerundive has the form of the future part. passive. Thus:—

Present stem and -ndus.	1. Conj.,	ama-ndus, a, um.
	2. “	mōne-ndus, a, um.
	3. “	rēge-ndus, a, um.
	4. “	audie-ndus.

5. The rule for turning the gerund into the gerundive is easily deduced from the above examples. It may be stated as follows: *The direct object of the gerund is attracted into the case of the gerund, which is then made to agree with its object in gender and number.*

6. The genitive of the gerund or of the gerundive is often used with **causā**, *on account of, for the sake of*, which is written after its case: as, **Vestis est frigōris depellendi causā**, *dress is intended for keeping off cold.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. Nonne is ad ludos spectandos profectus est? 2. Hic clipeus utilis corpori tegendo est. 3. Eloquentia legendis poetis augētur. 4. Summa voluptas ex discendo capitur. 5. Inīta sunt consilia urbis delendae. 6. Milites frumentandi causā in fines hostium missi sunt. 7. Non oratum sed querendi causā iērunť. 8. Te duce, ad arma capienda parati sumus. 9. Nullum spatium ad se armandos dabatur. 10. Optimam occasionem navigandi habemus. 11. Breve tempus satis longum est ad bene vivendum. 12. Ea sunt usui ad armandas naves.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Water is good for drinking. 2. They formed the plan of killing the consul. 3. Was he not skilled in (*gen.*) guiding the state? 4. He spent much time in writing letters. 5. The horse is fit for carrying burdens. 6. You will have an opportunity of finishing

the work. 7. He will send them into the territory of the enemy to collect corn (*gerundive with causā*). 8. Have they formed the plan of crossing the river? 9. I thought you had come for the purpose of (*causā*) seeing the city. 10. He said that they were coming for the purpose of making a bridge. 11. Were they ready to take up arms in the consulship of Caesar? 12. He said that he was going into the garden to see the flowers

LESSON LXXXV.

THE GERUND—(*Continued*).

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

1. The gerund and *not the gerundive* is to be used:—

(a) In the case of verbs that do not govern an accusative : as, *Parcendo inimicis*, *by sparing enemies* (not *parcendis inimicis*).

(b) Where euphony would be violated : as, *Amicos videndi causā*, *for the sake of seeing friends* (not *amicorum videndorum*).

(c) Where ambiguity results : as, *Aliquid docendi causā*, *for the sake of teaching something* (not *alicuius*, which would mean *some one*).

2. The gerundive is often used to express *duty* or *necessity* : as, *Hostis timendus*, *an enemy that ought to be, or must be, feared*.

3. From this use of the gerundive, a whole conjugation—called the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*—is formed of the gerundive and the verb *sum*, *I am*. Thus:—

Present,	{ <i>amandus sum</i> , <i>I am to be loved</i> .
	{ <i>amandus es</i> , <i>thou art to be loved</i> , etc.
Imperfect,	{ <i>amandus eram</i> , <i>I was to be loved</i> .
	{ <i>amandus eras</i> , <i>thou wast to be loved</i> , etc.
Future,	{ <i>amandus ero</i> , <i>I shall have to be loved</i> .
	{ <i>amandus eris</i> , <i>thou wilt have to be loved</i> , etc.

and so forth.

4. The agent is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by the dative : as, *Parentes nobis amandi sunt*, *our parents should be loved by us*.

5. The passive periphrastic conjugation is generally used to translate the English *should*, *ought*, *must* (expressing duty or necessity) : as, *Ex civitate pellendi sunt*, *they must be banished*.

When the verb in English is active, the object becomes the subject in Latin, and the subject becomes the dative of the agent : as, *Aqua mihi bibenda est*, *I must drink water* (= *water must be drunk by me*).

6. Intransitive verbs and verbs that govern the genitive, the dative, or the ablative, must be used *impersonally* in the passive periphrastic conjugation : as, *Nobis eundum est*, *we must go* (= *it must be gone by us*) ; *omnibus moriendum est*, *all must die* ; *inimicis a nobis parcendum est*, *we must spare our enemies* ; *utendum est iudicio a te*, *you must use your judgment*.

Note.—When a verb does not govern the accusative, the agent (to avoid ambiguity) is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by *a* (or *ab*) with the ablative. This appears from the last two examples.

7. With *do* (*give*), *curo* (*take care of*), *trado* (*hand over*), the gerundive is used to express *purpose* : as, *Terram habitandam dat*, *he gives them the land to dwell in* ; *pontem faciendum curat*, *he has a bridge built*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Pārendum est legibus*. 2. *Haec Caesari miranda videntur*.
3. *Hostibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum esse existimabat*. 4. *Civibus a nobis subveniendum est*. 5. *Caesar ad dilectūs agendos profectus est*. 6. *Intellexit magnam partem equitatūs ab hostibus, aliquot diebus ante, praedandi causā trans flumen esse missam*. 7. *Ars civitatis gubernandae est difficillima*.
8. *In libris tuis legendis tres dies multā cum voluptate exēgi*.
9. *Catilina bellum suscepit reipublicae evertendae causā*. 10. *Ariovistus cum suis ad occupandum oppidum contendit*. 11. *Tempus bello gerendo idoneum non erat*. 12. *Ad galeas induendas tempus defuit*. 13. *Vix iis rebus administrandis tempus dabatur*.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Wisdom is increased by learning and thinking.
2. Caius obtained the consulship for the purpose of avenging his brother.
3. He won credit by aiding friends.
4. Caesar gave the signal for (say of) beginning the battle.
5. The Romans were desirous of carrying on war.
6. They undertook the work for the purpose of finishing it.
7. We must all cultivate virtue.
8. I must send this letter to my father at Rome.
9. We must forget our wrongs.
10. The farmer must plough his fields in the spring.
11. Caesar set out to Gaul to carry on war.
12. Do you think that he should be believed?
13. We must all obey the general.

LESSON LXXXVI.

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. SUPINE.

1. Besides the passive periphrastic conjugation in Latin, there is also an active one, expressing *futurity* or *intention*. It is formed from the verb *sum* and the future participle in *-tūrus*. Thus : *Amātorus sum*, *I am going* (or *intend*) *to love*; *amātorus eram* (or *fui*), *I was going* (or *intended*) *to love*; and so on through all forms. So too : *Mōnitorus sum*, *I intend to advise*; *mōnitorus eram*, *I intended to advise*.

SUPINES.

2. Latin verbs have two supines, one in *-tum* and one in *-tu*. They are formed by adding *-tum* and *-tu* to the present stem or to the present stem modified : as,

<i>amātum</i> , to love.	<i>amātu</i> , to be loved.
<i>mōnītum</i> , to advise.	<i>monītu</i> , to be advised.
<i>rectum</i> , to rule.	<i>rectu</i> , to be ruled.
<i>auditum</i> , to hear.	<i>auditu</i> , to be heard.

3. The supine in *-tum* is used to express *purpose* after verbs of motion. It governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived : as, *Legatos mittunt rogatum auxillium*, *they send ambassadors to ask for aid*; *pabulatum milites emisit*, *he sent out soldiers to forage*.

The supine in *-tu* is used after adjectives expressing *difficulty, ease, credibility, pleasure, worth* or the reverse, and after a few substantives, like *fas* (*right*), *nefas* (*wrong*), *scelus* (*wickedness*): as, *Difficile est dictu*, *it is difficult to be said, or it is difficult to say*.

Note 1.—The supines are verbal nouns, one in the accusative and one in the ablative.

Note 2.—The supine in *um* with the pres. inf. pass. of *eo*, *I go*, is used to form the fut. inf. pass. of the verb. Thus: *He said that he would be advised*, *dixit se monitum iri* = *he said that it is gone* (i.e., *people go*) *to advise him*.

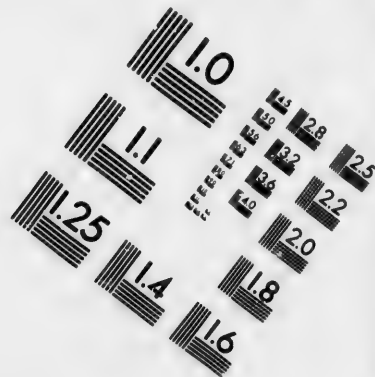
EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

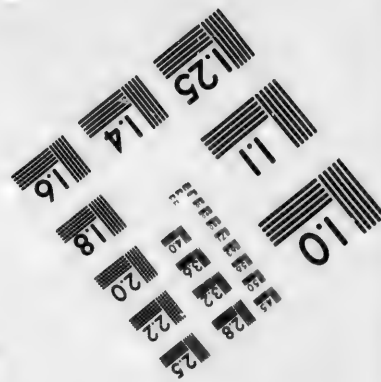
1. Amicitiamne populi Romani est repudiaturus? 2. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium. 3. His rebus factis, consilium urbis capiendae ineunt. 4. Neque obsides repetituri neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturi fuerunt. 5. Bello confecto, legati ad Caesarem gratulatum convenērunt. 6. Omnia uno tempore sunt agenda: vexillum proponendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, acies instruenda. 7. Ex eā civitate profugi ad Senatum Romam venerunt iniurias sociorum questum. 8. Occasio negotii bene gerendi omittenda non est. 9. Eo die imperator decimam legionem pabulatum misit. 10. Nos neque legatos missuri neque ullam condicionem pacis sumus accepturi. 11. Nonne primo vere agri agricolis arandi sunt? 12. Iter per provinciam nostram sunt facturi hostes. 13. Ante primam lucem imperator cum tribus legionibus Romā est profecturus.

Translate into Latin :—

1. We must not lose this opportunity of attacking the enemy. 2. Ambassadors came to Rome to ask aid against the Germans. 3. Alexander intended to lead his army across the Granicus. 4. Ariovistus is not likely to reject my friendship. 5. We intend to set out for Rome before night. 6. After all Gaul was subdued by Caesar (*abl. abs.*), envoys were sent by many states to ask him for peace. 7. Hannibal, incredible to relate, reached Adrumētum, which is a hundred miles distant from Zama, within the space of



6"



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**



two days. 8. All should cultivate the art of speaking. 9. Nothing seemed to Xenophon so princely (*regālis*) as the pursuit of cultivating the soil. 10. I intend now to speak of (*de*) choosing a commander for (*ad*) that war. 11. The Helvetii were fond of fighting with their neighbors. 12. We must all defend our country when attacked by an enemy (*abl. abs.*). 13. Spring is the time of year for sowing seed.

LESSON LXXXVII.

CLASSIFICATION OF CLAUSES.—INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. Dependent or subordinate clauses are called *noun clauses*, *adjective clauses*, or *adverbial clauses*, according as they perform the function of a noun, adjective, or adverb. Thus, in *I know who he is*, the clause *who he is* is a noun-clause, object of *know*; in *I saw the man whom you mean*, the clause *whom you mean* is an adjective clause, qualifying *man*; in *He came that he might see the town*, the clause *that he might see the town* is an adverbial clause of purpose, modifying *came*.

INDIRECT QUESTION.

2. A noun-clause headed by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb and used as the subject or object of a verb, takes its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is called an *indirect* (or *dependent*) question. Thus: *Scio quis sit*, *I know who he is*; *quid faciat multum refert*, *it is of much importance what he does*. (Here *quis sit*, and *quid faciat*, are indirect questions.)

3. The following are the more common interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs: *Quis*, *who*? *uter*, *which of two*? *quantus*, *how great*? *quall.*, *what kind*? *quot*, *how many*? *ubi*, *where*? *unde*, *whence*? *quo*, *whither*? *cur* (or *quare*), *why*? *qui* or (with adjs. and adverbs) *quam*, *how*? *quemadmodum* or *quomodo*, *in what way*? *quantum*, *how much*? *quando*, *when*? (*quum* is never interrogative), *quoties*, *how often*? *quamdiu*, *how long*?

4. *Whether, if*, at the head of an indirect question, is *num*: as, *Dic mihi num venerit*, *tell me if he has come*.

5. *Whether . . . or*, is *utrum . . . an*; but *or not* is *necne* in indirect questions (not *annon*, as in direct. P. 130, 6.): as, *Multum interest utrum valeamus an aegri simus*, *it makes a great difference whether we are well or sick*; *videamus utrum aqua sit necne*, *let us see whether it is water or not*.

Note.—After *nescio* or *haud scio* (*I don't know*), *dubito* (*I doubt*), *incertum est* (*it is uncertain*)—implying an affirmative—*whether* is *an*: as, *Constantiam dico? Nescio an melius patientiam possim dicere*, *consistency, do I say? I don't know whether I can not better say long-suffering*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. Rogat num sui oblitus sim. 2. Quaeramus quoties hic Idem promiserit. 3. Rogabo num is maior fratre sit. 4. Rogemus cur is solus taceat. 5. Omnes intellegunt quam audaces sitis. 6. Hoc dubium est uter nostrum verecundior sit. 7. Ex iis quaeremus quid agant. 8. Nescimus quomodo effugerit. 9. Quot estis? Nescio quot simus. 10. Credo te audivisse qui mihi hi nocuerint. 11. Novisti eum quam tardus sit. 12. Ex eo quaesivi quanti domum vendiderit. 13. Roga eos unde veniant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We had not heard whether you conquered. 2. I ask you whether these are your words or not. 3. He asks me whether I had sold all my books. 4. Tell me how many letters you wrote yesterday. 5. I ask you where you have put my book. 6. I do not know when he intends (p. 174) to return. 7. Do not tell him where you are coming from. 8. Do you know by whom the city was founded? 9. It is hard to tell whether you really understand. 10. Have you forgotten where you promised to go to-day? 11. It does not concern me whether it is selling low or not. 12. He is asking if he ought to remain at Rome. 13. Ask him what he is doing about it.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Indirect Question—(*Continued*).

1. Latin tenses are divided into *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*), as follows :—

Primary Tenses.	{	Pres.,	amat, he loves.
		Pres.-Perf.,	amavit, he has loved.
		Future,	amabit, he will love.
		Future Perf.,	amaverit, he will have loved.
Secondary or Historical Tenses.	{	Imperf.,	amabat, he was loving.
		Past Indef.,	amavit, he loved.
		Pluperf.,	amaverat, he had loved.

Note.—The Latin perfect has the force of both a present-perfect (*i.e.*, perf. with *have*) and a past indefinite. When it is a pres.-perf., it is a *primary* tense ; when a past indef., a *secondary*.

2. The above classification of Latin tenses is important, in view of the fact that the tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause is primary when the tense of the main verb is primary, and secondary when the tense of the main verb is secondary. This is an important rule, and is called the rule for the *Sequence of Tenses*.

It may be stated thus :—

RULE FOR THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

A primary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause ; a secondary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent clause.

3. The following examples of the indirect question will illustrate the rule :—

A. PRIMARY TENSES IN BOTH PRINCIPAL AND DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

(1) *Present in Principal clause.*

Scio quid agās, I know what you are doing (now) (dependent question, therefore verb in subj.)

Scio quid egēris, *I know what you have done* (in the past).

Scio quid actūrus sis, *I know what you are going to do* (in the future; i.e., *what you will do*).

Note.—The place of the fut. subjun. act. (which is wanting), is supplied by the active periphrastic conjugation (p 174, 1).

(2) *Present-Perfect in Principal clause.*

Cognōvi quid agās, *I have learned what you are doing* (now).

Cognōvi quid egēris, *I have learned what you have done* (in the past).

Cognōvi quid actūrus sis, *I have learned what you are going to do* (in the future).

(3) *Future in Principal clause.*

Audiam quid agās, *I shall hear what you are doing* (then).

Audiam quid egēris, *I shall hear what you have done* (in the past).

Audiam quid actūrus sis, *I shall hear what you are going to do* (in the future).

(4) *Future-Perfect in Principal clause.*

Cognōverō quid agās, *I shall have known what you are doing* (then).

Cognōverō quid egēris, *I shall have known what you have done* (in the past).

Cognōverō quid actūrus sis, *I shall have known what you are going to do* (in the future).

B. SECONDARY (OR HISTORICAL) TENSES IN PRINCIPAL AND DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

(1) *Imperfect in Principal clause.*

Scīebam quid agērēs, *I knew* (literally, *was knowing*) *what you were doing* (then).

Scīebam quid egissēs, *I knew what you had done* (in the past).

Scīebam quid actūrus essēs, *I knew what you were going to do* (in the future; i.e., *what you would do*).

(2) *Past Indefinite in Principal clause.*

Cognōvi quid agērēs, *I learned what you were doing* (then).

Cognōvi quid egissēs, *I learned what you had done* (in the past).

Cognōvi quid actūrus essēs, *I learned what you were going to do* (in the future).

(3) *Pluperfect in Principal clause.*

Cognōveram quid agerēs, I had learned what you were doing (then.)

Cognōveram quid ēgissēs, I had learned what you had done (in the past).

Cognōveram quid actūrus essēs, I had learned what you were going to do (in the future).

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Quaeritur cur doctissimi homines maxime dissentiant. 2. Qualis ipse sit animus nescit. 3. Quid dies ferat est incertum. 4. Quid proximā, quid superiore nocte egeris, quis nostrum ignorat? 5. Quid eā nocte egisset, quid in (*for*) proximam constituisset, edocui. 6. Vides quanta tempestas invidiae nobis impendat. 7. Neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae nationes eam incoherent reperiebat. 8. Ex his omnibus iudicat rebus quanto cum periculo et quantā cum virtute res sint administratae. 9. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur. 10. Interim legis convocatis, et quae cognovisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit. 11. Memoravit quibus in locis maximae hostium copiae a populo Romano fusae essent. 12. Quanti suam domum vendidit? 13. In hac obsidione nulli parvum est. 14. Nemini a nobis invidetur.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Who of us (p. 104) does not know where you were last night? 2. He understood at what risk he had done this. 3. Caesar knew for what reason (*quā de causā*) these things were said. 4. I will tell you what cities the Romans took in this war. 5. The consul read to the people what the senate had decreed on the previous day. 6. He pointed out from what classes the forces of Catilina were drawn (*comparo*). 7. He ascertained from spies what was the nature of the road to the camp of the enemy. 8. Caesar found out why Ariovistus did not come to the meeting. 9. After giving up their arms (*abl. abs.*), all the enemy came that night to the camp. 10. We compelled the merchants to tell us from what districts they came. 11. It is said that the man was ten years younger than his brother. 12. The soldiers did not spare the inhabitants of that town. 13. He sold his house for ten talents.

LESSON LXXXIX.

IDIOMATIC USE OF THE INDIRECT QUESTION.

Noun-clauses Introduced by Quod and Ut.

1. An English abstract noun is often expressed in Latin by an indirect question : as, *Dico tibi quale periculum sit, I tell you the nature of the danger*; *quot essent hostes rogavit, he asked the number of the enemy*; *quo eamus rogant, they ask our destination (=whither we are going).*

NOUN-CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY QUOD.

2. *Quod* (meaning, *because, the fact that*), with the indicative often introduces a noun-clause in Latin : as, *Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit, this is an important matter, the fact that when victorious he spared the vanquished.*

NOUN-CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY UT.

3. Verbs of *asking, commanding, striving, and effecting*, take in English an infinitive but in Latin a noun-clause introduced by *ut*, *that*, with the subjunctive : as, *Oro te ut hoc facias, I beg you to do this*; *nititur ut vincat, he strives to conquer.*

If there is a *not* with the inf., *nē* (*that not*) is used for *ut non* : as, *Puero imperavi ne domo exiret, I ordered the boy not to go from home* (impf., in accordance with the rule for sequence, p. 178).

Note 1.—*Iubeo, I order*, however, and *vēto, I forbid*, take the infinitive : as, *Iussi puerum domo non exire, I ordered the boy not to go from home*; *vetuit me hoc facere, he forbade me to do it.*

Note 2.—*Statuo, constituo, decerno, I determine*, take the infinitive when the subject of the main verb and of the infinitive is the same : as, *Statuit Caesar in Italiam redire, Caesar determined to return to Italy.* In other cases, they take a noun-clause introduced by *ut* or *ne* : as, *Statuit Caesar ut legiones suae in Italiam redirent, Caesar determined that his legions should return to Italy.*

4. The following impersonal verbs are followed by a noun-clause introduced by *ut*: *Contingit*, *evenit*, *accidit*, and *fit* (*it happens*), *restat* (*it remains*), *sequitur* (*it follows*), *feri potest* (*it may happen*): as, *Accidit ut nemo adesset*, *it happened that no one was present*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Quod Regulus rediit*, mirabile videtur. 2. *Constat* inter omnes ad salutem civium inventas esse leges. 3. *Caesar* bellum eā aestate cum Germanis gerere constituit. 4. *Pollicitus est* se hoc postero die esse facturum. 5. *Dixerunt* sibi in animo esse sine ullo maleficio per provinciam iter facere. 6. *Rogavit* quando profecti essent. 7. *Caesar* his de causis quas commemoravi *Rhenum* transire decreverat. 8. *Restat ut* de magnitudine belli et imperatore deligendo loquar. 9. *Quod tu incolumis domum rediisti*, mihi gratum est. 10. *Ariovistus* respondit senatum populi Romani sibi praesidio esse. 11. *Primā luce* productis omnibus copiis et duplici acie instructā, quid hostes consilii caperent expectabat. 12. *Oravit ut* omnibus pueris mulieribusque parceretur. 13. *Se hoc opus eo die confecturum esse* suscipit. 14. *Rogavit me ne id facerem*.

Translate into Latin :—

1. He ordered all the forces to assemble on that day at Rome. 2. I asked you to perform all the commands of the general. 3. The enemy will strive to capture the town with all its forces. 4. It follows that he was condemned for treachery by the senate. 5. Explain to the judges your view of the matter. 6. They said that the Romans had pitched their camp in this plain. 7. Do you know our reason for declaring war? 8. He forbade the consul calling the people together on that day. 9. We are not asked to assemble in the market-place. 10. It happened that he was absent from Rome in that year. 11. What amount of money shall I bring? 12. We strove to finish the work within a few days. 13. He determined to set out for Gaul that winter. 14. Beg them not to come. 15. The fact that you betrayed your country is enough.

LESSON XC.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

Final Clauses Introduced by Ut (or Ne), and Quo.

1. An *adverbial clause* is one that takes the place of an adverb. Thus, in *I eat that I may live*, the clause introduced by *that* is an adverbial clause of *purpose*, limiting the action of the main verb. An adverbial clause of purpose is called a *final* clause (from *finis*, *an end*), because it expresses the *end* or object of the verb it limits.

2. Final clauses in Latin are usually introduced by *ut*, *that*, or *ne*, *that . . . not*, *lest* (both with the subjunctive) : as, *Edo ut vivam*, *I eat that I may live*; *hoc dico ne te laedam*, *I say this that I may not offend you* (=to avoid offending you).

Note.—*Ne* in a final clause, may often translate the English “to avoid,” “to prevent.”

3. In final clauses the *present* subjunctive is used after *primary* tenses ; the *imperfect* after *secondary*, in accordance with the *Rule for Sequence* (see p. 178). Thus : *Multi laudant ut laudentur*, *many praise that they may be praised* (pres. after a primary tense) ; *multi laudabant ut laudarentur*, *many praised that they might be praised* (imperfect after a secondary tense).

4. *That no one*, *that no* (adj.), *that nothing*, *that never*, in a final clause, are respectively *ne quis*, *ne ullus*, *ne quid*, *ne unquam* : as, *Porta clausa est ne quis exiret*, *the gate was shut that no one might go out* ; *clamant ne ullum verbum audiat*, *they are shouting that no word may be heard* ; *abiit ne quid viderem*, *I went away that I might see nothing* ; *hoc facite ne unquam vituperent*, *do this that they may never revile*.

5. Instead of *ut* in a final clause, *quo* (=ut eo, *that by this*) with the subjunctive, is used when the clause has a comparative in it : as, *Puto aliquid puero dandum esse quo sit studiosior*, *I think that something ought to be given to the boy that he may be more zealous* ; *Caesar castella communit quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit*, *Caesar erects forts that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetii*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Non vivimus ut edamus. 2. Hoc factum est ne quis in civitatem restitueretur. 3. Ad urbem vēnimus ut oratorem audiremus. 4. Domum redibo ut dormiam. 5. Hoc feci ne cui displicērem. 6. Haec scribebam ut bono esses animo. 7. Ne quis ex civitate pelleretur, Idem promisit. 8. Multa mentitus est quo iunior videretur. 9. Utinam rex ipse adesset. 10. His cognitis, milites eduxit ne omnes interficerentur. 11. Legibus servimus ut liberi esse possimus. 12. Captivos omnes interfici iussit quo melius iter faceret.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They went into the garden that they might find the book. 2. They set out in the morning that they might reach the city before night. 3. We will go away in order not (use *nē*) to see them. 4. I did this in order that I might injure no one. 5. We must raise a shout that we may be heard by him. 6. He praised us in order to be praised by us. 7. He killed himself that he might never see the country overthrown. 8. Do not buy what you do not need. 9. In a few days we shall return to see (use *quo*) the place better. 10. Did you not see with what pride he answered? 11. We must teach our children in order that they may be better citizens. 12. He wishes to return home in order to stand for the consulship.

LESSON XCI.

FINAL CLAUSES—(*Continued*). .

Qui Final. Quominus and Quin. Neve.

1. The relative *qui* (called *qui final*) is often used with the subjunctive to express a *purpose*: as, *Misit legatos qui pacem peterent, he sent ambassadors to sue for peace* (*qui=ut ei*).

Note.—Relative adverbs, like *ubi* (*where*) and *unde* (*whence*), are used, like the relative pronoun, to express a purpose;

as, *Domum ubi habitaret lēgit, he chose a house where he might dwell (ubi=ut ibi, that there).*

2. After verbs of *preventing*, a final clause is often used, introduced by *quominus* (=by which the less=in order that not): as, *Nihil obstat quominus scribas, nothing prevents you from writing (=by which you should the less write).*

Note.—After verbs of *preventing*, *quin* (qui+ne=how not), may be used for *quominus*, if there is a negative or virtual¹ negative with the main verb: as, *Vix inhibēri potuit quin saxa iacēret, he could scarcely be prevented from throwing stones.*

3. After verbs of *fearing*, a final clause is used, introduced by *ut* or *ne*: as, *Vērēor ne veniat, I am afraid he will come; vereor ut veniat, I am afraid he will not come.*

Note.—Here *ut* and *ne* apparently change their meaning; *ut* is used for *that not*, and *ne* for *that*.

4. The English future after verbs of *fearing*, is expressed by the subjunctive—the present subjunctive, if after a primary tense, the imperfect if after a secondary: as, *Timeo ut labores sustineas, I am afraid that you will not endure your labors; timēbam ne eā evenirent, I was afraid that these things would happen.*

5. In English the infinitive is often used to denote a *purpose*, but in Latin it is never so used in good prose. Such an infinitive may be expressed in Latin in various ways.

Thus: *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace*, may be expressed as follows:—

Lēgātos misit ut pacem pētērent (ut final).

Legatos misit qui pacem pētērent (qui final).

Legatos misit ad pacem petendam (gerundive acc. with *ad*), or
legatos misit pacis petendae causā (gerundive genitive with *causā*).

Legatos misit ad pacem petendum (gerund acc. with *ad*), or
legatos misit pacem petendi causā (gerund genitive with *causa*).

Legatos misit pacem petitūm (supine after verb of motion).

Legatos misit pacem petitūros (future part. active expressing a purpose).

¹A word like *vix*, *scarcely*, or a question expecting the answer *No*.

6. For *et ne* (following *ut* or a previous *ne*), *nēve* (or *neū*) is used : as, *Hoc dico ut bono animo sit neve perturbetur*, *I say this that he may be of good courage and may not be disturbed*; *abibo re eum videam neve audiam*, *I will go away that I may not see or hear him*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Legatos ad eum misērunt qui dicerent sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere. 2. Caesar litteras nuntiosque misit ne eos frumento neve aliā re iuvarent. 3. Petierunt ut concilium totius Galliae in certum diem indicere liceret. 4. Qualis esset natura montis, nuntios qui cognoscerent misit. 5. Nuntios praemittit qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. 6. Itaque impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur. 7. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 8. Omnes milites tum timebant ne ab hoste circumvenirentur. 9. Vereor ut hoc tibi profuturum sit. 10. Quale praemium ei sit tributum docebo, quo facilius intellegi possit. 11. Naves vento tenebantur quominus in portum redirent. 12. Consules videant ne quid detrimenti respublica capiat. 13. Omnes equites praemisit qui vidērent quas in partes iter caperent.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar sends forward the soldiers of the tenth legion to seize the hill. 2. He ordered them not to go out of camp after sunset. 3. He begged him to spare the women and children. 4. He ordered them to open (*laxare*) the ranks that they might the more easily use their swords. 5. He was afraid that all the soldiers would desert him. 6. The Romans built forts to keep back the enemy. 7. They were afraid that they would be defeated. 8. I tell you this, that you may the more easily understand. 9. I do not know when they intend to set out. 10. He asked him not to bring a single soldier with him. 11. He persuaded them to set out with him. 12. Fearing that he would not be able to withstand the attack, he sent a despatch to Caesar. 13. He warned him to avoid all wrong-doing.

LESSON XCII.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT.
UT CONSECUTIVE.

1. An adverbial clause is often used to express the *result* of what is described in the main clause. Such clauses are called *consecutive* clauses (*consequor, overtake, attain*). Thus, in the sentence, *Such fear seized all, that the king himself fled*, the clause introduced by *that* is a consecutive clause.

2. A consecutive clause is usually introduced by *ut* with the subjunctive (called *ut-consecutive*): as, *Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fugerit*, *such fear seized all that the king himself fled*; *tam caecus fuit ut me non viderit*, *he was so blind that he did not see me*.

Note 1.—The rule for the sequence of tenses (p. 178) does not apply in consecutive clauses. Of course the imperfect subjunctive will be used, but only if the meaning requires it. Thus: *Tantus timor exercitum occupavit ut omnes perturbarentur*, *such fear seized the army that all were disturbed* (incomplete continuous act).

Note 2.—*That . . . not* in a consecutive clause, is not *ne* (as in a final clause; p. 183), but *ut non*; so, too, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, *ut nihil*, are used for *that no one*, *that no*, and *that nothing*. See below.

3. Consecutive clauses are used after demonstrative words like *talīs*, *such*; *tantus*, *so great*; *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *so*; *adeo*, *to such a degree*: as, *Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet*, *he was of such a character that no one believed him*; *tanta vis probitatis est ut eam in hoste diligamus*, *so great is the force of honesty that we love it even in an enemy*; *Tarquinius sic Servium diligebat ut is eius vulgo haberetur filius*, *Tarquin so loved Servius that the latter was commonly regarded as his son*; *Verres Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit*, *Verres so harried Sicily for three years that it could not in any way be restored to its original condition*; *tam improbus fuit ut nihil eum unquam a scelere revocaverit*, *he was so wicked that nothing ever called him away from crime*; *hoc eum adeo terruit ut*

vix hodie prodire audeat, *this so terrified him that he scarcely ventures (now) to go forth.*

QUI CONSECUTIVE.

4. The relative *qui* (called *qui-consecutive*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a consecutive clause : as, *Non is sum qui hoc faciam*, *I am not the one to do it* (*qui=ut ego, that I*).

5. *Qui* consecutive is used in the following constructions :—

(a) With certain *indefinite expressions*, like *sunt qui* (*there are some who*), *reperiuntur qui* (*there are found who*), *nemo est qui* (*there is no one who*), *quis est qui?* (*who is there who?*), *nihil est quod* (*there is nothing that*) : as, *Sunt qui putent nihil sibi litteris opus esse*, *there are some who think that they have no need of literature* ; *nihil est quod dicere velim*, *there is nothing that I wish to say.*

(b) After *dignus* (*worthy*), *indignus* (*unworthy*), and *idoneus* or *aptus* (*fit*) : as, *Dignus est qui ametur*, *he is worthy to be loved* (=he deserves to be).

(c) After *quam* with a comparative : as, *Maiores quam cui resisti possit*, *he is too great to be resisted* (=greater than to whom it can be resisted).

Note.—*Possum*, *I can*, is used impersonally, only when joined with a passive infinitive.

6. Instead of *qui non*, *quin* with the subjunctive is often used : as, *Nemo est quin sciat*, *there is no one who does not know.*

So too, after *dubito* (*doubt*), *nego* (*deny*), *ignoro* (*be ignorant*), when joined with a negative or virtual negative,¹ that is expressed by *quin* (=qui ne, *how not*) : as, *Negari non potest quin turpe sit fidem fallere*, *it cannot be denied that it is dishonorable to break one's word* ; *non dubitat quin animus sit immortalis*, *he does not doubt that the soul is immortal* ; *num quis ignorat quin hæc vera sint?* *is anyone ignorant that this is the truth?*

Note.—*Quis* means *any* after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num*, *quo* and *quanto*.

¹ Words like *vix*, *scarcely*, and questions that expect the answer *No*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeas induendas tempus defuerit. 2. Flumen Arar in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat, iudicari non possit. 3. Mandat ut crebros exploratores in Suevos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. 4. Non is sum qui mortis periculo terrear. 5. Hunc Caesar idoneum iudicaverat quem cum mandatis mitteret. 6. Quis servus dignus fuit cui nostra salus permetteretur? 7. Non tam sum imperitus rerum ut hoc non sciam. 8. Sunt qui censeant unā animum et corpus perire. 9. Quis potest esse tam aversus a vero qui haec neget? 10. Tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut nostri proelium redintegrarent. 11. Neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit. 12. Mons altissimus impendebat ut facile perpauci nos prohibere possent. 13. Illae tamen omnes dissensiones erant eiusmodi quae non ad delendam sed commutandam rempublicam pertinerent. 14. Hostes plures sunt quam qui aestimari possint.

Translate into Latin :—

1. We were not able to prevent the Belgae from forming a league with the rest of the Gauls. 2. The enemy endeavored to hinder us from taking refuge (*se recipere*) in our camp. 3. Nothing is so obscure that it cannot be found out by enquiry. 4. There is no doubt that the Belgae are the bravest of all the Gauls. 5. The storm was so great that no ship could reach the harbor. 6. He was so diligent that he lost no time in play. 7. What prevents us from seeing the games to-day? 8. The river was so deep that the soldiers were not able to cross it on foot. 9. Men were sent to pick out a place suitable for the camp. 10. The Romans fought so fiercely that they easily defeated the forces of the enemy. 11. I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth. 12. There is no one but believes that he was guilty of treachery. 13. There were some in the army who were willing to betray their country for gold. 14. Their deeds are too great to be told.

XCIII.

THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

1. A conditional sentence contains (*a*) a main clause, (*b*) an adverbial clause stating the condition on which the statement of the main clause is, or would be, true : as, *If he says this, he is wrong.* The clause containing the condition is called the *if*-clause.

2. The common types of the conditional sentence are as follows :—

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

	IF-CLAUSE.	MAIN CLAUSE.
Indicative in both Clauses.	1. Si quis hæc dicit, <i>If anyone says this,</i>	errat, <i>he is wrong.</i>
	Si quis hæc dixit, <i>If anyone said this,</i>	erravit, <i>he was wrong.</i>
	2. Si quis hæc dicet (or dixerit), <i>If any one says (literally, shall say or have said) this,</i>	errabit. <i>he will be wrong.</i>
Subjunctive in both Clauses.	3. Si quis hæc dicat, <i>If anyone were to (or should) say this,</i>	erret, <i>he would be wrong.</i>
	4. Si quis hæc diceret, <i>If anyone were saying this (now),</i>	erraret, <i>he would be wrong.</i>
	5. Si quis hæc dixisset, <i>If anyone had said this (in the past)</i>	erravisset, <i>he would have been wrong.</i>

Note.—Instead of the English present, referring to the future (as in type 2), Latin uses the future, or—if the action of the verb in the *if*-clause is over before that of the main verb begins—the future-perfect.

3. *Unless, or if not* with the force of *unless*, in an *if*-clause, is **nisi** or **ni**: as, **Nisi arma sumpsisses, delētus esses,** *unless you had taken up arms, you would have been destroyed*; **nisi medicus adesset, puer morēretur,** *if the doctor were not here, the boy would be dying.* But when *if not* can not be turned into *unless*, it is ex-

pressed by *si non* : as, *Cur mihi nocēs, si ego tibi non noceō?* *why do you harm me, if I do not harm you?*

4. *Any*, after *si* or *nisi*, is *quis* : as, *Si quis ita fecerit, poenas dabit, if anyone does so, he will be punished* (literally, *shall have done so*).

5. *Whether . . . or*, introducing alternative conditions (i. e., with the force of *if . . . or if*), is expressed by *sive (seu) . . . sive (seu)* : as, *Sive adfuisti sive abfuisti, nihil dico, whether you were present or absent, I say nothing*.

Note.—*Sive . . . sive* must be carefully distinguished from *utrum . . . an* (p. 177, 5), introducing a dependent double question and used as the subject or object of a verb : as, *Utrum velit an nolit rogo, I ask whether he is willing or unwilling*.

6. *But if*, introducing a corrected condition is *sin* (= *si + ne*, *if not*) ; *if not* is *si minus* : as, *Si rogas, respondeo; sin nihil rogas, taceo if you ask, I answer; but if you don't ask, I hold my peace; si haec fecerit, gaudebo; si minus, aequo animo feram, if he has done it, I shall be glad; if not, I shall bear it with patience*.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Si roges, respondeam. 2. Si quid haberem, darem. 3. Si Metelli fidei diffisus essem, iudicem eum non retinuissem. 4. Nomen huius floris si scirem, eum pluris facerem. 5. Sive bene sive male facit, odio est. 6. Si ceteris satisfaciat, sibi satisfaciat. 7. Hoc si fecit, non ita acutus fuit. 8. Hoc si sciam, dicere non audeam. 9. Mihi si tu subvenies, gaudebo; si minus, non aegre feram. 10. Nisi auxilio venisses, de nobis actum esset. 11. Hoc si verum est, impetrabis; sin falsum, noli expectare. 12. Frater tuus si adesset, tibi plauderet.

Translate into Latin :—

1. If you had not applauded, he would have been ashamed. 2. If the harvest is large, the country will be rich. 3. If you should come to our aid, all would be well; if not, it will be all over with us. 4. If he were unwilling, we would not go. 5. Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time. 6. If you were to ask me that, I should

answer nothing. 7. If they had not detained me, I should have been here sooner. 8. If they put this man at the head of the army, the country will be safe. 9. If you should be willing, he would be unwilling. 10. If he had not been a man of courage, he would not have refused. 11. If he leads his army over the Rhine, it is all over with them. 12. If anyone should say so, he would not be listened to by anyone.

LESSON XCIV.

CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Exception to the Rules.

1. The common types of the conditional sentence are easily learned with a little attention and practice. They are classified as follows :—

Conditional sentences are divided into *three* classes :

I. SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

This class will be easily recognized when the second and third classes are known. It includes all conditional sentences in which nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. It has the indicative in both clauses : as, *Pecuniam si habet, dat, if he has money, he gives it; pecuniam si habuit, dedit, if he had money, he gave it.*

Note.—*Si* rarely stands at the head of the sentence. Hence the common use of *quodsi* for *si* at the head of a *si*-clause.

II. FUTURE CONDITIONS.

This class includes conditional sentences in which the fulfilment of the condition is referred to the future. Of these there are two types :—

(a) Where the condition is regarded as likely to be fulfilled : as, *Pecuniam si habebit, dabit, if he has (old English, shall have) money, he will give it.*

Here the fut. indic. is used in both clauses. But the fut. perf. is used in the *if*-clause when the action of the verb of that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main verb begins: as, **Hoc si fecerit, morietur**, *if he does this, he shall die* (literally, *shall have done*).

(b) Where the condition is regarded as unlikely to be fulfilled. Such sentences have in English *would* or *should* in the main clause: as, **Pecuniam si habeat, det**, *if he should have money, he would give it*.

Here the present subjunctive is used in both clauses.

III. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.

This class includes all conditional sentences in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled. Of these also there are two types:—

(a) Where the condition is referred to the present. These have in English the word *now* (expressed or understood) in both clauses: as, **Pecuniam si habēret, daret**, *if he had money (now), he would give it*.

Here the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

(b) Where the condition is referred to the past. This type has in English *would have* in the main clause: as, **Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset**, *if he had had money, he would have given it*.

Here the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

Note 1.—In sentences of Class III., the *if*-clause may refer to the past, while the main clause refers to the present, or *vice versa*: as, **Illi si hæc fecissent, viverent**, *if they had done this, they would now be alive*.

Note 2.—The first type of Class III. is also used of *past* time to express *continuous action*: as, **Hæc si sentirent, sapientes essent**, *if they had held these views, they would have been wise*.

2. One important exception to the regular rules for conditional sentences must be noted. It is as follows:—

The indicative, and *not the subjunctive*, is used in the main clause of the conditional sentence when the verb of that clause is—

(a) In the periphrastic conjugation active or passive (p. 172, 174).

(b) *Possum, I can; debeo, I ought; oportet, it is needful:* as, *Ni litteras misisset, agros relicturn erant, if he had not sent the letter, they would have left their lands; consilia si processissent, interficiendus fuit, if the plans had succeeded, he would have been put to death; totus exercitus deleri potuit, si persecuti essent victores, the whole army might have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up.*

3. *Provided that* is expressed by *dum*, by *mōdo*, or by *dummōdo*, all with the subjunctive (with *nē* for *non* in negative clauses): as, *Oderint dum metuant, let them hate provided that they fear; veniant dum ne maneant, let them come, provided that they do not remain.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. *Iterum si experiri volunt, ego iterum paratus sum decertare.* 2. *Catilina si in urbe mansisset, nunquam nos rempublicam liberavisset.* 3. *Helvetii si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, pacem cum iis faciam.* 4. *Servi mei si me metuerent, domum meam relinquendam esse putarem.* 5. *Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria.* 6. *Magno me metu liberabis, dummodo inter me atque te murus intersit.* 7. *Haec si tecum patria loquatur, impetrare debet.* 8. *Multi omnia recta atque honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.* 9. *Si certior factus essem in quo periculo esses, ad te advolassem.* 10. *Galli aequo animo omnes belli patiuntur iniurias, dummodo repellant periculum servitutis.* 11. *Neque hostem sustinere poterant, ni cohortes se obiecissent.* 12. *Nisi discedes, ego te hostem habeo.* 13. *Si te interfecero, ego gratiam multis faciam.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. *I shall carry on war against the Gauls, provided I can collect two legions.* 2. *If you should conquer the enemy in battle, they would not obey you.* 3. *If that consul were living, he would keep off the attack of this enemy.* 4. *The power of Karthage would not have fallen so easily, if we had not conquered her with our fleet.* 5. *Provided he does not carry on war against that state, we will aid him with all our forces.* 6. *If he had been here, he would have*

helped me. 7. If they make an attack upon this town, they will take it. 8. If you do not give up the hostages, I shall regard you as enemies. 9. Provided you ward off this danger, we shall consider you a friend. 10. If you had wished to take this town, you should have collected more forces. 11. The man would have died, if we had not aided him. 12. If the rest were killed, would you escape? (use *act. periphr. conjugation.*) 13. If he had been the same as before, I could have touched his heart.

LESSON XCV.

COMPARATIVE AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. A comparative adverbial clause expresses *agreement* (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause: as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita mētes, you shall reap according as you do* (lit., *shall have done*) *your seeding*.

Here the clause introduced by *ut* is an adverbial comparative clause.

2. Comparative clauses fall into two classes:—

(a) Where the comparison is stated as a *fact*: as, *Omnia, sicut acta sunt, memoravit, he has narrated everything just as it was done*.

(b) Where the comparison is stated as a mere *supposition*: as, *Honores petunt quasi honeste vixerint, they seek office, as if they have lived honorably (=while they have not)*.

The first class takes the indicative; the second, the subjunctive.

3. The following are the common comparative conjunctions that are usually joined with the subjunctive: *Tanquam*, or *tanquam si*, *quasi*, *velut*, or *velut si*, as *if*: as, *Tanquam hoc difficile sit, as if this were hard*; *velut si Asia sit clausa, sic nihil perfertur ad nos just as if Asia were closed, no news reaches us*.

4. The English *the...the* with two comparatives, is expressed in Latin in two ways:—

(a) By *quo...eo* (or *quanto...tanto*) with two comparatives: as, *Quo (or quanto) quisque est melior, eo (or tanto) difficilior*

suspiscatur, the better a man is, the more difficultly he has in suspecting.

(b) By *ut quisque...ita* with two superlatives: as, *Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime suspiscatur, the better a man is, &c.*

Note.—This might also be translated: *In proportion to a man's goodness, &c., or, In proportion as a man is good, &c.*

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

5. *Concessive* adverbial clauses are those that make some concession, in spite of which the statement of the main clause is true. They are usually introduced in English by *although*: as, *Romani, quamquam proelio fessi erant, tamen procedunt, the Romans, although they were weary with fighting, nevertheless advance.*

6. Concessive clauses, when they state a *fact*, take the indicative; when they state a *supposition*, the subjunctive: as, *Caesar, quamquam nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur, though Caesar had not as yet discovered their plans, he nevertheless was suspicious; etsi falso in suspicionem venisses, tamen mihi ignoscere debuisti, although you had been falsely suspected, still you should have pardoned me (in suspicionem venire = the passive of suspicor, I suspect).*

7. The following are the common concessive conjunctions, and the moods with which they are used: *Quamquam* (*though*), and *utut* (*however*), with indicative; *licet*, *quamvis* (lit., *as you wish*), *ut*, *quum* (all meaning *although*), with subjunctive; *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi* (*although, even if*)—all compounds of *si*, and following the same rules for mood.

Note.—*Quamvis* is also used as an adverb: as, *Ille, quamvis facētus, odio est, he, however witty, is hated (or whatever his wit); (odio esse, to be for an object of hate, is the passive of odi, I hate).*

8. The relative *qui* with the subjunctive is often used concessively. It is called *qui concessive*: as, *Caesar, qui haec vidēret, tamen aciem instruxit, though Caesar saw this, still he drew up his line.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Etsi maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam contendit.
2. Quamquam crebro audiebat Labienum ab inimicis suis sollicitari, tamen non credidit.
3. Senectus, quamvis non sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditatem.
4. Quamquam premebantur, tamen omnia fortissimo sustinebant animo.
5. Nonne impetrare debent, etiamsi adhiberi vim non possit?
6. Quamquam Germanos diutius in Gallia versari Galli voluerant, tamen populi Romani exercitum hiemare in Gallia moleste ferebant.
7. Non igitur potestas est conservandae reipublicae, quamvis ea prematur periculo.
8. Hannibal, ex quo die dux est declaratus, velut Italia sibi provincia decreta esset, nobis inferre bellum statuit.
9. Illa superiora, quamquam ferenda non fuerunt, tamen, ut potui, tuli.
10. Quanto erat in dies gravior oppugnatio, tanto crebriores litterae ad Caesarem mittebantur.
11. Ut meritus est, ita poenam persolvit.
12. Senatum metus cepit velut si ad portas hostes essent.
13. Caesar, etsi prope exacta aestas erat, tamen eo exercitum duxit.
14. Tibi adero ego, licet amicus tuus absit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Though the Germans were of great bravery, still they were often defeated by the Romans in battle.
2. All the citizens were terrified just as though the enemy were at (*adesse*) the gates.
3. The battle was fought as the general had directed.
4. Whatever is disgraceful, even though it may be concealed, can in no way be honorable.
5. Life, however short, can always be useful.
6. You speak as though the enemy would conquer.
7. Though ambition is a vice, it is often the cause of virtues.
8. Though the summer had ended, Caesar collected a large number of ships.
9. The bolder the Romans were, the more timid the enemy became.
10. Though their general did not conquer me, still his valor must be praised.
11. Though Caesar had only one legion, still he hastened to set out.
12. He acted otherwise than (*aliter quam*) he ought to have done.
13. Though they were the bravest in Gaul, they were not equal to the Romans in valor.

LESSON XCVI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.—QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM
(BECAUSE).

1. Causal adverbial clauses state the *cause* or reason for the fact mentioned in the main clause. In English they are usually introduced by *because*: as, *Tacent quia periculum metuunt, they are silent because they fear danger.*

2. Causal clauses are usually introduced by *quod, quia, because, or quoniam (=quum iam, since now), seeing that.*

They are followed by the indicative when the reason they introduce is given on the speaker's own authority; they are followed by the subjunctive when the reason they introduce is given on the authority of another: as, *Patriā expulsus est quia iustus erat, he was banished because he was just* (*esset* would mean that this was the reason usually given, for the truth of which, however, the speaker would not vouch); *Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpere iuventutem, Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he was corrupting the young men* (*corrumpere* would mean that the speaker vouched for the truth of the charge).

Note.—This *quod* is common after *quēror (complain), laudo (praise), gaudeo (be glad), doleo (be sorry).*

3. *Quum (cum)*, in the sense of *since*, is often used to introduce a causal clause: as, *Hæc quum ita sint, abibo, as this is so, I will go away.*

4. The relative *qui* (called *qui causal*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a causal clause: as, *Pecasse videor qui a te discesserim, it seems I have done wrong, inasmuch as I have parted from you* (*pecasse=peccavisse*).

Note.—In this sense, *qui* is often strengthened by the addition of *quippe* or *utpote, indeed, as being*: as, *Multa de me questus est quippe qui in me incensus est, he complained at length of me, inasmuch as he had been exasperated against me.*

5. Qui causal is very commonly found after *exclamations*: as, *Me miserum, qui haec fecerim, wretch that I am for doing this!*

Note. --The accusative case is often used in *exclamations*. It is called the *accusative of exclamation*.

6. Non quod, or non quo, with the subjunctive, is often used to introduce a rejected reason: as, *Hoc laudo non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est, I praise this, not because it is honorable but because it is expedient; de consilio meo non scripsi, non quo celandum esset sed quia, &c., I did not write you about my plan, not because it required to be concealed but because, &c.* So too: non quin, not but that: as, *Non quin me ames sed quod abire cupio, not but that you love me, but because I am anxious to go.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. Aedui, cum se defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Quae cum ita sint, vestra tecta defendite. 3. Itaque quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba facit frater eius. 4. O terram beatam, quae hunc virum exceperit. 5. Aedui legatos miserunt questum quod Harudes agros suos popularentur. 6. Quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite. 7. O praeclarum diem, cum in illud divinorum animorum concilium proficiscar. 8. Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitabat quod magnā inopiā urgebatur. 9. Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebrate illos dies. 10. Nonne Aristides expulsus est patriā, quod iustus esset? 11. Romani quia consules ad id tempus prospere gererent, minus his cladibus commovebantur. 12. Quoniam res ita se habet, in urbem redeamus. 13. Succenseo tibi, quia lucrum amicitiae anteposuisti.

Translate into Latin:—

1. It is a very easy matter, since we surpass all in valor, to obtain the sovereignty of all Gaul. 2. Since they were not able to withstand our attack, they betook themselves to the baggage and the waggons. 3. O wretched man! inasmuch as you have been expelled from your native land by ungrateful citizens. 4. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to him, since they knew that he had crossed the river with all his forces. 5. The soldiers were glad because they had retaken the camp which they had lost a few days

before. 6. They rejoiced because they were going to assault a town in which there was so large an amount of booty. 7. Since they had no hope that the city could be defended, they resolved to withdraw into the citadel. 8. He was always very poor though he might have been (use *licet*) very rich. 9. The soldiers were compelled to leave their baggage on this side of the river, because the enemy were following them. 10. Since we must advance against the enemy, arouse your courage, comrades. 11. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to say that they would come to the council on the next day. 12. O! wretched man, since you have lost the opportunity of saving the state. 13. Since this is so, let us arm ourselves against the enemy.

LESSON XCVII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

Postquam. Dum. Priusquam.

1. Temporal adverbial clauses define the time of the action of the main verb: as, *Haec feci dum potui, I did this while I could.* Here the clause *dum potui* is temporal, limiting the main verb *feci*.

POSTQUAM.

2. Temporal conjunctions meaning *after that*, like *postquam*, *simul*, *simul ac* (or, before a vowel, *atque*), *ubi*, *ut* (*primum*), *quum* (*primum*), are followed by the indicative: as, *Simul atque haec audivit, abiit, after he had heard this, he went away.*

Note.—The perfect is used after these conjunctions for the English pluperfect.

Postquam id animadvertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, after he had noticed this, Caesar withdraws his forces to the nearest hill; ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt, when they thought they were ready, they set fire to the towns; ea res ut Helvetiis nuntiata est, eum causam dicere coegerunt, when this fact was reported to the Helvetii, they compelled him to plead his cause; nostri, simul in arido constitērunt,

impetum fecerunt, our men, as soon as they had set foot on dry land, made an attack.

DUM.

3. Temporal conjunctions meaning *while* or *until*, like *dum, donec, quoad*, take the indicative when they mean *while, as long as*: as, *Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur, while the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.*

Note.—When the time expressed by the *dum*-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb, the present tense is used in Latin instead of the English past.

4. *Dum, donec, quoad*, meaning *until*, take the indicative when used to express time alone: as, *Hoc feci dum mihi licuit, I did this as long as it was allowed me; dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit, there was silence until Marcellus returned; Milo in senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est, Milo was in the senate on that day, until the senate was dismissed.*

But when they express some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation*, they require the subjunctive: as, *Dum naves convenirent expectavit, he waited till the ships should assemble* (i.e., *in order that they might assemble*); *differant dum ira defervescat, let them put off till their anger cools* (i.e., *in order that their anger may cool*); *impetum hostium sustinuit quoad ceteri pontem interromperent, he withstood the attack of the enemy till the rest should break down the bridge* (i.e., *that they might break down the bridge*.)

PRIUSQUAM.

5. Temporal conjunctions meaning *before that*, like *priusquam* and *antequam*, take the indicative when they mark simple priority in time: as, *Priusquam lucet adsunt, they are here before it is light; filios convocavit antequam mortuus est, he called together his sons before he died.*

They take the subjunctive, however, when used to express some further idea of *intention* or of a *prevented result*: as, *Priusquam pugnaretur nox intervenit, night came on before the battle was fought* (result prevented); *priusquam se hostes ex terrore reciper-*

ent, in *finēs* eorum exercitum duxit, *before the army recovered from their panic, he led his army into their territory* (intention).

Note.—*Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written in two words: as, *Ante rorat quam pluit, it drops before it rains.*

6. For *dum*, meaning *provided that*, see page 194, 3.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *video, iubeo, duco, interficio, moror, desisto.*

Translate into English :—

1. Obsidio per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit, dum vulnus ducis curaretur. 2. Antequam huic respondebo, de me pauca dicam. 3. Expectate dum consul fiat. 4. Ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit. 5. Simul ac signa nostra vident, portas aperuerunt. 6. Priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet. 7. Antequam de meo adventu audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perveni. 8. Postquam copias hostium venire vidit, flumen exercitum transducere maturavit. 9. Dum ea geruntur, ii qui pro portis castrorum erant, Caesari id nuntiaverunt. 10. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit. 11. Non ante finitum est proelium quam ille interfectus est. 12. Dum reliquae naves eo convenirent expectavit. 13. Nec prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum pervenerunt. 14. Ipse, equo vulnerato, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. When the Helvetii had been informed of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 2. After he had learned these facts, he convoked an assembly. 3. As soon as they had recovered from their flight, they sent envoys concerning peace. 4. In order that he might learn these things before he made the attempt, he sent forward his lieutenant with a ship of war. 5. While he was delaying a few days near Vesontio, a panic seized the army. 6. They begged Caesar to send them aid before the king should collect a force. 7. The ambassador did not depart until he had seen us embark. 8. Every thing was done before he reached Italy. 9. Nor did we cease the pursuit (say *make an end of pursuing*) until they reached their ships. 10. Before I return to Rome, I shall go

to Athens. 11. He came to our camp before the Germans could learn what was being done. 12. Nor were they sure till we were close to their camp. 13. He was not deterred by fear of punishment from speaking the truth.

LESSON XCVIII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES—(*Continued*).

Syntax of *Quum* (when, since).

1. *Quum* (*cum*) *causal* (*i.e.*, meaning *since*), as has been shown (p. 198, 4), requires the subjunctive : as, *Quae quum ita sint, Catilina, perge quo coepisti, as this is so, Catiline, go on as you have begun.*

2. *Quum* simply expressing contemporaneous time (called *quum temporal*) takes the indicative : as, *Quum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of the one party; quum verba faciunt, maiores extollunt, when they speak they extol their ancestors; nondum profectus erat quum haec gerebantur, he had not yet departed when these things were taking place.*

In these sentences, *quum* is a relative adverb corresponding to a suppressed correlative *tum* in the main clause.

3. But when used with the imperfect or pluperfect tense, *quum* usually takes the subjunctive, even when no idea of cause is implied : as, *Decessit Agesilāus quum in portum venisset, Agesilaus died when he had entered the harbor.*

Note.—*Quum* with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, is a common substitute for the perf. part. active, which is wanting in Latin : as, *Quum haec dixisset, abiit, having spoken these words, he departed.* There are, therefore, four substitutes for the perf. part. active :—

- (a) **Quum** + imperf. or pluperf. subj. (b) **Postquam** + perf. indic.
 (c) The ablative absolute. (d) The perf. part. of a synonymous deponent.

Thus: *Having spoken these words*, is:—

- (a) **Quum** haec dixisset. (b) **Postquam** haec dixit.
 (c) His dictis (= *these things said*). (d) **Haec** locutus.

4. **Quum** is often used for *quoties*, *as often as*, *whenever*: as, **Quum** impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogeantur, *whenever they made a charge, the enemy were forced to retire*; **quum** rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror, *whenever I see the rose, then I judge that it is spring*.

Note.—In this sense, **quum** takes the perfect for the English present, and the pluperfect for the English past.

5. **Quum** with the subjunctive, sometimes has a concessive force, meaning *although*: as, **Pylades quum** sis, dices te esse **Orestem**, *though you are Pylades, you will say you are Orestes*.

Note.—This meaning of **quum** may be used to translate the English *instead of*: as, **Quum** dicere deberet, contigit, *instead of speaking, he held his peace* (literally, *when he ought to have spoken*).

EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci
2. Helvetii quum de eius adventu certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt.
3. Num dubium est utrum casu an consilio factus sit mundus?
4. Aedui quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium.
5. Diu quum esset pugnatum, hostium impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt.
6. Caesar iussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent.
7. Qui quum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, pacem petierunt.
8. Pueri utrum legant an scribant nescio.
9. Haec quum animadvertisset, convocato concilio, vehem-

menter eos incusat. 10. Utrum legat necne nescio. 11. Quum civitas armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est. 12. Haec quum flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit. 13. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, poposcit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. When he had enquired of (*ex*) the scouts what tribes were in arms, he learned the truth. 2. When Caesar came to those towns, he demanded arms and hostages of them. 3. When the ships were approaching Britain, a violent storm arose. 4. As soon as they recovered from their dismay, they sent envoys to-sue-for (*de*) peace. 5. When the enemy were advancing on our camp, our soldiers made a sally. 6. Scipio, fearing (*pf. part.*) that he would lose the town, led out his soldiers in battle array. 7. When I was trying to expel him from the city, I had another object in view (use *aliud agere, drive at another thing*). 8. He asked whether Caesar came to the Senate on that day or not. 9. I asked him whether he lived at Rome or Athens. 10. It is a question (*quaeritur*) whether there is one world or more. 11. While the Senate was preparing to make war on Caesar, he marched unexpectedly against them. 12. Since this is so, I shall wait till you come. 13. Caesar having perceived that the enemy were near, led his forces to the nearest hill.

LESSON XCIX.

INDIRECT (OR OBLIQUE) NARRATION.

1. A statement depending on a verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing*, or the like, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique narration*.

Thus, in *Dixit se civem Romanum esse*, *he said that he was a Roman citizen*, the words *se civem Romanum esse* are in indirect narration. The actual words used were, *Civis Romanus sum, I am a Roman citizen*; these are said to be in *direct narration*.

¹The term *oblique narration* is sometimes limited so as to apply only to *reported speeches*. It is more convenient to use it in the wider sense.

2. The main verb of direct narration becomes infinitive in indirect narration, and the subject of direct narration becomes accusative before the infinitive (p. 109). The tense of the infinitive will be present, perfect, or future, according as the tense of the *actual words* was present, perfect, or future. Thus :—

DIRECT.

Civis Romanus sum.
I am a Roman citizen.

Civis Romanus ero.
I shall be a Roman citizen.

Civis Romanus eram (or fui).
I was (or have been) a Roman citizen.

INDIRECT.

Dixit se civem Romanum esse.
He said that he was a Roman citizen.

Dixit se civem Romanum futurum esse (or fore.)
He said that he should be a Roman citizen.

Dixit se civem Romanum fuisse.
He said that he was (or had been) a Roman citizen.

Note.—After verbs meaning *to hope* or *promise*, the future infinitive is used instead of the English present infinitive : as, **Promisit se venturum esse, he promised to come.**

3. To determine the tense of the infinitive in indirect narration, it is best to find the tense of the main verb in direct narration ; *the tense of the main verb in direct narration is the tense of the infinitive in indirect narration.* Thus, in *Caesar said that he had written*, the direct narration is *I have written*, **scripsi** ; the indirect, therefore, is **Caesar dixit se scripsisse** ; *he said that he was an orator*, **dixit se oratorem esse** (direct = **orator sum**).

Note.—Pronouns of the 1st or 2nd person become pronouns of the 3rd person in reporting speeches in indirect narration.

4. All adjectival and adverbial clauses in indirect narration must have the subjunctive : as, **Dixit se eos quos cepisset domum misisse**, *he said that he had sent home those whom he had taken* (direct = **eos quos cepi domum misi**, *I have sent home those whom I have taken*) ; **dixit se, quoties potuisset, rediisse** *he said that he had returned as often as he could* (direct = **redi quoties potui**, *I have returned as often as I could*).

Note 1.—In accordance with the rule for the *sequence of tenses*

(p. 178), the verb of the dependent adjectival or adverbial clause will be in the impf. or plupf. subjunctive in indirect narration after a secondary tense.

Note 2.—A subordinate clause, when inserted in a passage in indirect narration on the authority of the writer or reporter, takes the indicative : as, *Certior factus est id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur*, *he was informed that this was intended*, i.e., *to break down the bridge which he (Xerxes) had built over the Hellespont* (here the clause *quem ... fecerat* has the indicative, because the writer vouches for the truth of the statement himself). (Note.—*Id agere*=*to aim at this*).

5. The imperative of direct narration is put in the subjunctive in indirect narration (after a secondary tense, in the impf. subjunctive) : as, *Ne cunctarentur*, *let them not delay (he said)* (direct=*ne cunctamini*, *do not delay*).

6. Questions that expect an answer are put in the subjunctive in indirect narration ; rhetorical questions (exclamations and appeals), in the infinitive : as, (*Scriptis*) *quid de praeda faciendum esse censerent?* (*he wrote*) *what did they think should be done with regard to the booty?* (direct=*quid ... censetis?* *what do you think?*); *quid esse turpius? cur eos dubitare?* *what was more dishonorable? why did they hesitate?* (direct=*quid est turpius? cur dubitatis?* *what is more dishonorable? why do you hesitate?*)

7. A fut.-perf. indicative in a dependent clause in direct narration, becomes, in indirect, perf. subjun. after a primary tense and pluperf. subjun. after a secondary : as, *Dicit eum qui id fecerit, poenas daturum esse*, *he says that the one who does (literally, shall have done) this, shall be punished*; *dicit eum qui id fecisset, poenas daturum esse*, *he said that the one who did that, should be punished*.

8. Oblique narration is often suddenly introduced into the narrative by the historians, without the governing verb of *saying* being expressed : as, *Regulus reddi captivos negavit esse utile: illos enim bonos duces esse*, *Regulus denied that it was expedient that the captives should be restored: that they were good leaders*.

9. *I say . . . not*, in Latin is *nego*, which, owing to the tendency in Latin to put the negative forward in the sentence, is usually put first : as *Negabat se praemium ullum accepturum*, *he said that he would not accept any reward*. (Note.—*Esse* with a participle is often dropped in indirect narration).

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Omnia quae iussissent parata esse scripsit. 2. Nihil temere esse agendum existimabant ; quid enim levius esse quam, auctore hoste, capere consilium? 3. Eos cur tam sero venissent rogavit : quam diu eos servituros esse? 4. Dixit se domum eos quibus pepercisset dimisisse. 5. Dixit iis qui philosophiam vituperarent, satis responsum esse. 6. Negabant se eos, qui semper paravissent seditionem, coercere posse. 7. Num dixit se mansurum esse dum imperator adveniret? 8. Negabat se scire quo verteretur. 9. Clamavit se quantum potuisset, eius praecepta observaturum ; fidem praestaret. 10. Caesar certior factus est ex ea parte, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse. 11. Nuntiatum est eos omnia facere quae vellet. 12. Negavit caecos videre.

Translate into Latin (using *oblique narration*) :—

1. He said that he had given them the books they asked for. 2. He wrote that the camp they had fortified was three miles from Rome. 3. Let them remember, he said, what he had told them. 4. Let them not forget the kindness they had received. When would they see such friends again? 5. Let them not accept favors from an enemy. 6. Had they not enjoyed peace under Caesar's rule? 7. He said that he had not sold his house? 8. He said that his house had been sold for as much as he gave for it. 9. Why did they live, he said, when they could not maintain their freedom? 10. They said that he used to groan as often as he saw his son (p. 204, 4). 11. Do not think I am angry with those I love. 12. I was told that he used to say that life was very short.

LESSON C.

SUMMARY OF RULES FOR TURNING DIRECT INTO OBLIQUE NARRATION.

The Conditional Sentence in Oblique Narration.

1. The following is a summary of the rules already given for *turning direct into oblique narration* :—

(1) The main verb of direct narration becomes infinitive in indirect narration.

(2) All adjectival and adverbial clauses take the subjunctive in indirect narration.

(3) Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person usually become pronouns of the 3rd person. *E. g.* :—

ego, nos	become	se
meus, noster	"	suus
tu, vos	"	ille, illi
tuus, vester	"	illius, illorum
hic, iste	"	ille, is

(4) Adverbs of *present* time become (after a secondary tense) adverbs of *past* time. *E. g.* :—

nunc	becomes	iam, tunc.
heri (yesterday)	"	pridie (the day before).
hodie (to-day)	"	illo die (that day).
cras (to-morrow)	"	postridie (next day).

So :—hic (*here*) becomes ibi (*there*).

(5) Imperatives become subjunctives (usually imperf. subjunctives).

(6) Rhetorical questions are expressed by the accusative and infinitive ; questions that expect an answer, by the subjunctive.

(7) A future-perfect used in a dependent clause for the English present, becomes perfect subjunctive after a primary, and pluperfect subjunctive after a secondary tense.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCE IN OBLIQUE NARRATION.

2. These rules may now be applied to turning the common types of the conditional sentence into oblique narration. The verb of

the main clause becomes *acc. with inf.*, and the verb of the *if*-clause *subjunctive*, as follows :—

DIRECT.	OBLIQUE.
1. Pecuniam si habet, dat, <i>If he has money, he gives it.</i>	becomes Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, dare, <i>He says that if he has money, he gives it.</i>
Pecuniam si habuit, dedit (or dābat), <i>If he had money, he gave it.</i>	“ Dicit se, si pecuniam habuerit, dedisse, <i>He says that if he had money, he gave it.</i>
2. (a) Pecuniam si habebit (or habuerit), dabit, <i>If he has money, he will give it.</i>	“ Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat (or habuerit), daturum esse, <i>He says that if he has money, he will give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habeat, det, <i>If he should have money, he would give it.</i>	“ Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, daturum esse, <i>He says that if he should have money, he would give it.</i>
3. (a) Pecuniam si haberet, daret, <i>If he had money (now), he would give it.</i>	“ Dicit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse, <i>He says that if he had money (now), he would give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset, <i>If he had had money, he would have given it.</i>	“ Dicit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse, <i>He says that if he had had money, he would have given it.</i>

Note 1.—The future (*habebit*), in the *if*-clause of direct narration becomes present subjunctive (*habeat*) in the indirect after a primary tense.

Note 2.—The present subjunctive (*det*), in the main clause becomes future infinitive (*daturum esse*) in indirect narration.

Note 3.—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in the main clause (*daret* and *dedisset*), are expressed in indirect narration by the future participle and *fuisse* (*daturum fuisse*, i.e., *to have been about to give*).

3. After a secondary tense the verb of the *if*-clause is changed

in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses (p. 178).

Thus :—

	DIRECT.		OBLIQUE.
1.	Si pecuniam habet, dat, becomes		Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, dare.
	Si pecuniam habuit, dedit (or dabat),	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, dedisse.
2. (a)	Si pecuniam habebit (or habuerit), dabit,	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet (or habuisset), daturum esse.
	(b) Si pecuniam habeat, det,	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum esse.
3. (a)	Si pecuniam haberet, daret,	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse.
	(b) Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset,	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse.

Note.—The future-perfect in the *if*-clause of direct narration, becomes pluperfect subjunctive in oblique.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Dicit se, si illi id fecerint, gratiam habiturum esse.
2. Promisit se, si adesset, locuturum esse.
3. Dixit eum, si adesset, aliter sensurum esse.
4. Negavit se, si Metelli fidei diffisus esset, iudicem eum retenturum fuisse.
5. Negavit se, si ille id rogavisset, responsurum fuisse.
6. Dixit eos, si sibi parerent, urbem capturos esse.
7. Dicebant eum, si sapientior esset, meliorem fore (futurum esse).
8. Quid diceret Cicero, si viveret?
9. Imperatori si paruisset, viveret.
10. Dixit eum, si imperatori paruisset, victurum fuisse.
11. Negabat se, nisi vidisset, crediturum fuisse.
12. Dixit se eos, si conarentur, prohibiturum esse.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They said that if Caesar came, it would be all over with their army.
2. It is clear that if Nero had lived, they would have made war on Rome.
3. He answered that unless they withdrew then, he would regard them as enemies.
4. He told them that if they wished to enjoy peace, he must be obeyed.
5. They said that it was of no

importance to them whether he stayed or went. 6. They asked if the man had gone to Rome. 7. It was clear that if he did it, he would be punished. 8. They said that if he were there, he would help them. 9. Whether you remain or go, you will be punished. 10. Don't you think that if he were here, all would be well? 11. O! that I had seen what I ought to do. 12. He said that if *he* were general, he would give no quarter (use *parco*).

LESSON CI.

OBLIQUE NARRATION—(*Continued*).

The rules given in the last lesson may be applied to turning passages from Caesar or Livy from direct into indirect narration, or *vice versa*, as is done in the following passages:—

A.

Helvetian Envoys Address Caesar.

DIRECT.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi *tu* eos constitueris atque esse volueris; sin bello persequi perseverabis, remiscere et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ii, qui flumen transierant, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtuti tribueris aut *nos* despexeris; *nos* ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtute quam dolo con-

DIRECT.

If the Roman people make (literally, *will make*) peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii will go into that district, and abide in that place, where you will appoint (literally, *will have appointed*), and wish them to abide; but if you continue to attack them in war, call to mind both the old disaster of the Roman people and the ancient valor of the Helvetii. As to your having fallen unexpectedly on one canton, when those who had crossed the river were not able to bear help to their comrades, do not on that account

tendamus aut insidiis nitamur. Quare ne commiseris ut *hic* locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodāt.

Note.—The italics mark the words and inflections that must be changed in passing from direct to indirect narration.

presume exceedingly on your valor or look down on us. We have learned this from our fathers and ancestors, *i.e.*, to fight with valor rather than to fight with trickery or depend on ambushades. Wherefore do not cause this place where we have taken our stand, to get a name, or to hand down a tradition, from the overthrow of the Roman people and the destruction of their army.

INDIRECT.

(Helvetii haec dixerunt) :

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros (esse) atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transiissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut me-

INDIRECT.

If the Roman people made peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii would go into that district and abide in that place where Caesar appointed and wished them to abide; but if he continued to attack them in war, he should (*let him*) call to mind both the old disaster of the Roman people and the ancient valor of the Helvetii. As to his having unexpectedly fallen on one canton, when those who had crossed the river were not able to bear help to their comrades, he should not (*let him not*) on that account presume exceedingly on his valor or look down on them; that they had learned this from their fathers and ancestors, *i.e.*, to fight with valor rather than to fight with

moriam proderet. Caesar, *De Bell. Gall.*, B. I., ch. 13.

trickery or depend on ambuscades. Wherefore let him not cause that place, where they had taken their stand, to get a name or hand down a tradition from the overthrow of the Roman people and the destruction of their army.

B.

Reply of Caesar to the Envoys.

DIRECT.

Eo *mihi* minus dubitationis datur quod eas res, quas *vos* commemoravistis, memoriā teneo; atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicuius iniuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est, quod neque commissum (esse) a se intellegebat quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere possum?

DIRECT.

For this reason the less hesitation is caused me, because I remember the events you have mentioned; and I am the more pained, the less they happened in accordance with the desert of the Roman people (*i.e.*, and my pain is all the greater because they did not happen in accordance with the desert of the Roman people). For if they had felt conscious in their minds (*lit.*, *to themselves*) of any wrongdoing, it was not hard to take precautions; but they were deceived by this fact, *i.e.*, that they were not aware that ought had been done by them to justify their being afraid, and that they thought they should not feel fear without reason. But if I am willing to forget the old affront, can I lay aside the recollection of recent injuries also?

INDIRECT.

(His Caesar ita respondit :)
Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari,

INDIRECT.

(Caesar replied to them as follows :) That for this reason

quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii comme- norassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent; qui si alicuius iniuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo (eum) deceptum (esse) quod neque commissum (esse) a se intellexeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam se deponere posse?

the less hesitation was caused him, because he remembered the events which the Helvetian envoys had mentioned; and that he was the more pained, because they had not happened in accordance with the desert of the Roman people; for if they had been conscious in their minds of any wrong-doing, it would not have been hard to take precautions; but that they were deceived by this fact, *i.e.*, that they were not aware that aught had been done by them to justify their being afraid, and that they thought they ought not to fear without reason. But if he were willing to forget the old affront, could he lay aside the recollection of recent injuries also?

Note.—These passages should be translated and re-translated until the rules of oblique narration are perfectly familiar.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English, and turn into Latin indirect narration after *dixit*:—

1. Quis sim, inquit, scies ex hoc quem ad te misi; curā ut vir sis et cogita in quem locum sis progressus; vide quid iam tibi sit necesse et cura ut omnium tibi auxilia adiungas, etiam infimorum.
2. Veniam ipse, si potero, quamquam hodie aegroto; si minus, veniet frater qui decem millia passuum abest; vincendum est nobis aut moriendum.
3. Aedui obsides non reddent neque eis bellum inferent, si stipendium quotannis pendent.
4. Quod si praeterea nemo sequetur, cum sola decima legione ibo.
5. Unde venis? quid vis? quid facturus es? finem fac.
6. Mihi haec res curae erit; volo de his rebus tecum agere.
7. Mons quem a Labieno teneri

voluerit, ab hoste tenetur. 8. Hoc die in eos, qui oram maritimam incolunt, profecturus sum. 9. Neque credo neque credidi neque credam. 10. Si quid a me vultis, ab armis discedite. 11. Si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, vobiscum pacem faciam. 12. Helvetii a maioribus ita instituti sunt ut obsides accipere, non dare, consueverint.

LESSON CII.

NOTES ON THE TENSES.

1. The present indicative of the Latin verb represents both the *indefinite*, the *progressive*, and the *emphatic* form of the English verb. Thus, **amo** is either *I love* (indef.), *I am loving* (progressive), or *I do love* (emphatic).

2. The present indicative is used idiomatically :

(a) In *narration*, for the present : as, **Continuo milites Melitam mittit**, *he immediately despatches men to Malta*.

(b) With adverbs of past time, for the English present-perfect (perfect with *have*) : as, **Hoc iamdūdum** (or **iampridem**) **facio**, *I have been doing this for a long time*.

Note.—The imperfect will, of course, be used for the English pluperfect : as, **iampridem sperabam**, *I had long been hoping*.

(c) With **dum** (*while*), for the English past ; see p. 201, 3.

3. The imperfect represents an action as *continued* or *repeated* in past time : as, **Scribēbam**, *I was writing*; **consilium mutavit**: **videbat enim nihil confici posse**, *he altered his plan, for he saw that nothing could be done* (imperfect of continuous action); **haec pueri discebamus**, *we used to learn this as boys* (imperfect of repeated or habitual action).

Note 1.—The Latin imperfect is often translated by the English *used to*, *began to*, *tried to*.

Note 2.—In the historians, the present infinitive is often used instead of the imperfect indicative, *when a series of actions is described*: as, **Omnes clamare**, *all kept crying out*; **Caesar quotidie**

eos frumentum flagitare, Caesar kept daily importuning them for corn. This is called the *historic infinitive*.

4. In writing letters, the Latins adapted the tenses to the time at which the letter would be read : as, *Neque cum hæc scribebam nescius eram, I am not ignorant when I write* (literally, *I was not ignorant, when I was writing*).

FÖRE UT.

5. Many verbs have no supine and, therefore, no future infinitive (active or passive), which is formed from the supine. Such verbs form their future infinitive by means of *före* or *futurum esse* (*to be about to be*), and *ut* with the subjunctive : as, *Dicunt fore ut hæc poscant, they say that they will demand these things; dixerunt fore ut ea poscerentur, they said that these things would be demanded* (imperfect, in accordance with the rule of sequence).

Note.—This construction is often used (as more convenient) even with verbs that have a supine : as, *Dixit fore ut rex mitteretur, he said that the king would be sent*.

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

6. It has been shown (p. 179, note) that the future subjunctive active (which is wanting) is supplied in Latin by the active periphrastic conjugation, made up of the future participle and the verb *sum*. Thus : *Scio quid acturus sis, I know what you will do; sciebam quid acturus esses, I knew what you would do* (imperfect, after a secondary tense). The future subjunctive passive, and the future subjunctive active of verbs that have no supine, are formed by means of the impersonal *futurum sit* (or *esset*) with an *ut*-clause. Thus :—

Future Subjunctive Active.

Rogo num futurum sit ut puer discat, I ask whether the boy will learn.

Rogavi num futurum esset ut puer disceret, I asked whether the boy would learn.

Future Subjunctive Passive.

Noa dubito quin futurum sit ut puer doceatur, I do not doubt that the boy will be taught.

Non dubitavi quin futurum esset ut puer doceretur, *I did not doubt that the boy would be taught.*

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Iampridem sperabam eum hoc facturum. 2. Tertium iam annum hic sumus. 3. Haec dum aguntur, Hannibal castra movet. 4. Dixit se hoc iamdudum notum habere. 5. Philosophia in Graecia florebat. 6. Facies totius negotii varia fuit : pars cedere, alii insequi ; nihil consilio agi, fors omnia regere (p. 216, 3, note 2). 7. Mihi dicebat unde veniret. 8. Nescio quando futurum sit ut convalescat. 9. Speravi fore ut convalesceret. 10. Credo fore ut feriat. 11. Putavi fore ut urbs a nobis caperetur. 12. Rogavit quando futurum esset ut signum attolleretur. 13. Huius modi viros adolescens admirabar. 14. Hostes in nos saxa devolvebant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Did I not know what you would do? 2. I did not doubt that the king would be killed by him. 3. He said that these facts would soon be learned by the scholar. 4. It is uncertain whether the boy will learn. 5. It was uncertain whether the boy would be taught. 6. Who can doubt that our camp will be easily defended? 7. Since you are ashamed of your plan, what prevents you from abandoning it? 8. I have long been anxious to know your reason for doing it. 9. He used to promise to come every day. 10. He said that he knew what we would demand (*posco*). 11. Whenever they captured a town, they butchered men, women and children (p. 204, 4).

LESSON CIII.

NOTES ON THE PARTICIPLE.—“WITHOUT”
AND A PARTICIPIAL NOUN.

Present Participle Passive.

1. The pres. part. pass. (which is wanting in Latin) is supplied by a relative clause : as, *Domus, quae hic aedificatur, iam venit, the house being built here, has already been sold.*

IDIOMATIC USES OF THE PARTICIPLE.

2. (a) Two finite verbs in English connected by *and* are frequently expressed in Latin by a participle and a main verb: as, **Eum arreptum Romam duxerunt**, *they arrested him and took him to Rome*; **ingressus consedit**, *he entered and sat down*.

(b) The Latin perf. part. pass. with a noun, is often used to express two nouns in English: as, **Rex interfectus**, *the murder of the king*; **ab urbe condita**, *from the foundation of the city*; **nuntiata clades**, *the announcement of the defeat*.

(c) The present participle, when used—as it is so commonly in English—for the past participle, must be translated by the perf. part., or one of its equivalents (*p.* 203, 3, *note*). Thus: **Leaving home, he came to Athens**, **domo profectus Athenas venit**; *having heard this*, **quo audito** (**Proficiscens** would mean *while leaving*; **audiens**, *while hearing*).

(d) Instead of the perfect indicative active, the perf. part. pass. with **habeo** *I have*, is used (chiefly with verbs meaning *to know* or *find out*) to denote a *continuous effect*: as, **Fidem quam habent diu notam**, *faith which they have long known*.

(e) The ablative absolute can only be used when a new subject is introduced. Thus: *As the enemy were retiring, they wasted the land*, **hostes se recipientes agros vastabant** (not **hostibus se recipientibus**). But: *As the enemy were retiring, we wasted the land*, **hostibus se recipientibus, agros vastabamus**.

(f) A demonstrative pronoun can not be joined, as, in English, to the participle. Thus: *Those doing this, will be punished*, is **qui hoc faciunt, poenas dabunt** (not **ii hoc facientes**).

(g) The present participle is often used in Latin to express an English abstract noun: as, **Interroganti mihi respondit**, *he replied to my question*; **lugentium lacrimae**, *tears of mourning* (lit. *of men mourning*).

(h) The agent with the perf. part. pass. is frequently expressed by the dative instead of by **a** (or **ab**) with a preposition: as, **Omnia haec mihi perspecta sunt**, *all these points have been studied by me*.

(i) To translate properly into English the present or perfect participle, a finite clause is often required. This clause will be *relative, temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional*, according to the particular relation expressed by the participle. Thus :

Resistentibus non parcimus,	<i>we do not spare those who resist us</i> (relative).
Epistola ad me scribentem vēnit,	<i>the letter came to me as (when, while) I was writing</i> (temporal).
Caesar haec veritus suōs eduxit,	<i>because (as, since) he was afraid of this, Caesar led out his men</i> (causal).
Hoc crimine absolutus tamen furti damnatus est,	<i>though he was acquitted of this charge, he was condemned for theft</i> (concessive).
Nobis vel morientibus non ignosceret,	<i>he would not forgive us, even if we were dying</i> (conditional).

WITHOUT.

3. The ablative of the gerund can not be joined with *sine*, the usual preposition for *without*. Phrases, therefore, like *without injuring himself, without your perceiving it*, must be paraphrased into some synonymous form of words, and this turned into Latin. Thus : *He aids others without injuring himself, aliis subvenit, non sibi nocens; I did it without your perceiving it, hoc feci, te non sentiente: they condemn him without hearing him, eum damnant inauditum; he cries without feeling grief, flet nec dolet; he never led out his army without examining the position of the ground, nunquam exercitum eduxit nisi explorato locorum situ; those cannot fall without these falling with them, cadere illa non possunt ut haec non concidant; to think of my going away without saying good-bye to anyone! mēne abis, nullo salutato!*

Note.—The accusative with infinitive is used to express indignation or surprise. It is called the *Infinitive of Exclamation*. The interrogative *-ne* is frequently added to the first word, as if the sentence were interrogative in form.

EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Instructos ordines in locum aequum deducit (p. 219, 2, (a)).
2. Hostes fugatos persequitur. 3. Hos transductos necat. 4. Illi libertatem imminutam non tulerunt. 5. Sibi quisque caesi regis decus expetebat. 6. Hoc e provincia decedens mihi negavit. 7. Haec diiudicare non poterimus, nisi melius ante (*adverb*) causam cognoverimus. 8. Adeone esse hominem infelicem quemquam! 9. Videor audire clamores gaudentium. 10. Celeriter aggressus eos ex vallo deturbavit. 11. Mendaci homini ne vera quidem dicenti credere solemus. 12. Haec omnia mutavit, me non probante. 13. Nonne sero ad mihi gratulandum vēnit? 14. Odisti me quum me amare debeas. 15. Operam dedit libris colligendis.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Nothing shall happen without my giving you notice. 2. He went away without consulting anyone. 3. I never visit you without coming away more learned. 4. Having taken the city, he touched nothing belonging to the temple. 5. They came to Italy during the reign of Tarquin. 6. Seize the man and slay him. 7. Are you not ashamed of the violation of your word? 8. You shall be punished for the violation of the treaty. 9. Fearing for the safety of himself and his friends, he fled to Rome. 10. Flinging themselves at his feet, they begged him to pardon them. 11. Manlius, having killed the Gaul, despoiled him. 12. He did not deny that he had ascertained this himself. 13. I asked those standing near what the man meant. 14. To my complaint that he had broken his word, he said nothing.

LESSON CIV.

THE PREPOSITION.

1. A Latin preposition governs either the accusative or the ablative, except *in*, *sub*, *super* (*above*), and *subter* (*beneath*), which govern both.

Note.—*Gratiā* and *causā* (*for the sake of*) govern the genitive; but they are really nouns used as prepositions.

2. *In*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter* govern the *ablative* when they express *rest*, and the *accusative* when they express *motion*: as, *In urbe* *in the city*; *in urbem*, *into the city*; *sub muro*, *under the wall*; *sub murum*, *up under the wall*; *super eo pendet*, *it hangs over him*; *super eum volat*, *it flies over him*.

3. The following nine prepositions govern the *ablative*: *A* (or *ab*), *from, by*; *coram*, *in presence of*; *eum*, *with*; *de*, *from, concerning*; *e* (*ex*), *out of*; *prae*, *in front of, in consequence of*; *pro*, *in front of, on behalf of*; *sine*, *without*; *tenus*, *up to*.

4. All other prepositions govern the *accusative*. A list is given for reference: *Ad*, *towards*; *adversus*, *opposite*; *ante*, *before*; *apud*, *beside*; *circum* (or *circā*), *round*; *cis* (or *citrā*), *on this side of*; *trans*, *across*; *contrā*, *against*; *ergā*, *towards*; *extrā*, *outside of*; *inter*, *among*; *infrā*, *below*; *intrā*, *within*; *iuxtā*, *near*; *ob*, *on account of*; *pene*, *in the power of*; *per*, *through*; *post*, *behind*; *praeter*, *past*; *prope*, *near to*; *propter*, *close to*; *secundum*, *along, after*; *versus*, *towards* (written after its case); *ultrā*, *beyond*.

5. The prepositions are widely used with nouns to form idiomatic adverbial phrases of *place*, *time*, and *manner*. Such prepositional phrases should be committed to memory as they are met with. A list is added for reference:—

A or *ab* (*from, by*).

A fronte, *in front* (so, *a latere*, *in flank*; *a tergo*, *in rear*); *a senatu stat*, *he stands on the senate's side*; *a re frumentaria laborare*, *to be in distress with regard to supplies*; *confestim a proelio*, *immediately after the battle*.

Ad (*to*).

Ad ludos pecunia decernitur, *money is voted for the games*; *ad fortunam felix*, *fortunate in point of fortune*; *ad Cannas*, *in the neighborhood of Cannae*; *ad Siciliam*, *off Sicily*; *ad aliorum arbitrium*, *at the beck of others*.

genitive ;

Apud (*beside*).

when they
motion :

Apud forum, *near the forum* ; **apud** me, *in my house* ; **apud** me plus vālet, *he has more influence with me* ; **apud** Terentium, *in the writings of Terence*.

ro, under
endet, it

Cum (*with*).

Cum gladio, *wearing a sword* ; magnā cum curā quaerit, *he seeks with great care* ; confer hanc pacem cum illo bello, *compare this peace with that war* ; cum aliquo certare, *contend with a person*.

e : A (or
om, con-
; pro, in

De (*from, about*).

De industria, *on purpose* ; bene mēreri de patria, *deserve well of one's country*.

t is given
, before ;
this side
A, outside
ear ; ob,
, behind ;
n, along,
nd.

E or **ex** (*out of*).

Ex equis pugnare, *fight on horseback* ; statua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze* ; ex consulatu, *immediately after his consulship* ; ex itinere, *while on the march* ; quaerere ex aliquo, *ask from a person* ; ex improviso, *unexpectedly* ; ex foedere, *in accordance with the treaty* ; ex sententia, *satisfactorily* ; ex parte magna, *in a great measure*.

n idiom-
h prepo-
are met

In (*in or into*).

In equo, *on horseback* ; in barbaris, *among barbarians* ; in bonis dācere, *reckon among blessings* ; in te unum se tota convertet civitas, *the whole state will turn to you alone* ; pietas in deos, *piety to the gods* ; pecunia in rem militarem data, *money given for military purposes* ; in rem tuam haec est, *this is for your interest* ; in dies, *every day* ; in horas, *every hour* ; denarius in singulos modios, *a denarius for every bushel* ; in posterum diem, *for the next day*.

a rear) ;
mentaria
festim a

Inter (*between, among*).

Inter me et te hoc interest, *there is this difference between you and me* ; inter se aspicebant, *they kept looking at one another* ; inter aedificandos muros, *during the building of the walls*.

games ;
nnas, in
alliorum

Per (*through*).

Per vim, *by violence* ; per speculatores, *by means of spies* (secondary agent) ; per me, *through my instrumentality* ; per te

stetit quominus vinceret, *it was owing to you that he did not conquer*; digladiantur per me licet, *they may fight it out, as far as I am concerned*.

Praeter (*past, except*).

Praeter modum, *beyond measure*; decem praeter se, *ten besides themselves*; omnes praeter unum, *all except one*; praeter naturam, *outside the course of nature*.

Pro (*before, instead of, in behalf of*).

Pro occiso relictus, *left for dead*; pro meritis gratias agere, *to thank for services*; pro multitudine hominum, fines angustos habent, *considering their population they have limited territory*; proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur, *a battle is fought fiercer than might have been expected from the number of combatants*.

Sub (*under, up to*)

Sub nostram aciem successerunt, *they came right up to our line*; quae sub sensus sunt, *what is within the range of the senses*; sub haec dicta omnes procubuerunt, *after these words all prostrated themselves*; sub ipsâ profectioe, *at the very start*; sub noctem, *at night-fall*.

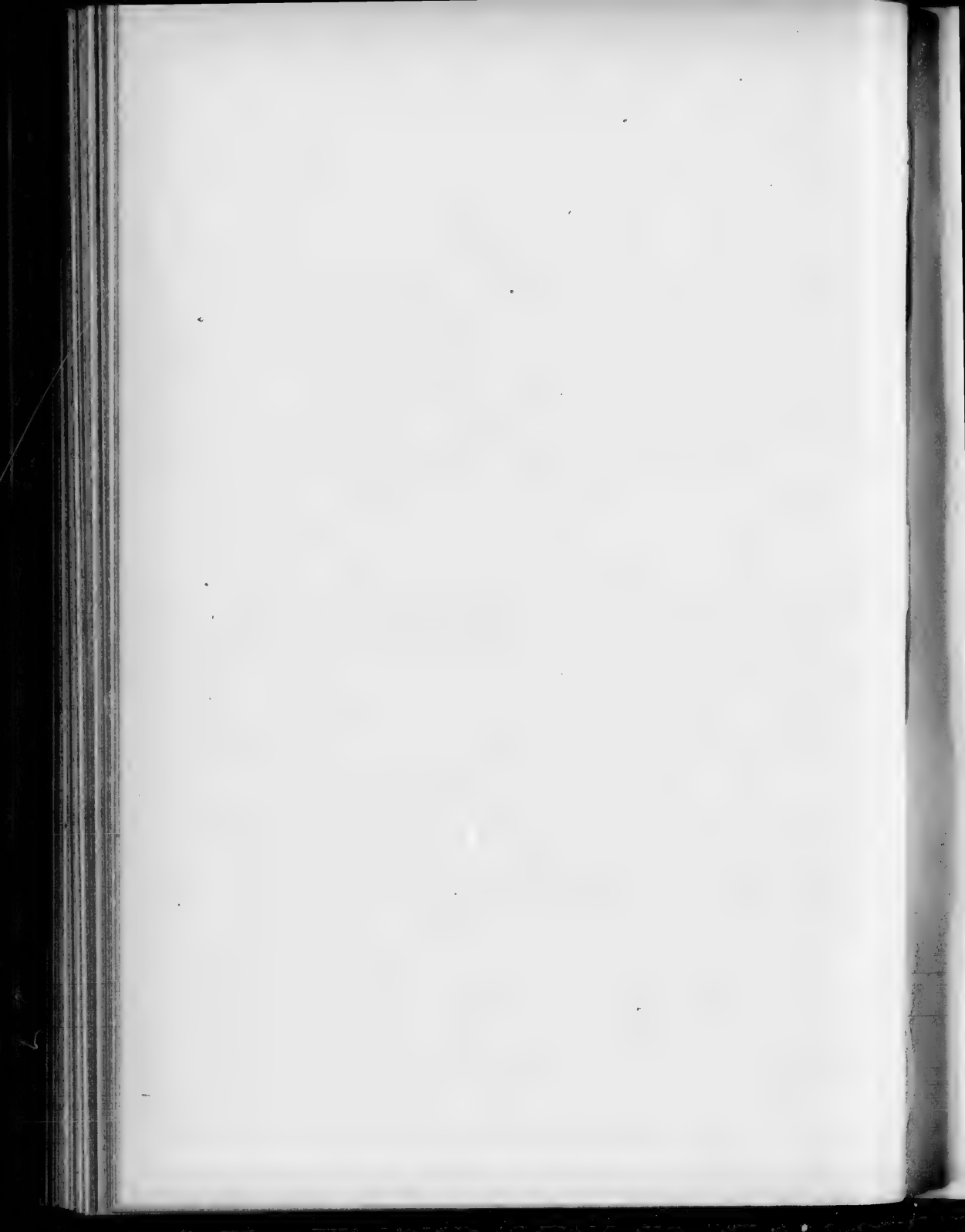
EXERCISE.

Translate into English :

1. Velim ut cogites quid agendum nobis sit super hac re. 2. Satis superque dictum esse putavit. 3. Nonne paulo ultra eum locum castra transtulit? 4. Supra belli metum, id quoque accesserat. 5. Hostes sub monte illo consēdisse dixit. 6. Homo est sine re, sine fide, sine spe. 7. Omnia quae secundum (*according to*) naturam fiunt in bonis habenda sunt. 8. Non aequum est me propter vos decipi. 9. Secundum te nihil est amicius solitudine. 10. Decet, quidquid agas, agere pro viribus. 11. Haec contra legem proque lege dicta sunt. 12. Solem prae multitudine iaculorum non videbitis. 13. Senatus paulo post de his rebus habitus est. 14. Quum et per valetudinem et per anni tempus navigare poteris, ad nos veni.

Translate into Latin :-

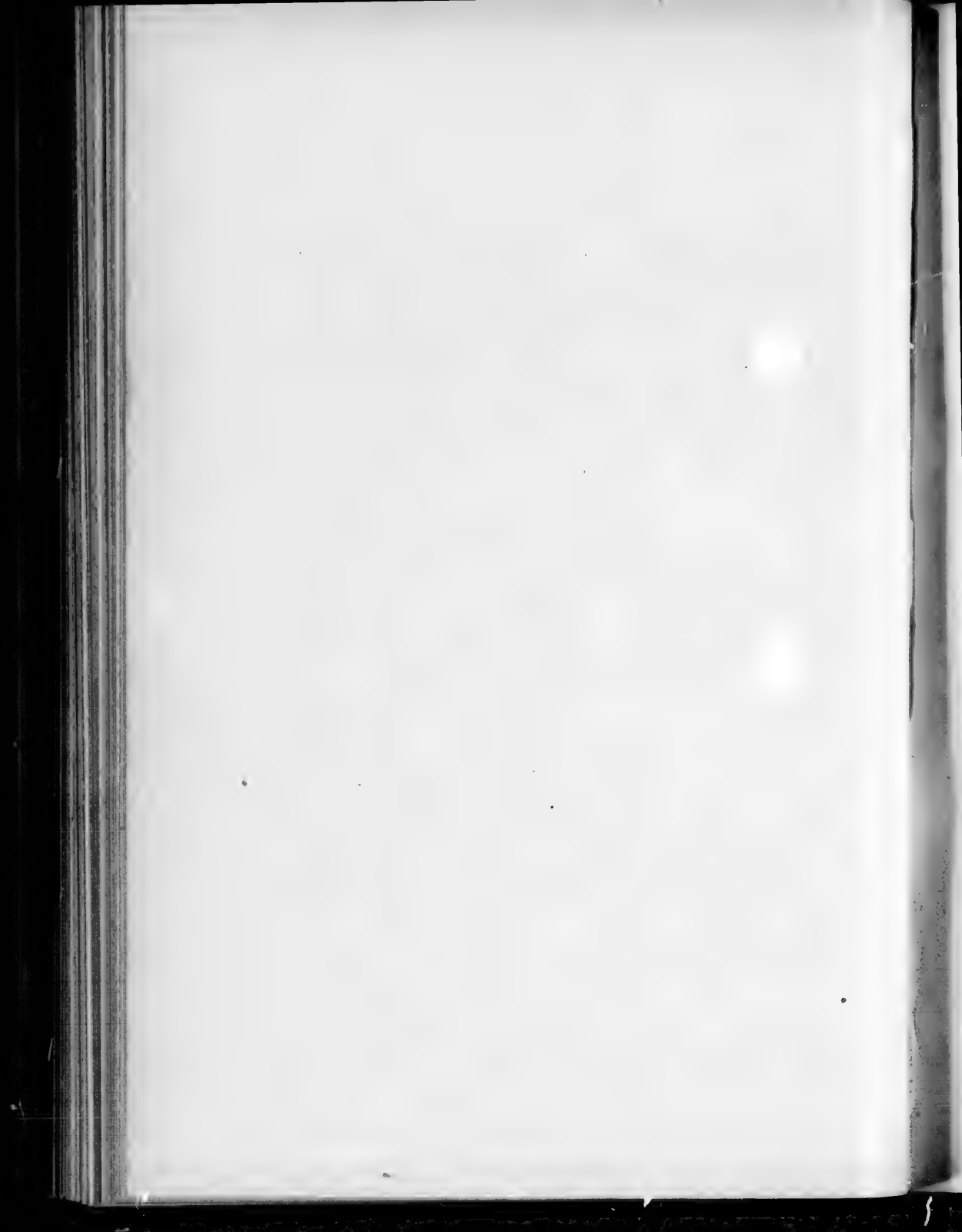
1. Next day he descends from the mountain and pitches his camp beside the river.
2. O ! that he had not led us towards Rome.
3. This done, he threw himself upon his sword.
4. Are we never to know in whose hands the decision rests?
5. Tell me when you intend to speak to him about it.
6. Do not speak in his behalf.
7. You will have the greatest influence with him.
8. They halted when they came within the cast of a spear.
9. Is there not a race that dwells beneath the earth?
10. After so many battles we are tired of war.
11. You have come here after the manner of (*in modum*) fugitives.
12. In whose hands does the power lie?
13. It is a scandalous thing to take money for (*ob*) giving a verdict.
14. Do you think they love each other? (use *inter*.)



PART II.

EXTRACTS FOR TRANSLATION FROM CAESAR.

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE BASED ON CAESAR.



EXTRACTS FOR TRANSLATION

FROM

CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO.

N.B. The figures at the foot of the extracts refer respectively to the pages and sections of this book. By the study of the sections referred to and the use of the vocabulary, the extracts may without difficulty be understood. After they have been translated word for word, and all the difficulties of syntax thoroughly mastered, they may be done on paper with greater freedom and some attempt at English idiom. An example is given under Lesson I.

LESSON I.

CAESAR PREPARES TO INVADE BRITAIN.

Caesar, etsi¹ in his locis maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contemnit, quod,² omnibus³ fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde⁴ subministrata⁵ auxilia intellegebat; et, si⁶ tempus ad bellum⁷ gerendum deficeret,⁸ tamen magno sibi usui⁹ fore¹⁰ arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adliisset,¹¹ genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque¹² enim temere¹³ praeter mercatores illo¹⁴ adit quisquam,¹⁵ neque iis ipsis quicquam, praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus,¹⁶ neque quanta esset¹⁷ insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum¹⁸ belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui¹⁹ essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

N.B. The meaning of each word should be thought out just as it stands in Latin.

¹Page 196, 7. ²p. 198, 2. Join with *intellegebat*. ³=*in almost all*. ⁴i.e., *from Britain*. ⁵Supply *esse*: i.e., *to have been supplied to our enemies*. ⁶Oblique narration, depending on *arbitratur*. Direct=*si...deficet, tamen magno mihi usui erit, if the time fails, still it will be of great service to me*; p. 211, 2 (a). ⁷p. 170, 3. ⁸*failed, was too short*. ⁹p. 134, 1. ¹⁰=*futurum esse*. ¹¹For *adlerit* of direct narration; p. 207, 7. ¹²*Neque (nor)* is used for *non* at the head of a sentence. ¹³i.e., *without reason*. ¹⁴*Thither*. Adverbs in *-o* (expressing *motion to*) are formed from pronouns: *as, eo, to that place*; *alio, to another place*. ¹⁵p. 132, 3. ¹⁶p. 102, 2. ¹⁷176, 2; i.e., *he could find neither how large was, &c.* For the tense of *esset*, see p. 178, 2. ¹⁸*Skill*. ¹⁹*Which harbors were, &c.*; p. 178, 2

TRANSLATION.

Although winter in these localities is early, Caesar makes active preparations (*contendere, to exert one's self*) to start for Britain. His reasons were these. He knew that assistance had been furnished from there to the enemy in almost all the Gallic wars; and he judged that—even if the time should prove inadequate for warlike operations—it would be an advantage to him merely to make a visit to the island, to investigate the character of its inhabitants, and to get some knowledge of its geography, its harbors, and the easiest means of access to it. To almost all such details the Gauls are strangers. With the exception of the traders, no one ever visits the island without good reason; and even they have no acquaintance with it, unless with the sea-coast and the districts opposite Gaul. He accordingly cited traders from every part of the country to appear before him; but he failed to ascertain either the size of the island, the names or numbers of the peoples that inhabit it, the skill they possess in war, the institutions under which they live, or the harbors capable of accommodating a number of ships of a larger size.

REMARKS ON THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN LATIN AND ENGLISH IDIOM.

1. The long Latin period does not suit the genius of the English language. Break it up, therefore, in translating, into sentences containing a single idea each, and separated by a semicolon or a full stop.

2. As far as is consistent with clearness, English drops all words used in Latin to show the logical connection of one sentence with another (*e.g.*, the relative, line 6; *enim*, line 7). Write down the sentences in English one after the other, keeping together those that are naturally connected in meaning.

3. The dependent clauses in English are simple and clear, and few in number. The Latin dependent clause often becomes a main clause in English.

4. The ablative absolute is usually translated by a finite clause (*e.g.*, line 10), or by an adverbial phrase.

5. Latin, as compared with English, has few abstract or verbal nouns. Note how it would express: *make active preparations* (*contendo*); *for warlike operations* (*ad bellum gerendum*); *make a visit to* (*adire*); *have acquaintance with* (*notum habere*); *name, numbers, etc.*

6. Latin avoids figurative language, and says simply and directly what it means. Note how it would express: *to all these details they were strangers*, *quae omnia iis erant incognita*.

7. The order of words in the Latin sentence must be noted. The subject (and all that belongs to it) is put first; then the object (and all that belongs to it); lastly the verb, closing and giving compactness to the period. An emphatic word, however, will be placed at the beginning, or even at the end of the sentence: and the regular order may be interfered with for the sake of euphony or rhetorical effect.

LESSON II.

CAESAR REACHES BRITAIN.

His constitutis rebus,¹ nactus² idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertiā fere vigiliā³ solvit,⁴ equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi⁵ et naves conscendere et se⁶ sequi iussit; a quibus⁷ quum id paulo⁸ tardius esset⁹ administratum, ipse horā diei circiter quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit¹⁰ atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec

erat natura : adeo montibus¹¹ angustis mare continebatur, ut¹² ex locis superioribus in litus telum iaci posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus [*thinking*; p. 219, 2 (c)] locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent,¹³ ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque¹ militum (= *his officers*) convocatis, quae fieri vellet,¹⁴ ostendit, monuitque ut ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur.¹⁵ His¹ dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore¹⁶ nactus secundum dato signo et sublatis¹⁷ ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

¹ Page 102, 2. ² From *nanciscor*, *obtain*. ³ p. 82, 1. ⁴ *He loosed* (i.e., *naves*). ⁵ Join with *iussit*. ⁶ p. 168, 3. ⁷ The relative is used to connect sentences; tr., *by these*. Note.—Latin tries to show the logical connection of every sentence in the paragraph. Hence the common use of connectives (the relative, *for*, *but*, &c.) ⁸ *By a little, rather*; p. 58, 6. ⁹ p. 203, 1. ¹⁰ From *attingo*. ¹¹ p. 71, 3; tr., *By hills so close to the shore that*, &c. ¹² p. 187, 2, 3. ¹³ p. 201, 4. ¹⁴ p. 176, 2. ¹⁵ Tr., *Enjoined that everything should be done at a nod and in time*; p. 181, 3. ¹⁶ *At once*. ¹⁷ From *tollo*, *raise*; p. 102, 2.

LESSON III.

THE DIFFICULTY OF LANDING.

At barbari, consilio¹ Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu¹ et essedariis, quo plerumque genere² in proeliis uti consuêrunt,³ reliquis copiis⁴ subsecuti, nostros navibus⁵ egredi⁶ prohibebant.⁷ Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod⁸ naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus⁹ autem ignotis locis,¹⁰ impeditis manibus,¹ magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis,¹¹ simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, quum illi¹² aut ex arido aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti,¹³ notissimis locis, audacter tela iacerent et equos insuefactos¹⁴ incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pug-

nae imperiti,¹⁵ non eadem alacritate ac studio quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

¹ Page 102, 2. ² p. 116; tr., *A class of soldiers which they are generally accustomed to employ in battle.* ³ = *consueverunt*; from *consuesco*, *become accustomed.* ⁴ p. 71, 3. ⁵ For *e navibus*. ⁶ Infinitive (as usual with *prohibeo*) instead of *quominus* with subjunctive; p. 185, 2. ⁷ *tried to prevent*; p. 216, 3. ⁸ Tr., *Because the ships could not*; p. 198, 2. ⁹ Dative of agent with *desiliendum*; p. 173, 4; tr., *The men had to leap down.* ¹⁰ *On unfamiliar ground*; the preposition is *not required* with common nouns to express *place where*, when the noun is joined with an adj. ¹¹ With *militibus*; tr., *Weighted as they were.* ¹² Tr., *While they (i.e., the Britons).* ¹³ Lit., *free in all their limbs*; p. 71, 3. ¹⁴ Tr., *Trained to it.* ¹⁵ Tr., *Without experience of.*

LESSON IV.

THE VALOR OF THE EAGLE-BEARER OF THE TENTH LEGION.

Quod ubi¹ Caesar animadvertit, naves² longas, quarum et species³ erat barbaris inusitatio⁴ et motus ad usum expeditor, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis,⁵ sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoverti iussit; quae res magno usui⁶ nostris fuit. Nam et navium figurā et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti⁷ barbari constituerunt⁸ ac paulum pedem retulerunt⁹. Atque nostris militibus¹⁰ cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, is qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut¹¹ ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi¹² vultis aquilam hostibus prodere; ego certe¹³ meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc quum magna voce dixisset,¹⁴ ex navi se proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se,¹⁵ ne tantum dedecus admitteretur,¹⁶ universi ex navi desiluerunt; hos item ex proximis navibus quum conspexissent,¹⁷ subsecuti hostibus¹⁸ appropinquarunt (=appropinquaverunt).

¹ Page 200, 2. ² Obj. of iussit; tr., *ordered the ships of war to be sent back.* ³ Appearance. ⁴ Rather strange; p. 58, 5. ⁵ p. 71, 3. ⁶ p. 134, 1. ⁷ From permoveo. ⁸ From consisto. ⁹ Pedem referre, retreat. ¹⁰ p. 102, 2. ¹¹ p. 181, 3; tr., *praying to the gods that.* ¹² p. 190, 3. ¹³ Tr., *I at all events shall have done my duty.* ¹⁴ p. 203, 3 (note). ¹⁵ each other. ¹⁶ p. 183, 2. ¹⁷ tr., *those in the nearest ships, seeing them, also followed;* see note 14. ¹⁸ p. 120, 2.

LESSON V.

THE BRITISH MODE OF FIGHTING.

Genus¹ hoc est ex essedis pugnae : primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela iaciunt, atque ipso² terrore³ equorum (i.e., *by the mere terror their horses inspire*) et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant; et quum⁴ se inter equitum turmas insinaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita curru⁵ se collocant, ut⁶ si illi⁷ a multitudine hostium premantur,⁸ expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem pedum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, ut⁹ in declivi ac praecipiti loco¹⁰ incitatos equos sustinere¹¹ et brevi moderari ac flectere¹² et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et inde se in currus citissime¹³ recipere consuerint.

¹ Translate : *the following is their mode of fighting.* ² p. 123, 6. ³ p. 71, 3. ⁴ Translate : *when they have made their way in among the cavalry squadrons (i.e., their own cavalry).* ⁵ *with their chariot.* ⁶ *That they have;* p. 187, 2. ⁷ *the others (i.e., the fighting men).* ⁸ p. 192, 1, II, (b). ⁹ Join with consuerint (=consueverint). ¹⁰ Translate : *on a steep slope.* ¹¹ Translate : *check their horses going at full speed.* ¹² Translate : *stop and turn them in a short time.* ¹³ p. 58, 5.

LESSON VI.

CAESAR'S SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.

His rebus¹ gestis, Labieno¹ in continenti cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto,² ut³ portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque⁴ in Gallia gererentur⁵ cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re⁶ caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari⁷ numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, solis occasu⁸ naves solvit et leni Africo⁹ provectus,¹⁰ mediā circiter nocte⁸ vento¹ intermisso (*failing*), cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu,⁹ orta¹¹ luce sub sinistra¹² Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, aestus commutationem secutus, remis⁹ contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet,¹³ qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate⁸ cognoverat. Qua in re admodum¹⁴ fuit militum virtus laudanda,¹⁵ qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis,¹⁶ non intermisso remigandi labore,¹ longarum navium cursum adaequarunt.¹⁷ Accessum¹⁸ est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus¹⁹ meridiano fere tempore;⁸ neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut (*as*) postea Caesar ex captivis comperit, quum magnae manus eo convenissent,²⁰ multitudine navium perterritae, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

¹ Page 102, 2. ² pf. part. pass. of *relinquo*. ³ p. 183, 1, 2. ⁴ = *and what*. ⁵ p. 176, 2. ⁶ Translate: *to suit the crisis and circumstances*. ⁷ = *eodem*, the same. ⁸ p. 82, 1. ⁹ p. 71, 3. ¹⁰ From *proveho*. ¹¹ From *orior*; p. 102, 2. ¹² *Under* (i.e., *on*) *the left hand*. ¹³ *Make*. ¹⁴ *Up to the measure* ∴ *greatly, very*. ¹⁵ p. 172, 2 := *worthy of praise*. ¹⁶ abl. abs. Translate: *their ships being transports* (literally, *for carrying*) *and heavily laden besides*. ¹⁷ = *adaequaverunt*. ¹⁸ p. 161, 1. Translate: *all the ships reached* (literally, *it was reached*). ¹⁹ dat. of agent. ²⁰ 204, 5.

LESSON VII.

CAESAR'S ADVANCE.

Caesar, exposito exercitu¹ et loco¹ castris² idoneo capto, ubi³ ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedisent,⁴ co-

hortibus¹ decem ad (*beside*) mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui⁵ praesidio⁶ navibus essent, de⁷ tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo⁸ minus veritus navibus,⁹ quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat; et praesidio⁶ navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia¹⁰ passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu¹¹ atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere (*stop our advance*) et proelium committere cœperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti¹² egregie et¹⁶ natura¹³ et opere munitum, quem domestici belli causâ (*to help them in their intestine wars*), iam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis¹⁴ omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant (*fought in small bodies*), nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae, testudine¹ factâ et aggere¹ ad munitiones adiecto, locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi¹⁵ vetuit, et¹⁶ quod¹⁷ loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magnâ parte diei consumptâ, munitioni¹⁸ castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

¹ Page 102, 2. ² p. 60, 2. ³ p. 200, 2. ⁴ p. 176, 2. ⁵ p. 184, 1. ⁶ p. 134, 1. ⁷ *From* (i.e., *in*) *the third watch*. The night was divided into four watches, two before and two after midnight. ⁸ *Eo*.....*quod*, *on this account because*. ⁹ *For the ships*. ¹⁰ p. 69, 9, 10. ¹¹ *abl. of accompaniment without cum*, used sometimes in military descriptions. ¹² *From nanciscor*. ¹³ p. 71, 3. ¹⁴ *From succido*. ¹⁵ p. 181, 3. Note 1. *Tr.*, *forbade them* (i.e., *his troops*) *to follow the fugitives very far*. ¹⁶ *et*....*et*, *both*....*and*. ¹⁷ p. 198, 2. ¹⁸ *for the fortifying*. Note.—Nouns in *-io* (derived from verbs) have usually the force of an English noun in *-ing*.

LESSON VIII.

CAESAR BUILDS A NUMBER OF SHIPS AND FORTIFIES HIS CAMP.

His rebus¹ cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari² atque itinere³ desistere iubet; ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem⁴ fere, quae

ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic³ ut, amissis⁶ circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquae tamen retici posse magno negotio⁷ viderentur.⁸ Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessiri iubet; Labieno scribit, ut⁹ (= *to*) quam¹⁰ plurimas posset, iis legionibus quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse,¹¹ etsi¹² res erat multae operae¹³ ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci¹⁴ et cum castris unā munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus¹ ad (*for*) laborem militum intermissis (*being lost*). Subductis navibus¹ castrisque egregie munitis, easdem copias, quas ante,¹⁵ praesidio¹⁶ navibus reliquit; ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo quum¹⁷ venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summā¹⁸ imperii bellicae administrandi¹⁹ communi consilio permissā Cassivelauno, cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia²⁰ passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant²¹; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello²² imperioque praefecerant.

¹p. 102, 2. ²p. 181, 3. Note 1. ³p. 158, 2. Note 1; tr., *to cease advancing*. ⁴Join with *perspicit*: *learns on the spot much the same facts as he had ascertained*, etc. ⁵*thus far at least that*. . . . ⁶abl. abs. Tr., *though about 40 ships had been lost*. Express the exact force of the participle; p. 220, (i). ⁷p. 71, 3. Tr., *with great trouble*. ⁸p. 187, 2. ⁹p. 181, 3. ¹⁰p. 59, 2. Note. ¹¹p. 123, 6. ¹²p. 196, 6, 7. ¹³p. 130, 7. ¹⁴p. 108, 4. Tr., *that all the ships should be beached*. ¹⁵adverb. ¹⁶p. 134, 1. ¹⁷p. 203, 3. ¹⁸abl. abs. Tr., *the chief command and the entire charge of the war being entrusted by concerted action to C.* (literally, *the sum of power and of managing the war*; *summa* is a noun). ¹⁹p. 170, 3. ²⁰p. 69, 9. ²¹Tr., *incessant hostilities had been carried on in the past between him and the remaining states* (lit., *had come between*). ²²p. 120, 1.

LESSON IX.

BRITAIN DESCRIBED.

Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos¹ in insula ipsa dicunt; maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi² causâ ex Belgis transierant; qui omnes fere³ iis⁴ nominibus civitatum appellantur, ex quibus orti civitatibus eo pervenerunt, et bello⁵ illato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum⁶ est infinita multitudo, creberrimaeque aedificia, fere Gallicis⁷ consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere⁸ aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo.⁹ Nascitur ibi plumbum album¹⁰ in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum; sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia¹¹ cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas¹² non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causâ.¹³ Loca¹⁴ sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.¹⁵

¹ Supply *esse*; p. 109, 1. ² p. 171, 6. ³ *almost all of these*. ⁴ *lit., are called by the names of the states, from which states issuing, they came thither*. This superfluous addition of a noun in a relative clause is common in Caesar. To make English, translate as if *iis* were *earum* and make the participle *orti* (which contains the main idea) a finite verb. *Tr., are known by the names of those states from which they issued, when they came to the country*. ⁵ *Abl. abs.: after the war was over*. ⁶ *of people*. ⁷ Supply *aedificiis*; p. 60, 2. ⁸ p. 116. ⁹ *as*. ¹⁰ *i.e., tin*. ¹¹ *timber*. ¹² Supply *esse*: *they do not think it right*. ¹³ *Lit., for the sake of the mind and its pleasure; i.e., for mental gratification*. Note.—Latin often expresses an English noun and adjective (or adjective phrase) by two nouns connected by *and*. This idiom is called *hendiadys* (*ἐν, one; διὰ, through*; and *δύο, two*). ¹⁴ *the country, climate* (*lit., the regions*). ¹⁵ *Abl. abs.: the cold being less intense*.

LESSON X.

THE EXTENT OF THE ISLAND.

Insula est naturā¹ triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra² Galliam Huius lateris alter (*one of the two*) angulus—qui est ad Cantium, quo (*to which*) fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur³—ad orientem solem, inferior⁴ ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter millia passuum⁵ quingenta. Alterum⁶ vergit⁷ ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quā⁸ ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor,⁹ ut aestimatur, quam Britannia; sed pari spatio transmissus¹⁰ atque¹¹ ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu¹² est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae¹³ insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies¹⁴ continuos triginta sub bruma¹⁵ esse noctem.¹⁶ Nos nihil de eo¹⁷ percontationibus¹⁸ reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris¹⁹ breviores²⁰ esse quam in continente noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum²¹ opinio,²² septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones,²³ cui parti²⁴ nulla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat; hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vices centum millium passuum.²⁵

¹ In form. ² is over against. ³ put in. ⁴ Supply angulus (i.e., Land's End; geography not very correct). ⁵ p. 69, 10. ⁶ Supply latus. Notice unum, alterum, tertium, first, second, third. ⁷ lies towards. ⁸ on which side. ⁹ less by half, of half the extent; p. 58, 6. ¹⁰ with the same distance to cross (lit., of crossing) as there is from Gaul to Britain; spatio, abl. of quality; p. 131, 9; transmissus, gen. ¹¹ with par; par ac (or atque) = idem qui. ¹² in the middle of this passage. ¹³ Supply esse; to be adjacent. ¹⁴ p. 69, 9. ¹⁵ at the winter solstice. ¹⁶ that it is night. ¹⁷ with regard to this fact. ¹⁸ by enquiries; p. 71, 3. ¹⁹ by definite measurements with water (i.e., with the clepsydra, water-clock). ²⁰ that the nights (in summer) are shorter. ²¹ i.e., the writers mentioned. ²² as their opinion goes. ²³ faces the north (i.e., the N.E.). ²⁴ p. 120, 1, note. ²⁵ Lit., of twenty times a hundred of thousands of paces.

LESSON XI.

THE INHABITANTS DESCRIBED.—CROSSING OF THE THAMES.

Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi,¹ qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis; neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Intérieures plerique² frumenta non serunt sed lacte³ et carne vivunt pellibusque³ sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem. atque hoc⁴ horridiore sunt in pugna aspectu;⁵ capilloque⁵ sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasā praeter caput et labrum superius. Caesar, cognito consilio⁶ eorum, ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivelauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus,⁷ atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo quum venisset, animadvertit ad⁸ alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse⁹ copias hostium instructas; ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis (*set along the edge*) munita; eiusdemque generis¹⁰ sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed eā¹¹ celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, quum¹² capite⁷ solo ex aqua exstarent, ut¹³ hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent, ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

¹ *Most civilised.* ² *most of those dwelling in the interior.* ³ p. 71, 3. ⁴ *on this account.* ⁵ p. 131, 9. ⁶ p. 102, 2. ⁷ p. 71, 3. ⁸ *on.* ⁹ p. 109, 1. ¹⁰ p. 130, 7. ¹¹ *with such speed;* p. 71, 3. ¹² *though;* p. 204, 5. ¹³ p. 187, 2.

LESSON XII.

POLICY OF CASSIVELAUNUS.

Cassivelaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe¹ contentionis,² dimissis amplioribus copiis,¹ millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat³ paululumque ex via excedebat locisque⁴ impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque

THAMES.

in incolunt,
differunt
erunt sed
es vero se
atque hoc⁴
promisso
superius.
in fines
in loco
venisset,
se⁹ copias
s praefixis
qua defixae
ivis perfu-
s subsequi
ant, quum¹²
num atque
c se fugae

homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et quum⁵ equitatus noster liberius praedandi⁶ vastandique causâ se in agros effunderet, omnibus viis notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu⁷ latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur,⁸ ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi⁹ Caesar pateretur, et tantum¹⁰ in agris¹¹ vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur,¹² quantum labore atque itinere¹³ legionarii milites efficere poterant.

¹ Page 102, 2. ² of fighting. Nouns in -io have the force of English participial nouns in -ing. ³ for observabat, kept watching; note the force of the impf., the tense of incomplete action; p. 216, 3. ⁴ in inaccessible regions; p. 85, 3. Note. The preposition is not used with a common noun to express place where, when there is an adjective with the noun. ⁵ p. 203, 3. ⁶ p. 171, 6. ⁷ through fear of this. ⁸ p. 182, 4; tr., the only course left was. ⁹ impers.; tr., his men to go (lit., it to be gone). ¹⁰ supply ut; tr., and that as much injury might be inflicted upon the enemy, &c. ¹¹ p. 170, 3. ¹² impers.; p. 164, 1. ¹³ by laborious marching (See Lesson IX, note 13).

LESSON XIII.

THE TRINOBANTES SEND MESSENGERS TO CAESAR.

rior. ³ p.
71, 3. ⁸ on.
¹² though;

Interim Trinobantes,¹ prope firmissima earum regionum civitas—ex qua Mandubracius adolescens, Caesaris fidem secutus,² ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater Imanuentius in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat³ interfectusque erat a Cassivelauno, ipse fugâ⁴ mortem vitaverat—legatos ad Caesarem mittunt; pollicenturque sese ei dedituros⁵ atque imperata facturos; petunt⁶ ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivelauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit⁷ imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat⁸ obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi⁹ imperata¹⁰ celeriter fecerunt; obsides ad numerum frumentaue miserunt.

posita spe¹
er quattuor
que ex via
abat atque
cora atque

¹ Subject of mittunt. Notice the accumulation of ideas in a Latin period; in translating, break up the Latin period into sentences con-

taining a single idea each. Thus : *Meantime the T. send envoys to Caesar. They are almost the most powerful community in these parts. It was from them, &c. It was his father, &c. ²trusting to C's good faith. ³had held. ⁴p. 71, 3 ; tr., while M. himself, &c. ⁵p. 110, 1. ⁶p. 181, 3. ⁷p. 184, 1. ⁸orders them to give. ⁹i.e., the Trinobantes. ¹⁰p. 169, 5. Note 2 : tr., did what he required.*

LESSON XIV.

THE STATES OF THE BRITONS SURRENDER.

Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis,¹ Cenimagi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivelauni abesse² silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenit.³ (Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, quum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt,⁴ quo incursionis⁵ hostium vitandae causâ convenire consuêrunt⁶). Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus ; locum reperit egregie naturâ atque opere munitum ; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi ciecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

¹Page 102, 2 : *secured from all harm on the side of the soldiers.*
²p. 109, 1. ³subj. because in oblique narration (p 206, 4). ⁴p. 203, 2. ⁵p. 171, 6. ⁶for consueverunt. ⁷on two sides.

LESSON XV.

THE DRUIDS

In omni Gallia eorum hominum, quorum in quoque civitate numero¹ atque honore, genera sunt duo ; nam plebes paucæ servorum habetur loco,³ quæ nihil audet per se, nullo⁴ adhibetur concilio ; plerique cum aut aere⁶ alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuriâ potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant⁷ nobilibus ; in⁸

eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis⁹ in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi¹⁰ rebus divinis intersunt,⁸ sacrificia publica ac privata procurant (*manage*), religiones interpretantur (*explain religious matters*); ad eos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit magnoque hi¹¹ sunt apud eos¹² honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt¹³ et si quod¹⁴ est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, idem¹⁵ decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit,¹⁶ sacrificiis¹⁷ interdicunt.

¹ *Of any account.* Note. *Any* when it means *some*, is *aliquis*.
² = *plebs, the common people.* ³ = *in loco.* ⁴ *for null.* ⁵ p. 120, 2; *tr., officiate.* ⁶ *debt (lit., money of another.)* ⁷ *from dico, devote, give up.* ⁸ *over them.* ⁹ *dat. after sunt: which masters have.* ¹⁰ *the former*; p. 119, 5. ¹¹ *i.e. the Druids.* ¹² *i.e., the Gauls.* ¹³ *decide.* ¹⁴ p. 191, 4. p. 132, 2; ¹⁵ *for idem.* ¹⁶ *has refused to abide.* ¹⁷ p. 158, 2. Note. *Interdico* takes (*a*) *acc. of person and abl of thing*;
 (*b*) *dat.* “ “ “ *acc.* “ “
 (*c*) “ “ “ “ *abl.* “ “

LESSON XVI.

THE DRUIDS.—(*Continued*).

Haec poena (*i.e. excommunication*) apud eos est gravissima. Quibus¹ ita est interdictum, hi numero² impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur,³ his⁴ omnes decedunt, aditum⁵ sermonemque defugiant, ne⁶ quid ex contagione incommodi⁷ accipiant, neque⁸ his petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus druidibus⁹ praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc¹⁰ mortuo aut,¹¹ si qui¹² ex reliquis excellit dignitate,¹³ succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, (*they contest the first place by the vote*) nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore¹⁴ in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis

iudiciisque parent. Disciplina¹⁵ in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem (= *science*) cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causā proficiscuntur.

¹ Dat. with *interdictum est*: *to whom it has been interdicted*, i.e. *those who have been interdicted*. Note. The rel. clause is thrown forward when the antecedent is an emphatic pronoun. ² for in *numero*. ³ *are accounted*. ⁴ p. 134, 2; depending on *de viā* understood; tr., *retire from their path*. ⁵ lit., *shun approaching them and conversation* (with them). ⁶ p. 183, 2, 4. ⁷ p. 69, 10. ⁸ tr., *nor to their petition is justice rendered, nor is any office of state shared with them*; p. 219, 2 (g). ⁹ p. 120, 2. ¹⁰ p. 102, 2. ¹¹ *either (aut) . . . or (aut)*. ¹² for *quis*: tr., *the most conspicuous among the rest for worth*. ¹³ p. 71, 3. ¹⁴ p. 82, 1. ¹⁵ (1) *learning (disco)*; (2.) *system*.

LESSON XVI.

THE DRUIDS.—(*Continued*).

Druides a bello abesse consuerunt¹ neque tributa unā cum reliquis pendunt, militiae vacationem omniumque rerum (i.e., *public burdens*; see Lesson xix, note 17) habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis² et (*both*) suā sponte multi in disciplinam³ conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere⁴ dicuntur.⁵ Itaque annos⁶ nonnulli vicanos⁷ in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum⁸ in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus,⁹ Graecis litteris utantur. Id (*this rule*) mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur,⁵ quod (*because*) neque in vulgum disciplinam¹⁰ efferri velint¹¹ neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos¹² minus memoriae studere;¹³ quod fere plerisque accidit, ut¹⁴ praesidio¹⁵ litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. Imprimis hoc¹⁶ volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis¹⁷ post mortem transire ad alios,¹⁸ atque hoc¹⁹ maxime ad virtutem excitari²⁰ putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa²¹ praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi²² ac terrarum²³ magnitudine, de rerum²⁴ natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant²¹ et iuventuti tradunt.

¹ for consueverunt. ² p. 71, 3. ³ for instruction. ⁴ to learn by heart. ⁵ p. 164, 3. ⁶ p. 82, 4. ⁷ p. 69, 8 (a). ⁸ p. 204, 5. ⁹ accounts. ¹⁰ their system. ¹¹ subjun. of oblique narration depending on videntur (p. 206, 4). ¹² from confido, trusting; p. 219, 2 (c). ¹³ supply velint: and do not wish learners to take less pains about their memories. ¹⁴ p. 182, 4. ¹⁵ by the help; p. 71, 3. ¹⁶ impress this belief; hoc alicui persuādeo = I recommend this to a person. ¹⁷ from some, from one. ¹⁸ i.e. the doctrine of the transmigration of souls. ¹⁹ by this. ²⁰ impersonal pass.: that men are incited (compare p. 164, 2)....and despise the fear of death; p. 219, 2 (a). ²¹ they have frequent discussions. ²² the universe. ²³ the globe. ²⁴ the nature of things, science.

LESSON XVIII.

THE NOBLES OF THE GAULS. THEIR RELIGION.

Alterum¹ genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus² atque aliquod³ bellum incidit—quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, ut⁴ aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent—omnes in bello versantur,⁵ atque eorum ut quisque⁶ est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam⁷ potentiamque⁸ noverunt. Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita⁹ religionibus, atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis⁹ quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolatu¹⁰ vovent administrisque¹¹ ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur,¹² quod (*because*), pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur,¹³ non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur, publiceque¹⁴ eiusdem generis¹⁵ habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine¹⁶ simulacra habent, quorum¹⁷ contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus¹⁸ complent; quibus¹⁹ succensis circumventi flammā exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehensi (p. 188, 4), gratiora (*very pleasing*) dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

¹ *The second class consists of the knights.* ² *need.* ³ *some.* ⁴ *p.* 183, 2. ⁵ *engage in.* ⁶ *p.* 195, 4 (b) ; tr., *the number of retainers each one has about him is in proportion to his distinction for birth and wealth; amplius, great, distinguished.* ⁷ *favor (to or from others) ∴ ground of influence ; tr., this is the one way they know of gaining influence and power.* Note. *Primus (first), ultimus (last), solus or unus (alone)* are used adverbially in Latin, and not with a predicate clause as in English : as, *primus vēnit, he was the first who came ; hoc solus feci, I was the only one who did it.* ⁸ *devoted to religious ceremonies.* ⁹ *p.* 71, 3. ¹⁰ *p.* 110, 1. ¹¹ *as ministers.* ¹² *p.* 116. ¹³ *p.* 210, 2. ¹⁴ *on the part of the state.* ¹⁵ *p.* 130, 8. ¹⁶ *p.* 131, 9. ¹⁷ *the limbs of which.* ¹⁸ *p.* 71, 3. ¹⁹ *p.* 112, 2.

LESSON XIX.

GODS OF THE GAULS.

Deorum maxime Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plurima simulacra ; hunc omnium inventorem artium (*higher arts*) ferunt,¹ hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem,² hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque (*mercantile pursuits*) habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem³ et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes,⁴ habent opinionem :⁵ Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum (*mechanical arts*) initia tradere,⁶ Iovem imperium caelestium tenere (*has authority over*), Martem bella regere. Huic,⁷ cum proelio⁸ dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint,⁹ plerumque devotent ; cum superaverunt,¹⁰ animalia capta¹¹ immolant reliquasque¹² res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis¹³ consecratis conspici¹⁴ licet ; neque saepe accidit, ut neglectā quispiam religione aut¹⁵ capta apud se occultare aut posita¹⁶ tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei¹⁷ supplicium cum cruciatio constitutum est.

¹ *Assert ; supply esse.* ² *the one who shows the way and conducts upon journeys.* ³ *supply colunt.* ⁴ *supply habent.* ⁵ *belief.* ⁶ *lit., gives the rudiments of all handicraft and arts (hendiadys: i.e., in the arts).* ⁷ *to him.* ⁸ *p.* 71, 3. ⁹ *whatever they shall have taken.* ¹⁰ *after a victory.* ¹¹ *taken as spoil.* ¹² *the rest of the booty.* ¹³ *Lesson xii, note 4.*

⁸ some. ⁴ p.
of retainers
n for birth
to or from
they know of
imus (last),
l not with a
as the first
lid it. ⁸ de-
¹¹ as minis-
e. ¹⁵ p. 130,
10 2, 2.

¹⁴ from *conspicor*, see; tr., anyone may see. ¹⁵ aut....aut, either....or.
¹⁶ what has been deposited as an offering. ¹⁷ for this offence. Note.
The word *res*—so common in Latin—is not often to be translated
by *thing*, but by some word that will suit the context. Thus:
his *rebus constitutis* (Lesson II), *these arrangements made*; *ea res*
(Lesson IV), *this manœuvre*.

LESSON XX.

CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS.

olurima sim-
rts) ferunt,¹
us pecuniae
imam arbi-
Minervam.
opinionem;⁵
artificiorum
stium tenere
cum proelio⁸
mque devo-
reliquasque¹²
arum rerum
neque saepe
se occultare
plicium cum

Galli se omnes ab Dite patre¹ prognatos praedicant idque ab
druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam² spatia omnis tem-
poris non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt³; dies natales et
mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subse-
quatur.⁴ In reliquis vitae institutis hoc⁵ fere⁶ ab reliquis differunt,
quod⁷ suos liberos,⁸ nisi cum adoleverunt⁹ ut¹⁰ munus militiae sus-
tinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur filiumque puerili
aetate¹¹ in publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.¹² Viri,
quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine¹³ acceperunt, tantas ex
suis bonis aestimatione¹⁴ factâ cum dotibus communicant.¹⁵ Huius
omnis pecuniae coniunctim (=added together) ratio habetur¹⁶
fructusque¹⁷ servantur; uter eorum vita superarit,¹⁸ ad eum pars
utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri
in uxores, sicut in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et
cum paterfamiliae illustriore¹⁹ loco natus decessit, eius propinqui
conveniunt et de morte, si res in suspicionem venit,²⁰ de uxoribus
in servilem modum²¹ quaestionem habent (*they hold an examination*);
et, si compertum est (*if it is ascertained*; i.e., *if the suspicion is*
confirmed), igni atque omnibus tormentis ex cruciatas²² interficiunt.
Funera sunt pro cultu²³ Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa;
omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse²⁴ arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt,
etiam animalia; ac paulo supra hanc memoriam²⁵ servi et clientes,
quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis²⁶
unâ²⁷ cremabantur.

and conducts
⁶lit., gives
(in the arts).
⁹ after a vic-
a xii, note 4.

¹ Page 156, 4. ² i.e., because Dis is the god of Darkness. They
really counted time *by nights*, because *measured* by the moon
(compare our *fortnight*). ³ they define *... a day follows close on*

(i.e., *begins with*) *night*. They make any special day begin with the night before. ⁶*in this respect*; p. 71, 3. ⁶*roughly speaking* ⁷p. 181, 2. ⁸obj. of *patiuntur*. ⁹from *adolesco*. ¹⁰*so that*. ¹¹p. 131, 9. ¹²*consider* (like *habeo*). ¹³*under the head of*. *Nomen*, an entry in an account book. ¹⁴abl. abs.; *making a valuation*. ¹⁵*add to the dowry*. ¹⁶*a reckoning is kept*. ¹⁷*profits*. ¹⁸for—*averit*; = Eng. pres. ¹⁹p. 58, 5. ²⁰p. 196, 6 (at end). ²¹*as with slaves*, i.e., by torture. ²²agreeing with *uxores* understood. ²³*considering the civilisation*. ²⁴*cordi esse, be dear to*. ²⁵*shortly before my time*. ²⁶*after the regular ceremonies were over*. ²⁷*with the dead*.

LESSON XXI.

LAWS AGAINST GOSSIPING.

Quae civitates commodius¹ suam rempublicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum,² si quis quid de republica a finitimis rumore aut fama³ acceperit, ut ad magistratum deferat neve⁴ cum quo⁵ alio communicet, quod⁶ saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus, quae visa sunt (*what seems good to them*) occultant, quaeque esse ex usu (*of service*) iudicaverunt, multitudini produnt. De republica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.⁷

GERMAN MANNERS AND CUSTOMS.

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus⁸ divinis praesint,⁹ neque sacrificiis¹⁰ student. Deorum numero¹¹ eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne famā quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit¹²; ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Pellibus aut parvis renonum tegimentis utuntur, magnā corporis parte¹³ nudā.

¹Page 58, 5; tr., *the states which are thought to manage their public affairs best*. ²*have a rule laid down by law*; p. 219, 2 (*d*). ³*rumor or report*; tr., *if anyone hears anything from his neighbors con-*

cerning the public interest, that he shall carry it to a magistrate.
⁴ = et ne; p. 186, 6. ⁵ quo from quis; p. 173, 4: *and that he shall impart the matter to no one.* ⁶ because; join with *cognitum est.*
⁷ *politics may not be discussed except in the general assembly (per, in the course of).* Note. *Respublica* (lit., a matter affecting the people, *populus*) has many meanings; e.g., *country*; *government* (line 1); *political question, politics* (as here). ⁸ p. 120, 2. ⁹ p. 184, 1. ¹⁰ p. 105, 9. ¹¹ = in numero. ¹² is spent. ¹³ p. 102, 2.

LESSON XXII.

GERMAN LAND TENURE.

*Agriculturae*¹ non student, maiorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit.² Neque quisquam agri modum certum³ aut fines habet proprios,⁴ sed magistratus⁵ ac principes in annos singulos gentibus⁶ cognationibusque⁷ hominum, qui tum unā coierunt,⁸ quantum⁹ agri et quo loco visum¹⁰ est, attribuunt atque anno post¹¹ alio¹² transire cogunt. Eius rei¹³ multas afferunt causas: ne assiduā consuetudine capti¹⁴ studium belli gerendi¹⁵ agriculturā commutent¹⁶; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus¹⁷ expellant; ne accuratius¹⁸ ad frigora atque aestus vitandos¹⁵ aedificent; ne qua¹⁹ oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, quā ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut²⁰ animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque²¹ opes cum potentissimis²² aequari videat.²³

¹ Page 105, 9. ² *the greater part of their food consists of.* Notice et omitted as usual. ³ *fixed.* ⁴ *private land-marks or lands.* ⁵ *subject of attribuunt.* ⁶ *clans.* ⁷ *families* (lit., *relationships*). ⁸ *of the people who have met together on the occasion.* ⁹ *whatever land*; p. 69, 10. ¹⁰ *wherever seems right.* The land assigned was called a *mark.* ¹¹ *adv.; next year* (lit., *afterwards by a year*). ¹² *to another place.* ¹³ *practice* (Lesson XIX, note 17). ¹⁴ *charmed by habitual custom.* ¹⁵ *pursuit of war*; p. 170, 3. ¹⁶ *abandon for agriculture*; p. 150, 1. Note. ¹⁷ *from their holdings.* ¹⁸ *with too great care.* ¹⁹ p. 132, 2. ²⁰ *keep the people quiet with contentment.* ²¹ Note the order. ²² = *with that of the most powerful.* ²³ p. 198, 3.

LESSON XXIII.

WAR, BRIGANDAGE, HOSPITALITY.

Civitatibus¹ maxima laus est quam latissime² circum se vastatis finibus³ solitudines habere. Hoc proprium⁴ virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere⁵ neque quemquam prope⁶ audere consistere; simul hoc⁷ se fore⁸ tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato.⁹ Cum bellum¹⁰ civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus,¹¹ qui ei bello praesint,¹² ut¹³ vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum¹⁴ atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt¹⁵ controversiasque minuunt.¹⁶ Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque¹⁷ ea iuventutis exercendae¹⁸ ac desidia minuendae causâ fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis¹⁹ ex principibus in concilio dixit, se ducem fore;²⁰ qui sequi velint,²¹ profiteantur;²² consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine collaudantur; qui ex²³ his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur,²⁴ omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur.²⁵ Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quacumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent sanctosque habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur.

¹Page 120, 3. ²as far and wide as possible; p. 59, 2. Note. ³abl. abs.; by laying waste the country; p. 231, 4. ⁴the characteristic mark of valor. ⁵that their neighbors, driven from their lands, should retire before them. ⁶near. ⁷in this way. ⁸futuros esse. ⁹from tollo, raise, take away. ¹⁰bellum inferre, invade; tr., when a state is repelling invasion or invading others. ¹¹join with deliguntur. ¹²p. 184, 1. ¹³on the understanding that. ¹⁴districts. ¹⁵declare what is right (i.e., administer justice). ¹⁶settle. ¹⁷and besides (stronger than et). ¹⁸p. 171, 6. ¹⁹when any. ²⁰futurum esse. ²¹p. 206, 4. ²²p. 207, 5: let them declare it. ²³i.e., of those who promise. ²⁴are held. ²⁵confidence with regard to everything is withdrawn from them.

LESSON XXIV.

THE BRAVERY OF THE GERMANS AND GAULS CONTRASTED.

Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem¹ agrique inopiam trans Rhenum² colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis famā notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant) Volcae Tectosāges³ occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt⁴; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet iustitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem.⁵ Nunc quod⁶ in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia Germani permanent,⁷ eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur,⁸ Gallis autem⁹ provinciarum¹⁰ propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia¹¹ multa ad copiam atque usus largitur,¹² paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis¹³ virtute comparant.

¹ *Population.* ² i.e., eastwards across the Rhine. ³ i.e., a Gallic tribe. ⁴ from *consido*, settle. ⁵ *enjoys the highest reputation for.* ⁶ *because, as.* ⁷ *continue in, live in*; tr., *as the G. live amid the same poverty, want, and endurance of hardships.* ⁸ *follow the same course of living and bodily training.* ⁹ *while.* ¹⁰ *of the Roman provinces* (i.e., Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul). ¹¹ *knowledge of things beyond the sea.* ¹² *brings them many articles for superfluity and use* (multa, neut. pl.) Note. The meaning is that the Germans, in consequence of their hardy life, are now superior to the Gauls who have been corrupted by Roman civilisation. ¹³ i.e., the Germans.

LESSON XXV.

THE HERCYNIAN WOOD.

Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata¹ est, latitudo novem dierum iter² expedito³ patet; non enim aliter finiri⁴ potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt.⁵ Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum finibus rectaque fluminis⁶ Danuvii regione⁷ pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus⁸ multarumque gentium fines propter

magnitudinem attingit ; neque quisquam est huius⁹ Germaniae, qui¹⁰ se aut adiisse ad initium¹¹ eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter LX processerit,¹² aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit ; multaque in eā genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint ; ex quibus quae¹³ maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda¹⁴ videantur, haec sunt.

¹ Point out, mention. ² p. 69, 9 : over a journey of nine days. ³ for a man lightly equipped. ⁴ it can not be defined in other terms. ⁵ they do not know the measurement (i.e., length) of the day's journey. ⁶ in a straight line with (i.e., parallel to). ⁷ to the left. ⁸ in a direction away from the river. ⁹ i.e., western (that which we know). ¹⁰ p. 188, 5 (a). ¹¹ to the eastern end. ¹² even after advancing ; subj. of oblique narration ; p. 206, 4. ¹³ p. 188, 4 : the following are those of them which, &c. (i.e., of such a kind as to). ¹⁴ p. 172, 2.

LESSON XXVI.

ITS DENIZENS : THE REINDEER AND THE ELK.

Est bos cervi figurā,¹ cuius a media fronte² inter aures unum cornu existit excelsius magisque directum his,³ quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus ; ab eius summo sicut palmae ramique⁴ late diffunduntur.⁵ Eadem est feminae marisque⁶ natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum. Sunt item, quae appellantur⁷ alces. Harum est consimilis capris⁸ figura et varietas⁹ pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus¹⁰ et crura¹¹ sine nodis articulisque habent, neque quietis causā procumbunt neque, si quo¹² afflictæ casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His¹³ sunt arbores pro¹⁴ cubilibus ; ad eas se applicant atque ita, paulum modo¹⁵ reclinatae, quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint,¹⁶ omnes¹⁷ eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt¹⁸ aut accidunt arbores. Huc (*against them*) cum se consuetudine¹⁹ reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere¹⁰ affligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

¹ Of the shape of a deer ; probably the reindeer. ² from the middle of its forehead (Caesar's information inaccurate here). Note. The

adj. *medius* is used in agreement with a noun to express *middle* of (compare *summus mons*, *imus mons*; p. 59, 1. Note). ³p. 55, 5. ⁴like *branching hands* (*hendiadys*. Lesson ix, note 13). ⁵*spread out wide*. ⁶from *mas*, a male. ⁷the so-called. ⁸p. Co, 2 : = *like that of the wild goat*. ⁹*piebald appearance*. ¹⁰= *they are blunted in their horns* (p. 71, 3); tr., *their horns are blunt*. ¹¹from *crus*; *they have legs without knotted joints* (*hendiadys*). ¹²*by any accident*; p. 138, 6. Note. ¹³*serve them* (i.e., are to them). ¹⁴as. ¹⁵*just a little*. ¹⁶p. 176, 2; *their haunts* (lit., *whither they are accustomed to repair*; p. 181, 1). ¹⁷join with *arbores*. ¹⁸*they either undermine at the roots or cut into*. ¹⁹= *ex consuetudine*, according to custom.

LESSON XXVII.

THE PRIMITIVE OX.

Tertium¹ est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra² elefantos, specie³ et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas, neque homini neque ferae, quam⁴ conspexerunt, parcut. Hos studiose foveis captos⁵ interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant adolescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis⁶ in publicum cornibus, quae⁷ sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines et mansueferi ne parvuli quidem⁶ excepti⁸ possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura ei species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose conquisita⁹ ab labris¹⁰ argento circumcludunt atque in amplissimis¹¹ epulis pro poculis utuntur.

¹ *The third species (worthy of mention) consists of those which are called uri.* ² *a little less than*; p. 58, 6. ³ *in appearance*; p. 71, 3. ⁴ *the relative (like the adjective) when referring to two or more nouns of different gender, usually agrees with the nearest.* ⁵ *they catch in pit-falls and kill*; p. 219, 2, (a). ⁶ *when their horns are brought into public view.* ⁷ *to serve as evidence*; p. 184, 1; p. 134, 1. ⁸ *not even when trapped young.* ⁹ *from conquireo, seek for*; p. 219, 2, (a). ¹⁰ *at the edges.* ¹¹ *at important banquets (amplius, great, distinguished).*

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE

BASED ON THE

EXTRACTS FROM CAESAR.

EXERCISE I.

(Based on Caesar, Lesson I, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

If he had visited this island, he would have found living upon the shore of the sea a nation of traders, possessing men (*use miles*) and ships, and harbors adapted for vessels of the largest size. These (*use the relative*) ships they use both (*et*) for visiting localities that lie opposite the island, and for making war upon their enemies. Their skill in war, accordingly, is considerable; and time would fail me merely to enumerate (*enúmero, -are*) the important wars they have carried on. They¹ live under institutions which have been extolled (*laudo*) by almost all who have investigated them; and no one (*use nec*; p. 132, 3) has ever (*unquam*) visited the island without (*quin*) learning something (*aliquid*) which proved of advantage to himself.

¹ Connect this sentence by *autem* (*however*), putting it second in the sentence. Note that *autem* and *vero* (*however*), *enim* (*for*), *quodque* (*also*), *quidem* (*indeed*), *certe* (*at all events*), never come first in a sentence.

EXERCISE II.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons I and II, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

CAESAR ADDRESSES HIS OFFICERS.

"I have called you together, officers, in order to convey my wishes to you personally (*ipse*). All¹ arrangements are completed; the

troops will embark during the present² watch. As soon as (ubi) wind and tide are favorable, I shall give the signal for embarkation.³ Thereupon (deinde) let all embark, weigh anchor, and set sail at once (statim). When you have gone forward about seven miles, you will see a large island; there, the ships of the enemy are stationed. Hem them in on all sides; let not a single one escape (use *ne unus . . . quidem, and effugio*). Meantime let all wait upon the open shore until the signal is given."

¹ Connect by *enim*. ² 118, 2. ³ Omit these two words.

EXERCISE III.

Translate into Latin, using oblique narration, Exercise II.

Note. Turn the vocative of direct narration into acc. in oblique.

EXERCISE IV.

(Based on Caesar, *Lessons II and III, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.*)

We intended (*p. 174, 1*) to go on board and weigh anchor as soon as (ubi) we reached¹ the sea shore; but the waves were so high (use *altus*) that the officers did not give the order for instant embarkation (use *statim* and *gen. of gerund*). The soldiers had not much experience of the sea, and were filled with apprehension (use *one verb*) at the size of the waves. Accordingly, they did not show the same zeal for (ad) advancing as they often showed, preferring² (*malo quam*) to remain on dry land to launching out upon the deep sea. All the forces, both foot (*pedites*) and horse, took up their station on the open shore. The position³ of the ground was favorable; it was shut in on all sides (*undique*) by high hills, which prevented the enemy from seeing what was going on. On this account they were unable to ascertain our plans.

¹ 164, 2; apply 207, 7. ² 219, (c). ³ say, *place*.

EXERCISE V.

(Based on Caesar, *Lessons II and III. Review Exercise; to be done without reference to the Latin.*)

But it¹ was when the shore was reached (*use pervenio*) that the greatest difficulty occurred. The waves were so high that they rendered landing an impossibility (*use possum or prohibeo*). We had accordingly to station the fleet off the great harbor for two or three hours. We could see from the ships the armed forces of the enemy drawn up upon the hill. They² were waiting until we should leap into the sea and advance to the shore through the waves, thinking³ that it would be impossible for us to keep our feet on unfamiliar ground, oppressed as we were with the weight of our arms. Knowing³ their design, our general prevented our forces from landing until the sea became smooth.

It was . . . that, is used for *emphasis*; omit and put *litus* at end (231, 7). Thus: *The greatest difficulty, however, was when it was come to the shore.* ²connect (*enim*). ³219, (c).

EXERCISE VI.

(Based on Caesar, *Lessons III and IV, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.*)

When the barbarians saw from the nearest hills the fleet approaching the shore, they showed some slight hesitation (*use a verb*). Artillery of unfamiliar description, legions of soldiers in strange (*mirus*) armor and carrying (*cum*) strange weapons, ships of war of unusual shape and appearance, with transports following close behind, all tended (*impf.*) to fill them with excitement¹ and alarm. They would have retreated in dismay (*part.*) from the shore, if their general, flinging himself among (*inter*) them had not called out in a loud voice: "Stand your ground boldly, comrades; do not incur the disgrace of betraying your country." By this exhortation¹ (*part.*) he incited them to do their duty and stand their ground.

¹231, 5; note that Latin, as far as possible, avoids such nouns.

EXERCISE VII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons IV and V, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

The battle had not a very fortunate issue for us, and chiefly because of the alarm produced by the enemy's chariots. These chariots generally prove of great service in battle, showing, as they do,¹ the activity of horse and the stability of foot. The drivers can advance (*progredior*) upon an enemy or retreat with their chariots at will; and they threw our ranks into confusion without (use *abl. abs.* and *ne unus quidem*) hurling a single dart. When our general saw what was happening (*flo*), he rode in all directions through the ranks, appealing to the soldiers to stand their ground. Then, ordering² the chariots to be dislodged with slings and arrows, he followed them up with the cavalry, and soon drove them from the field (*locus*). They retreated so slowly that there was no confusion³ in their line (*acies*).

¹ Omit. ² 219, (c). ³ 164, 2, note 2.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons V and VI, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

About noon we set sail from this island and were soon being carried swiftly along by a sweeping (*praeceps*) wind from the southwest. We hoped (*spero*) to make the continent before midnight; but, the wind dying away (219, c) at sundown, we were compelled to take to the oars (*p. 173, 5, 6*). All night long (use *per*) we rowed against an adverse (*adversus*) tide without intermission of labor (*p. 220, 3*). We had indeed (use *enim*) good reason (use *habeo cur*) for haste when it was ascertained that no supply of provisions had been laid in.¹ This was incentive enough (use *satis incito*); and it had this much effect (use *hoc*) at least (*certe*), that when day dawned we saw the continent lying (*pertineo*) in the sunlight not far away upon our left, and we could hear the roar of the tide on the shore.

Hunger (*fames*) had done the work (use neut. pronoun), and it soon afterwards also brought us to port.

¹ 164, 2, note 2; say, *it had not been provided with regard to supplies.*

EXERCISE IX.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons VI and VII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

The enemy then fled (*fugio*) from the field (*locus*) and concealed themselves in a wood, which they proceeded to fortify (*impf.*) with great skill, cutting¹ down a number of trees and with them closing all avenues of approach to the wood. Our general heard of these preparations² from the prisoners of war, and, ascertaining the enemy's position,³ makes all haste to dislodge them from their works. He landed his army in front of the fortification and proceeded to throw up a mound against it. This the enemy endeavored to prevent, and they defended themselves with admirable courage, fighting from the works and seeking to repulse the legions. At last (*postremo*), however, after a great part of the day had been spent in fighting, we carried the position, and once more they fled and dispersed in every direction to their homes (*domum*). The loss on our side was inconsiderable.

¹ 219, (c). ² 181, I.

EXERCISE X.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons VII and VIII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

There he learned to his dismay (*use perterreo*) that about forty ships had been lost, and that he must¹ return to the shore to look into the facts personally. He decided that many of the ships could be restored; but that—though it would be an undertaking of enormous labor—many new ones (*novus*) must be built (*instituo*). Accordingly he makes his preparations² at once (*statim*). All the

ships that were lying at their moorings, he ordered to be beached and strongly fortified, and all the forces, foot and horse, to be recalled into camp. Bands (*manus*) of mechanics were summoned from the maritime states to cut down³ trees and begin (*incipio*) the work of restoration. Meantime (*interim*) the defences of the ships are joined to (*cum*) those⁴ of the camp, and a member of staff (*legatus*) is put in charge of the whole work.

¹ 173, 5, 6. ² 231, 5, use *paro*. ³ 185, 5. ⁴ use the noun; the Lat. demonstrative is not used with an adj. phrase; cf., 219, (/).

EXERCISE XI.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons VIII and IX, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

This island has a large population, fine¹ soldiers, and² a numerous fleet; and they manage both war and maritime affairs well.³ The majority in the inland parts cultivate the fields and rear poultry. Many also rear large numbers of cattle. Of the rest, many are artisans who build houses and ships. There is fine timber in the island and large rivers; and the ships of all nations assemble in them. Bronze, tin, and² iron are produced in the higher parts; they weigh them out into bars of definite weight and export (*exporto*) them to the continent. Their currency is bronze; but that they usually (*plerumque*) import. In time of war—and wars are frequent between them and other islands—they appoint one from among themselves to the head of the army, and confer upon him the supreme command. In this way they ensure concerted action in the management of war.⁴

² Superl. of *bonus*—*optimus* and. ³ adv. from *bonus*. ⁴ say, *they can manage the war by, &c.*

EXERCISE XII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons IX and X, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

I see that some writers assert¹ that there is a large island in the middle of the sea (*mare*) to which an enemy never (*nunquam*)

comes, whether² to make war or to make spoil. It is called Abiēna, or the island of the white fir. There is no other land near it whether to the north, the south, the east, or the west. It is triangular in form and the measurement of each side is three hundred miles. The distance across (say, *the crossing*) to it from the mainland is not shorter than two thousand (*use gen.*) miles, so³ that many ships do not touch at it. In the middle of summer (*aestas*) the sun never sets and it is always day there (*ibi*). The climate is mild, the cold being moderate. The people who inhabit the island call themselves aboriginal. Their number is small. I have tried (*conor*) to find out by enquiry from several persons in what direction (*pars*) it lies; but I have not (*use nec*) been able to get any information about it.⁴

¹ Say, *some have written*. ² 191, 5. ³ *ita ut*; 187. ⁴ say, *find out anything*; 132, 3.

EXERCISE XIII.

(Based on Caesar, *Lessons X and XI*, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

When we reached the eastern side of the river we descried the forces of the enemy all drawn up on the other bank. They could not have been less than twenty thousand strong, while we were about half of that strength (say: *less by half*). The river could be forded only at one point, and there they had taken up their position (*use constituo*), intending to dispute our passage (*use prohibeo*). We learned from deserters that they had palisaded the edge of the bank with sharp stakes and had sunk others under water so as (*ita ut*; 187) to be concealed by the river. Knowing¹ the enemy's plan, our general immediately sends forward the cavalry to ford the river, ordering the legions to follow close behind. For the latter² the crossing was difficult, only their heads being¹ above water. But such³ was the speed and impetuosity of our advance⁴ that the enemy could not sustain it. They immediately abandoned the bank and took to flight.

¹ 219, (c). ² 119, 5. ³ 187, 3. ⁴ *use verb*; 231, 5.

EXERCISE XIV.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XI and XII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

In many¹ ways these people are barbarous (**barbari**). They wear their hair long and dress in skins. They stain their bodies blue. They live on flesh and do not sow the fields or use corn for food. But they are not barbarous in battle. They engage an enemy freely and with properly (**bone**) marshalled troops. They watch his line of march, and, concealing² themselves in fortified woods, let slip their armies upon him as he passes. They drive away their cattle to³ prevent him from getting booty from (**de**) their fields. They even waste their own lands by kindling conflagrations, in order to inflict injury⁴ upon him and cause him to retire from their territory. By their own methods (**consilium**) they achieve as great wonders (*use **efficere tantum***) in war as other more civilised nations do by theirs

¹ Say, on many accounts (**causa**). ² 219, (c). ³ 185, 5. ⁴ 231, 5.

EXERCISE XV.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XII and XIII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found).

(FOR OBLIQUE NARRATION).

He answered that nothing, unless (190, 3) they surrendered, would prevent him from laying their country waste.¹ He would let loose his legionaries to plunder their lands, to drive away their cattle and to kindle conflagrations on every side (**undique**). Let them lay aside all hope of carrying on the struggle. They could not escape death, but would all be put to the sword. But if they surrendered and did what he required, if they trusted him and gave him hostages and corn, if they protected his soldiers from wrong, he promised he would not injure either (**aut**) them or their lands. He would allow the state to enjoy its sovereignty; he would allow their own king (**rex**) to rule over them.

¹206, 3; think out the direct narration all through. Thus here: *Nothing will, &c., unless you surrender*=*nihil se prohibiturum* ... *nisi ipsos* (168, 3, note) *dedidissent*; 211, 2 (a).

EXERCISE XVI.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XIII and XIV, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

Not far from this was a spot which had been already fortified both by nature and art, and lay in the midst (in) of an inaccessible wood. (A place of this kind¹ they call in these parts² a "town"). This was their rendezvous;³ this they seized and resolved (statuo) to hold. They proceeded to (216, 3) strengthen it with a rampart of palisades; and, making incursions in every direction, they brought (porto) into the place a large amount (numerus) of corn and a large number of cattle. At the head of their army was a young man who had been compelled⁴ to fly (fugio) from his country to escape death. His father had once (quondam) worn a royal crown;⁵ but he had met with a violent death at the hands of the Romans, the youth himself escaping⁶ death by flight. After sending an embassy⁷ to them to beg⁸ them to surrender,⁹ our general, on their refusal (*use nolo*), proceeded to attack the place with two legions. It was impossible for the enemy to resist the attack. They flung themselves in headlong (praeceps) flight from the town. All who were taken were put to the sword.

¹Huius modi ²hic. ³say, at this point (eo) they assembled. ⁴173, 5, 6. ⁵231, 6; use *regnum*. ⁶make a main verb. ⁷231, 4. ⁸184, 1. ⁹181, 3.

EXERCISE XVII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XIV and XV, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

The rights of the commons in some (nonnullus) countries are not highly regarded. The common people are found in the armies, but they are not admitted to the national council. They have no part

in the national religious functions. They are considered very much (*ferre*) as cattle, and the powerful nobles have almost the same power (*use ius*) over them as a master has over his slaves. They do not venture on any enterprise of their own accord. Everything must be done for them through the nobility. There is no one to defend¹ them from wrong; but if they commit a crime, penalties of all kinds (*use omnis*) are decreed against them. They are often (*saepe*) overwhelmed with debt, and then (*deinde*) they hand themselves over to the nobles, body and soul (*animus*). In war they are slaughtered, and in peace (*pax*) they are oppressed with taxes. Disputes between (*inter*) them and the nobility are decided by the nobility, and their life² is really³ one private and public servitude.

¹188, 5, (*a*). ²*use vivo in*. ³*express by putting servitude in an emphatic position; 231, 7.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

(Based on Caesar, *Lessons XV and XVI*, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

The druidical system is said to have been invented in Gaul and carried across from there to Britain. Gaul is at present (*nunc*) the general resort¹ of all diligent students of the system; and here, at a particular season of the year, the great druidical council holds conclave in a consecrated spot in the centre of the country (*terra*). The position of the druidical class in Britain is a very honorable one. They are arbiters in all public and private matters of dispute, whether (191, 5) affecting lands and inheritances, or the commission of crimes and homicides. Men flock¹ from all sides to consult (*consulo*) them, and there is universal compliance¹ with their decisions. On the decease of the chief druid, the succession is frequently (*saepe*) determined by worth and authority. Sometimes, however, they settle the claims to the primacy by single combat. Held in high honor, as they are,² they see every year (*quotannis*) a large concourse¹ of young men (*adolescens*) coming together to (*apud*) them for instruction.

¹164, 2 and note 2. ²*express by putting high in an emphatic position; 231, 7.*

EXERCISE XIX.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XVI and XVII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

He used¹ to lay down the following (*use hic*) rules with regard to (*de*) the subjects (*res*) that young men (*adolescens*) ought to study (173, 5). In particular he endeavored to impress this belief on all, that literature (*literae*) should be studied and studied thoroughly. By no means (*use nec, ullus, and modus*) did he think that men could be so incited to right action and contempt² for the fear of death. He thought that literature should be carried as widely as possible (*use quam* and *superl.*) among the masses and taught (*docere*) both by private individuals and through state aid (*publice*). He thought that many years might well be spent (*consumo*) at this subject. But for fear that³ young men should neglect other subjects, he recommended the study also of mathematics (*numeri*) and science, and especially astronomy. "In no way" (*put in indirect narration*), he used to say, "can the power and might of God be so well seen and appreciated (*intellego*) as (*quam*) by the study of the starry motions."⁴ He held (*credo*), too, that attention should be given to the training⁵ of the memory; and, therefore, that everything as far as possible should be learned by heart. "By trusting to writing," he used to say, "a student relaxes both his application and his memory."

¹216, 3, note 1. ²170, 3. ³183, 2, note. ⁴170, 3. ⁵omit the training of.

EXERCISE XX.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XVII and XVIII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

One monstrous custom which they have established, is that of human sacrifices.¹ I do not know how (*quomodo*) they can think that such sacrifices are pleasing to their gods. But they are a very superstitious nation, and believe that a life must be paid to heaven for a life. If anyone is afflicted with a serious illness, he

vows that, if he escapes (*effugio*), he will pay a life for his life ; and he makes the same vow when he is about to engage in battle or expose himself to serious danger. They are very fond of (*studeo*) sacrifices, and think that by human sacrifices the divinity of the gods is most gratefully propitiated. Their victims they usually (*plerumque*) burn to death in large images which they weave of wicker-work. In this way (*ratio*) they punish (*use* *afficere supplicio*) all those caught in the act of theft or highway robbery. When the supply of such victims fails, the punishment falls upon even innocent men, who apparently (*use* *videor*) never resist the outrage. They have no fear of death, believing² that after death the soul does not perish, but passes from one person to another.

¹Ex. 6, note 1 ; say, *this monstrous thing they have established that (ut) they sacrifice human beings.* ²use 203, 1 ; see 100, 4.

EXERCISE XXI.

(Based on Caesar, *Lessons XVIII and XIX*, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

The deities worshipped (218, 1) in this island are much the same as those worshipped by other nations (*civitas*). They¹ (*use* *nam*) have a deity who, they believe,² directs the issue of war and to him they sacrifice all the living things they capture in war. They have sacred places also (*item*) in which they deposit other booty taken in war and consecrate it to him ; and (*use* *neque*) it does not often happen that anyone is guilty of sacrilege and³ ventures to transfer any of these offerings to his own house. Anyone (*use* *si*) detected in so monstrous a crime (*noxia*) is burned to death ; this is the punishment ordained for the offence. Huge piles of booty consecrated to the god of war are a common sight in every part of the island. In this way they think they can best propitiate the divinity of the god and gain (*capio*) his favor.

¹Begin with *nam*. ²Avoid such a parenthesis in Latin. Say, *whom they believe to* ³219, (a).

EXERCISE XXII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XIX and XX, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

All commerce and all commercial pursuits are directed to (*esse ad*) the acquisition of wealth. When a state has amassed wealth, it can give attention (*studeo*) to both the higher and the mechanical arts ; and, therefore, commerce is said to be the inventor of these and to give the initiative in (*say of*) all the productions of art. A nation that will (*use volo*) keep command (*habeo*) of trade must (173, 5) keep command of the sea ; therefore, it must have ships, which are one of the most magnificent products of art. But a country that gives all its attention (*use unus*) to the pursuit of trade and neglects the duty of military service, can not long exist (*diu esse* or keep war from its borders (*finis*). A nation that can not conquer (*vinco*) its enemies will not escape conquest itself.¹ The art of war is expensive ; but by it alone can the profits of trade be preserved.

¹ Say, *it can not be but that a state, etc. . . . will be conquered itself.* Begin with, *Fieri enim non potest quin.*

EXERCISE XXIII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XX and XXI, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

Roughly speaking, these people differ from other nations in their institutions and customs in the following (*hic*) respects. They are not very fond of religious ceremonies and they have no sacrifices. They love hunting and war ; and from their earliest years the chase and military pursuits constitute their whole life. They administer their public affairs well ; but allow no discussion of political matters except in the popular assembly. If anyone gets, from rumor or hearsay, information affecting the public interest, he must (173, 5) lay it before a magistrate. False rumors have often impelled the state to wrong courses (*use indirect narration*). In former times they used to appoint (*creo*) magistrates every year (*quotannis*) ; nowadays (*nunc*), they judge it of greater advantage to appoint

them for (**ad**) five years. They thus escape (**vito**) rashness and inexperience (*use adjs.*)¹ Important matters ought (173, 5) to be laid before the people after (**quum**) the magistrates have taken counsel with regard to them; but the magistrates keep back whatever they think proper, and do not communicate it. Taking their general culture into consideration, their political regulations² must be considered admirable (*use miror*; 172, 2).

¹231, 5; Latin prefers the concrete adj. and verb to the abstract noun. ²Say, *what they have laid down by law with regard to the public interest.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

(Based on Caesar: Lessons XXI and XXII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

These people are fond of war, and consider it the noblest (**magnus**) of human pursuits. By it they amass wealth and acquire territory; but the chiefs are afraid (**vereor**) that from the one (**alter**) will be generated the love of money, and from the other a passion for agriculture, which will expel their enthusiasm for war. Accordingly, they do not allow individual ownership either in money or land. Each tribe and each family has its own allotment of land assigned every year; but next year they are compelled to move elsewhere. On this account there are no evictions (*use verb*) of the humble from their holdings by the great, and on the part of the latter no acquisition of large estates, which in some countries is the cause of such dissensions. The common people, in fact (**denique**) are kept in contentment, seeing (*use 203, 1*), as they do (*omit*), that the wealth of all is equal. They do not even build cities, though (**quanquam**) they use small houses as a protection against heat or cold.

ords required

ed to (**esse**)
essed wealth,
he mechani-
ntor of these
s of art. A
trade must
have ships,
ut a country
of trade and
st (**diu esse**)
not conquer
e art of war
preserved.

e conquered

ords required

ons in their

They are
o sacrifices.
s the chase
administer
cal matters
a rumor or
ust (173, 5)
mpelled the
rmer times
uotannis);
to appoint

EXERCISE XXV.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XXII and XXIII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

Next to *(post)* war they love freebooting, and consider it the special characteristic of manly valor that this should be undertaken on as grand a scale as possible. The community (*civitas*) justifies it on the following (*hic*) grounds. It serves as a training for their young men; it represses indolence and diminishes dissension in the cantons; it lays waste the lands of neighboring states and, by making a wilderness of the surrounding country (say, *a wilderness having been made all round*) removes all fears of sudden inroads. The magistrates do not compel anyone to go on a foray (*latrocinior*); but, when once a promise of assistance has been given, no one can fail to follow his chief without incurring the deepest (*magnus*) disgrace, and earning the title of (*use appello*) traitor and renegade. Whatever reason he may assign, the general confidence thereafter is completely withdrawn from him. By these marauding expeditions, considerable (*magnus*) wealth is amassed, and they are held in universal esteem in consequence; high and low, magistrates and people, all lend them their highest approval.

EXERCISE XXVI.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XXII and XXIV, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

The proximity of this fertile province has accustomed them to desire many luxuries (*res*) of which in olden times they had no knowledge. Formerly they lived (*vivo*) in poverty and hardship; now they live in sloth and opulence (*opes*). Formerly they used to vanquish their enemies; now they are so accustomed to be vanquished themselves, that they do not even compare their own valor to that of their enemies. Once (*olim*) they, of their own accord, invaded others; now they are always repelling invasion from their own borders. Once they sent out colonies across the Rhine; now they see the colonies of other races rising among their own towns

(*use inter and oppidum*). Once they enjoyed the highest distinction for courage ; now they see the lustre of their warlike renown tarnished in many a battle (*use minuo or derogo*; and do away with the metaphor). They have always the dread of sudden forays in their minds (*use pronoun*). They must soon (*brevi*) retire from their fertile territory into the woods ; for I do not know how they can long (*diu*) keep the enemy at bay.

EXERCISE XXVII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XXIV and XXV, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

[FOR OBLIQUE NARRATION.]

He said that this fertile tract (*ager*) extended a nine days' journey parallel with the stream. That it would afford them in abundance everything necessary (*use opus esse*) for use. This tract they would seize and settle in. If they kept within those limits and followed the same hallowed course of life they formerly followed, they could easily repel (*facile defendo*) invasion. It was well known that men accustomed to poverty, hardship and want were superior in courage to all others and could not be vanquished. But their neighbors (*finitimi*) enjoyed a high reputation for justice and would not invade their territory without cause (*sine causa*). Let them, therefore, advance without fear (*timor*) and hand down to all time this record (*use neut. pronoun*), that they had by reason of their warlike reputation occupied land in which no one till that time had been able to settle.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XXV and XXVI, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

This wood extends in all directions (*pars*) a journey of many days ; and it is far (*multo*) superior to all other woods we know in size. The huntsman knows it and loves it ; and it is the haunt (*use*

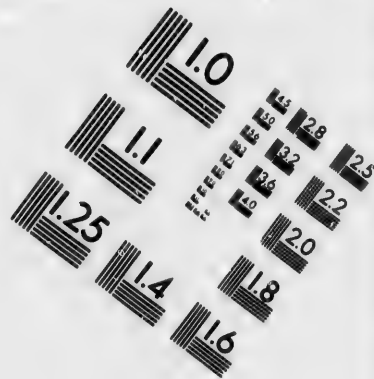
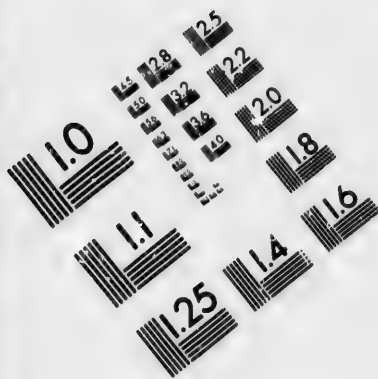
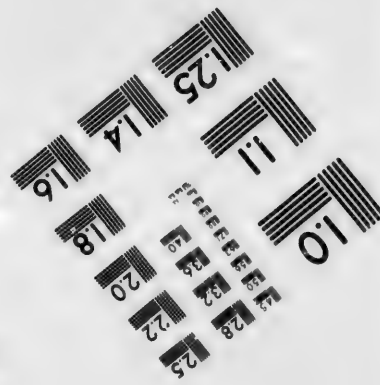
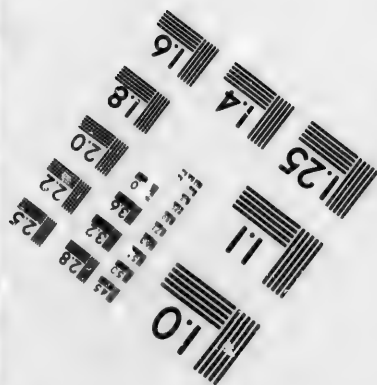
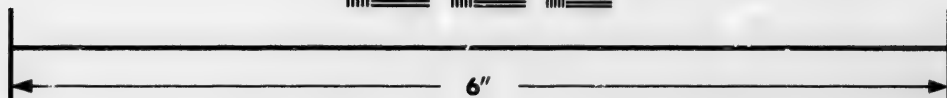
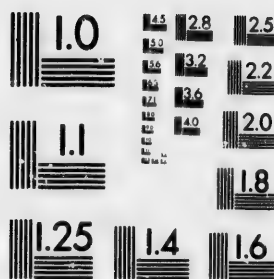


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25
28 30 32 34 36 38 40

10 01

eo, *thither*) of many species of wild beasts. Many of these differ in size, weight, shape and habits from those known to us. The stag seen in this wood has taller and straighter horns than our stag, and they spread out like branching hands. It can not lie down ; if it is knocked down by any accident, it can not rise. It takes its sleep, slightly inclined against the trunk (*truncus*) of a tree. These facts (say, *all which things*) the huntsman knows and uses (*utor*) for its destruction (*use interficio, kill*). Cutting into the tree, he makes it too weak to bear the weight of the stag (*use pro; p. 224*); and, when the animal leans as usual against the tree, both (*ambo*) come heavily to the ground (*terra*). In this way it falls an easy prey (*use facile and interficio*) to the hunter.

EXERCISE XXIX.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XXVI and XXVII, in which all the words required to do the exercise will be found.)

They harden and train their young men by war and labor and especially (*maxime*) by the hunting of the wild ox. This animal is almost as large as an elephant, and it has the speed of the stag and the strength of the bull. From the top of its head project tall straight horns, which it uses on (*in*) man and beast alike (*et.... et*). It is untamable, and cannot, even when caught young, become accustomed to human beings. In this it differs from all the other tribes of wild beasts. The hunter who kills a wild ox gets great credit ; but he must produce the horns in public as evidence of the fact. These horns are in great demand. Their edges are encased in silver and they are used as drinking-cups. These cups may be seen in large numbers (say, *of which many*) at their great banquets. The wild ox is not often (*saepe*) killed in fair (*aequus*) fight. The usual way (*use plerumque*) is to catch them in pit-falls and so kill them (219, a).

EXERCISE XXX.

(Based on Caesar, Lessons XXV to XXVII. Review exercise; to be done without reference to the Latin.)

Who can tell where this wood begins or how far (*quam longe*) it extends? No one has ever reached the beginning of it or ascertained its breadth. If anyone visits it (*adire + acc.*) he will see among its tall trees many strange (*mirus*) tribes of beasts, which are not seen here and differ as widely as possible (*use quam + superl.*) from those known to us. He will see in the shadows (*umbra*) of the wood the deer with spreading horns, the elk, and the fierce wild ox. The huntsman knows their haunts and follows their tracks to the middle of the wood. There (*ibi*) he traps and slays them and brings back their horns as evidence of his prowess (*virtus*). Let him turn to the left, if he sees the wild ox in the woods. Trusting in (*fretus*) its speed and its might, it will spare neither man nor beast. Let him turn, for fear (*ne*) he fall and rise not again (*rursus*). Let him rather (*potius*) seek out and slay the deer or the elk. They will fall an easier prey.

1
S

1
C
1
A
V
A

F

n
in

in
b
g

APPENDIX.

I.—DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

1. Greek nouns in *-ē* of the first declension are feminine ; those in *-ās* and *-ēs*, are masculine. They are declined as follows in the singular :—

	<i>Ēpītōmē, an abridgment.</i>	<i>Aenēas, Aenēas.</i>	<i>Anchorisēs, Anchises.</i>
NOM.	<i>ēpītōmē</i>	<i>Aenēās</i>	<i>Anchorisēs</i>
GEN.	<i>ēpītōmēs</i>	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>Anchorisae</i>
DAT.	<i>ēpītōmae</i>	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>Anchorisae</i>
ACC.	<i>ēpītōmēn</i>	<i>Aenēān (-am)</i>	<i>Anchorisēn</i>
VOC.	<i>ēpītōmē</i>	<i>Aenēā (or -ā)</i>	<i>Anchorisē (or -ā)</i>
ABL.	<i>ēpītōmē</i>	<i>Aenēā</i>	<i>Anchorisē (or -ā)</i>

Note.—In all cases the plural (when used) is regular, like the plural of *mensa*, *a table* (p. 4).

SECOND DECLENSION.

2. Greek nouns of the second declension ending in *-os* are masculine ; those in *-on* are neuter. These are declined as follows in the singular :—

	<i>Mýthos, a tale.</i>	<i>Ílion, Ilium.</i>
NOM.	<i>mýthos</i>	<i>Ílion</i>
GEN.	<i>mýthi</i>	<i>Íli</i>
DAT.	<i>mýthō</i>	<i>Íliō</i>
ACC.	<i>mýthōn</i>	<i>Íliōn</i>
VOC.	<i>mýthē</i>	<i>Íliōn</i>
ABL.	<i>mýthō</i>	<i>Íliō</i>

Note.—In the plural they are regular, those in *-os* being inflected in the plural like *dominus* (p. 9), and those in *-on* in the plural like *bellum* (p. 13) ; but both may have *-ōn* instead of *-ōrum* in the genitive plural.

THIRD DECLENSION.

3. Greek nouns of the third declension end generally in *-os, as, is, or ys*. They are inflected as follows :—

Hērōs (M.), *a hero*. *Lampās* (F.), *a torch*. *Tigris* (M. or F.), *a tiger*.
Chēlys (F.), *a lyre*.

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	<i>hērōs</i>	<i>lampās</i>	<i>tigris</i>	<i>chēlys</i>
GEN.	<i>hērōis</i>	<i>lampād-is</i> (or <i>-os</i>)	<i>tigris</i> (or <i>-dos</i>)	—
DAT.	<i>hērōi</i>	<i>lampād-i</i> (or <i>i</i>)	<i>tigrī</i>	—
ACC.	<i>hērō-em</i> (or <i>-a</i>)	<i>lampād-em</i> (or <i>-ā</i>)	<i>tigrī-n</i> (or <i>-dā</i>)	<i>chēlyn</i>
VOC.	<i>hērōs</i>	<i>lampās</i>	<i>tigris</i>	<i>chēly</i>
ABL.	<i>hērōē</i>	<i>lampādē</i>	<i>tigrī</i> (or <i>tigrīde</i>)	—
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	<i>hērō-ēs</i> (or <i>ēs</i>)	<i>lampād-ēs</i> (or <i>ēs</i>)	<i>tigrēs</i>	None.
GEN.	<i>hērōum</i>	<i>lampādum</i>	<i>tigrīdum</i>	
DAT.	<i>hērōibus</i>	<i>lampād-ibus</i>	<i>tigrībus</i>	
ACC.	<i>hērō-ēs</i> (or <i>-ās</i>)	<i>lampādēs</i> (or <i>-ās</i>)	<i>tigrēs</i> (or <i>īdēs</i>)	
VOC.	<i>hērō-ēs</i> (or <i>-ēs</i>)	<i>lampād-ēs</i> (or <i>-ēs</i>)	<i>tigrēs</i>	
ABL.	<i>hērō-ibus</i>	<i>lampādibus</i>	<i>tigrībus</i>	

PROPER NAMES.

<i>Atlas, Atlas.</i>	<i>Dido, Dido.</i>	<i>Paris, Paris.</i>	<i>Orphēus, Orpheus.</i>
	<i>Capys, Capys.</i>		
NOM.	<i>Atlās</i>	<i>Didō</i>	<i>Pāris</i>
GEN.	<i>Atlantis</i>	<i>Didōnis</i> (or <i>Didūs</i>)	<i>Pārid-is</i> (or <i>-os</i>)
DAT.	<i>Atlanti</i>	<i>Did-ōni</i> (or <i>-ō</i>)	<i>Pārid-i</i> (or <i>-i</i>)
ACC.	<i>Atlantā</i>	<i>Did-ōnem</i> (or <i>-o</i>)	{ <i>Pārid-em</i> (or <i>-ā</i>) <i>Parim</i> (or <i>in</i>)
VOC.	<i>Atlās</i>	<i>Didō</i>	<i>Pāri</i>
ABL.	<i>Atlantē</i>	<i>Did-ōnē</i> (or <i>-ō</i>)	<i>Pāridē</i>
NOM.	<i>Orphēus</i>		<i>Cāpys</i>
GEN.	<i>Orphē-os</i> (<i>-i</i>)		<i>Cāpŷos</i>
DAT.	<i>Orphēi</i> (<i>ēi, eō</i>)		<i>Cāpŷi</i>
ACC.	<i>Orphēa</i> (<i>-ēum</i>)		<i>Cāpŷn</i>
VOC.	<i>Orphēu</i>		<i>Cāpŷ</i>
ABL.	<i>Orphēō</i>		—

II.—EXCEPTIONS TO RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension ending in *-ā* and *-ē* are feminine ; those ending in *-as* and *-es* are masculine.

But, *dāma*, a deer ; *talpa*, a mole ; *Hadria*, the Adriatic Sea, are usually masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension ending in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir* (*-os*, Greek), are masculine ; those in *-um* (*-on*, Greek), are neuter.

But, *alvus*, a belly ; *carbāsus*, linen (pl., *carbāsa*, sails) ; *cōlus*, a distaff ; *hūmus*, the ground ; *vannus*, a winnowing shovel, are feminine.

Pēlāgus, the sea (pl., *pēlāgē*, nom. and acc.) ; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), the crowd, the multitude ; *vīrus*, poison, are neuter. (The two last are used only in sing.)

THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the third declension that end in *-er*, *-or*, *-os*, *-es* (increasing in the gen.), and *-o* (except *-do*, *-go*, and *-io*), are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *-er* : *cadāver*, a dead body ; *iter*, a road ; *papāver*, a poppy ; *tuber*, a swelling ; *uber*, an udder ; *ver*, spring ; *verber*, a lash, are neuter.

(2) *-or* : *arbor*, a tree, is feminine ; *aequor*, the sea ; *marmor*, marble ; *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

(3) *-es* : *compes*, fether ; *merces*, merchandise ; *merges*, a sheaf ; *quies*, *rēquies*, rest ; *sēges*, a crop ; *tēgēs*, a covering, are feminine ; *aes*, copper, is neuter.

(4) *-os* : *cos*, a whetstone ; *dos*, dowry, are feminine ; *ōs* (ossis), a bone ; *ōs* (ōris), a mouth, are neuter.

(5) *-o* : *caro* (carnis), flesh ; *ēcho*, an echo, are feminine.

Nouns of the third declension that end in *-do*, *-go*, *-lo*, *-as*, *is*, *-aus*, *-x*, *es* (not increasing in the genitive) *-s* impure, and *-ūs* in words of more than one syllable, are feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *-o*: *ordo*, arrangement; *cardo*, a hinge; *ligo*, a mattock; *margo*, a margin (of a river), are masculine.

(2) *-is*: *amnis*, a river; *collis*, a hill; *cinis*, cinder, ashes; *crinis*, hair; *ensis*, a sword; *fascis*, a bundle; *finis*, an end; *foliis*, bellows; *fūnis*, a rope; *ignis*, fire; *lāpis*, a stone; *mensis*, a month; *orbis*, a circle; *panis*, bread; *piscis*, a fish; *postis*, a post; *pulvis*, dust; *sanguis*, blood; *torris*, a fire-brand; *unguis*, a nail; *vectis*, a crowbar; *vermis*, a worm, are masculine.

(3) *-x*: *cālīx*, a cup; *cōdex*, a book; *cortex*, bark of a tree; *grex*, a flock; *pollex*, a thumb; *silex*, flint; *vertex*, top, are masculine.

(4) *-es*: *acināces*, a scimitar, is masculine.

(5) *-s* impure: *mons*, a mountain; *dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *pons*, a bridge; *bidens*, a mattock; *rudens*, a rope, are masculine.

(6) *-as*: *as* (assis), a small coin; *ēlēphas* (elephantis), an elephant; *vas* (vasis), a vessel; *fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong, are neuter.

Nouns of the third declension ending in *-c*, *-a*, *-t*, *-e*, *-l*, *-n*, *-ar*, *ur*, *-ūs*, *-ūs* (in words of one syllable), are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) *-l*: *sal*, salt; *sol*, the sun, are masculine.

(2) *-n*: *lien*, spleen; *ren*, kidney; *splen*, the spleen; *pecten*, a comb, are masculine.

(3) *-ur*: *fur*, a thief; *furfur*, bran; *turtur*, a turtle-dove; *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine.

(4) *-us*: *pēcus* (pēcūdie), a single head of cattle, is feminine; *lēpus* (lēpōris), a hare; *grus*, a crane; *sus*, a pig; *mus*, a mouse, are masculine.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension that end in *-us* are masculine ; those in *-û* are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

Ācus, a needle ; *cōlus*, a distaff (also of the 2nd) ; *dōmus*, a house ; *porticus*, a portico ; *tribus*, a tribe ; *Īdūs* (pl.), the Ides of the month ; *Quinquātrūs* (pl.), a feast of *Minerva* ; *pēnus*, store (when of this declension), are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *-es*, and are feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.

Dies, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and masculine in the plural ; *meridies*, midday (used only in sing.), is masculine.

III.—IRREGULAR NOUNS.

INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter and are used only in the nominative and accusative and generally only in the singular. They are as follows :—*Fas*, right ; *nēfas*, wrong ; *māne*, morning ; *instar*, a model ; *pondo*, weight ; *sēcus*, sex ; *nīhil*, nothing ; *ōpus*, need.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

1. The following nouns are used only in the *singular* :—

(1) Names of *persons and places* : as, *Roma*, Rome ; *Cicero*, *Cicero*.

(2) *Abstract nouns* : as, *Fides*, faith ; *iustitia*, justice.

(3) Names of *materials* : as, *Aurum*, gold ; *ferrum*, iron.

(4) Single words : as, *Meridies*, midday ; *specimen*, example ; *supell-ex* (*-ectilis*), furniture ; *ver*, spring ; *vesper*, evening.

2. The following nouns are used only in the *plural* :—

(1) Class words : as, *Māiores*, descendants ; *gemini*, twins ; *libēri*, children.

(2) Many names of cities : as, *Āthēnae*, *Athens*; *Thēbae*, *Thebes*; *Delphi*, *Delphi*.

(3) Many names of festivals : as, *Bacchanālia*, *Olympia*.

(4) Single words ; as, *Arma*, *arms*; *divitiae*, *riches*; *exsequiae*, *funeral rites*; *exuviae*, *spoils*; *Idūs*, *Ides of the month*; *indutiae*, *a truce*; *insidiae*, *ambuscade*; *mānes*, *shades of the dead*; *mīnae*, *threats*; *moenia*, *walls*; *mūnia*, *duties*; *nuptiae*, *a wedding*; *reliquiae*, *remains*.

3. The following words have *one meaning in the singular and a different one in the plural*.:—

SINGULAR.

aedes (F.), Gen., *aedis*, *a temple*.
āqua (F.), *water*.
auxilium (N.), *help*.
bōnum (N.), *a good thing*.
carcer (M.), *a dungeon*.
castrum (N.), *a fort*.
codicillus (M.), *a bit of wood*.
comitium (N.), *a place of assembly*.

cōpia (F.), *plenty*.
fides (F.), *a harp-string*.
finis (M. or F.), *an end*.

fortūna (F.), *fortune*.
grātia (F.), *favor*.
hortus (M.), *a garden*.
impēdimentum (N.), *a hindrance*.

litēra (F.), *a letter of the alphabet*.
lōcus (M.), *place*; pl., *lōca* (N.)
lūdus (M.), *sport*.
nātālis (M.), *birthday*.
ōpera (F.), *a task*.
ōpis (F.), *a genitive, help*.
pars (F.), *a part*.

plāga (F.), *region*,

PLURAL.

aedes, *aedium*, *a house*.
āquae, *a watering-place*.
auxilia, *auxiliaries*.
bōna, *goods*.
carcēres, *barriers of a race-course*.
castra, *a camp*.
codicilli, *tablets*.
comitia, *a political assembly, elections*.
cōpiae, *troops*.
fīdes, *lyre*.
finēs (M.), *boundaries or territories*.
fortūnae, *possessions*.
gratiae, *thanks*.
horti, *pleasure-grounds*.
impēdimenta, *baggage of an army*.
litērae, *an epistle*.
lōci (M.), *passages in books*.
lūdi, *public games*.
nātāles, *descent, ancestry*.
ōperae, *day laborers*.
ōpes, *wealth resources*.
partes, *a part in a play or a party in politics*.
plāgae, *snare*.

rostrum (N.), *a beak, prow of a vessel.* rostra, *political platform or hustings.*

sal (M. or N.), *salt.*

sāles (M.), *witticisms, wit.*

tabella (F.), *a tablet.*

tabellae, *documents.*

The following nouns are wanting in some of the cases :—

(1) Nom., Dat., Voc. Sing.: —, ōpis, —, ōpem, —, ōpe, *help* ; —, vicis, —, vicem, —, vice, *change*.

(2) Nom., Gen., Voc. Sing.: —, —, prēci, prēcem, —, prēcē, *prayer*.

(3) Nom. and Voc. Sing.: —, dāpis, dāpi, dāpem, —, dāpe, *food* ; —, frūgis, frūgi, frūgem, —, frūge, *fruit*.

(4) Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plural : Most nouns of the fifth declension, except spēs, *hope*, and rēs, *a thing*. So also far, *corn* ; mel, *honey* ; fel, *bile* ; pūs, *matter of a wound* ; rus, *the country* ; tus, *incense*.

(5) Genitive plural : especially monosyllables : as, nex, *murder* ; pax, *peace* ; pīx, *pitch* ; cor, *heart* ; cos, *a whetstone* ; ros, *dew* ; sal, *salt* ; sol, *the sun* ; lux, *light*.

HETEROCLITIC NOUNS.

Some nouns have two or more forms of declension. Thus :

Cōlus (F.), *a distaff*, and many names of plants and trees are of the second ; but they may have those forms of the fourth that end in -us.

Iūgērum (N.), *an acre*, is of the second declension in the singular, but of the third in the plural.

Vas (N.), *a vessel* (Gen., vāsīs), is of the third declension in the singular and of the second in the plural.

Festivals in -alia (as Bacchanālia), are neuter plurals of the third declension, but have the genitive plural in -ōrum, not in -ium.

Ancile (N.), *a shield*, is of the third (like māre, *the sea*) ; but the genitive plural is -ōrum, instead of -ium.

Rēquies (F.), Gen. rēquīētis, *rest*, is of the third, but has rēquīem, and rēquīē of the fifth.

Fāmes (F.), Gen. fāmīs, is regularly of the third, but has fāmē of the fifth, not fāmē of the third.

For *dŏmus* (F.), *a house*, see p. 62, 6.

Many words have two forms, one belonging to one declension and another to another. Thus :

Luxuria (F.), *luxury*; *mātēria*, (F.), *matter, timber*; *saevitia* (F.), *cruelly*, are of the first; while *luxuries* (F.), *mātēries* (F.), *saevities* (F.), are of the fifth. So also, *eventus* (M.), *an event*; *cōnātus* (M.), *an attempt*, are of the fourth; while *eventum* (N.), and *cōnātum* (N.), are of the second.

Iuventus (F.), Gen., *iuventūtis*, *the youth of a country*; *iūventas* (F.), Gen., *iuventātis*, *goddess of youth*; *iūventa* (F.), *time of youth*.

Sēnectus (F.), Gen., *senectūtis*, *time of old age* has the poetical *senecta* (F.); so *paupertas* (F.), Gen., *paupertatis*, *poverty* has the poetical *paupēries* (F.), Gen., -ei.

HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

Some nouns have two different genders in the singular. Thus .

The following have one form in -us, masculine, and one form in -um, neuter: *balteus*, or *um*, *a belt*; *iugulus*, -um, *the throat*; *clipeus*, -um, *a shield*; *collus*, -um, *neck*; *baculus*, -um, *a staff*; *cubitus*, -um, *elbow*.

The following have a different gender in the singular and plural respectively :

Balnēum (N. sing.), *balneae* (F. pl.), *bath*; *caelum* (N. sing.), *caeli* (M. pl.), *heavens*; *carbāsus* (F. sing.), *carbasa* (N. pl.), *sail*; *delicium* (N. sing.), *deliciae* (F. pl.), *delight*; *rastrum* (N. sing.), *rastri* (M. pl.) *harrows*; *epulum* (N. sing.), *epulae* (F. pl.), *banquet*; *frēnum* (N. sing.), *bit*; *freni* (M.) or *frēna* (N.); *iōcus* (M. sing.), *iōca* (N. pl.), *places*; *iocus* (M. sing.), *jest*; *ioci* (M. pl.), or *ioca* (N. pl.)

IV.—TABLES OF THE REGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amo, *I love.*Principal parts—Amo, *āmāre*, *āmāvī*, *āmātum*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>āmo</i>	<i>āmāmus</i>	<i>āmor</i>	<i>āmāmur</i>
<i>āmās</i>	<i>āmātis</i>	<i>āmāris</i> or <i>āmāre</i>	<i>āmāmini</i>
<i>āmat</i>	<i>āmant</i>	<i>āmātur</i>	<i>āmāntur</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>āmābam</i>	<i>āmābāmus</i>	<i>āmābar</i>	<i>āmābāmur</i>
<i>āmābās</i>	<i>āmābātis</i>	<i>āmābāris</i> or <i>āmābāre</i>	<i>āmābāmini</i>
<i>āmābat</i>	<i>āmābant</i>	<i>āmābātur</i>	<i>āmābantur</i>

FUTURE.

<i>āmābo</i>	<i>āmābīmus</i>	<i>āmābor</i>	<i>āmābīmur</i>
<i>āmābis</i>	<i>āmābītis</i>	<i>āmābēris</i> or <i>āmābēre</i>	<i>āmābīmini</i>
<i>āmābit</i>	<i>āmābunt</i>	<i>āmābītur</i>	<i>āmābuntur</i>

PERFECT.

<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmāvīmus</i>	<i>āmātus sum</i>	<i>āmātī sumus</i>
<i>āmāvisti</i>	<i>āmāvistis</i>	<i>āmātus es</i>	<i>āmātī estis</i>
<i>āmāvit</i>	<i>āmāvērunt</i> or <i>āmāvēre</i>	<i>āmātus est</i>	<i>āmātī sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>āmāvēram</i>	<i>āmāvērāmus</i>	<i>āmātus eram</i>	<i>āmātī erāmus</i>
<i>āmāvērās</i>	<i>āmāvērātis</i>	<i>āmātus erās</i>	<i>āmātī erātis</i>
<i>āmāvērat</i>	<i>āmāvērant</i>	<i>āmātus erat</i>	<i>āmātī erant</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT.

<i>āmāvēro</i>	<i>āmāvērīmus</i>	<i>āmātus ero</i>	<i>āmātī erīmus</i>
<i>āmāvērīs</i>	<i>āmāvērītis</i>	<i>āmātus eris</i>	<i>āmātī eritis</i>
<i>āmāvērit</i>	<i>āmāvērint</i>	<i>āmātus erit</i>	<i>āmātī erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ānem	amēnus	āmer	āmēmur
āmēs	āmētis	āmēris or āmēre	āmēmīni
āmet	āment	āmētur	āmentur

IMPERFECT.

āmārem	āmārēmus	āmārer	āmārēmur
āmārēs	āmārētis	āmārēris or āmārēre	āmārēmīni
āmāret	āmārent	āmārētur	āmārentur

PERFECT.

āmāvērīm	āmāvērīmus	āmātus sim	āmāti simus
āmāvērīs	āmāvērītis	āmātus sis	āmāti sitis
āmāvērīt	āmāvērint	āmātus sit	āmāti sint

PLUPERFECT.

āmāvissem	āmāvissemus	āmātus essem	āmāti esēmus
āmāvisseis	āmāvissetis	āmātus essēs	āmāti essētis
āmāvisset	āmāvissent	āmātus esset	āmāti essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

āmā	āmāte	āmāre	āmāmīni
-----	-------	-------	---------

FUTURE.

2. Pers.	āmāto	āmātote	āmātor	—
3. "	āmāto	āmānto	āmātor	āmāntor

Note.—The fut. imperative is used chiefly in wills and laws.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	āmāre	āmāri
Perfect.	āmāvisse	āmātus esse
Future.	āmāturus esse	āmātum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	āmans	Perfect.	āmātus, -a, -um
Future.	āmātūrus, -a, -um	Future.	āmandus, -a, -um.

SUPINE.

āmātum	āmātū
--------	-------

GERUND.

āmand -i, -ō, -um, -ō

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mōnēo, *I admonish.*

Principal parts—Mōnēo, mōnēre, mōnūi, mōnītum.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
mōnēo	mōnēmus	mōnēor	mōnēmur
mōnēs	mōnētis	mōnēris or mōnēre	mōnēmini
mōnet	mōnent	mōnētur	mōnentur

IMPERFECT.

mōnēbam	mōnēbāmus	mōnēbar	mōnēbāmur
mōnēbās	mōnēbātis	mōnēbāris or mōnēbare	mōnēbāmini
mōnēbat	mōnēbant	mōnēbātur	mōnēbantur

FUTURE.

mōnēbo	mōnēbīmus	mōnēbor	mōnēbīmur
mōnēbis	mōnēbītis	mōnēbēris or mōnēbere	mōnēbīmini
mōnēbit	mōnēbunt	mōnēbītur	mōnēbuntur

PERFECT.

mōnūi	mōnūīmus	mōnītus sum	mōnīti sūmus
mōnūisti	mōnūistis	mōnītus es	mōnīti estis
mōnūit	mōnūērunt or mōnūere	mōnītus est	mōnīti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

mōnūeram	mōnūērāmus	mōnītus eram	mōnīti ērāmus
mōnūerās	mōnūērātis	mōnītus erās	mōnīti erātis
mōnūerat	mōnūērāt	mōnītus erat	mōnīti erant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

mōnūero	mōnūerīmus	mōnītus ero	mōnīti erīmus
mōnūeris	mōnūerītis	mōnītus eris	mōnīti eritis
mōnūerit	mōnūerint	mōnītus erit	mōnīti erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

mōnēam	mōnēāmus	mōnēar	mōnēāmur
mōnēās	mōnēātis	mōnēāris or mōnēāre	mōnēāmīni
mōnēat	mōnēant	mōnēātūr	mōnēantur

IMPERFECT.

mōnērem	mōnērēmus	mōnērer	mōnērēmur
mōnērēs	mōnērētis	mōnērēris or mōnērēre	mōnērēmīni
mōnēret	mōnērent	mōnērētūr	mōnērentur

PERFECT.

mōnūērim	mōnūērīmus	mōnītus sim	mōnīti simus
mōnūēris	mōnūērītis	mōnītus sis	mōnīti sitis
mōnūērit	mōnūērint	mōnītus sit	mōnīti sint

PLUPERFECT.

mōnūissem	mōnūissēmus	mōnītus essem	mōnīti essēmus
mōnūissēs	mōnūissētis	mōnītus essēs	mōnīti essētis
mōnūisset	mōnūissent	mōnītus esset	mōnīti essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers.	mōnē	mōnēte	mōnēre	mōnēmīni
----------	------	--------	--------	----------

FUTURE.

2. Pers.	mōnētō	mōnētōte	mōnētor	—
3. "	mōnētō	mōnēnto	mōnētor	mōnēntor

INFINITIVE.

Present.	mōnēre	mōnēri
Perfect.	mōnūisse	mōnītus esse
Future.	mōnītūrus esse	mōnītum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	mōnens	Perfect.	mōnītus
Future.	mōnītūrus	Future.	mōnendus

SUPINE.

mōnītum	mōnītū
---------	--------

GERUND.

mōnend-i, -o, um, -o.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Rēgo, 1 rule.*Principal parts—*Rēgo, rēgēre, rexi, rectum.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.

*Singular.**Plural.**rēgo**rēgimus**rēgis**rēgitis**rēgit**rēgunt*

PASSIVE.

*Singular.**Plural.**rēgor**rēgimur**rēgōris or
rēgēre**rēgimini**rēgītur**rēguntur*

IMPERFECT.

*rēgēbam**rēgēbāmus**rēgēbās**rēgēbātis**rēgēbat**rēgēbant**rēgēbar**rēgēbāmur**rēgēbāris or
rēgēbāre**rēgēbāmini**rēgēbātur**rēgēbantur*

FUTURE

*rēgam**rēgēmus**rēgēs**rēgētis**rēget**rēgent**rēgar**rēgēmur**rēgōris or
rēgēre**rēgimini**rēgētur**rēgentur*

PERFECT.

*rexi**reximus**rexisti**rexitis
rexerunt or
rexēre**rexit**rectus sum**recti sumus**rectus es**recti estis**rectus est**recti sunt*

PLUPERFECT.

*rexeram**rexerāmus**rexerās**rexerātis**rexerat**rexerant**rectus eram**recti erāmus**rectus erās**recti erātis**rectus erat**recti erant*

FUTURE-PERFECT.

*rexero**rexerimus**rexeris**rexeritis**rexerit**rexerint**rectus ero**recti erimus**rectus eris**recti eritis**rectus erit**recti erunt*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*rēgam**rēgāmus**rēgās**rēgātis**rēgat**rēgant**rēgar**rēgāmur**rēgāris or
rēgāre**rēgāmini**rēgātur**rēgantur*

IMPERFECT.

rēgērem	rēgērēmus	rēgērer	rēgērēmur
rēgērēs	rēgērētis	rēgērēris or rēgērēre	rēgērēmīni
rēgēret	rēgērent	rēgērētur	rēgerentur

PERFECT.

rexērim	rexērīmus	rectus sim	rectī simus
rexērīs	rexērītis	rectus sis	rectī sitis
rexerit	rexerint	rectus sit	rectī sint

PLUPERFECT.

rexissem	rexissēmus	rectus essem	rectī essēmus
rexissēs	rexissētis	rectus essēs	rectī essētis
rexisset	rexissent	rectus esset	rectī essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers.	rēge	rēgītē	rēgēre	rēgīmīni
----------	------	--------	--------	----------

FUTURE.

2. Pers.	rēgīto	rēgītōte	rēgītor	
3. "	rēgīto	rēgūnto	rēgītor	rēgūntor

INFINITIVE.

Present.	rēgēre	rēgī
Perfect.	rexisse	rectus esse
Future.	rectūrus esse	rectum iri

PARTICIPLE.

Present.	rēgens	Perfect.	rectus. -a, -um
Future.	rectūrus, -a, -um	Future.	rēgendus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

rectum	rectū
--------	-------

GERUND.

rēgend-i, -o, -um, -o

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīo, *I hear.*

Principal parts—Audīo, audire, audīvī, auditum.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
audīo	audīmus	audīor	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris or audire	audīmīni
audīt	audīunt	audītur	audīuntur

IMPERFECT.

audīebam	audīebāmus	audīebar	audīebāmur
audīebās	audīebātis	audīebāris or audīebāre	audīebāmini
audīebat	audīebant	audīebātur	audīebantur

FUTURE.

audīam	audīemus	audīar	audīemur
audīēs	audīētis	audīēris or audīēre	audīēmini
audīet	audīent	audīētur	audīentur

PERFECT.

audivi	audivimus	auditus sum	auditi sumus
audivisti	audivistis	auditus es	auditi estis
audivit	audiverunt or audivēre	auditus est	auditi sunt

PLUPERFECT.

audivēram	audivērāmus	auditus ēram	auditi ērāmus
audivērās	audivērātis	auditus ērās	auditi ērātis
audivērat	audivērant	auditus ērat	auditi ērant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

audivēro	audivērīmus	auditus ēro	auditi ērimus
audivērīs	audivērītis	auditus ēris	auditi ērītis
audivērit	audivērint	auditus ērit	auditi ērunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

audīam	audīāmus	audīar	audīāmur
audīās	audīātis	audīāris or audīāre	audīāmini
audiat	audiant	audīātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris or audirēre	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT.

audivērim	audivērīmus	auditus sim	auditi simus
audivērīs	audivērītis	auditus sis	auditi sitis
audivērit	audivērint	auditus sit	auditi sint

PLUPERFECT.

audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus essem	auditi essēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis	auditus essēs	auditi essētis
audivisset	audivissent	auditus esset	auditi essent

IMPFRATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers.	audi	audite	audire	audimini
----------	------	--------	--------	----------

FUTURE.

2. Pers.	auditō	auditōte	auditor	
3. "	auditō	audiunto	auditor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE.

Present.	audire	audiri
Perfect.	audivisse	auditus esse
Future.	auditurus esse	auditum iri

PARTICIPLE.

Present.	audiens	Perfect.	auditus, -a, -um
Future.	auditurus, -a, -um	Future.	audiendus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

auditum	auditū
---------	--------

GERUND.

audiend-i, -ō, -um, -ō

IMPERATIVE OF **SUM**, *I am* (p. 24).

Present.	ēs, <i>be thou.</i>	Present.	este, <i>be ye.</i>
Future.	esto, <i>thou shall be.</i>	Future.	estote, <i>ye shall be.</i>
	esto, <i>he shall be.</i>		sunto, <i>they shall be.</i>

V.—AIO. INQUAM. FOR.

1. Of Aio (*I say yes, affirm*) only the following forms are found:--

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Sing.	āio, āis, āit	—	ālās, ālat
Plural.	— — āiunt	—	ālant

IMPERFECT.

ālēbam, ālēbās, ālebat, etc.

PARTICIPLE.

ālens, *affirming*. Note.—Āit is also used as a perfect.

2. *Inquam* (*I say*) is very defective; only the following forms occur:—

INDICATIVE.

	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.
Sing.	<i>inquam, inquīs, inquīt</i>	— —	<i>inquibat and inquēbat</i>
Plural.	<i>inquīmus, inquītis, inquīunt</i>	— — —	
	PERFECT.		FUTURE.
	— <i>inquisti, inquīt</i>	—	<i>inquēs, inquēet</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
<i>inquē</i>	<i>inquito</i>

Note.—*Inquam*, like *ait*, is used only between the words of a quotation: as, *Tum ille, "nego id," inquit, "verum esse," he thereupon said, "I deny that it is true."*

3. *For, fārī, fātus sum, I speak*, has the following forms:—

	INDIC.	SUBJUN.
Present.	<i>fatur, fantur.</i>	
Future.	<i>fābor, fābitur</i>	
Perfect.	<i>fātus sum, &c.</i>	<i>fātus sim, &c.</i>
Pluperfect.	<i>fātus eram, &c.</i>	<i>fātus essem, &c.</i>

	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	SUPINE.
Present.	<i>fārē.</i>	Present. <i>fārī.</i>	<i>fātū.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	<i>fanti</i> , (compare <i>infans</i> , <i>mule</i> , <i>an infant</i> .)
Perfect.	<i>fatus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .
Fut. Pass.	<i>fandus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .

GERUND.

fandi, fando.

VI.—LATIN ALPHABET.¹

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*. The letters are divided into (*a*) vowels, and (*b*) consonants.

¹This section is taken mainly from Allen & Greenough's *Latin Grammar* (Ginn & Co.)

Vowels are sounds formed by the breath vibrating through the vocal cords unobstructed in its passage, but modified by the position of the organs of utterance.

CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS (VOWEL SCALE).

Open		A		
Medial		E		O
Close	I		Y	U

The primitive vowel-sound is *a*, as in *father*; in pronouncing it, the vocal organs are fully open. Starting from this vowel and gradually contracting the passage between the palate and the tongue, we form in succession *e* (pronounced *ey*, as in *they*), and *i* (pronounced *ī*, as in *machine*). Again by contracting the lips in a similar manner, we get *o* (pronounced as in *holy*), and *u* (pronounced, *oo* as in *boot*). By contracting both lips and palate, we get the French sound of *u* represented by the Greek *υ* and the Latin *y*.

CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS.

Consonants are classified :—

(a) According to the organs of speech employed in uttering them, as :—

- (1) Labials (or lip-letters).....*p, b, m, f, v.*
- (2) Dentals (or teeth-letters).....*t, d, n, s.*
- (3) Linguals (or tongue-letters)*r, l.*
- (4) Palatals (or palate-letters)*i (=j=y).*
- (5) Gutturals (or throat-letters)*c, k, q, d, n* (before guttural), *h.*

(b) According to the degree of breathing required in their utterance, as :—

- (a) Mutes.....*p, b, c (k), q, g, t, d, f (ph), ch, th.*
- (b) Semi-vowels...*i (j), and v.*
- (c) Nasals.....*m and n.*

Mutes are classed, on the same principle, into :—

- (1) Smooth.....*p, t, c (k, qu).*
- (2) Middle.....*b, d, g.*
- (3) Rough (or aspirate)....*f (ph), v, (th), (ch).*

Combining these two methods, we have the following scheme :—

	LABIALS.	DENTALS.	GUTTURALS.
Smooth Mutes.....	p	t	c (k, qu)
Middle Mutes.....	b	d	g
Rough Mutes.....	f (ph), v	th	ch

Consonants are further classed :—

(c) According to the manner in which they are uttered, as :

(1) **Surds** (or voiceless letters).....p, t, k, c, qu.

(2) **Sonants** (or voiced letters).....b, d, g.

The following table will illustrate the classification of consonants :—

MUTES.			SEMI-VOWELS.			
VOICELESS OR SURD.		VOICED OR SONANT.	NASALS.	LIQUIDS.	SPIRANTS OR FRICATIVES.	SIBILANTS.
Labials	p	b	m		f, v	
Dentals	t	d	n			s, z
Liquids				r, l	i (or j), y	
Palatals						
Gutturals ...	c, k, q	g	n (before a guttural)		h	

CHANGES OF LETTERS.

Letters are changed according to general laws of inflection or derivation, or to secure an easier utterance (*euphonic change*).

Vowels are changed by :—

(a) **Vowel increase** : as, *lĕgo*, *lĕgi*; *ĕmo*, *ĕmi*; *plācĕre*, *plācāre*; *sŏnus*, *persŏna*; *dŭces*, *dŭco*; *fĭdes*, *fido*, *foedus*. So in English, *fell*, *fall*, *fallen*; *tell*, *told*; *bind*, *band*, *bound*.

(b) **Vowel weakening**. Following the vowel scale (p. 290), we find these changes usually from *a* to *i* on the one side, and from *a* to *u* on the other; but often across from *o* to *e*. Thus : *factum*, *confectum*, *con-ficio*; *āgo*, *ēgi*, *red-ĭgo*; *salio*, *ex-sulto*; *verto*, *vorto* (old form); *sequi*, *socius*; *tēgo*, *toga*.

(c) Contraction or omission: as, *reclit* = *redit*; *cōago* = *cōgo*; *nihil* = *nil*; *audacter* = *audaciter*.

(d) Suppression of the fricatives (i or j) and v: as, *cunctus* = *colunctus*; *rursus* = *reversus*; *amāisset* = *amavisset*.

Consonants are changed by:—

(a) Substitution: as, r for s between two vowels and before m or n: as, *genesis* to *generis*; *disemo* to *diremo*; *vetustus* to *veternus*; or s for d or t, for ease in pronunciation: as, *cadus* to *casus*; *cedum* to *cessum*.

(b) Omission: as, *examen* for *exagmen*; *caementum* for *caedmentum*; *lūna* for *lūcna*; *pes* for *peda*.

(c) Insertion: as, *sum-p-si* from *sūmo*; *hiemps* for *hiems*.

(d) Transposition: as, *sperno*, *sprēvi*; *cerno*, *crēvi*.

(e) Dissimilation: as, *meridies* for *medidies*.

(f) Assimilation: (1) Partial (*i.e.*, a smooth mute precedes a smooth mute; a middle, a middle; an aspirate, an aspirate; p. 291): as, *scriptus* for *scrib-tus*; *actus* for *ag-tus*; so too *quantus*, for *quam-tus*. (2) Complete: as, *cessi* for *ced-si*; *summus* for *sub-mus*; *sella* for *sed-la*. Assimilation often occurs in the case of the last consonant of the preposition in compounds. Thus: *afficio* for *ad-ficio*; *occasio* for *ob-casio*; *corruo* for *con-ruo*; *suppono* for *sub-pono*.

SYLLABICATION.

In the division of syllables (syllabication), a single consonant between two vowels is to be written with the latter: as, *fā-ber*, *re-gi-na*, *do-mi-nus*.

Double consonants (*i.e.*, two consonants that can begin a word) are often so used: as, *ho-spes*, *ma-gnus*, *di-xit*.

When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first syllable, and the second to the second syllable: as, *an-nus*, *pen-na*, *mit-to*, *bel-lum*.

The parts of compounds are treated as separate words: as, *ab-est*; *in-ut-i-lis*; *ob-i-re*.

Note.—The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*, the next to the last, the *penultimate* or *pēnult*, and the one before the *pēnult*, the *ante-penultimate* or *antepēnult*.

VII.—LATIN PRONUNCIATION.

There are two methods of pronunciation of Latin words : (*a*) The Roman method ; (*b*. the English method. Both are widely used. The following is a report of the committee of the Ontario Classical Association, which was appointed in 1891 to consider the subject of Latin pronunciation :—

LATIN PRONUNCIATION.

Your Committee, appointed to consider the subject of Latin Pronunciation, beg leave to report as follows :—

As the reports of the High School Inspectors sufficiently prove, there is at present in Ontario no uniform system of Latin pronunciation.

Owing largely to this defect, the oral reading of Latin is little attended to in many schools, while from others it is completely excluded.

It is hardly necessary to point out what an important instrument for teaching is thus neglected. If taught through the ear as well as through the eye, pupils learn much more quickly, and get a far more secure hold upon a language.

Not the least serious effect of the present disregard of oral teaching, is the ignorance of quantity that prevails very generally, with the consequent inability to appreciate Latin metres.

In the hope of partially rectifying present evils, your Committee have decided upon a scheme of Latin Pronunciation which it is hoped will be adopted by the Association and by classical teachers throughout the Province.

The scheme follows that known as "the Roman method," and is based upon a report made in 1887 to the Cambridge Philological Society by a committee consisting of John Peile, J. F. Postgate and J. S. Reid. This report opens with the following announcement :—
"Your committee have come to the conclusion that the classical pronunciation of Latin has been sufficiently ascertained for the purpose of drawing up a scheme which may reasonably be regarded as permanent."

N.B. Lat. *ē* was never pronounced as Eng. *ee* in *see*.

- I long as in *stī, stin, īdō.* as *i* in machine, *ee* in feel.
 N.B. The Latin *i* was never the *i* in fine.
 short as in *stine, stils,* as *i* in fit, pin.
rigidus.
- O long as in *cōmts, ōmēn.* as *o* in bone, lone.
 short as in *cōmēs, ōpūs.* nearest representative Eng. is *o*
 in not, rock.
- U long as in *ūnā, ūmōr.* as *u* in ruin, rude.
 N.B. Lat. *ū* was never pronounced like *u* in acute, mule,
 which is yoo.
 short as in *ūtēr, hūmūs.* as *u* in full, *oo* in foot.
 N.B. Lat. *ū* never as Eng. *ū* in but, cut.
- Y long as in *gyrūs, Hydra.* as *I* long.
 short as in *cymbā, lyrā.* as *y* in beauty, lady.

DIPHTHONGS.

The pronunciation of the diphthongs is best learnt by first sounding each vowel separately and then running them together. Thus:
ae as ah-eh; *au* as ah-oo; *oe* as o-eh; *ei* as eh-ee; *eu* as eh-oo, and
ui as oo-ee.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| AE in <i>taedae</i> | nearly Eng. <i>a</i> in fare. |
| AU in <i>laudo</i> | Eng. <i>ou</i> in house. |
| OE in <i>foedus</i> | N.B. Avoid the pronunciation "feed-us." |
| EI in <i>hei</i> | Eng. <i>ey</i> in grey, <i>ei</i> in skein. |
| EU in <i>seu, neuter</i> | The general rule, as given above, is a sufficient guide. |
| UI in <i>cui, huic</i> | |

CONSONANTS.

- C as in *cāno, cēcīni, circā, condīcio.* always as Eng. *k*; never as *s* or as *c* before *e, i*.
- Qu in *inquit.* as Eng. *qu* in quick.
- G in *gaudeo, gēnus, gīgās, agē.* always as Eng. *g* in got, get, begin; never as *j* or *g* soft.

N before c (k, qu), g, as <i>inſpīpit</i> , <i>inquam</i> , <i>congero</i> .	as <i>ng</i> in <i>ſing</i> ; thus: <i>ingkipit</i> , <i>inquam</i> , <i>congero</i> .
R in <i>ringi</i> , <i>rārus</i> , <i>datōr</i> .	trilled <i>r</i> as in French or Scotch.
S as in <i>sūs</i> , <i>accūso</i> , <i>tristes</i> .	always voiceless, as in <i>hiſs</i> , <i>hiſt</i> ; never voiced as in <i>haſ</i> (<i>haſ</i>).
J or I conſonant, as in <i>iūgum</i> , <i>iūcio</i> .	as Eng. <i>y</i> . Thus: <i>yugum</i> , <i>yakio</i> .
V or U conſonant, as in <i>uānus</i> , <i>uīs</i> , <i>ſeruo</i> (i.e., <i>vanus</i> , <i>viſ</i> , <i>ſervo</i>).	as Eng. <i>w</i> . Thus: <i>wāhnus</i> , <i>weeſ</i> , <i>ſerwo</i> .

N.B. There is no ancient authority for ſpelling *i* conſonant as *j*, or *u* conſonant as *v*. The Romans uſed one ſymbol for both vowel and conſonant.

B, D, F, H, L, M, P, T	as in Eng. N.B. T is always the ſame. Ediſio is not to be pronounced ediſhio.
X as in <i>saxum</i> , <i>exulto</i> .	as Eng. <i>ks</i> (<i>x</i>); <i>eksulto</i> , not <i>eggsulto</i> .
Z as in <i>gaza</i> , <i>Zephyrus</i> .	Probably as <i>dz</i> in <i>adze</i> .

Double conſonants ſhould be carefully ſeparated in pronunciation, as *ag-ger*, *poſ-ſum*, *pen-na*.

QUANTITY.

Obſervance of quantity is of vital importance for the proper appreciation of metre in Latin poetry and of rhythm in proſe. The difference in duration between ſhort and long vowels ſhould be carefully obſerved. Distinguish (*e.g.*) *bōnum* and *dōnum*, *mīles* and *fīdes*, *cūpidus* and *dūrus*. Obſerve the quantity in *ſic*, *nōn*, *ſinē*, *dīcē*, etc.

Each vowel has a quantity of its own, and, as far as poſſible, the natural length of a vowel ſhould be diſtinguiſhed from the conventional "lengthening" which it undergoes before two conſonants. The *i* of *ſcribo* is ſtill *i* in *ſcriptus*, as the *ē* of *ſēco* is ſtill ſhort (by nature) in *ſēctus*. But in *ſectus* the weight of the double conſonant allows the ſyllable to be treated in verſe as if it were naturally long.

From ancient authorities we learn that vowels were regarded as

long in themselves, when preceding *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, *ct* (when representing *gt*, as in *lēctus* from *lēgo*), and at least sometimes before *nc*, *nq* and *r* followed by a consonant. Thus *cōnstāns*, *infēnsus*, *rēgnum*, *sīgnum*, *quīnque*, *sānctus*, *ōrdo*, *ōrno*.

THE ENGLISH METHOD.

The following are the rules of pronunciation according to the English method :—

SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

Long Vowels.

ā	as in <i>fate</i> ; as <i>āra</i> .
ē	“ <i>mete</i> ; “ <i>ēdi</i> .
ī	“ <i>pine</i> ; “ <i>īra</i> .
ō	“ <i>nole</i> ; “ <i>ōdi</i> .
ū	“ <i>tube</i> ; “ <i>ūnus</i> .
ȳ	“ <i>type</i> ; “ <i>misȳ</i> .

Short Vowels.

ă	as in <i>fat</i> ; as, <i>ămo</i> .
ĕ	“ <i>met</i> ; “ <i>rĕget</i> .
ĭ	“ <i>pin</i> ; “ <i>videt</i> .
ĕ	“ <i>not</i> ; “ <i>mĕnet</i> .
ũ	“ <i>tub</i> ; “ <i>sũmus</i> .
ȳ	“ <i>myth</i> ; “ <i>Tethȳs</i> .

(1) *I* preceded by an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y* and followed by another vowel, is a semi-vowel with the sound of the English *y* in *yet*, as in the Roman Method : as, *Āchā-ia*, pronounced *A-chā-yā*.

(2) *U* after *q*, and generally in *gu*, *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w* as in the Roman Method : as, *quī* (pron. *kwī*), *suāsi* (pron. *swaysī*).

SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

Ae like *e* : as, *Caesar*, *Daedalus* ; *au*, as in *author*, *aurum* ; *oe* like *e* : as, *Oeta*, *Oedipus* ; *eu*, as in *neuter*, *neuter* ; *ei*, *oi*, when diphthongs, are pronounced as *ei* in *height* and *oi* in *coin* ; *ui*, as a diphthong, has the long sound of *i* ; as, *cui* (*kwī*), *huc* (*hic*).

SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

(1) *C* and *g* are soft (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, *oe*, and hard in other situations : as, *cēdo* (pronounced *se-do*), *cādo* (pronounced *ka-do*).

c has the sound of **sh** (1) before **i** preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: as, **sōcius** (pronounced so-she-us), and (2) before **eu**, **yo** preceded by an accented syllable: as **caduceus** (pronounced ca-du-she-us).

g has the soft sound before **g** soft: as, **ag-ger**.

(2) **s**, **t**, **x** are pronounced as in English. But—

(a) **s**, **t**, **x** are aspirated before **i** preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, **s** and **t** taking the sound of **sh**, **x** that of **ksh**: as, **artium** (pronounced ar-she-um), **anxiūs** (pronounced ank-she-us).

(b) **t** loses the aspirate after (1) **s**, **t**, **x**: as, **mixtio**; (2) in old infinitives in **-ier**: as, **flec-ti-er**; (3) in proper nouns: as, **Philistion**.

(c) **s** has the sound of **z** after **e**, **ae**, **au**, **b**, **m**, **n**, **r**: as, **spes**, **praes**, **urbs**; also, in a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: as, **causa**.

(d) **x**, at the beginning of a word, is pronounced **z**: as, **Xanthus**.

VIII.—QUANTITY AND ACCENTUATION.

QUANTITY.

Syllables are divided, according to the time taken in their pronunciation, into long, short, and common.

Long Syllables.—A syllable is long in quantity—

(1) If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: as, **haec**, **res**.

(2) If it is contracted: as, **nīl** for **nīhil**.

(3) If its vowel is followed by **i** (*i.e.*, **j**), **x**, **z**, or any two consonants except a mute (*p. 290*) followed by a liquid (**l**, **m**, **n**, **r**): as, **dux**, **rex**, **sunt**. In this case it is said to be long *by position*.

Short Syllables.—A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate **h**: as, **dies**, **viae**, **nīhil**. In these cases it is said to be short *by position*.

Common Syllables.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally

short, is followed by a mute and a liquid : as, *āgrī. lātēbrae, ālācris*. Long syllables are marked by ¯; short syllables by ˘; common syllables by ˉ.

ACCENTUATION.

Words of one syllable are always accented : as, *rex, dux*.

Words of two syllables are always accented on the first : as, *men'sa*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (or next to the last), if that is long in quantity ; otherwise on the antepenult (or third from the last) : as, *hō-nōr-is, con'sū-lis*.

If an enclitic (or appended word) is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next to the enclitic, whether long or short : as, *dēā'que, amare'v'e, tibi'ne*.

IX.—ROOT. STEM. INFLECTION.

A **root** is the simplest combination of sounds that expresses the general meaning of any word or set of words either in the same language or in other languages of the same family. Thus: *vi-tis, a vine; vimen, osier; vi-ōo, I bind*, are derived from the root *vi-, bind*.

A **stem** is the part of a word that remains after the grammatical terminations are taken away. Thus, *reg-* is the stem of *rex* [= *reg* + *s* (*s*, the termination of nom.)]; *voca-* is the stem of *vocas* [= *voca* + *s* (*s*, the termination of the 2 pers. sing.)]

A **stem** is formed from a root, sometimes without change, but generally by modification of the root vowel, or by the addition of some suffix or suffixes. Thus: *dūc* is a root and the stem of *dūces, leaders*; *vi-* is the root, but *viti-* is the stem of *vitis, a vine*; *voc* is the root, but *vōcā-* the stem, of *vōcās, thou callest*.

Inflection is the change a stem undergoes to express the various grammatical relations it has to other words in the sentence. This change is effected by means of grammatical terminations or endings (also called inflections.) These inflections include the forms of *cases*

of nouns, pronouns and adjectives, and the forms of the *moods*, *tenses*, *number* and *person* of the verbs.

Inflections had originally a meaning, but it can no longer be traced. They are not usually added to roots, but to roots prepared for the addition. The different vowels used to connect the stem with the inflections of nouns (aided by certain phonetic changes), have given rise to the different declensions which, no doubt, were originally one. Thus:

- | | | | | | |
|----|-------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1. | Decl. Gen. Sing., | mensæ, probably for orig. mensa-is. | | | |
| 2. | " " | servi, | " | " | servo-is. |
| 3. | " " | reg-is, | | | |
| 4. | " " | gradus, | " | " | gradu-is. |
| 5. | " " | rei, | " | " | re-is. |

The stem of the first declension ends in -ā (as, mensā-); of the second declension in -o (as, domino-); of the third declension in a consonant or -i (as, reg-, stem of rex; turri-, stem of turris); of the fourth declension in -u (as gradu-); of the fifth declension in -e (as, re-, stem of res).

X.—LATIN VERB FORMS.
Table of Latin Active Conjugation in its Earliest Forms.

	INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	SUBL. expressing wish(=Opt)	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRÆS.	1. amo = ama-y-o-mi (consecutive vowels always separated by y) 2. moneo = mone-y-o-mi 3. (a) rego = reg-o-mi (b) capio = cap-y-o-mi (by analogy with 1 and 2 conj.) 4. audio = audi-y-o-mi	3rd Conj. shows thematic e . The personal sign s is omitted as unnecessary. The other conj. having pure roots, dispense with the thematic vowel.	Regular sign of Opt. = a . Only 1st. Conj. shows e . Amem = ama-y-em ; <i>cf. etyp.</i>	Original se , as in esse , becomes re after a vowel. Se = sai is dat. or loc. in origin.	-ntis -ntis
IMPF.	-bam = bhuam. <i>(I. E. verbbhuo, L. fuo, E. be)</i>		-rem = sem ; <i>cf. essem.</i> and re = se (in inf.)		
FUTURE.	(a) am , Subj. opt. ending. (b) bo = bom (bhuomi); <i>cf. Eng. am to go.</i>		-erim = (e)sim Sigmatic perf.	-isse = ise. The double s on analogy of esse .	-turus , from -tor ; daturus from dator .
PERFECT.	(a) Reduplicated. (b) Sigmatic : as, scripsi. (c) in -VI : as, monui.				Supines in -u and -um , abl. and acc. respectively of partic. noun in -tus .
PLUPER.	-eram = (e)sam , past of sigmatic perf.			-issem = issem <i>cf. inf. -isso.</i>	
FUT. PERF.	-ero = (e)so (s = r between two vowels) Subj. of sigmatic perf. (o always the sign of subj. <i>cf. tibi(σ)eo</i>).				

REMARKS.

1. The endings of the primary tenses were originally in the singular **-mi**, **-si**, **-ti**, in the plural **-mos**, **-tes**, **-nti**.

2. In Latin the secondary endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, have everywhere displaced the primary endings **-mi**, **-si**, **-ti**. Thus the same personal suffix is used in tenses of both orders.

3. The secondary tenses invariably use these endings; primary tenses generally use them, but sometimes drop them.

4. The *thematic* vowel is the vowel that attaches the personal ending to the verb-root. Before nasals (**m**, **n**) the thematic vowel is **o**; elsewhere it is **e**. Changes in the thematic vowel are due to phonetic laws peculiar to the Latin language. Thus:—

reg-o = **reg-o-m** (l)
reg-i-s = **reg-e-s**(l) (e becoming **i** in unaccented syllables).
reg-i-t = **reg-e-t**(l)
reg-i-mus = **reg-o-mos**
reg-i-tis = **reg-e-tes**
reg-u-nt = **reg-o-nt**(l)

5. When the verb-root terminated in a vowel, consonantal **(y)** was introduced before the thematic vowel. This was due to a law of the original Indo-European language which did not admit of two vowels coming together and thus forming a hiatus. Thus:—

am(a)-o = **ama-y-o-m**(l)
mone-o = **mone-y-o-m**(l)
audi-o = **audi-y-o-m**(l)

6. The **-i** in **capio** is due to *analogy* of verb-roots terminating in a vowel, and not to phonetic reasons as is the case in, *e.g.*, **mone-y-om**.

7. All the conjugations are reducible to *one*, with the same thematic vowel. In conjugations other than the third, the thematic vowel has generally been absorbed by the vowel terminating the verb-root.

XI.—DERIVATION.

Considerable help in the mastery of Latin vocabulary will be found in attending to the composition of words. Thus: **contendo** is from **con**, an intensive particle, and **tendo**, *stretch*; and, there-

fore, means *to strain, to exert one's self*; *occupo* is from *ob, on*, and *capio, seize*; and must mean *to seize on*.

Note.—The component parts of a derivative word are written after it in brackets. Thus: *impröbus* (*in. not*, and *pröbus, good*), *bad*.

The meaning of such prefixes and affixes will be mastered gradually and in detail. The more common are given here.

VERBS.

(a) The ending *-to, -ito, or -ito*, has a *frequentative* force; *i.e.*, expresses a frequent or repeated action: as—

<i>lacio, throw;</i>	<i>lacto, toss.</i>
<i>dico, say;</i>	<i>dictito, keep saying.</i>
<i>dormio, sleep;</i>	<i>dormito, nod.</i>

Such verbs are called *frequentatives*.

(b) The ending *-sco* has an *inchoative* or *inceptive* force, *i.e.*, denotes the *beginning* of an action: as—

<i>lābo, are, totter;</i>	<i>laba-sco, begin to totter.</i>
---------------------------	-----------------------------------

(c) The ending *-esso* expresses eagerness: as—

<i>capio, take;</i>	<i>capesso, snatch.</i>
---------------------	-------------------------

(d) The ending *-ürio* expresses a *desire*; as—

<i>morior, die;</i>	<i>moritürio, wish to die.</i>
<i>edo, eat;</i>	<i>esürio, be hungry.</i>
<i>pario, bring forth;</i>	<i>partürio, be in labor.</i>

(e) the ending *-illo* has a *diminutive* force: as—

<i>canto, sing;</i>	<i>cant-illo, chirp.</i>
---------------------	--------------------------

Note.—The following list of verbs, differing in meaning in different conjugations, may be useful:—

<i>pendeo, hang (intrans.);</i>	<i>pendo, hang (trans.)</i>
<i>fugio, fly;</i>	<i>fugo, are, put to flight.</i>
<i>cado, fall;</i>	<i>caedo, fell, kill.</i>
<i>lacio, throw;</i>	<i>iaceo, lie.</i>
<i>liquo, are, make clear;</i>	<i>liquet, it is clear.</i>
<i>sēdeo, sit;</i>	<i>sēdo, are, allay.</i>

NOUNS.

(a) The ending *-tor* or *-sor* denotes a *male agent*: as, *proditor*, *betrayor*; *victor*, *a conqueror*. Some of these have a feminine form: as, *victrix*.

Note.—Nouns in *-tor* are very common in Latin, much more common than the corresponding English nouns in *-er*. Where there is no corresponding noun in English, the Latin noun must be paraphrased: as, *auctores ad liberandam patriam non desiderantur illis actoribus*, *men to abet them in the liberation of their country are not required for the men who did this deed* (of the conspirators who killed Caesar.)

(b) The endings *-io*, *tio*, *-tus* and *-tura* denote an action (= Eng. *-ing*): as, *rēg-io*, *a keeping straight, a line*; *auditio* or *auditus*, *a hearing*; *mercatura*, *a trading*.

Nouns in *-io* are very common: as, *spe contentionis depositā*, *having laid down hope of carrying on the struggle*. They often come to have a concrete force: as, *factio*, *a doing*, then *a faction*; *dissensio*, *a differing in opinion*, then, *dissension*.

(c) The endings *-lus*, *la*, *lum*, have a *diminutive* force: as, *rivulus*, *a rivulet* (*rivus*, *brook*).

(d) The ending *ētum* expresses a place full of: as, *vinētum* (*vinum*, wine, grapes) *vineyard*. So: *arbustum* (*arbor*, tree) *plantation*.

(e) The endings *-tas*, *-ia*, *-tudo*, express a quality: as, *vēritas* (*verus*), *truth*; *audacia* (*audax*), *boldness*; *aegritudo* (*aeger*), *sickness*.

(f) The endings *-cūlum*, *būlum*, *trum* and *mentum*, express a means or instrument: as, *lācūlum* (*lacio*), *dart*; *arātrum* (*aro*), *plough*; *documentum* (*doceo*, *teach*), *proof*.

(g) The ending, *-ile*, added to the name of an animal, denotes the place where it is kept: as, *ovile* (*ovis*, *sheep*), *fold*; *bōvile* (*bos*), *ox-stall*.

(h) The ending *-ides* (for nouns in *-us* preceded by a consonant), *-ides* (for nouns in *-eus*), *-ades* (for nouns in *-as*), express "*son of*":

as, *Priamides*, son of *Priam*; *Atrides*, son of *Atreus*; *Aeneâdes*, son of *Aenêas*. Such nouns are called *patronymics*.

(i) The endings *-la*, *-ëis*, *-ias*, *-ine* and *-ône*, express "*daughter of*": as, *Tantallis*, daughter of *Tantalus*; *Nerëis*, daughter of *Nērēus*; *Thestias*, daughter of *Thestius*; *Neptunine*, daughter of *Neptune*; *Acrislône*, daughter of *Acrisius*.

ADJECTIVES.

(a) The ending *-bundus* has the force of the pres. participle intensified: as, *moribundus*, on the point of death.

(b) The ending *-cundus* denotes a quality: as, *iracundus*, passionate; *facundus*, eloquent.

(c) The endings *-ilis* and *-ibilis* denote able to do (or be done to) what the stem implies: as, *fertilis*, able to bear, fertile; *terribilis*, terrible; *docilis*, teachable; *habilis*, easily handled, manageable; *facilis*, easy.

(d) The ending *-ax* denotes an inclination or capacity: as, *loquax*, talkative; *capax*, capacious.

(e) The ending *-eus* denotes *made of*: as, *aureus*, golden.

So, *-nus*, *-neus*, with names of trees: as, *quernus* (*-neus*), made of oak (*quercus*).

(f) The endings *-osus* and *-lentus* denote fulness: as, *periculōsus*, full of danger; *violentus*, full of violence.

(g) The endings *-icus*, *-ieus*, *-ilis*, *-ālis*, *-ius*, *-inus*, *-ānus*, *-ārius*, express *relating to* what the stem implies: as, *bellicus*, warlike; *amicus*, friendly; *hostilis*, hostile. (Note.—Adjectives in *-ilis* from nouns, have *i*; from verbs, *i*); *navālis*, pertaining to a ship; *patrius*, pertaining to a father; *caninus*, pertaining to a dog; *urbānus*, pertaining to a city; *agrarius*, pertaining to land.

(h) The endings *-ātus*, *-itus*, and *-ūtus*, give a pf. part. pass. force: as, *alātus*, winged; *auritus*, eared; *cornūtus*, horned.

(i) The endings (1) *-ensis* (with nouns in *-ae*, *-um*, *-o*); (2) *-inus* (with nouns in *-ia* and *-ium*); (3) *-ānus* (with nouns in *-a*, *-ae*, *-um*, *-i*); (4) *as(ātis)* (with nouns in *-um*, *-na*, *-nae*), and (5) *-icus* (with

names of countries), denote *belonging to* the town or country from the name of which the adjective is formed. Thus: (1) **Cannensis**, of *Cannae*; **Cōmensis**, of *Comum*; **Sulmonensis**, of *Sulmo*. (2) **Amerinus**, of *Ameria*; **Caudinus**, of *Caudium*. (3) **Romanus**, of *Rome* (*Rōma*); **Thebanus**, from *Thebes* (*Thebae*); **Tusculanus**, from *Tusculum*; **Fundanus**, of *Fundi*. (4) **Arpinas**, of *Arpinum*. (**Duo Arpinātes**, *Marius and Cicero*); **Capēnas**, of *Capēna*; **Fidēnas**, of *Fidēnae*; **Galicus**, of *Gaul*.

PREFIXES.

(a) **amb**=*about*: as, **amblo**, *go round*; **anceps** (*caput*), *two-headed*.

(b) **dis-** or **di-**=*asunder*: as, **dimitto**, *send in different directions*. With adjectives it has a negative force: as, **dissimilis**, *unlike*.

(c) **in-**=Eng. **un**=*not*: as, **infectus**, *undone*.

(d) **re-**=(1) *back*: as, **reddo**, *give back*; (2) *again*: as, **reficio**, *make again*; (3) Eng. **un-**: as, **reséro**, *unbar* (*sēra*, *bar*); (4) = Eng. **dis-**: as, **reprōbo**, *disapprove*.

(e) **se-**=*aside, from*: as, **sēcūrus**, *free from care*; **sēpono**, *lay aside*; so, **sejungo**, *disjoin*.

(f) **ve-**=Eng. **un-**, *-less*: as, **vēsanus**, *insane*; **vecors**, *senseless*.

(g) **sesqui-** (= *semisque, and a half?*) = *one half more*: as, **sesqu libra**, *a pound and a half*; **sesquipes**, *a foot and a half*.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

The preposition in composition often retains its original force: as, **expello**, *I drive out*. Frequently, however, it will be found with a different meaning altogether: as, **abutor**, *use up*; **dedisco**, *unlearn*. Such peculiarities of meaning should be carefully mastered, as they are met with in reading. A few examples, for the sake of illustration, will be given here.

Cum or **con**,

Conficio, *do completely, finish* (intensive); **contorqueo**, *hurl at* (= *to a point*).

De.

Depugno, *fight to the death* (intensive); **dearmo**, *disarm* (negative); **defero**, *bring down, report*; **decedo**, *go away*; **deficio**, *make (or loose) away, ∴ revolt, fail*; **dedo**, *give up*.

Per.

Perficio, *do thoroughly, finish*; **permagnus**, *very great*.

Sub.

Succedo, *come into the place of*; **sufficio**, *elect in the place of*; **sublêvo**, *lift up (i.e., from under)*; **sûmo** (= **subemo**), *take up*; **suspicio** *look up to*; **subsequor**, *follow close*; **subduco**, *withdraw*
 • *secretly*; **suborno**, *prepare secretly, suborn*; **suspîcor**, *look up at askance, suspect*; **subrideo**, *smile*.

XII.—SUMMARY OF SYNTAX RULES.

1. The direct object is in the acc., the indirect in the dat. (p. 5).
2. A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; its case is determined by the verb of its own clause (p. 126).
3. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, &c.* (**factitives**), take two accusatives (p. 90).
4. Verbs of *asking, clothing, teaching, concealing*, take two accs. (p. 92).
5. Duration of time and extent of space are in the acc. (p. 69).
6. An acc. is used with an adj. or verb to define its meaning (*acc. of specification*, p. 98); an acc. is also used adverbially: as, **Hoc potuit**, *he was able for this*.
7. The subject of the inf. is in the acc. (p. 109).
8. The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken (*partitive gen.*, p. 69).
9. The gen. is used with **sum** to express *belongs to* and to express *task, duty, mark, &c.* (p. 124).
10. The gen. is used to express quality (p. 130), and indefinite price (p. 150).

11. The gen. of source is used with certain verbs of *feeling* (p. 165).

12. The gen. is used with *refert* and *interest*, *it is of importance to* (p. 166).

13. The gen. of the charge is used with verbs of *accusing, condemning* &c. (p. 167).

14. The gen. is used with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (p. 146).

15. Adjs. followed in English by *of*, take the gen. (p. 61).

16. Adjs. followed in English by *to* or *for* take the *dative* (p. 65).

17. Many verbs (p. 105) take a dat. : as, *parco* (*spare*), *crēdo* (*believe*), *pareo* (*obey*), *confido* (*trust*), *nubo* (*wed*), *studeo* (*be zealous*), *obsto* (*stand in the way*), *vaco* (*have leisure*), *impero* (*command*), *suādeo* (*recommend*), *irascor* (*be angry*), *subvenio* (*aid*), *ignosco* (*pardon*), *servio* (*serve*), *invideo* (*envy*), *indulgeo* (*indulge*), *plāceo* (*please*), *displīceo* (*displease*), *repugno* (*oppose*), *occurro* (*meet*), *obsisto* (*resist*), *fāveo* (*favor*), *noceo* (*hurt*), *licet* (*it is allowed*), *libet* (*it pleases*), *minor* (*threaten*).

18. Verbs compounded with certain prepositions take the dat. (p. 120).

19. Verbs compounded with *bene*, *male*, *satis*, take the dat. (p. 106).

20. The verb *sum* used with the dat., means *to have* (p. 120).

21. The compounds of *sum* (except *possum*) take the dat. (p. 120).

22. A dat. (*the dat. of purpose*) is used with certain verbs to denote purpose or object (p. 134).

23. The dat. is often used idiomatically for the gen. (p. 134, 2).

24. The ablative is used with *a* or *ab* to express the agent (p. 71); but the dat. is used with the gerundive (p. 173, 4).

25. The abl. is used to express *cause, manner, means, and instrument* (p. 71).

26. The abl. (*abl. of respect*) is used to express *that in respect to which* a thing is or is done ; as, *naturā triquetra, triangular in form.*

27. The abl. is used to express *measure of difference* (p. 58), *separation* (p. 158), *source or origin* (p. 156), *price* (p. 150), and *quality* (p. 131).

28. Certain verbs take the abl. instead of the acc. (p. 116).

29. *Opus est* takes the abl. of thing and dat. of person (p. 166).

30. Certain adjs. are joined with the abl. (p. 64).

31. A point of time and time within which are expressed by the abl. (p. 82).

32. The comparative degree is often followed by the abl. (p. 55).

33. The case *absolute* in Latin is the ablative (p. 100, 5).

34. *Place to which*, with the name of a town or small island, is expressed by the acc. ; with the name of a country, a preposition is used (p. 85).

35. *Place from which*, with the name of a town or small island, is expressed by the abl. ; with the name of a country, a preposition is used (p. 85).

36. *Place in which* (place *where*), with the name of a town or small island, takes the form of the gen., if the noun is of the first or second decl. sing. ; otherwise, the abl. With names of countries, a preposition is used (p. 85).

37. To express *place where* with common nouns, a preposition is required, unless there is an adj. with the noun ; as, *in urbe, in the city* ; but, *hac urbe, in this city.*

38. Verbs of *saying, thinking, &c.*, take the acc. with inf. for the English noun-clause with *that* (p. 109).

39. Verbs of *hoping* take a fut. inf. (p. 110).

40. Translate, *They said he was at Rome* by *Dixerunt eum Romae esse* or by *dixerunt eum Romae fuisse*, according as the *actual words* used were, *Romae est* or *Romae fuit* (p. 109, 2 ; p. 111).

41. The inf. is often used for the impf. in narration (*historic inf.*; p. 216, 3, note 2).

42. Many verbs (*modal verbs*) take an inf. after them to complete their meaning (p. 108, 5): as, *audeo* (*dare*), *cogo* (*compel*), *conor* (*endeavor*), *constituo* and *statuo* (*determine*), *cunctor* (*hesitate*), *cupio* (*desire*), *debeo* (*ought*), *desino* (*cease*), *disco* (*learn*), *dubito* (*hesitate*), *incipio* (*begin*), *mālo* (*prefer*), *nescio* (*not know how*), *nōlo* (*be unwilling*), *obliviscor* (*forget*), *patior* (*allow*), *paro* (*prepare*), *possum* (*be able*), *scio* (*know how*), *soleo* (*be accustomed*), *vereor* (*fear*), *volo* (*be willing*).

43. The supine is used to express purpose after a verb of motion (p. 174).

44. To express nouns in *-ing*, the *gerundive*, if the verb governs the acc. ; if not, the *gerund* (p. 170).

45. Duty and necessity (*must* and *ought*) are expressed by the *passive periphrastic conjugation* (p. 172).

46. *Intention* is expressed by the *active periphrastic conjugation* (p. 174).

47. The *indirect question* has its verb in the subjun. (p. 176).

48. Primary tenses are followed by primary, secondary by secondary (*Rule of Sequence*; p. 178). This rule does not apply to *consecutive clauses* (p. 187).

49. *Qui final* (p. 184), *qui causal* (p. 198, 4), *qui consecutive* (p. 188), and *qui concessive* (p. 196, 8), take the subjun.

50. Verbs of *fearing* take *ne* or *ut* with the subjun. (p. 185, 3; see also page 178, 2)

51. Verbs of *preventing* take *quominus* with the subjun (p. 185, 2).

52. *Purpose* is not expressed by the inf. (p. 185, 5)

53. The fut. ind. and pres. subjun. are used in future conditions; the impf. and plpf. subjun. in conditions contrary to fact (p. 192).

54. Dependent clauses in indirect narration (or after another subjun.) take the subjun. (p. 206, 4).

55. A plpf. subjun. in indirect narration represents a fut.-pf. in a dependent clause in direct (p. 207, 7).

56. Imperatives of direct narration become subjun. in indirect (p. 207).

57. Questions are put in the inf. or the subjun. (p. 207).

58. Verbs of *asking* take an inf. in English, but ut with subjun. in Latin (p. 181).

59. The perf. part. act is supplied in four ways (p. 203, 3, note).

60. Of two verbs connected by *and*, one often becomes a participle (p. 219).

61. The English pres. participle is often expressed by the perf. part. or its equivalent (p. 219).

62. English abstract nouns are expressed by (a) the inf. (p. 108); (b) the indirect question (p. 181, 1); (c) the pres. part. (p. 219); (d) the perf. part. (p. 219).

63. The Latin part. often requires a finite clause to translate it (p. 220).

64. *Without* joined to a noun in *-ing* can not be translated by *sine* with a gerundive (p. 220, 3).

65. The fut. subj. act. is supplied by the act. periphrastic conjugation (p. 217, 6), and the fut. subj. pass. by *futurum sit ut* (p. 217).

66. The fut. inf. pass. of verbs that have no supine, is supplied by *fore ut* (p. 217).

VOCABULARY.

VOCABULARY.

I. -LATIN - ENGLISH.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	active.	incep.	inceptive.
abl.	ablative.	intr.	intransitive.
acc.	accusative.	interj.	interjection
adj.	adjective.	M.	masculine.
adv.	adverb.	N.	neuter.
conj.	conjunction.	num.	numeral.
comp.	comparative.	part.	participle.
dat.	dative.	perf.	perfect.
def.	defective.	pres.	present.
dep.	deponent.	pl.	plural.
dim.	diminutive.	p. p.	perfect participle.
F., fem.	feminine.	prep.	preposition.
gen.	genitive.	pron.	pronoun.
imperat.	imperative.	tr.	transitive.
impers.	impersonal.	v.	verb.
indecl.	indeclinable.	n.	noun.

The quantity of vowels long or short by position (*p.* 298, 8), of diphthongs (which are all long), and of final short syllables, is not given.

The references in the vocabulary are to the pages and sections of this book.

VOCABULARY.

A.

ā, ab, prep. with abl. (a, only before consonants; ab before vowels and consonants), *from*, (85, 2; 156, 4; 158, 2); *by*, (71, 2); **ab eā parte**, *on that side*.

ab-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum, v.a., *to put away, hide, conceal*.

ab-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -ductum, v.a., *to lead away, withdraw*.

ab-ēo, -īre, -īvi, (īi), -ītum, v.intr., *to go away, depart*.

ab-hinc, ago; **abhinc decem annos** or **abhinc decem annis**, *ten years ago* (82, 5).

ab-icio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum, v.a., (i = y in pronunciation) (p. 296), *to throw away, fling from, hurl*.

abīe-s, -tis, F., *a fir-tree, spruce*.

absen-s, -tis, (part. pres. of absum), *absent*.

ab-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, v.a., *acquit*.

ab-sum, -esse, -fui, *to be absent, be distant*; **abesse a bello**, *to take no part in war*; **abesse decem millia passuum**, *to be ten miles off*.

ac, another form of atque (which see).

ac-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, v.intr., (=ad+cēdo), 1. *to go towards, approach, reach*; **accessum est**, *they approached* (164, 2.); 2. *to be added*.

ac-cēlōro, -cēlērāre, -cēlērāvi, [ad+cēlōro], v.intr., *to hasten towards*.

acceptus, p.p. of accipio, *receive*, (used as an adj.), *agreeable to*.

accidit, verb impers. [ad+cado], (162), *it happens*; **accidit ut**, *it happens that* (182, 4).

ac-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, [ad+caedo], v.tr., *to cut into*.

ac-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, [ad+cāpio], *to take to one's self, to accept; receive*.

ac-commōdo, -commōdāre, -commōdāvi, -commōdatum, [ad, to+commōdo, jū], *to fit to*.

ac-cūrāte, adv., *carefully*.

ac-cūrātus, (p.p. of ac-cūro), *careful*.

ac-curro, -currere, -cūcurri, and -curri, no sup. [ad, to; curro, run], *to run to*.

ac-cūso, -cūsāre, -cūsāvi, -cūsātum, [ad, against, causa, a cause], v.a., *blame, accuse*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, severe, keen*, (comp., acrior; super., acerrimus).

ācie-s, -ei, F., *edge, line of battle*; **instruere aciem**, *to draw up a line of battle*; **acie instructā**, *after the line was drawn up*.

ācriter, adv. (comp., acrius; super., acerrime), *fiercely, keenly*; **acriter est pugnatum**, *a keen battle was fought* (164, 2).

ācus, -ūs, F., *a needle, pin*.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharp, keen*.

ād, prep. with acc., *to, towards, near, at, beside*.

ād-aequo, -aequāre, -aequāvi, -aequātum, [ad, to, aequo, *to make equal*], v.tr., *to made equal*.

ad-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum, [ad, to, do, put], *to add, join*.

ad-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -ductum, [ad, to, duco, lead], *to lead to, bring to* (of persons).

ād-ēo, -īre, -īvi, (or īi), -ītum, [ad, to, ēo, go], irr.v. and neut. *to go to, approach, visit, reach*.

ād-ēo, adv. [ad, to, eo, to this], *to that point, so, such, to that degree*.

ad-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, v.a., *to treat, visit*; **aliquem poenā adficere**, *to visit anyone with punishment, punish*.

ad-fligo, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum, v.tr., *to dash down, to destroy*.

ad-hībēo, -hībēre, -hībui, -hībitum, (ad+habeo), v.a., *to hold to, use, admit*.

ad-huc [ad+huc, *to this point*], adv., *to this place, thus far, as yet*.

ad-icio (pronounce ad-yic-kio), -icere, -ieci, -iectum [ad, to+iacio, *to throw*], v.a., *to throw to*.

ād-itus, -ūs, M. [ad, to, eo, go], *approach, landing-place*.

ād-iungo, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctum [ad, to, iungo, join; i=y in pronunciation], *join to, add*.

ad-iuvo, -iuvare, -iūvi, -iūtum [ad, to iuvo, aid], v.a., *aid, help, assist, support*.

ad-minister, -tri, M. [ad, to, minister, a servant], assistant, servant, minister.

ad ministro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a. *serve, manage, do*; **republicam administrare**, to carry on the government.

ad-miror, -āri, -ātus sum [ad, at, miror, wonder], v.a. dep., to wonder at, admire.

ad-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -missum [ad+mitto], to allow, permit; **facinus admittēre**, to commit a crime; **dedecus admittere**, to allow a disgrace.

ad-mōdum, [ad, to+modus, a measure], adv., up to the measure, very much, greatly; with numbers, fully, at least.

ad-ir ōnēo, -mōnēre, -mōnui, -mōnītum [ad, to+mōnēo, advise], advise, warn, remind.

ad-ōlescens, -olescentis, M., a youth.

ad-ōlesco, -ōlescere, -ōlēvi, -ultam [ad+olesco, grow], v.n., to grow up, reach adult age.

ad-ōrior, -ōriri, -ortus sum [ad, to, orior, arise], v.a. dep., rise up against, attack, assail.

ad-plico, -plicāre, -plicāvi or -plicui, plicatum or plicatum [ad, to+plico, fold], v.a., lean against.

ad-sidūus, -sidua, -siduum [ad+sedeo, sit], incessant, unbroken, diligent.

ad-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, -stītum [ad, to+sisto], v.intr., stand near or by.

ad-spectus, -spectus [ad, to+specio, to look], look, appearance.

ad-suēfācio, -suēfācere, -suēfāci, -suēfactum [ad+suesco, be accustomed+facio, make], accustom.

ad-suēfact-us, -a, -um, adj., trained to, accustomed to.

ad-sum, -esse, -fui [ad+sum], be present, be near, aid.

ad-tribūo (or attribuo), -tribūere, -tribui, -tribūtum [ad+tribuo, give, ascribe], v.a., allot, assign.

ad-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēni, -ventum [ad, to+venio, come], v.a., to come to, reach.

ad-ventus, -ventus, M., arrival.

ad-versus, -a, -um [ad, to, verito, turn], turned to, opposed.

ad-versus, prep. with acc., against.

ad-vertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum [ad, to, verito, turn], v.a., to turn to; **animum advertere**, to bring one's mind to, to notice.

ad-vōlo, -vōlare, -vōlāvi, -vōlātum [ad, to+volo, to fly], v.a., to fly to, hasten to.

aed-es, -is, F., a temple; pl., a house or temples.

aedifici-um, -i [aedifico], N., dwelling.

aedifico, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [aedes+facio, make], build a house, construct.

Aedū-i, -ōrum, pl., the Aedui, a tribe of Gaul (France).

Aedū-us, -a, -um, adj., Aeduan.

aeg-er, -ra, -rum, adj., sick. [Comp. aegrior; sup., aegerrimus].

aegrē, adv., with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.

aegrōto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [aeger], v. intr., to be sick.

Aegypt-us, -i, F., Egypt.

aequo, -āre, -āvi -ātum [aequus], to make equal.

aequ-us, -a, -um, adj., 1. equal, level; 2. fair.

aequit-as, -ātis, F., evenness; **animi aequitas**, contentment.

aer, -āris, M., air, cloud, mist.

aes, -aeris, N., brass, copper; **aes alienum**, debt (i.e., another's money, money of another).

aest-as, -ātis, F., summer; **mediā aestate**, in the middle of summer; **extremā aestate**, at the end of summer; **primā aestate**, in the beginning of summer.

aestimāt-i-o, -ōnis, F., [aestimo, value], a value, valuation, esteem.

aestimo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., value, think, reckon.

aest-us, -ūs, M. [aestuo, boil], 1. heat, 2. tide.

affēro, -ferre, -attūli, -allātum [ad, to, ferro, bring], v.a., bring to, assign.

afficio. See ad-ficio.

af-firmo, -firmāre, -firmāvi, -firmātum [ad, to, firmo, to strengthen], v.a., assert, declare.

affligo. See adfligo.

Afric-us, -i (properly an adj. with ventus understood), the south-west wind; still called *Africo* by the Italians.

Agamemn-ōn, -ōnis, M., Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks in the time of the Trojan war.

āg-er, -ri, M., a field, land; pl., lands, territories.

agger, -is, M. [ad, to, gero, carry], mound, dike.

ag-grēdior, -grēdi, gressus, sum [ad+gradior, walk, go], v. act. dep., to go to or against, attack.

ag-men, -mīnis [ago, to move], N., an army on the march, an army, column.

wellington.
[aedes +
fruct.

a, a tribe

uan.

[Comp.

scarcely,

ger], v.

uus], to

al, level;

s; ani-

st.

s alien-

money of

mediā

runner;

of sum-

beginning

aestimo,

n.

, value,

1. heat,

um [ad,

sign.

armātum

, assert,

ad]. with

est wind;

.

agamem-

time of

1. lands,

carry],

sum [ad

, to go to

], N., an

lumn.

āgo, āgere, ēgi, actum, v.a., *move, go, do, drive, treat*; **agere hiemem**, to pass the winter; **agitur de Roma**, Rome is at stake; **de Roma actum est**, it is all over with Rome.

agricol-a, -ae, M. [ager, land, +colo, till], farmer.

agricultūra, ae, F., agriculture.

āio, v. defec., say yes, say; p. 288

ālāc-er, -ris, -re, adj., active, eager, quick, impetuous.

ālācrit-as, -ātis, F., activity, eagerness, quickness.

alb-us, -a, -um, adj., white.

alc-es, -is, F., the elk.

Ālexand-er, -ri, M., Alexander the Great, king of Macedonia.

ālīas [alius], adv., at another time, elsewhere; **alias** . . . **alias**, at one time . . . at another.

ālīn-us, -a, -um [alius], adj., belonging to another, another's; strange, hostile; **aes alienum**, another's money, debt.

ālō, adv., elsewhere.

ālīquamdīu [aliquis + diu], adv., for some time.

ālīquando [alius + quando], adv., at some time or other, at length.

ālīquantō [aliquantus], adv., somewhat, considerably, rather

aliquantus, -a, -um [alius + quantus], adj., considerable, some. The neut. is used as a noun with partitive gen.: **aliquantum itineris**, some distance.

ālīquīs, -qua, -quid [alius + quis], and **ālīquī**, -qua, -quod [alius + qui], indef. pronoun, some one, anyone, any.

aliquid [temporis], some time.

ālīquot [alius + quot], indef. indecl. adj., some, several.

ālīter [alius], adv., differently, otherwise.

ālī-us, -a, -ud (gen., alius), adj. (p. 27), another, other, different; **alius** . . . **alius**, one . . . another; **alīi** . . . **alīi**, some . . . others.

Allobrog-ēs, -um; pl., *Allobroges*, a tribe of Gaul.

ālō, ālere, ālī, ālitum, v.a., nourish, increase, rear, foster.

Alp-ēs, -um; pl., the Alps.

alter, -a, -um (gen., alterius), adj., one of two, the other, the second; **alter** . . . **alter**, the one . . . the other; **alteri** . . . **alteri**, the one party . . . the other party.

altitū-do, -dinis, F. [altus], height, depth, thickness.

alt-us, -a, -um, adj., high, deep; in **alto**, in the deep.

āma-ns, -ntis, M., a lover.

āmāns, adj., loving.

ambactus, -i, M., a vassal, retainer.

Ambiān-i, -ōrum, M., the *Ambiani*, a tribe of North Eastern Gaul.

amb-īo, -īre, -īvi (or -īi) -ītum, [amb, around + eo, go], to go round.

ambo, -ae, -o, adj., both.

ambūl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.intr., walk.

āmicīti-a, -ae, F., [amicus], friendship.

āmic-us, -a, -um [amo], adj., friendly.

āmic-us, -i, [amo], M., friend.

āmīto, ēre, amīsi, amissum (a + mitto, let go), v.a., lose.

ām-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, v.a., love.

āmoenus, a, um, beautiful (of scenery).

amplius [amplus], (comp. of adj), more, further; often with numerals and without any influence on construction: **as, amplius duo millia passuum**, more than two miles.

ampl-us, -a, -um, adj., large, noble, distinguished.

an, interrog. conj., or, or rather, or indeed.

Anart-es, -ium, pl. M., a Dacian tribe on the Theiss.

Ancālīt ēs, -ium, pl. M., the *Ancales*, a British tribe near Oxford in England.

anceps, -cipitis, [amb, on both sides + caput, head], adj., two-headed, two-fold, double.

ancōra, -ae, F., an anchor (also written *anchōra*); **ancoram iacere**, to anchor; in **ancoris (navem) deligare**, to moor; **tollere ancoram**, to weigh anchor.

ancill-a, -ae, F., a hand-maid, servant.

angūl-us, -i, M., corner.

angustī-ae, -arum, [angustus], pl. F., a narrow pass, defile.

angust-us, -a -um, adj., narrow, close, steep.

ānim-a, -ae, F., soul, life.

animadverto, -vertere, -verti, -versum, [animus + ad + verito], v.a., to turn the mind to, notice.

animāl, -ālis, [anima], N., a living thing, an animal.

anim-us, -i, M., mind, soul, spirit, courage.

annotin-us, -a, -um, [annus, a year], adj., a year old, of the year before.

annon, interrog. conj., or not (in the second member of direct interrogative sentence; p. 130, 6).

ann-us, -i, M., a year.

annu-ūs, -a, -um, [annus], adj., yearly.

anser, -is, M., a goose.

ante (1) as adv.: previously, before; **paucis ante diebus**, a few days before (p. 82, 3); (2) as prep. with acc. only: before, in front of, in advance of. For **ante quam**, see **antequam**.

antēā, adv., previously, before, once.

ante-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [ante + cedo, to go], v. intr., go in front of, precede, excel.

ante-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum [ante + fero, carry], to carry in front of, place before, prefer.

ante-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsui, -pōsitum [ante + pōno, place], place in front of, prefer.

antequam, conj., before (p. 201, 5).

antiquitas, ātis, F. [antiquus], old days.

antiqu-us, -a, -um [ante], adj., old, former, ancient.

antr-um, -i, N., a cave

āpēr-io, -īre, -nī, -tum, v.a., open, uncover, show, reveal.

aperte [aperio], adv., openly.

apertus, a, um [aperio], adj., open, exposed, undefended; **loca aperta**, open country; **ab latere aperto**, on the exposed flank (i.e., on the right.)

Apoll-o, -inis, M., Apollo.

appell-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call, name.

ap-pello, -pellere, -pūli, -pulsum [ad, to; pello, drive], to bring to land (of ships).

applico. See **ad-plico**.

apprōpinqu-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ad + prope, near], v. intr. with dative, approach, come near.

aptus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable.

āpud, prep. with acc., near, at, beside **apud urbem**, near the city; **apud Caesarem**, at the home or headquarters of Caesar; **apud me**, at my house.

āqu-a, ae, F., water.

āquill-a, ae, F., an eagle. As the eagle was the chief ensign of the Roman legion, **aquila** came to mean standard.

āquilifer, -i [aquila, eagle + fero, carry], M. The eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.

Āquilei-a, ae, F. Aquileia, a city in northeastern Italy.

Ār-ar, -āris, M. The Arar (now the Saône, a tributary of the Rhodānus, or Rhone).

ārātr-um, -i, N. [aro], a plough.

arbītr-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., think, suppose, consider.

arb-or, -ōris, F. a tree.

arcess-o, -ēre, -īvi, -itum [ad, to, cedo, go], v.a., send for, summon, call in.

arc-us, -ūs, M., a bow.

ardū-us, -a, -um, steep.

argent-um, -i, N., silver, money.

argū-o, -ēre, -nī, -ūtum, v.a., accuse.

ārid-us, -a, -um [areo, be dry], adj., dry. As a subst., **aridum**, dry land, shore.

arm-a, -ōrum, pl., arms.

armāt-us, -a, -um, p.p., armed.

armātūr-a, ae, F., armor; **lēvis armatūrae milites**, light-armed soldiers (130, 7).

armiger, -i, M. [arma, arms, + gero, bear], armor-bearer.

arm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., to arm.

ār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., plough.

ars, artis, F., art.

articūl-us, -i, M., little joint.

artifici-um, -i, mechanical art.

art-us, -ūs, M., joint.

arv-um, -i, N. [aro], a ploughed field.

arx, arcis, F., citadel.

a-scendo, -scendēre, -scendi, -scensum [ad, to, scando, climb], to ascend, mount; **naves ascendere**, embark.

ascens-us, -ūs [ad, scando], M., ascent.

aspect-us, -ūs [ad, to; spēcio, look], M., appearance, look, sight.

asp-er, -ēra, -ērum, adj., rough, sharp, uneven; wild, fierce.

assiduus. See **adsiduus**.

assist-o, ēre, astiti, no supine, stand by, stand.

assuefacio. See **ads**.

at, conj., but, yet.

āt-er, -ra, -rum, adj., black, dark.

Athen-ae, -arum, pl., *Athens*.
atque (contracted *ac*), conj., and also, and even, and (stronger than *et*); *par atque*, the same as.

atr-ox, -ōcis, adj., dark, terrible.
at-tingo, -tingere, -tigi, -tactum, v.a. [ad + tango, touch], touch upon, reach, border upon.

attollo, -ēre, raise.
attribuo. See *ad-tribuo*.
auctor, ōris, aider, helper; *me auctore*, at my suggestion.

auctorit-as, -atis, F., authority, influence, power, prestige.

audāci-a, -ae, F., boldness, daring, insolence.

audāciter (also *audacter*), [audeo, dare], adv., boldly.

audacter. See *audaciter*.
aud-ax, ācis [audeo], adj., bold, daring.

audēo, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., dare, be bold.

aud-īo, -īre, -īvi, itum, v.a., hear.

aufero, -auferre, abstuli, ablātum [ab, from, + fero, carry], to carry away, remove (p. 154).

augēo, augēre, auxi, auctum, v.a., increase, enlarge.

aul-a, -ae, F., a hall.

aurē-us, -a, -um [aurum], adj., golden, of gold.

aurig-a, -ae, M., a charioteer, driver.

aur-is, -is, F., an ear.

aur-um, -i, N., gold.

aut, conj., or; **aut .aut**, either .or. **autem**, conj., but, moreover, yet, also, now (never first in clause).

autumn-us, -i, M., [augeo], autumn.

auxil-i-um, -i, N. aid, support; in pl., auxilia, -orum, auxiliaries.

āvarit-i-a, ae, F., avarice, greed.

avers-us, -a, -um, p.p. of *averto*, used as an adj., turned away.

āvid-us, -a, -um, adj. [aveo, desire], eager, covetous.

āv-is, -is, F., a bird.

āv-us, -i, M., a grandfather.

B.

barbār-us, -a, -um, adj., foreign, strange, barbarian.

barbār-i, ōram, M., foreigners, barbarians; a name first applied by the

Greeks, then by the Romans, to the people of other nations.

bēat-us, -a, -um; adj., happy, prosperous.

Belg-ae, -arum, M., *The Belgians*, a warlike people of northeastern Gaul.

bellicōs-us, -a, -um, adj., warlike.

bell-um, -i, N., [old form *du-ellum*, from *duo*; hence a contest between two parties], war; **belli**, in war (p. 86, 3).

bēnē, adv. [bōnus], well, prosperously; comp. *melius*, sup. *optime*.

bēnēvōl-us, -a, -um [bene + volo, wish] benevolent, kind; comp. *bēnēvolentior*, sup. *bēnēvolentissimus*.

bēnēfici-um, -i, N. [bēnē + faciō, do], kindness, favor.

bībo, bibēre, bibi, no supine, v. tr., drink.

bīdū-um, -i, N. [bis, twice + dies, day], a space of two days.

biennium, -i, N. [bis + annus, a year], a space of two years.

binī, -ae, -a, numeral distributive adj., two each, two by two (p. 69, 8).

bis, adv. num., twice.

blandīor, -īri, itus sum, v. dep., flatter.

bōnī-t-as, -atis, F. [bōnus], goodness, richness.

bōn-us, -a, -um, adj., good; comp., *melior*; sup., *optimus*.

bōs, bōvis, com. gen. (p. 45), ox, cow.

brāchī-um, i, N., an arm.

brēv-is, -e, adj. short, small, brief; **brēvi** (supply tempore), in a short time, soon.

brēvīt-as, -atis, F. [brevis], shortness.

brēviter, adv. [brevis], shortly, briefly.

Britannī-a, -ae, F., Britain.

Britann-i, -ōrum, M., the inhabitants of Britain, Britons.

Britannic-us, -a, -um, adj., British.

Brundis-i-um, -i, N., *Brundisium* (now *Brindisi*).

brūm-a, -ae, F. [= *brevissima*; supply dies; the shortest day], the winter solstice (Dec. 21).

Brūt-us, -i, *Brutus*.

C.

C., an abbreviation for *Cāsus*.

cādo, cādere, cēcidi, cāsum, v. intr., fall, be slain.

caec-us, -a, -um, adj., blind.

caed-es, -is, F., slaughter, murder.

caedo, caedere, cecidi, caecum, v. tr., cut, kill, fell.

cael-um, -i [for cav-lum from cavus, hollow], N., sky; heavens.

caelest-is, -e [caelum], adj., heavenly, celestial. In the plural caelestes (supply dei), the gods of heaven.

caerulē-us, -a, -um [for caeluleus, from caelum], adj., deep blue, sky-blue.

Caes-ar, āris, M., Caesar (Caius Julius Caesar), the general and statesman, who lived 100 B.C.-44 B.C.

cālāmit-as, -ātis, F. [for cadamitas, from caelo], disorder, misfortune, defeat.

calc-ar, -āris [calx, heel], N., a spur.

cālēo, cālēre, cālui, v. intr., to be warm.

cālīd-us, -a, -um, adj., warm.

callīd-us, -a, -um [calleo, be hard], adj., skilful.

Camill-us, -i, M., Camillus, the deliverer of Rome from the Gauls in 389 B.C.

camp-us, -i, M., plain, field; **Camp-us Martius**, a plain between the walls of Rome and the River Tiber; there the elections were held, and all kinds of athletic exercises practised.

cān-is, -is, M. or F., a dog.

cāno, cānēre, cecinī, cantum, v.a., to sing.

Cantāber, -bri, M., a Cantabrian, belonging to a warlike tribe in Northern Spain.

Cantabr-i, -ōrum, pl. M., the Cantabrians.

Cantī-um, -i, N., Kent, in S. E. of England.

cant-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., sing,

cantus, ūs, song.

capill-us, -i, M., hair; **promisso capillo esse**, to be with (or wear) long hair.

cāp-er, -ri, M., a he-goat.

cāpio, cāpēre, cēpi, captum, v.a., take.

capr-a, -ae, F., a she-goat.

captiv-us, -i, M., a captive, prisoner.

capt-us, -a, -um, p.p. of capio, taken, captured, influenced, charmed.

cāp-ut, -itis, N., head; chief city.

carc-er, -ēris, M., a prison; pl., barriers of a race-course.

cārin-a, -ae, F., hull of a vessel, keel.

carm-en, -inis, N., song.

cāro, carnis, F., flesh.

carp-o, -ēre, -si, -tum, v.a., pluck.

carr-us, -i, M., a waggon, cart.

cār-us, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.

cās-a, -ae, F., a cottage.

cāsēus, -i, M., cheese.

Cassivēlaun-us, -i, M., Cassivelaunus, or Casswallon, the able commander-in-chief of the British army opposed to Caesar.

castell-um, -i, N., a fortress.

castr-um, -i, N., a hut, fort; in pl. **castr-a**, -orum, a camp; **locare castra**, ponere castra, to pitch a camp; **castra munire**, to fortify a camp.

cāsū, abl. used as adv., by chance.

cāsus, ūs, [cādo], M., chance.

cātēn-a, -ae, F., chain.

Catlin-a, -ae, M., Catiline, a corrupt Roman noble.

caus-a, -ae, F., cause, reason.

causā, for the sake of, on account of (with the genitive); **frigoris depellendi causā**, for the purpose of driving away the cold.

cāvēo, cāvēre, cāvi, cautum, v.a., take precaution.

cāv-um, -i, N., cave.

cēdo, cēdēre, cessi, cessum, v.int., go, yield.

cēlebr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, celebrate.

cēler, cēlēris, cēlēre, adj., swift; comp. **cēlorior**, sup. **cēlorrimus**.

cēlērī-as, -ātis, F., [celer], swiftness, speed.

cēlērīter, adv. swiftly, quickly.

cēl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., conceal, hide.

cēn-a, -ae, F., dinner, feast.

Cenīmagnī, -ōrum, M., a British tribe of Suffolk who surrendered to Caesar.

cens-ēo, -ēre, -ti, -um, v.a., think, consider.

centum, num. adj., hundred.

centūrī-o, -ōnis, [centum], M., a commander of a centuria or division of one hundred men; a centurion.

cēpērunt, from capio.

cerno, cernēre, crēvi, crētum, v.a., see, perceive.

certām-en, -inis, N., conflict, battle.

certe, adv., at least, certainly.

cer-tus, -a, -um, adj., certain, fixed, true; **certiorem facere**, to inform; **certior fieri**, to be informed.

cervus, -i, M., deer, stag.

cēter-us, -a, -um, (nom. sing. masc. not found), *the other*.

clb-us, -i, M., *food, nourishment*.

Cicēr-o, -ōnis, M., Cicero; (Marcus Tullius Cicero, the most illustrious of Roman writers; lived 106 B.C.—43 B.C.).

cicōni-a, ae, F., *a stork*.

cingo, cingere, cixi, cinctum, v.a., *surround*.

circā, adv. and prep. with acc., (see circum), *about, around, in the neighborhood of*.

circiter, adv. with numeral adjs., (see circum), *nearly, about*; **circiter decem**, *about ten*.

circūit-us, ūs, [circum+eo, go], M., *circumference, circuit*.

circum, prep. with acc. [circus, a circle], *around, in the neighborhood of*; **circum Aquileiam**, *in the neighborhood of Aquileia*.

circumclūdo, ěre, clusi, clusum (claudio, shut), *enclose*.

circum-do, -dāre, dēdi, dātum (circum+do), v.a., *place around, surround*; **urbem muro circumdare**, or **urbi murum circumdare**, *to surround the city with a wall, or to place a wall around the city*.

circum-dūco, -ducēre, -duxi, -ductum [circum+duco, lead], v.a., *lead around, draw around*.

circum-ĕo, -ĭre, -ĭvi (II), -ĭtum (circum+eo, go), v.a., *go around, surround*.

circum-fundo, -fundēre, fūdī, -fūsum [circum+fundo, pour], *pour around*; in pass. *surround, hem in*; *crowd around*.

circum-sto, stāre, stēti, no supine [circum+sto, stand], v. intr., *to stand around, besiege*.

circum-vēnĭo, -vēnĭre, -vēnĭ, -ventum [circum+venio, to come], v. a., *to come around, beset, surround*.

cis, prep. (with acc.), *on this side of*.

cīterĭ-or, -oris, adj. (p. 59, 2), *on this side, hither*; **Gallia cīterĭor**, *Gaul on this side of the Alps*.

cĭto, adv., *quickly*; super. **cĭtissĭme**.

citrā, prep. with acc. [cis], *on this side of*.

cĭvil-is, -e, [civis], adj. *belonging to citizens, civil*; **bellum cĭvile**, *a civil war*.

cĭv-is, -is, M. or F., *citizen*.

cĭvĭt-as, -ātis [civis], F., *a state, commonwealth*.

clād-es, -is, F., *defeat, disaster*.

clam, [cēlo], adv., *secretly*.

clām-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., *call or shout*; **est clamatum**, *a shout was raised* (p. 164).

clām-ĭto, -ĭtāre, -ĭtāvĭ, -ĭtātum, v. intr., *shout, exclaim*.

clām-or, -is, M., *a shout*.

clār-us, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear, distinguished*.

class-is, -is, F., *a fleet*.

claudio, claudēre, clausi, clausum, v. a., *shut*.

clēmētĭ-a, -ae, F., [clēmēns, kind], *kindness, mercy*.

clĭ-ens, -entis [= cluens from clueo, hear], M. or F., *a dependent, vassal*.

cliv-us, I, M., *a slope*.

coactus. See cōgo.

co-ĕo, -ĭre, -ĭvi (II), -ĭtum [co (=cum)+eo, go], *come together, assemble, meet*.

coepĭ, coepisse, (p. 145), *begin, began*.

coercēo, -ercēre, ercēi, -ercētum, v. a., *check, restrain*.

cōgītāt-ĭo, -ĭōnis, F., *thinking, reflection, deliberation*.

cōgĭto, āre, etc., *think*.

cognātĭ-o, -ōnis, F. [con+(g)nascor, to be born], F., *relationship, kindred*.

co-gnosco, -gnosĕre, -gnōvi, -gnitum [co=cum+(g)nosco, know], v.a., *know, become acquainted with, learn, ascertain* (145, 2).

cōgo, cogēre, cōgĭ, cōactum [con (=cum)+ago], *to drive together, collect, compel, oblige*.

cōhor-s, -tis, F., *a cohort, the tenth part of a Roman legion*. See legio.

cōhort-or, -ārĭ, -ātus sum, v. dep., *exhort, encourage, animate, urge*.

collaud-o (con, intensive+laudo), -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *praise*.

col-lĭgo, -lĭgēre, -lĭgĭ, -lectum [con (=cum)+lego], v.a., *collect*.

coll-is, -is, M., *a hill*.

col-lōco, -lōcāre, -lōcāvĭ, -lōcātum [col (=cum)+loco, place], *station*.

cōlo, cōlēre, colūi, cultum, v.a., *cultivate, till*; *honor, worship*.

cōlōnĭ-a, ae (cōlo), *colony*.

cōl-or, -ōris, M., *color*.

cōm-a, ae, F., *hair*.

cōm-es, -ĭtis, M. [com (=cum)+eo, go], *a companion on a journey*.

cōmĭtor, āri, ātus sum [comes], *attend, be a companion to*.

commēat us, -ūs [com (=cum) + mēo, go], M., provisions, supplies.

commēmōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a. [com (=cum) + mēmoro, call to mind], call to mind, mention, relate.

commilito, -ōnis [com (= cum) + miles], M., fellow-soldier, comrade.

com-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [com (=cum) + mitto], v.a., join; entrust; cause that; **proelium committere**, to begin a battle.

commōdum, -i [commōdus], N., convenience, advantage, profit, convenience.

commōdus, -a, -um [com (=cum) + modus, measure=having full measure], adj., convenient, favorable, fit, easy.

commōr-or, -āri, ātus sum [con (= cum) + mōror, delay], v.a., stay, linger, remain.

com-mōvēo, -mōvēre, -mōvi, -mōtum [com (=cum) + mōvēo], v.a., agitate, disturb, alarm.

commūnic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [com-munis], v.a., share with, communicate, impart.

commūn-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum [com (= cum) + munio], v.a., fortify on all sides; **communire castella**, to erect forts.

commūn-is, -e [com (+ cum) + munus], adj., common, in general; **communi consilio**, by common consent.

commūtātī-o, -ōnis [com (= cum) + mūtō], F., change.

commūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [com (=cum) + muto], v.a., change, alter; exchange, abandon.

compār-o, -āre, -āvi, ātum 1. [com (=cum) + paro, prepare], get ready, collect; **copias comparāre**, collect forces, 2. [com + par], compare.

compello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum [con, together, + pello, drive], v.a., drive together, force.

com-pēr-īo, -īre, -ī, -tum, find out.

com-plēo, -plere, -plēvi, -plētum [con + pleo, fill], v.a., fill up, fill; complete, occupy.

com-plūres, -plūra and plūria [con + plus], adj. pl., several, very many.

com-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsi, -pōsitum [com + pono], v.a., put together, or in order, settle.

comport-o, -āre, -āvi, ātum [con + porto], bring together, collect.

com-prēhendo, -prēhendere, prēhendi, -prehensum [con + prehendo, seize], v.a., catch hold of, catch, seize.

cōnāt-um, -i, N. [conor], attempt.

cōnāt-us, -ūs, M. [conor], attempt.

con-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [con + cedo, yield], v.a., yield, grant, allow.

con-cīdo, -cīdere, -cidi, [con + cado, fall, perish], fall completely or heavily, fall together.

concili-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, win over, gain [con, to a point + cio, move].

concili-um, -i, meeting, assembly, council; **per c.**, in the national assembly.

conclām-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con + clāmo, shout], v. intr., shout, or cry aloud, call out.

conclāmatur est (p. 164), a shout was raised

con-curro, -currere, -curri, or cū-curri, -cursum [con + curro, run], v. intr., run together, rush, have recourse to; **concursum est eo**, a rush is made to that point.

concur-sus, -ūs [con + curro, run], M., assembly, attack, charge.

condemn-o, -āre, -āvi, ātum, [con + damno], v.a., condemn, sentence.

condici-o, -ōnis [con + do, put], F., condition, terms.

condit-or, -ōris [condo, found], M., founder.

con-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum [con + do, place], v.a., found.

con-dōno, -dōnāre, -dōnāvi, dōnātum [con + dōno], v.a., give up, forgive, pardon.

con-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -ductum [con + duco], v.a., bring together, collect, hire.

confectus, p.p. See conficio.

con-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, collātum [con + fēro], v.a., bring together, gather, collect, convey, ascribe to; **se conferre**, betake one's self.

confestim (confero), adv., immediately.

con-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum [con + facio], v.a., do thoroughly, complete, finish; **bello confecto**, when the war was over.

con-fido, -fidere, -fisis sum [con + fido, trust], v. intr., trust firmly, rely upon.

confirm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con + firmus, strong], v.a., strengthen, establish, cheer up.

con-fitēor, -fitēri, -fessus sum [con + fateor, confess], v.dep., confess, acknowledge, avow.

con-fligo, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum

[con+fligo, strike], v.a., strike together, dash down, contend, engage with.

con-fodio, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus [con+foodio, dig], v.a., dig, pierces through.

con-grédior, -grédi, -gressus sum [con+gradior, walk], v.dep., meet, contend, charge; **inter se congrédi**, charge each other.

con-icío, -icere, -icéi, -iectum [con+iacio, throw], v.a., throw together, throw, hurl; **in fugam conicere**, to put to flight; **in fugam se conicere**, betake one's self to flight; **culpam in aliquem conicere**, cast the blame on some one.

con-iunctim [con+iungo, join], adv., jointly, in common.

con-iungo, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctum [con+iungo, join], v.a., unite, join; **civitatem coniungere**, to form a state.

con-iuratio, -iuratiōis [con+iūro, swear], F., a conspiracy, league.

con-iūro, -iurare, -iuravi, -iuratum [con+iūro, swear], v.a., swear together, conspire.

con-or, -ari, -atus sum, v. dep., try, attempt; **conor ut faciam**, I try to do it (p. 181, 3).

conquiro, -ere, -conquisivi, -conquisitum, [con+intens+quaero, seek], seek out.

con-scendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum [con+scando, climb], v.a., mount, ascend, climb; **navem or in navem conscendere**, to embark.

con-scientia, -scientiae [con+scientia, knowledge], F., consciousness, knowledge, feeling.

con-scisco, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum [con+scisco, approve], v.a., decree, appoint; **sibi mortem consciscere**, to commit suicide.

consciūs, -a, -um [con+scio, know], adj., conscious, accessory to.

con-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [con+scribo, write], v.a., enroll, levy troops.

consecro, -are, -avi, -atum [con+sacer, sacred], consecrate.

consédissent, from **consido**.

consens-us, -us [con+sentio, think], M., consent, agreement.

con-sentio, -sentire, -sensi, -sensum [con+sentio, think], v.a., agree, conspire.

con-séquor, -sequi, -secutus or -secutus sum [con+sequor, follow], v. dep., overtake, gain, get.

con-séro, -serere, -serui, -sertum

[con+sero, join], join, unite, bring together; **proelium** (or **pugnam**) **conserere**, to engage in battle.

conserv-o, -are, -avi, -atum [con+servo, keep], v.a., save, maintain.

con-sido, -sistere, -sedi, -sessum [con+sido, settle], v. intr., sit; settle, halt.

consili-um, -i, N., plan, design; wisdom, prudence.

consimil-is, -e [con+similis, adj.], very like.

con-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum [con+sisto, set, place], v. intr., stand; make a stand; consist of; **consistit in carne**, it consists of flesh.

consol-or, -ari, -atus sum [con+solor, comfort], v. dep., console, comfort, cheer.

conspect-us, -us, [con+specio, see], M., sight, presence.

con-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [con+specio, see], v.a., observe, see, perceive.

conspic-or, -ari, -atus sum [con+specio, see], v. dep., see, espy.

constanter, [con+sto, stand], adv., steadily, resolutely, uniformly.

constantia, -ae, [con+sto, stand], F., firmness, constancy, resolution.

con-stituo, -stituire, -stitui, -stitutum [con+statuo], v.a., set up; appoint, arrange, determine, make; **navem constituere**, station a ship.

con-sto, -stare, -stiti, -statum, [con+sto], v. intr., stand together, consist of. Impersonal **constat**, it is admitted (p. 162).

con-suesco, -suescere, -suevi, -suetum [con+suesco], v. intr., become accustomed. In perf., to be accustomed.

consuetudo, -inis [consuesco], F., custom, habit, usage; collectively, customs.

consueverant. See **consuesco**.

consul, -is, M., consul. The consuls were the chief magistrates at Rome. There were two chosen annually.

consulat-us -us [consul], M., consulship, office of consul.

con-sulo, -sulare, -sulai, -sultum, v.a., deliberate, plan; **alicui consulere**, to consult for one's interest; **aliquem consulere**, ask one's advice; **in aliquem consulere**, to take measures against one.

consulto [consulo], adv., on purpose, designedly; often **de consulto**.

consult-um, -i, [consulo], N., decree, resolution, decision.

con-sumo, -sumere, -sumpsi, -sumptum [con + sumo, *take*], v.a., *spend, waste*; **tempus consumere**, to waste time.

con-surgo, surgere, -surrexi, -surrectum [con + surgo, *rise*], v. intr., *rise in a body, arise*.

con-tāgio, -tāgiōnis [con + tango, *touch*], F., *contact*.

con-temno, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum [con + temno, *despise*], v.a., *despise, hold in contempt*.

con-temptus, temptus [contemno], M., *contempt, scorn*; **esse contemptui**, to be an object of contempt, scorn.

con-tendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum [con + tendo, *strive to reach*], v.a. and n., *strive for, hasten to, push forward; fight, strive*.

con-tenti-o, -ōnis [con + tendo], F., *struggling; struggle, contest*.

content-us, -a, -um, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4), *content with*.

cor-testor, -testari, -testatus sum [con + testis, *a witness*], v. dep., *call to witness, pray to*.

con-texo, -texere, -texi, -textum [con + texo, *weave*], v.a., *weave, bind together*.

con-ticesco, -ticescere, -ticiui [con + taceo, *be silent*], v.n., *be silent*.

continen-s, -tis [con + teneo, *hold*]. Properly pres. part. of contineo, used as an adj. with terra understood; lit., *the uninterrupted earth, i.e., the continent, mainland*.

continenter [con + teneo], adv., *constantly, incessantly*.

con-tinent-ia, -iae [con + teneo], F., *self-restraint*.

con-tinēo, -tinēre, -tiniui, -tentum [con + teneo], v.a., *hold together, bound, restrain; hem in; with se, keep together*.

con-tingo, -tingere, -tingi, -tactum [con + tango, *touch*], v.a., *touch, extend to, reach*. Impersonal: **contingit**, it happens (p. 182); **contingit ut**, it happens that.

con-tinūo [con + tero], adv., *immediately*.

con-tinūus, -tinūa, -tinūum [con + teneo], adj., *successive*.

con-tio, -tioniis [= conventio, from con + venio, *come*], F., *an assembly*.

contrā, prep. with acc. only, *against, opposite to*.

con-trāho, -trahere, -traxi, tractum [con + trāho, *draw*], v.a., *bring together, collect, assemble*.

contrāri-us, -a, -um [contra], adj., *opposite, contrary*.

controversi-a, ae, F., *dispute*.

contumēli-a, -ae, F., *insult*.

con-vālesco, -vālescere, -vālui [con + valeo, *be strong*], v.n., *grow strong, recover*.

convall-is, -is [con + vallis, *valley*], F., *valley*.

con-vēho, -vēhere, -vexi, -vectum [con + veho, *carry*], v.a., *bring together, convey*.

con-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum [con + venio, *come*], v.a. and n., *come together, assemble; with acc., interview*.

convēnit, impersonal, *it becomes*.

convēntus, -ventus [con + venio, *come*], M., *assembly, meeting, court*.

con-verto, -vertere, -verti, -versum [con + verto, *turn*], v.a., *turn, turn about; convertere in fugam, put to flight*.

con-vinco, -vincere, -vici, -victum [con + vinco, *conquer*], v.a., *conquer completely, prove guilty, convict; establish*.

con-vōco, -vōcare, -vōcavi, -vōcātum [con + vōco, *call*], v.a., *summon, assemble*.

co-ōrior, -ōriri, -ortus sum [con + orior, *rise*], v. dep., *arise, spring up, break out*.

cōpi-a, -ae [con + opis, *plenty*], F., *abundance, plenty, quantity; copiae* (pl.), *forces, troops*.

cōpiōs-us, -a -um [copia], adj., *well supplied, rich, wealthy*.

cōquo, cōquere, coxi, coctum, v.a., *cook*.

cor, cordis, N., *heart; esse cordi*, be agreeable, dear to.

cōram [con + os, *face*], prep. with abl., *face to face, in presence of; coram populo*, in presence of the people.

cor n-u, -ūs, N., *a horn, wing*.

cōrōn-a, -ae, F., *crown*.

Cōrīn-th-us, -i, F., *Corinth*.

corp-us, -oris, N., *body*.

cor-rīpio, -rīpere, -rīpiui, -reptum [con + rapio, *seize*], v.a., *seize violently, carry off*.

cor-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum [con + rumpo, *break*], v.a., *break to pieces; destroy, ruin; corrupt*.

cras, adv., *to-morrow*.

crass-us, -a, -um, adj., *thick, coarse*.

Crass-us, -i, M., *Crassus*, a Roman name.

crāt-es, -is, F., *wicker-work, hurdle*.

crēb-er, -ra, -rum, adj., *thick, numerous, frequent.*

crē-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum, v.a. and n., *trust, believe, think, suppose* (p. 164).

crem-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *burn.*

crē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *make, elect, choose, appoint* (p. 90, 2).

cre-sco, crescēre, crevi, crētum, v.n., *grow, grow up, increase.*

crīm-en, -inis, N., *charge.*

crī-nis, -nis, F., *hair.*

crūciāt-us, -ūs [crux, *cross*], *torture.*

crūdēlis, -e [crūdus, *bloody*], adj., *cruel, hard-hearted.*

crūdēlīt-as, -ātis [crudelis], F., *cruelly, barbarity.*

crūdēlī-ter [crudelis], adv. *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, N., *leg.*

cūb-ile, -ilis [cūbo, *lie down*], N., *bed.*

cuius, p. 126.

cuiusque, from quisque.

cuiusvis, from quivis.

culm-en, -inis, N., *height, summit, top.*

culp-a, -ae, F., *blame, fault.*

culp-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *blame, find fault with.*

cult-us, -ūs [colo], M., *cultivation mode of life, civilisation*; **pro c.**, *considering their civilisation.*

cum, prep., with abl. only, *with, along with.* Enclitic with me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quibus: as, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quibuscum (p. 105, 8).

cum, (for quum), *when, after, since, although* (p. 203).

cum or **cum primum**, *as soon as*; **cum . . . tum** both *and, not only . . . but also.*

cunctātī-o, -ōnis, F., *delay.*

cunctor, -ari, -ātus sum, v. dep., *delay, hesitate, doubt.*

cunct-us, -a, -um, [con + iungo, *join*], adj., *all together, all.*

cūpid-ō [cupido], adv., *eagerly.*

cūpidīt-as, -ātis [cupido], F., *an ardent desire, passion.*

cūpid-us, -ā, -um [cupio], *desirous of* (p. 61, 3).

cūp-īo, -ēre, -i or -ī, -itum, v.a., *long for, wish, desire.*

cūr, adv., *why? for what purpose?*

cūr-a, -ae, F., *care.*

Cūres, -ium, F., pl., *Cures, a Sabine town.*

cūrīa, -ae, F., *senate-house.*

cūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *care for.*

Cūrī-us, -i, M., *Curius, a Roman name.*

curro, currēre, curre, cursum, v.n., *run*; *curritur, they run* (p. 164, 2).

curr-us, -ūs, [curro], M., *a chariot.*

curv-us, -a, -um, adj., *crooked, bending, winding.*

cur-s-us, -ūs [curro], M., *speed, course,*

custōdī-a, -ae [custos], F., *guard, watch.*

custōdī-o, -ire, -i, -itum [custos], *guard, watch.*

custos, -ōdis, M., *guard, watch.*

D.

Dācus, -i, M., *a Dacian.* The Dacians occupied the S.E. of the modern kingdom of Austria.

damn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [damnum, *fine, damage*], v.a., *condemn, pass sentence upon*; **capitis damnare**, *condemn to death.*

damn-um, -i, N., *loss.*

dātus, from do.

dē, prep. with abl., *of, from, concerning, after*; **de tertia vigilia**, *after the third watch.*

dē-a, -ae, F., *goddess* (p. 6, 2).

dēbēo, debēre, debui, debitum [de + habeo], v.a., *owe.* When joined with the inf. of another verb, *ought* (p. 162, 4, note.)

dē-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessi, -cessum [de, *from* + cēdo, *go*], v.n., *retire, leave, depart from*; *die.*

dēcēm, num. adj., *ten.*

de-cerno, -cernēre, -cevi, -crētum [de, *intensive* + cerno, *decide*], *decide, determine.*

dē-certo, -certāre, -certāvi, -certātum [de, *intensive* + certo, *contend*], v.n., *fight earnestly, contend.*

dēcet, dēcēre, dēcēt, no supine, v. impers., *it is becoming.*

dēcīm-us, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*

dēcīpī-o, -cīpēre, -cēpi, -ceptum [de, *intensive* + capio, *take*], v.a., *catch, deceive, cheat.*

dē-clāro, -clārāre, -clārāvi, -clārātum [de, *intensive* + clārus, *clear*], v.a., *make clear, declare, announce.*

dē-clivis, -clive [de + clivus, *slope*], *sloping.*

dēcōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [dēcet], v.a., *adorn.*

dēcrē-tum, -ti, N., *decree, decision; decreto stare, abide by the decision.*

dēc-us, -ōris [dēcet]. N., *what is becoming, ornament, honor.*

dē-curro, -currere, -cūcurri or curri, -cursum [de, down + curro, run], *run down, hasten, move off.*

dē-dēcus, -dēcōris [de + decus, honor]. N., *disgrace, dishonor.*

dē-ditio, -ditōnis [dēdo], F., *surrender; accipere or recipere in deditio-nem, allow to surrender; venire in deditio-nem, surrender.*

dē-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum [de + do], v.a., *give up, surrender.*

dē-dūco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum [de + duco, lead], v.a., *lead away, withdraw, induce, bring; navem deducere, to launch a vessel; uxorem deducere (or dūcere), to bring home a bride, marry.*

dē-fendo, -fendere, -fendi, -fensum [de, from + fendo, strike], *ward off, repel, guard.*

dē-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum [de + fero], v.a., *carry down, away; report, announce; confer.*

de-fervesco, -fervescere, fervi, no supine [de, from + ferveo, boil], v.n., *to cool down.*

de-fessus, -fessa, -fessum [pf. part. of defetiscor, grow weary], adj., *wearied, worn out, exhausted.*

dē-ficio, -ficere, -feci, no supine [de + facio, = untie], v.n., *fail, revolt.*

dē-flāgro, -flāgrare, -flāgravi, -flāgratum [de, down or completely + flagro, to burn], v.n., *be burned down.*

dē-fūgio, -fūgere, fugi, -fūgitum [de + fugio], v.n., *avoid.*

de-icio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum [de + iacio, throw], v.a., *throw down, cast down; de spe delectus, disappointed in their expectations.*

deinceps [deinde + capio], adv., *one after the other, in succession, in turn.*

dēinde [de + inde], adv., *thereafter, afterwards, then, next.*

delatus. See *defero*.

dēlect-o, -āre, -avi, -ātum, v.a., *delight, please.*

dēlect-us, -ūs [de + lego], M., *selection; levy of soldiers.*

dēlēo, -delere, -delēvi, -delētum, v.a., *destroy, annihilate, wipe out.*

dē-ligo, -ligare, -ligāvi, -ligātum [de + ligo, bind], v.a., *fasten, bind at anchor.*

dē-ligo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum [de + lego, choose], v.a., *choose, select, levy.*

dēmentī-a, -ae [de, out of, + mens, mind], F., *madness.*

dē-mēto, -metere, -messui, -messum [de + meto, cut down], v.a., *cut down, reap.*

dē-migro, -migrare, -migrāvi, -migrātum [de + migro, depart], v.n., *move from, depart, migrate.*

dē-minuo, -minuere, -minui, -minutum [de + minuo, lessen], v.a., *lessen, take away from, impair.*

de-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [de + mitto, send], v.a., *send down; se animo demittere, to lose heart.*

dēmo, -dēmre, -dempsi, -demptum [de + emo, take], v.a., *take down or off, remove.*

dē-monstro, -monstrare, -monstrāvi, -monstratum [de + monstro, show], v.a., *point out, shew, state, mention; explain.*

dē-mōror, -mōrari, -mōratus sum [de + moror, delay], v. dep., *delay, linger, hinder.*

dēmum, adv., *at length, at last, finally, only.*

dēnāri-us, -i, M., a Roman silver coin, equivalent to about twenty cents.

dēn-i, -ae, -a, num. distrib. adj. (= dec-ni), *ten each, ten at a time, by tens, ten.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally; in a word, in short.*

dēns-us, -a, -um, adj., *thick, closely packed, dense, crowded.*

dēns, dentis, M., *a tooth.*

dē-nuntio, -nuntiāre, -nuntiāvi, -nuntiātum [de + nuntio], v.a., *announce, declare, threaten, order.*

de-pello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum [de + pello], v.a., *drive away, dislodge, turn aside.*

dē-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsi, -pōsitum [de, down, + pono, place], v.a., *lay aside, give up.*

dē-pōpulo, -pōpulari, -pōpulatus sum [de + populo], v. dep., *lay waste, plunder.*

dē-porto, -portare, -portāvi, -portātum [de + porto], v.a., *carry off, remove.*

dērōg-o, -āre, -avi, -ātum [de + rogo], v. n., *withdraw, take away, weaken.*

de-scendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum [de + scando, climb], v.a., *come down, descend.*

de-sēro, -sēcere, -sēruī, -sertum [de, negative + sero, join], v.a., *leave, desert.*

dēsērt-or, -ōris [desero], M., *deserter.*

dēsīdēr-o, -āre, -avi, -ātum, v.a., *wish for, want, long for.*

dēsīdī-a, -ae [de+sedeo], F., *sloth, indolence, idleness.*

de-silio, -silire, -silūi, -sultum [de+salio, leap], v.a., *leap down, dismount.*

de-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, stitum [de+sisto, stand], v.a., *stand from, leave off, cease from; proelio desistere, to cease fighting; sententiā desistere, give up the notion.*

de-spēro, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātum [de+spero], v.n. and a., *give up hope, despair.*

dē-spicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [de, down, and specio, see], v.a., *look down upon, despise.*

de-spondēo, spondere, -spondi, -sponsum [de+spondeo, promise], v.a., *promise, betroth.*

de-stringo, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictum [de+stringo, strip], v.a., *draw, draw the sword, unsheath.*

dē-sum, -esse, -fui [de+sum], v.n., *be wanting, fail, lacking.*

dē-sūper, [de, from, and sūper, above], adv., *from above.*

dētērior, -is, comp. adj., *inferior, worse; superl., deterrimus; no positive.*

dē-terrēo, -terrere, -terrui, -territum [de+terreo, frighten], v.a., *frighten off, prevent, deter; deterrere ne or quā, prevent from (185, 2).*

dē-tinēo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum [de+teneo, hold], v.a., *keep back, stop, delay, hinder.*

dē-trimentum, -trimenti [de+tero, wear away], N., *injury, loss, damage.*

deturbo, are, etc., *dislodge.*

dē-us, -i, M. (p. 13, 2), *a god.*

dē-vinco, vincere, -vici, -victum [de+vinco, conquer], v.a., *conquer completely, overcome.*

devolvo, -ere, -volvi, -volūtum, roll down.

dē-vōro, vōrāre, vōrāvī, vōrātum [de+vōro, devour], v.a., *devour.*

devōvōo, -vōvere, -vovi, -vōtum [de+voveo], v.a., *devote.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, on the right hand or side.*

dextera or **dextra**, often with manus understood, *the right hand.*

Diāna or **Diāna**, a e., F., *Diana, the goddess of hunting and archery.*

dic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *dedicate, devote, offer.*

dico, dicere, dixī, dictum, v.a., *say,*

speak, converse, tell, appoint; causam dicere, plead a cause.

dictāt-or, -ōris, M. [dico, appoint], dictator, a supreme magistrate appointed by the Romans only in seasons of emergency; his power was absolute, but lasted, at longest, only six months.

dict-um, -i, N., [dico], *a word, saying.*

dī-es, -ei, M. and F., *day.*

dif-fēro, differre, distūli, dilātum [dis, apart, + fero], v.a. and n., *carry different ways, spread, scatter; put off, delay; inter se differre, differ from each other.*

difficil-e, adv., *with difficulty.*

difficil-is, -e [dis, negative + facilis, easy], adj., *difficult, morose.* Comp. difficilior, sup. difficillimus.

difficult-as, -ātis [difficilis], F., *difficulty, trouble.*

dif-fido, -fidere, -fisis sum [dis, negative + fido, trust], v.n., *distrust, lack confidence in, despair of.*

dif-fundo, -fundere, -fudi, -fūsum [dis, apart, + fundo, scatter], v.a., *spread out in all directions, extend.*

digit-us, -i, M., *a finger.*

dignit-as, -ātis [dignus], *worth, greatness, merit, rank.*

dign-us, -a, -um, adj., *worthy of, worth, deserving* (p. 64, 4).

dī-iūdico, -iudicare, -iudicavi, -iudicātum [dis + iudico], v.a. and n., *decide, determine.*

dilīgen-s, -tis [dis + lego, pick], adj., *careful, attentive, diligent.*

dilīgenter [dilīgens], adv., *carefully, diligently.*

dilīgenti-a, -ae [dis + lego], F., *diligence, care.*

dī-līgo, -līgere, -lexi, -lectum [dis + lego], v.a., *choose from a number, value highly, esteem, love.*

dī-mīco, micāre, micāvī and micui, micātum [dis+mico, flash], v.n., *fight, contend.*

dī-mīdius, -mīdia, -midium [dis + medius, half], *half; as a noun, dimidium, half.*

dī-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [dis + mitto], v.a., *send in different directions, dismiss, send off.*

Dionŷi-us, -i, M., *Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse.*

direct-us, -a, -um, p.p. of dirigo [dis, apart and rego, set straight], used as an adj., *straight, perpendicular.*

dis, [or, abbreviated, **di**], inseparable prefix, *apart, asunder, in pieces*.

dis, adj., *rich*, comp. **ditior**, sup. **ditissimus** (p. 57, 4).

Dis, Ditis, M., *Pluto*, god of the lower world.

dis-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [dis+cēdo] v.n., *depart, withdraw, leave, forsake*; **ab armis discedere**, *lay down one's arms*.

discess-us, -ūs [discedo], M., *departure, marching off*.

disciplin-a, -ae [disco], F., *learning, instruction, training, system*.

discipul-us, -i [disco], M., *pupil*.

disco, discere, didici, no supine, v.a. and n., *learn*.

dis-crimen, -crīminis [discerno], N., *risk, danger, crisis*.

dis-īcio, -īcere, -īcī, īctum [dis+īcio] v.a., *drive asunder, disperse, scatter, rout*.

dis-pār, -pāris [dis, negative + par, equal], adj., *unequal, unlike, different*.

dis-plicēo, -plicere, -plicui, -plectum [dis, negative + placeo, please], v.n. (with dat., p. 105, 9), *displease*.

dis-pūtatio, -pūtatiōnis [disputo], F., *discussion, debate*.

dis-puto, -putāre, -putāvī, -putātum [dis+puto, to prune], v.n., *treat of, investigate, discuss, argue*.

dissensi-o, -ōnis [dis+sentio, think], F., *difference of opinion, disagreement*.

dis-sentio, -sentire, -sensī, -sensum [dis+sentio], v.n., *differ in opinion, disagree*.

dis-similis, -simile [dis, negative + similis, like], adj., *unlike*; comp. *dis-similior*, superl. *dissimillimus*, with dat. (p. 60, 2).

dis-simūlo, -simulāre, -simulāvī, -simulātum [dis, negative + simūlo, pretend], v.a. and n., *disguise, conceal*.

dis-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum [dis, apart + solvo, loosen], v.a., *break down*; **pontem dissolvere**, *break down a bridge*.

di-sto, -stāre, no perf., no supine [dis+sto], v.n., *stand apart, be separated*.

diū, adv., *long, for a long time*; comp. *diutius*, superl. *diutissime*; **quam diutissime**, *as long as possible*.

diurnus, a, um [diu], adj., *by day*.

div-es, -itis, adj., *rich*; comp. *divitior*; superl., *divitissimus*; contracted into **dis**.

Divic-o, -ōnis, M., *Dinico*, a chief of the Helvetii who led the army against

Cassius in 107 B.C., and headed an embassy to Caesar, B.C. 58.

di-vido, -videre, -vīsi, vīsum, v.a., *divide, separate*.

divin-us, -a, -um [divus, divine], adj., *divine, sacred*; **res divinae**, *religious rites*.

do, -dāre, -dēdi, -dātum, v.a., *give, give up, furnish, allow*; in **fugam dare**, *put to flight*; **operam dare**, *take pains*; **manus dare**, *yield*.

dōcēo, dōcere, dōcui, doctum, v.a., *teach, inform, point out*.

doctrin-a, -ae [doceo], F., *learning*.

doct-us, -a, -um [p.p. of doceo], adj., *learned, versed, experienced*.

dōlēo, -dolere, -dōlui, -dōlūtum, v.a. and n., *feel pain, lament, be sorry for*.

dōl-or, -ōris [doleo], M., *pain, grief, distress, vexation*.

dōl-us, -i, M., *fraud, deceit, trickery*.

dōmestic-us, a, um [domus, home], adj., *home, at home, internal*; **bellum domesticum**, *civil war*.

dōmicili-um, -i, [domus], N., *dwelling, abode*.

dōmināt-us, -ūs [dominus], M., *tyranny*.

dōmīn-us, -i, M., *master, lord*.

dōmo, dōmare, dōmāi, dōmītum, v.a., *tame, subdue*.

dōm-us, -ūs, F., *house, home* (p. 62).

dōnec, conj., *till, until, while* (p. 201, 3).

dōn-o, -āre, -āvi, ātum [do], *give, present*.

dōn-um, -i, [do], N., *gift, present*.

dorm-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, v.n., *sleep, rest*.

dos, dōtis [do], F., *dowry, marriage-portion*.

Druid-ēs, -um, M., *the Druids*, priests of the Celtic Kelt.

dūbitāti-o, -ōnis [dubito], F., *hesitation, doubt*.

dūbit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *doubt, hesitate*.

dūbi-us, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain*; **non dubium est quin**, *there is no doubt that* (p. 183, 6).

dūcent-i, -ae, -a [duo+centum], num. adj., *two hundred*.

dūco, dūcere, duxi, ductum, v.a., *lead, guide*; *think, consider*; in **matrimonium ducere** or **uxorem ducere**, *to marry* [said of a man]; **nubere**, *of a woman*.

dulc-is, -e, adj., *sweet.*
dum, conj., *while, until* (p. 201); *provided that* (p. 202).
dummōdo, conj., *provided that, if only* (p. 194, 3).
dū-o, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two* (p. 68).
dūōdecim [duo+decem], num. adj., *twelve.*
dūōdecīmus, -decīma, -decīmum [duodecim], num. adj., *twelfth.*
dūō-de-vigintī, num. adj., *eighteen.*
dūō-dēnī, -dēnae, -dēna [duo+dēni, by tens], adj., distrib. num., *twelve at a time, by twelves.*
dū-plex, -plicis, adj., *double, two-fold.*
dūrīti-a, -ae [dūrus, hard], F., *hardness, hardship.*
dūr-us, -a, -um, adj., *hard, severe, difficult.*
dux, dūcis, [dūco, lead], M., *leader, general, guide.*

E.

ē [e before consonants, ex generally before vowels], prep. with abl. only, from, out of, in accordance with, in consequence of, on; ex una parte, on one side; ex equo, on horseback; ex usu, of advantage; ex itinere, on the march.
ēā. See is.
ēā, adv. [properly abl. sing. fem. of is, supply parte or viā], there, on that side.
ē-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum [e + dico], v.a., *make known, command.*
ē-disco, -discere, -didici, no sup. [e + disco], v.a., *learn by heart, commit to memory.*
ēdīt-us, -a, -um, p.p. of ēdo, used as an adj., *elevated, high.*
ēdo, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditum [e, from + do place], v.a., *give forth, publish, exhibit.*
ēdo, ēdere, ēdi, ēsum, v.a., *eat.*
ē-dōcēo, -dōcere, -dōcēi, -doctum [e + doceo], v.a., *teach, instruct, inform, tell.*
ē-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -ductum [e + duco], v.a., *lead out, lead forth, draw out.*
ēdūc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.a., *educate, bring up, rear.*
ēf-fēro, efferre, extūli, elātum [ex + fero], v.a., *carry forth, bring out; publish, spread abroad.*
ēf-fīcio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [ex + facio], v.a., *form, bring about, accomplish, effect, produce.*

ēf-fundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusum [ex + fundo], v.a., *pour out, squander; se effundere, to spread out.*
ēf-fūgio, -fugere, -fūgi, -fūgitum [ex + fugio], v.a., *escape.*
ēgen-s, -tis, adj. [pres. part. of ēgeo], *needy.*
ēgēn-us, -a, -um [egeo], adj., *needy, in want, destitute.*
ēgēo, ēgere, ēgāi, no. sup., v.n., *be in need.*
ēgest-as, -ātis [egeo], F., *needy condition, poverty.*
ēgo, mēi, pron., *I; pl., nos; p. 104.*
ē-grēdior, -grēdi, -gressus sum [e + gradior, go], v. dep., *go out, come forth; e navibus egredi, to land, disembark.*
ēgrēgiūs [egregius], adv., *admirably, splendidly, well.*
ē-grēgi-us, -a, -um [e + grex, herd], adj., *eminent, marked, remarkable.*
ēgress-us, -ūs [egredior], M., *landing, disembarkation.*
ē-īcio, -icere, -icci, -iectum [e + iacio], v.a., *cast out, thrust out, expel; se eicere, rush out.*
eius, from is.
eiusdem, from idem.
eiusmodi [= eius + modi], of such a kind, of such a sort.
elātus, -a, -um [p.p. of efferro], adj., *exalted, high, lofty.*
ēlēgan-s, -tis, adj., *elegant.*
ēlēphant-us, -i, M., *an elephant.*
ēlōquentī-a, -ae [e + loquor], F., *eloquence.*
ē-ligo, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum [e + lego, choose], v.a., *choose out, select, choose.*
ēmo, ēmere, ēmi, emptum, v.a., *buy.*
ē-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [e + mitto, send], v.a., *send out.*
ēnim [a stronger form of nam, for; placed after the first emphatic word in its clause], conj., *for, in fact.*
ē-nuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [e + nuntio], v.a., *tell, reveal, report.*
ēō, adv., *thither, to that place, to such a degree; before comparatives, a correlative of quo (p. 195, 4): quō...ēō, the...the (=by how much...by that much).*
ēō, ire, ivi (or ii), itum, v.n., *go, pass, march.*
ēōdem [from idem], adv., *to the same place.*
ēphēsī-us, -a, -um, adj., *of or belonging to Ephesus.*

Ēphēs-us, -i, F., *Ephesus*, a city of Asia Minor.

ēpistol-a, -ae, F., *letter, epistle*.

ēpŭl-um, -i, N., *banquet, feast*; pl., *epulae*, fem., *meal*.

ēqu-es, -itis [equus], M., *a horseman, cavalry soldier*; pl., *equites, the cavalry*; also, *the knights*; **equitum magister**, *master of the horse, an office next to that of dictator*.

eques-ter, -tris, -tre [equus], adj., *belonging to horsemen, cavalry*.

ēquidem, adv., *truly, indeed*.

ēquitāt-us, -ūs [equus], M., *cavalry*.

ēqu-us, -i, M., *horse*.

erat, p. 24.

Eratosthē-es, -is, M., *Eratos-thenes*, a Greek born at Cyrēne in Africa, B.C. 276; librarian of the Alexandrian Library; died 192 B.C. He was a noted geographer and mathematician.

ērectus, -a, -um [p.p. of erigo], adj., *high*.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards*.

ergō, adv., *therefore, accordingly*.

ē-rīpīo, -rīpēre, -rīpŭl, -reptum [e + rapio], v.a., *snatch away, rescue*; **se eripere**, *escape*.

ērig-o, -ēre, -erexi, erectum (e + rego), *raise*.

ē-rūdīo, -rūdīre, -rūdīvi, (or -rūdīti) -rūdītum [e + rudis, unskilful], v.a., *to free from rudeness, instruct, educate*.

err-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.n., *wander; err, mistake, be wrong*.

ē-rumpo, -rumpēre, -rūpi, -ruptum [e + rumpo, break], v.n., *break out, sally, make a sortie*.

ē-rupti-o, -ōnis [erumpo], F., *sally, attack, sortie*.

essēdārī-us, -i [essēdum], M., *a charioteer*.

essēd-um, -i, N., *a war chariot*.

esset, p. 24.

et, conj., *and, also*; **et...et**, both...and.

ētiam [et + iam], adv., *also, even*.

etsi [et + si], conj., *although, even if* (p. 196).

Eur-us, -i, M., *east wind*.

ē-vādo, -vādēre, -vāsī, vāsum [e + vado, go], *go forth, escape from*.

ē-vēnio, -vēnīre, vēnī, ventum [e + venio, come], *come out of, happen*.

ē-vēnit, v. impers. (p. 182, 4), *it happens, it turns out*.

ē-ventus, -ventūs [evenio], M., *outcome, issue, result*.

ē-vertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum [e + verto], v.a., *overturn, drive out, destroy*.

ē-vōco, -vōcāre, -vōcāvī, -vōcātum [e + voco], v.a., *call out, summon*.

ex. See **ē**.

exāmīn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (exāmen, tongue of a balance), *weigh*.

ex-ānimo, ānīmāre, -ānīmāvī, -ānīmātum [ex + anima, life], v.a., *kill*.

ex-cēdo, cēdēre, -cessī, cessum [e + cēdo, go], v.n., *leave, withdraw, remove, depart*.

ex-cello, -cellēre, -cellūi, -celsum, v. n., *surpass, excel*.

excels-us, -a, -um, adj., *elevated, lofty, high*.

ex-cipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum [ex + capio], v.a., *take out, receive, encounter, catch*.

ex-citātus, -a, -um [p.p. of excito], *encouraged*.

ex-cito, citāre, citāvi, -citātum [ex + cito], v.a., *incite, arouse, stir up*.

excursio, -onis [ex + curro], F., *a running out, sally, sortie*.

ex-cūso, -cūsāre, -cūsāvī, -cūsātum [ex + causa], v.a., *excuse*.

exempl-um, -i, N., *an example, sample, pattern*.

ex-ēo, -īre, -īvi (or -ii), -ītum [ex + eo], v.n., *go out of, withdraw, leave*.

ex-ercēo, -ercēre, -ercūi, -ercītum [ex + erceo, keep busy], v.a., *exercise, practise, train*.

exercitātī-o, -ōnis [exerceo], F., *training, practice, exercise*.

exercitāt-us, -a, -um [exercito], adj., *trained, skilled*.

exercit-us, -ūs [exerceo], M., *a trained army, an army*.

ex-īgo, -īgēre, -ēgi, -actum [ex + ago], v.a., *drive out, pass the time*; **hieme exactā**, *at the end of winter*.

exili-um, i, N., *exile*.

exigūit-as, -ātis [exigo], F., *shortness*.

exigū-us, -a, -um [exigo], adj., *small, scanty*.

existimātī-o, -ōnis [existimo], F., *judgment, opinion, value*.

existim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ex + aestimo, value], v.a., *value, consider*.

exit-um, -i [ex + eo], N., *destruction*.

exit-us, -ūs [ex + eo], M., *conclusion, result, issue, event*.

exopt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ex+opto, wish], v.a., wish, desire.

ex-pēdio, -pēdire, -pēdīvi, pēditum [ex+pēs, foot=to free the feet], v.a., extricate, disengage; set free.

expēdit, impers., it is profitable, useful.

expēditī-o, -ōnis [expedio], F., an expedition, foray.

expēdit-us, -a, -um [p.p. of expedio], adj., lightly equipped, free, unincumbered, without baggage.

ex-pello, -pellere, -pūli, pulsum [ex+pello], v.a., drive out, expel.

expēriēti-a, -ae, [experior], F., experience, practice.

ex-pērior, -pēriī, -pertus sum [ex+perior (obsolete), try], v. dep., try, attempt.

ex-pers, -pertis, adj. (with abl.), free from, without (ex+pars).

ex-plōrāt-or, -ōris [explōro], M., scout, spy.

ex-plōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., search out, investigate, find out.

ex-pōno, -ponere, -pōsūi, -pōsitum [ex+pono, place], v.a., place out, explain; land an army, ex nāvī milites exponere.

ex-porto, -portāre, -portāvi, -portātum [ex+porto, carry], v.a., carry out, export.

ex-prīmo, -primere, -pressi, -pressum [ex+prēmo, press], v.a., press out, describe, utter.

ex-pugnātī-o, -ōnis [expugno], F., storming, attack.

ex-pugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ex+pugno], v.a., take by storm, capture.

ex-qui-ro, -quirere, -quisīvi, -quisitum [ex+quaero, seek], seek for, enquire, search out, ask for.

ex-sēquor, -sequi, -sēcūtus (-sequūtus) sum [ex+sēquor], v. dep., follow out, maintain, enforce.

ex-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, -stitum [ex+sisto], v.a., appear, spring up, arise, b.

ex-specto, -spectāre, -spectāvi, -spectātum [ex+specto], v.a., look for, wait to see, wait for, await.

ex-sto, -stāre, no pl., no sup. [ex+sto], v.a., stand out, project.

ex-strūo, -struere, -struxi, -structum [ex+struo], v.a., pile up, rear, build.

ex-structus, -a, -um [p.p. of ex-struo], piled up.

ex-terus, -tēra, -tērum [ex], rare adj., outside, foreign, strange; comp., exterior; superl., extrēmus and extimū.

ex-terrēo, -terrere, -terrūi, -territum [ex+terreo], v.a., frighten, strike with terror.

ex-timesco, -timescere, timui, no supine [ex+timesco, incept. of timeo], v.a., fear greatly, dread.

ex-tollo, extollere, no perf., no sup., v.a., extol, lift up, raise, exalt.

extrā, prep. with acc. [for exterā parte], without, beyond, outside of.

extrēmus, -a, -um, sup. of exterus; **extrēmā aestate**, at the end of summer.

ex-ul, -ūlis, M., an exile.

ex-ūo, -nēre, -ūi, -ūtum, to strip off, despoil, deprive.

ex-ūro, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum [ex+ūro, burn], v.a., burn up.

F.

fā-ber, -bri, [facio], M., workman, artisan.

fā-būla, -būlae [for, speak], F., story, tale.

fācēt-us, -a, -um, adj., affable, courteous, witty.

fācīle, [facilis], adv., easily, readily; comp., facilius; sup., facillime.

fācīl-is, -e [facio], adj., easy; comp., facilius; sup., facillimus.

fāc-inus, -inōris [facio], N., deed, crime.

fācio, facere, feci, factum, v.a., do, make; **magnī facere**, value highly; **pluris facere**, value more highly; **castra facere**, pitch a camp; **iter facere**, march; **vim facere**, to use violence; **imperata facere**, to obey commands; pass., fit, it happens; fit ut, it happens that (p. 182, 4).

fact-īo, -iōnis [facio], F., party, faction.

fact-um, -i, [facio], N., deed, act.

fāc-ultas, -ultātis [facilis], N., ability, opportunity, means, supply; pl., resources, goods.

fāg-us, -i, F., beech-tree.

fallo, fallere, fēfelli, falsum, v.a., deceive.

fals-us, -a, -um [fallo], adj., false.

fām-a, -ae [for, speak], F., report, rumor, fame.

fāmīl-i-a [fāmulus, servant], F., family-servants, retainers, household; **pater-fāmīlias** or **fāmīliae**, master of a family.

fāmīliār-is, -e [fāmīlia], adj., of or belonging to a family; noun, an intimate friend.

fas, [for, *speak*], indecl. noun, *what is lawful, right*.

fātēōr, fāteri, fassus sum [for, *speak*], v. dep., *confess*.

fāt-um, -i [for, *speak*], N., *destiny, fate*.

fāvēō, fāvere, fāvi, fautum, v.a., *favor, be inclined to* (with dat.).

fēlici-tas, -tātis [felix], F., *happiness, success, good fortune, prosperity*.

fēliciter, [felix], adv., *luckily, happily, prosperously*.

fēlix, felicis, adj., *happy, fortunate, prosperous, lucky*.

fēmīn-a, -ae, F., *woman, female*.

fēm-ur, ōris, N., *a thigh*.

fēr-a, -ae, F., *wild beast*.

fērā-x, -cis, [fero, *bear*], *fertile*.

fērē, adv., *almost, nearly, about*.

ferio, ire, *strike*.

fēro, ferre, tolli, lātum, v.a., *bring, bear, carry, endure*; **ferunt**, *they say*; **fertur**, *it is said*; **auxilium ferre**, *bring aid*; **iniurias ferre**, *inflict wrongs*; **ferre legem**, *propose a law*.

fērōc-iter [ferox], adv., *boldly, fiercely*.

fēr-ox, -cēis, adj., *bold, fierce*.

ferrē-us, -ēa, -ēum [ferrum], adj., *of iron, iron*.

ferr-um, -i, N., *iron*; *sword*.

fert-ilis, [fero, *bear*], adj., *fertile, fruitful*.

fertili-tas, -tātis [fero], F., *fertility, richness*.

fēr-us, -a, -um, adj., *wild, rude, savage, fierce*.

fess-us, -a, -um, adj., *weary*.

festin-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.n., *hasten, hurry, accelerate*.

fidēl-is, -e [fides], adj., *faithful, trustworthy, true*.

fid-es, -ei [fido, *trust*], F., *faith, loyalty*.

fidūci-a, -ae [fido], F., *trust, confidence, reliance*.

figūr-a, -ae [figo, *shape*], F., *form, shape*.

filī-a, -ae, F., *a daughter* (dat. and abl. pl. filiabus; p. 6, 2).

filī-us, -i, M., *a son*.

figo, fingere, finxi, fctum, v.a., *make, shape, invent*.

fin-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, v.a., *finish, mark*.

fin-is, -is, M., *limit, end*; pl., *borders, territories, land*.

finitīm-us, -a, -um [finis], adj., *bordering on, neighboring*. As a noun, pl., finitimi, -orum, M., *neighbors*.

fio, -fieri, -factus sum, v. [pass. of facio; p. 155], *become, take place, happen*; **certior fieri**, *to be informed*.

firmē [firmus], adv., *firmly*.

firmiter [firmus], adv., *firmly*.

firm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *strengthen, make strong*.

flāgīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *demand, ask earnestly*.

flamm-a, -ae, F., *flame*.

flecto, flectere, flexui, flexum, v.a., *bend, turn*.

flens, flentis [pass. part. of fleo, used as an adj.], *weeping, in tears*.

flēo, flere, flēvi, fletum, v.a., *weep, lament*.

flēt-us, -ūs [fleo], M., *tears, weeping*.

flōren-s, -tis [pres. part. of floreō, used as an adj.], adv., *blooming, flourishing, prosperous*.

flōr-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, no sup., v.n., *bloom, flourish*.

flō-s, -ris, M., *flower*.

fluct-us, -ūs [fluō], M., *flood, wave, billow*.

flū-men, -minis [fluō], N., *river, current, stream*.

flū-o, -ēre, -xi, -xum, v.n., *flow*.

flūv-ius, -ii [fluō], M., *river, stream*.

fōdio, fōdere, fōdi, fossum, v.a., *dig*.

foed-us, -ēris, N., *treaty, compact, league*.

for, fāri, fatus sum, v. dep., *speak, say*.

fore = futurum esse.

forem = essem.

fōris, -is, F., *door, gate*.

form-a, -ae, F., *form, shape, appearance*.

form-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum, *shape*.

for-s, -tis [fero, *bring*], F., *chance, luck*.

forsitan, adv., *perhaps*.

fortasse, adv., *perhaps, by chance*.

fort-is, -e, adj., *strong, brave*.

fortitū-do, -dinis [fortis], F., *courage, bravery*.

fortūn-a, -ae [fors], F., *luck, lot, fate, chance, good fortune*.

fortūrāt-us, -a, -um [fortuna], adj., *prosperous, in good circumstances*.

fōrum, -i, N., *forum, market-place*; an open public place in ancient cities,

used for markets and gatherings of the people.

fossa, -ae [fodio, dig], F., ditch, trench.

fövéa, ae, pit-fall.

frango, frangere, frēgi, fractum, v.a., break, wreck.

frāt-er, -ris, n., brother.

frātern-us, -um, [frater], adj., *fraternally*, brotherly.

fraus, -dis, F., deceit, deception.

frēmīt-us, -ūs [fremo, make a noise], M., uproar, noise, din.

frēquen-s, -tis, adj., crowded, in large numbers.

frēt-us, -a, -um, adj., relying on (with abl., p. 64, 4).

frigid-us, -a, -um [trigeo, be cold], adj., cold, freezing.

frig-us, -ōris, N., cold, cold weather.

fron-s, -tis, F., forehead, front; a fronte, in front.

fruct-us, -ūs, [fruor, enjoy], M., fruit, profit, advantage, income, interest.

frūg-es, -um, F., pl., crops, fruits of the earth.

frūmentārī-us, -a, -um [frumentum, corn], adj., of corn; res frumentaria, corn, provisions.

frument-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v., dep., [frumentum], forage.

frument-um, -ī, N. [fruor, enjoy], corn, grain.

frūor, frūī, fructus or frūitus sum, v., dep., enjoy (with abl., p. 116).

frustrā, adv., without effect, in vain.

fūg-a, -ae [fugio], F., flight; dare in fugam, vertere in fugam, put to flight.

fūgio, fūgere, fūgi, fūgitum, v.n. and a., flee, run away.

fūgītīv-us, -a, -um [fugio], adj., fleeing; as a noun, fugitivus, a runaway slave.

fūg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [fugio], v.a., put to flight, rout.

fulgur, fulgūris [fulgeo, be bright], N., lightning, brightness.

fund-a, -ae, F., sling.

funditō-r, -ris [funda], M., slinger.

fundo, fundere, fūdi, fusum, v.a., pour, scatter, rout, vanquish.

fungor, fungi, functus sum, v., dep., discharge, perform, do (followed by the abl., p. 116).

fūn-is, -is, M., rope, cable.

fun-us, -ōris, M., burial, funeral; pl., funeral rites.

fūr-or, -ōris [furo, rage], M., rage, madness, fury.

furt-um, -ī [fur, thief], N., theft.

G.

gālō-a, -ae, F., a helmet.

Gall-i, -ōrum, M. pl., the Gauls, people of Gaul (now France).

Galli-a, -ae, F., Gaul (now France); pl. Galliae, divisions of Gaul.

Gall-icus, -īca, -īcum [Gallia], adj., Gallic.

gall-ina, -īnae, F., a hen.

Gall-us, -a, -um, adj., Gallic; subst., Gallus, a Gaul.

Garumn-a, -ae, M., the Garumna (now Garonne), a river of Gaul.

gaudēo, -gaudēre, -gāvīsus sum, v.a., semi-dep., rejoice, be pleased.

gaudī-um, -ī [gaudeo], N., joy, gladness, delight.

gemm-a, -ae, F., gem.

gēn-er, -ōrī, M., a son-in-law.

gēnīt-us, -a, -um [p.p. of gigno], born, descended from, sprung from.

gen-s, -tis [gigno], F., nation, race, tribe, clan.

gēn-us, -ōris [geno = gigno], N., birth, descent, family, class, race, kind.

gēro, gērere, gessi, gestum, v.a., bear; bellum gerere, carry on war.

German-us, -a, -um, adj., German; pl., Germān-i, -ōrum, the Germans.

gigno, gignere, gēnūī, gēnītum, v.n., beget.

glādī-us, -ī, M., sword.

glōrī-a, -ae, F., glory, fame, renown.

grācīl-is, -e, adj., slender.

Graeci-a, -ae, F., Greece.

Graec-us, -a, -um, adj., Greek, Grecian.

grand-is, -e, adj., large, great.

grāti-a, ae [gratus], F., favor, courtesy; beauty; in pl., gratiae, thanks; gratias agere, to give thanks; gratiam facere, to pardon; gratiam habere, feel thankful; gratiā, abl. with gen., for the sake of, on account of.

grātūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum [gratus], v. dep., wish joy, congratulate, give thanks.

grāt-us, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, grateful.

grāv-is, -e, adj., heavy.

grāviter [gravis], adv., *heavily*; **grāviter fero**, *feel pained*.

grex, grēgis, F., *flock, herd, troop*.

gubernātor, -tōris [guberno, *steer*], *a steersman, pilot*.

gust-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *taste*.

H.

hābē-o, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v.a., *have, hold, possess; regard, consider*.

hāb-ito, -itāre, -itāvi, -itātum [habeo], v.a., *have possession of, inhabit, dwell*.

haerēo, haerēre, haesi, haesum, v.n., *hold fast, stick*.

Hannib-al, -ālis, M., *Hannibal*, a Carthaginian general in the second Punic war.

Hasdrub-al, -ālis, M., *Hasdrubal*, a Carthaginian general.

haud, adv., *not at all, not* (negating single words); **haud scio an**, *I don't know whether* (p. 177, 5).

Hellespont-us, -i, M., *Hellespont*, a strait between Europe and Asia.

Helvētī-i, -ōrum, M., pl., *Helvetii*, a people who occupied Helvetia (now Switzerland).

Hercynī-us, -a, -um, adj., *Hercynian*; the Hercynian wood extended over the central and southern parts of Germany.

hērēdi-tas, -tātis [heres, *heir*], F., *heirship, inheritance*.

hērī, adv., *yesterday*.

hibern-a, -orum [properly the neuter pl. of the adj. *hibernus* (from *hiems*), with *castra* understood], pl. n., *winter quarters*.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pro., *this, he, she, it* (p. 117).

hic, adv., *here, at this point*.

hiēm-o, -āre, āvi, -ātum [hiems], v.n., *winter, pass the winter*.

hiems, hiēmis, F., *winter, storm*.

hinc [hic], adv., *hence, from this place*.

hōdie [hōc + diē], adv., *to-day*.

Hōmēr-us, -i, M., *Homer*, an ancient Greek epic poet, author of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*.

hōm-o, -inis, com. gend., *human being, man*; pl., *homines, inhabitants*.

hōnest-us, -a, -um [honor], adj., *honorable, upright, noble*.

hōn-or [honos], -ōris, M., *honor, respect, dignity, public office*.

hōr-a, -ae, F., *hour*. The Romans divided the period from sunrise to sunset into twelve parts, each of which was called an hour; so also the night was divided from sunset to sunrise into twelve

parts. The length of an hour would thus vary with the season of the year.

Hōrātī-us, -i, M., *Horatius*, a Roman poet who lived 65—8, B.C.

horrēo, -ēre, -ūi, no. sup., v.n. and a., *dread, shudder at*.

horrib-ilis, -ile [horreo], adj., *dreadful, frightful*.

horrid-us, -a, -um [horreo], *dreadful, frightful*.

hortor, -tāri, -tātus sum, v. dep., *urge, cheer, encourage, incite*.

hort-us, -i, M., *garden*.

hos-pes, -pītis, M., *guest, friend*.

hospiti-um, -i [hospes], N., *hospitality*.

host-is, -is, M., *enemy, foe*; pl., *the enemy*.

hūc [hic], adv., *hither, here to this place*.

huiusmodi [or *huius modi*], *of this kind or sort*.

hūmāni-tas, -tātis [humanus], F., *refinement, culture*.

hūmān-us, -a, -um, [homo], adj., *human, natural to man, civilised*.

hūmērus, -i, M., *shoulder*.

hūmī [locat. of *humus*], *on the ground* (p. 86, 3).

hūmīl-is, -e [humus], adj., *low, poor, humble*.

hūm-us, -i, F., *ground*.

I.

iāc-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, no. sup.; v.n., *lie on the ground, lie dead*.

iācīo, iācēre, iēcī, iactum, v.a., *throw, cast, hurl*.

iactūr-a, -ae [iācīo], F., *loss, sacrifice*.

iācūl-um, -i [iācīo], N., *javelin, dart*.

iam, adv., *already, now*; **ubi iam**, *as soon as*; **iam antea**, *some time before*.

iamdūdum, **iampridem**, *long*.

Ībēr-us, -i, M., *the Ibērus* (now Ebro), river of Hispania (now Spain).

ibi, adv., *in that place, there*.

ibidem, adv., *in the same place*.

īco, īcēre, īcī, ictum, v.a., *strike, hit, smite, stab*; **foedus icere**, *make a treaty*.

ict-us, -ūs [ico], M., *blow, thrust*.

īdem, eādem, īdem, pron., *the same, very*.

īdōnē-us, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, proper*.

Īd-ūs, -ūm, F., pl., *the Ides*; a name given to the 13th of all months, except

March, May, July and October, when the 15th was so called.

igitur, conj., *therefore, then, thereupon*.

ignāvīa, -ae [in, not + gnāvus, active], F., *sloth, cowardice*.

ignāv-us, -a, -um [in + gnāvus, active], adj., *slothful, cowardly*.

ign-is, -is, M., *fire*.

ignōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in, not + (g) nosco, know], v.a., *be ignorant of, not to know, ignore*.

ig-nōsco, noscēre, nōvi, nōtum [in, not + (g) nosco, know] governs a dat.; *pardon, forgive*.

ignōt-us, -a, -um [p.p. of ignosco, as an adj.], *unknown, unfamiliar*.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., *that; he, she, it* (p. 116); **ille**, hic; *that, this*.

illic [ille], adv., *in that place, then*.

illico [in + loco], adv., *on the spot, instantly, then*.

illustr-is, -e [in intensive + lustro, make to shine], adj., *distinguished, illustrious*; **illustriore loco natus**, born of a rather illustrious family (p. 58, 5).

imā-go, -gīnis, F., *an image, likeness, statue, picture*.

imb-er, -ris, M., *a shower of rain*.

im-mātūr-us, -a, -um [in, not + māturus, ripe], adj., *unripe, immature*.

imī-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., *copy, imitate*.

immān-is, -e, adj., *huge, enormous, immense, monstrous*.

im-mīnūo, -minūere, -mīnui, -mīnūtum [in + minuo], v.n., *diminish*.

immo, adv., *on the contrary, no indeed, yes indeed*.

immōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + mola, meal], v.a., *sprinkle meal on a victim for sacrifice, offer in sacrifice*.

immortāl-is, -e, [in + mortalis], adj., *undying, immortal*.

im-mūnī-tas, -tātis [in not + munus, duty], F., *exemption*; **omnium rerum immunitas**, *exemption from all burdens*.

impediment-um, -i [impedio], N., *hindrance*; pl., **impēdiment-a**, -orum, *baggage*.

impēd-īo, -īre, -īvi, -itum [in + pes, foot] v.a., *entangle, hamper, hinder*.

impēditus, -a, -um [impedio], p.p. used as an adj., *hampered, burdened*.

im-pello, -pellere, -pūli, -pulsus [in + pello], v.a., *drive to*.

im-pendēo, -pendere, v. intr., *overhang*.

impērat-or, -ōris [impēro], M., *commander, general, leader*.

im-pēritus, -a, -um [in, not + peritus, skilled in], adj., *unskilled in, ignorant of*.

impēri-um, -i [impēro], N., *command, authority, government*.

impēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + paro], v.a. and n., *command, order, with dat.*; **milites civitati imperare**, *levy troops from a state*; **imperare ut or ne faciat**, *to order a person to do or not to do* (p. 181, 3).

impetr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *obtain by request, obtain one's wish*.

im-pētus, -pētus [in + peto], M., *attack, assault; fury*.

impiēt-as, -ātis [impius], F., *impiety*.

impi-us, -a, -um [in, not + pius, good], adj., *wicked, impious*.

im-plico, -plicāre, -plēvi or plēvi, -pletum [in, within + plico, fold], *entwine, entangle*.

implōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in, + ploro, weep], *besail, implore, invoke, appeal to*.

im-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsi, -pōsitum [in, on + pono, place], v.a., *place on*; **finem imponere**, *to make an end*; **milites in navem imponere**, *to embark men*.

im-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in, into + porto, carry], v.a., *bring or carry into*; *import*.

imprimis [in + primis, abl. pl. of primus], adv., *among the first, in the first place, chiefly, especially*.

imprōb-us, -a, -um [in, not + probus, good], adj., *bad, shameless*.

im-prō-vī-us, -a, -um [in, not + pro + video], adj., *unforeseen, unexpected*; **de improviso**, *unexpectedly, suddenly*.

imprūden-s, -tis [-imprōvidens, for in + pro + video], adj., *not foreseen, unforeseen, unawares*.

im-prudentī-a [for improvidentia, from in + pro + video], F., *want of foresight, indiscretion, ignorance*.

impugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in, against + pugno], v.a. and n., *attack, assail, fight*.

in, prep. with acc. and abl.; with acc., *after words signifying motion, to, into, against, upon*; with abl. *after words of rest, in, at, during, among, in case of*.

inān-is, -e, adj., *empty, vain, useless*.

in-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [in + cedo], v.n., *advance, proceed*; *come to, seize*.

in-cendī-um, -i [incendo], N., *fire, conflagration*.

in-cendo, -cendere, -cendi, -censum [in + cando, shine], v.a., set on fire, burn.

in-certus, -certa, -certum [in, not + certus, certain], adj., uncertain, hesitating.

in-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum [in, into + cado, fall], v.a., fall in with, attack; **incidit**, **impers.**, it happens, it springs up.

in-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [in + cīpio], v.a. and n., begin, commence, undertake.

in-cito, -citare, -cītavi, -citātum [in + cito, move quickly], v.a., urge, arouse, encourage.

in-clino, -clinare, -clināvi, -clinātum [in + clino, lean], v.n., lean against.

in-cognit-us, -a, -um [in, not + cognitus, known], adj., unknown.

in-cōlo, -colere, -colui, -cultum [in + colo], v.a. and n., live, dwell, reside in.

in-cōlūm-is, -e, adj., uninjured, safe.

in-cōmmōdum, -i [in, not + commodus, suitable], N., misfortune, harm, disaster, defeat.

in-crēdi-bilis, -bile [in, not + credo], adj., incredible, extraordinary.

in-cursi-o, -ōnis [in, against + curro, run], F., charge, invasion.

in-cūso, -āre, -avi, -ātum [in, against + causa, cause], v.a., accuse, blame.

inde, adv., from that place, thence; after that, then.

in-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum [in + dico], v.a., proclaim, declare, appoint.

indico, -āre, -avi, -ātum [in + dico], make known, point out.

in-dign-us, -a, -um [in, not + dignus], adj., unworthy (with abl., p. 64, 4).

in-dūo, -ducere, -dūi, -dūtum, v.a., put on, don.

industri-a, -ae, F., industry.

in-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or ii), -itum [in + eo], v.a., enter, enter upon; **inire consilium**, form a plan; **inire consulationem**, enter on a consulship.

in-erm-is, -e [in, not + arma, arms], adj., without arms, unarmed.

in-ers, -ertis [in, not + ars], adj., indolent, idle, inactive.

in-fāma, -iae [in + fama], F., disgrace, dishonor.

in-fan-s, -tis [in, not + for, speak], M. or F. (properly, the one not speaking), child, infant.

in-fēlix, -felicitis [in, not + felix, happy], adj., unhappy, unfortunate.

infēro, inferre, intoli, iulātum [in, into + fero, carry], v.a., carry in, bring in; **bellum hostibus inferre**, make war against the enemy (p. 120, 1); **signa inferre**, advance.

in-fēr-us, -a, -um [infrā, adj., below, lower; comp., inferior; sup., infimus, imus].

in-ficio, -ficere, -fecit, -fectum [in + facio], v.a., stain.

infimus. See **interus**.

in-finit-us, -a, -um [in, not + finis, limit], adj., boundless, immense.

in-firm-us, -a, -um [in, not + firmus, strong], adj., weak, feeble.

in-flūo, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum [in, into + fluo], v.a., flow into.

infrā, (1) adv., below; (2) prep., with acc., below.

in-gēni-um, -i [in + gigno, produce], N., talent.

ingens, -gentis, adj., huge, great, vast.

in-grēdi-or, -grēdi, -gressus sum [in + gradi-or], v. dep., enter upon.

in-hibēo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum [in + habeo], v.a., check, restrain.

in-icēo, -icere, -icci, -iectum [in, into + iacio, throw], v.a., throw or cast into; **infuse into**; **metum alicui incere**, inspire anyone with fear.

inimicitia, -icitiarum [inimicus], F., hatred, enmity.

inimicus [in, not + amicus], M., enemy.

in-iquus, -a, -um [in, not + aequus, even], adj., uneven, unfavorable, unjust.

inīti-um, -i [ineo], N., beginning.

in-iūri-a, -ae [in, not + ius, right], F., wrong, outrage, injustice.

in-iustus, -iusta, -iustum [in, not + iustus], adj., unjust.

in-nītor, -niti, -nisus (or nixus) sum, [in, on + nitor, lean], v. dep., lean, rest on, support one's self by.

in-nōcens, -nocentis [in, not + noceo, harm], adj., harmless, innocent.

in-nōcenti-a, -ae [innocens], F., innocence.

in-ōpi-a, -ae [inops, needy] scarcity, poverty.

inquam [inquis, inquit—inquit in the pres., and inquires, inquit in fut., are the chief parts in use], say, (p. 289).

in-sciē-s, -tis [in, not + scio, know], adj., not knowing; **Caesare insciente**, without the knowledge of Caesar.

in-sci-us, -a, -um [in, not + scio, know], adj., not knowing, ignorant.

in-sēquor, -sequi, -secutus (or sequū-

(tus) sum [in+sequor], v. dep., follow after, pursue.

in-sidi-ae, -arum [in+sedeo], F. pl., ambush, treachery.

in-signē, -signis [insignis], N., sign, mark, badge, decoration.

in-signis, -signe [in+signum], adj., noted, remarkable.

in-sinū-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in, into + sinuo, curve], v.a., get into, worm one's way into.

in-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, no sup. [in + sisto], v.a., stand, stand upon, press on.

insolenter [insolens], adv., haughtily, insolently.

in-stitūo, -stitūere, -stitui, -stitutum [in+statuo], establish, devise, appoint, build.

in-stitutum, -stituti [in+statuo], N., plan, custom, first principle.

in-sto, -stare, -stiti, stātum [in+sto], stand on, be near at hand, press on, approach.

in-strūo, -strūere, -struxi, -structum [in+strūo, build], v.a., build, construct, set in order; aciem instruere, draw up an army.

insuefactus [in+suefacio, accustom], accustomed.

insul-a, -ae, F., island.

in-super [in + super], adv., above, overhead, on the top.

intellēgo, -tellēgere, -tellexi, -tellectum [inter, up+lego, pick], v.a., understand, see clearly, perceive, know.

inter, prep. with acc. only, between, among, during.

inter-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [inter+cedo], v.n., go between, lie between.

inter-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum [inter+dico], v.a., forbid, exclude from, interdict.

interdum [inter+dum], adv., sometimes, meanwhile.

intērēā [inter+ea], adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.

intēr-ēo, -ire, ivi (or ii), -itum [inter+eo], v.n., go to decay, perish, die.

inter-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum [inter+facio], v.a., slay, kill.

interim [inter+old acc. of is], adv., meanwhile.

intērīc -is, comp., no positive, sup., intērīc [inter], inner, interior; pl., interior, those in the interior.

inter-atto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [inter+mitto, let drop], v.a., intermit.

inter-nēcī-o, -nēcī [inter+neco, kill], F. destruction, slaughter, massacre.

interprēt-or, -ari, -atus sum, v., dep., explain, expound.

inter-rōgo, -rōgare, -rōgavi, -rōgatum [inter+rogo], ask, question.

inter-rumpo, -rumpere, -rupi, -ruptum [inter+rumpo, break], v.a., break down, break up.

inter-sum, -esse, -fui [inter+sum], v.n., be between, be present, take part in; impers., interest, it concerns, it is important; magni meā interest, it is of great importance to me; pluris Ciceronis interest, it is of more importance to Cicero.

inter-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum [inter+venio], v.n., come between, come upon.

intrā [contracted for interā, supply parte], prep. with acc. only, inside of, within.

introit-us, -ūs, (intra+eo), entrance.

in-usitatus (in, not+usitatus, usual) unusual.

in-ūtilis, -ūtile [in, not+utilis], adj., useless, unserviceable.

in-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum [in, on + venio, come], v.a., come upon, find out, discover.

in-ventor, -ventoris [invēnio], M., discoverer, inventor.

in-vicem [in+vicis, change], adv., by turns, alternately.

in-vīdī-a, -ae [invideo, envy], F., envy.

invīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., invite, entice, summon.

invīt-us, -a, -um, adj., unwilling; se invito, against his will.

invōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + vōco, call], v.a., call on or upon; invoke, implore.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pron., self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; he they (emphatic, very; p. 122).

īr-a, -ae, F., anger.

īrācund-ia, -iae [ira], F., anger, rage, passion.

īrācund-us [ira + -cundus, full of], adj., irritable, passionate, angry.

īrāt-us, -a, -um [ira], adj., angry, angered.

is, ea, id, dem. pron., this or that; he she, it. Before ut, is=talis, such; with comparatives eo (abl.)=the; eo magis, all the more (p. 195, 4).

iste, ista, istud, dem. pron., that, that of yours (p. 118).

ita [is], adv., *in this way, so, thus; in the following manner, therefore.*

Itālī-a, -ae, F., *Italy.*

itāque [ita+que], conj., *and so, therefore, accordingly.*

item, adv., *just, so, also, in like manner.*

iter, itinēris [eo, ire, go], *journey, march; iter magnum, a forced march; ex itinere, on the march.*

itērum, adv., *again, a second time.*

iūbēo, iūbēre, iussi, iussum, v. a., *order, command* (p. 181, 3, note).

iūdicī-um, -i [iudex], N., *judgment, decision, trial, decree, opinion.*

iūdic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [iūs+dico], v. a., *judge, decide, think of, declare.*

iūg-um, -i [iungo], N., *yoke.*

iument-um, -i [=iugumentum, from iungo], *beast of burden.*

iungo, iungēre, iunxi, iunctum, v. a., *join, unite, connect.*

iūnior. See iūvēnis.

Iūpiter, Iōvis, M., *Jupiter, son of Saturn, chief of the Roman gods.*

iūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. a., *take an oath, swear.*

iūs, iūris, N., *right, justice, authority; iura in hos, rights over these.*

iūstīfī-a, -ae [ius], F., *justice.*

iustus, -a, -um [ius], adj., *just, fair; iusta funera, complete funeral rites.*

iūvēn-is, -e, adj., *young; comp., iūnior; sup., minimus natu* (p. 58, note).

iūvent-us, -ūtis [iūvēnis], F., *youth; young men capable of bearing arms, from 17 to 46 years of age.*

iūvo, iūvāre, iāvi, iūtum, v. a., *help, assist.*

iuxtā, adv., *near.*

K.

Kālend-ae, -ārum, pl., F., *the Kalends, the Roman name for the first day of the month.*

Karthāg-o, -ōnis, F., *Karthage, a celebrated city of Africa.*

Karthāginiens-is, -e [Karthago], adj., *Karthaginian; pl., Karthaginenses, Karthaginians.*

L.

Lābiēn-us, -i, M., *Labienus, a legatus (lieutenant) of Caesar's army, who afterwards went over to Pompey and fell at Munda, B.C. 45.*

lāb-or, -ōris, M., *toil, suffering, exertion.*

lāb-or, lābi, lapsus sum, v. dep., *slip, go astray, fail, be deceived.*

lābōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [lābor], v. n., *toil, labor, suffer.*

labr-um, -i, N., *lip.*

Lācēdaem-on, -ōnis, M., *Lacedaemon, or Sparta, a city in the Peloponnesus.*

lac, lactis, N., *milk.*

lāc-er, -ēra, -ērum, adj., *torn, mangled.*

lācess-o, -ēre, -i-vi (or -i), -itum [lacio, draw], *provoke, assail, attack.*

lācrīm-a, -ae, F., *tear.*

lācrīm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. n., *weep.*

lāc-us, -ūs, M., *a lake.*

laedo, laedēre, laesi, laesum, v. a., *harm, hurt, offend, injure.*

laetīfī-a, -ae [laetus, joyful], F., *joy, delight, pleasure.*

laet-us, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad, pleased.*

lāp-is, -idis, M., *a stone.*

large, adv. See largiter.

larg-ior, -i-ri, -itus sum, v. act., *bestow, give freely, bribe.*

larg-iter (largus), adv., *greatly, much, bounteously.*

larg-us, -a, -um, adj., *bounteous.*

Lartī-us, -i, M., *Titus Lartius, first Roman dictator.*

lātē [lātus], adv., *widely, broadly; large lateque, far and wide; comp., lātius; sup., latissime; quam latissime, as widely as possible.*

lāt-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, no sup., v. n., *lie hid, be unnoticed.*

lātītūd-o, -ōnis [lātus], F., *width, breadth, extent.*

lātr-o, -ōnis, M., *a robber, freebooter.*

lātrōcīnī-um, -i [latro], N., *robbery, freebooting, piracy.*

latrocīnor, ari, etc., *be a brigand.*

lāt-us, -a, -um [p.p. of fero, used as an adj.], *broad, wide.*

lāt-us, -ēris, N., *side, flank of an army; latus apertum, exposed flank, i.e., the right; ab latere, on the flank.*

laudābīl-is, -e [laudo], adj., *praise-worthy.*

laud-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. a., *praise.*

laur-us, -i, F., *a bay-tree.*

laus, laudis, F., *praise, fame.*

lēgātī-o, -ōnis [lēgo], F., *an embassy.*

legāt-us, -i [lēgo, appoint], M., ambassador, lieutenant.

lēgi-o, -ōnis [lēgo], F., a legion, a division of the Roman army consisting, when complete, of 6,000 infantry and 300 cavalry. The infantry were divided into 10 cohorts, each cohort into 3 maniples (manipuli), and each manipulus into 2 centuries (centuriae). The 300 cavalry were divided into 10 squadrons (turmae).

lēgiōnārī-us, -a, -um [legio], adj., of or belonging to a legion; miles legionari-
arius, a common soldier.

lēgo, lēgēre, lēgi, lectum, v.a., choose, select; read.

lēg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., appoint, despatch, send on an errand.

Lēmān-us, -i, M., Leman, now Lake of Geneva.

lēmīt-as, -ātis [lēnis], F., smoothness.

lēmīter [lēnis], adv., gently, smoothly, slowly.

lē-o, -ōnis, M., a lion.

lēp-us, -ōris, M., a hare.

lēv-is, -e, adj., slight, light, trifling, gentle; levis armaturae milites, light-armed soldiers.

lēv-is, -e, adv., smooth.

lēv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., relieve, lighten.

lex, lēgis, F., law.

liben-s, -tis, adj., willing, cheerful.

libenter [libens], adv., willingly, cheerfully.

lib-er, -ēra, -ērum, adj., free.

lib-er, -ri, M., a book.

libērē [liber, free], freely.

libēr-i, -ōrum, M. pl., children (properly the free members of a household; one child, unus ex liberis).

libēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., free; acquit.

libert-a, -ae [liber, free], a freed-woman (p. 6, 2).

libert-as, -ātis [liber, free], freedom, liberty.

libert-us, -i [liber, free], M., a freed-man.

lib-et, -ēre, -āit or -itum est, v. impers., it pleases, it is pleasing.

lic-et, -ēre, -āit or -itum est, v. impers., it is allowed, it is permitted; one may (p. 162).

licet, conj. (p. 196, 7), although, though, even if.

licet-or, -ōris [ligo, bind], a lictor; an attendant of the superior magistrates who

served as a body-guard or mark of official dignity.

lign-um, -i, N., wood.

lilī-um, -i, N., lily.

lingu-a, -ae, F., tongue, language.

lint-er, -ris, F., boat, skiff.

Lisc-us, -i, M., Liscus, an Aeduan chief.

litter-a, -ae (also litera), F., letter (of the alphabet); pl. litterae, literature or an epistle, letter.

litus, -ōris, N., sea-shore, shore, coast.

lōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [locus], v.a., place, station; castra locare, pitch a camp.

lōc-us, -i, M., a place; pl. loci, M. (not in Caesar), and lōca, N. (p. 280).

lōcūtus. See loquor.

longē [longus], adv., far; with comp. and superl., far, by far; **longe melior**, far better; **longe optimus**, by far the best; comp., **longius**, too far.

longinquus, -a, -um [longus], adj., far removed, remote, distant, prolonged.

longitūd-o, -inis [longus], F., length, extent.

long-us, -a, -um, adj., long, tall, distant; **navis longa**, a ship of war.

lōquor, lōqui, lōcūtus (or lōquūtus), sum., v. dep., speak, say.

Lucc-a, -ae, F., Lucca, a town of of Gallia Cisalpina.

lūcēo, lūcēre, luxi, no sup., v.n., shine.

lūcet, v. impers., it is light.

lūc-um, -i, N., gain.

lūdo, lūdēre, lūsi, lūsum, v.n., sport, play.

lūd-us, -i, M., sport, play; pl., lūdi, games.

lūgēo, lūgēre, luxi, no sup., v.a. and n., lament, mourn for.

lūm-en, -inis [luceo], N., light.

lūn-a, -ae [=lucna, from luceo], F., moon.

lūp-us, -i, M., wolf.

lūs-us, -ūs [lūdo], M., sport, play.

lux, lūcis, F., light; **prima lux**, daybreak.

M.

maer-ēo, -ēre, no perf., no sup. v.a. and n., grieve, lament.

māgis, comp. of magnopere, adv., more, rather.

māgist-er, -ri [magnus], M., master; **equitum magister**, master of the cavalry.

magistrat-us, -us [magister], M., a magistracy, office, magistrate.

magni-fi-cus, -ca, -cum [magnus+facio], adj., noble, grand.

magnitūd-o, -inis [magnus], F., greatness, size, bulk.

magnōpēre, adv. [often written magnō opere], greatly; comp., māgis; sup., maxime.

magn-us, -a, -um, adj., large, great; comp., maior; sup., maximus; **magnī**, at a high price; pluris, at a higher price; **maximī**, at a very high price; **maiores natu**, elders; **maiores**, ancestors.

maiores. See magnus.

māle [malus], adv., badly; comp., peius; sup., pessimē.

mālē-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum [male, ill+dico, speak], v.n., revile, slander, speak ill of.

mālē-dīcus, -dica, -dicum [maledico], adj., slanderous (p. 57, 3).

mālēfici-um, -ī [male+facio], N., evil deed, crime.

mālēficus, -ca, -cum [male+facio], adj., evil doing, criminal (p. 57, 3).

mālo, malle, mālū, no sup. [magis+volō], v.irreg. (p. 147), wish rather, prefer.

māl-um, -ī [malus], N., evil, misfortune, calamity.

māl-us, -a, -um, adj., evil, wicked; comp., peior; sup., pessimus.

mandāt-um, -ī [mando], N., order, command, charge.

mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [manus+do], v.a., order, command, entrust.

Mandūbrācius, -ī, M., a chief of the Trinobantes in Britain.

mānē, adv., in the morning, early.

mānēo, mānēre, mansi, mansum, v.a. and n., remain, stay.

mānifest-us, -a, -um, adj., clear, plain, evident.

mansue-facio, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, (manus+suefacio), accustom, tame.

mān-us, -ūs, F., hand; band (of troops).

Marc-us, -ī, M., Marcus, a Roman name.

mār-e, -is, N., sea.

margārit-a, -ae, F., pearl.

māritim-us, -a, -um [mare], adj., belonging to the sea; ora maritima, sea shore; regiones maritimae, districts bordering on the sea.

Mars, Martis, M., Mars, the Roman god of war.

Martī-us, -a, -um, adj., belonging to Mars.

mas, māris, M., male.

māter, mātris, F., mother; **matēfamiliae** or **materfamilias**, mistress of a house.

māteri-a, -ae, F., timber, wood.

mātrīmōnī-um, -ī [mater], N., marriage; in **matrimonium dare**, to give in marriage; in **matrimonium ducere**, to marry.

mātrōn-a, -ae [mater], F., a married woman, wife, matron.

mātūrē [mātūrus], adv., early; comp., maturius; sup., maturime and maturissime.

mātūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [maturus], v.a., make ripe, ripen; hasten.

mātūr-us, -a, -um, adj., ripe, early.

maxime. See magnopere.

maximus. See magnus.

mecum, with me (105, 8).

mēdēor, mēderī, no perf., no sup., v.a. and n., heal, remedy (with a dat.)

mēdicīn-a, -ae, F., medicine.

mēdic-us, -ī [medeor], M., a doctor.

mēditerrānē-us, -a, -um [medius+terra], adj., inland, central.

mēdī-us, -a, -um, adj., middle, mid (p. 252, Lesson 26, note 2); **medius mons**, the middle of the mountain; **mediā de nocte**, after midnight; **ad mediam noctem**, about midnight.

Mēd-us, -a, -um, adj., Median or Persian; pl., **Medī**, **Medes** or Persians.

membr-um, -ī, N., limb.

mēmīn-ī, -isse, v. dep. (p. 145), remember.

mēm-or, -ōris, adj., mindful.

mēmōri-a, -ae [memor], F., memory, recollection; **memoriā tenere**, recollect; **nostrā memoriā**, in our day; **memoriā proditum est**, it is handed down by tradition.

mēmōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [memor], v.a., relate.

mendācī-um, -ī [mendax], N., lie, falsehood.

mendax, mendācis [mentior], adj., lying, false.

mens, mentis, F., mind.

mens-a, -ae, F., table.

mens-is, -is, M., month.

mensūr-a, -ae [metior], F., measure; **mensura ex aqua**, water measure.

ment-ior, -īri, -ītus sum, v., dep., lie, speak falsely.

mercāt-or, -ōris [merx, merchandise], M., merchant, trader.

mercātūr-a, -ae [merx], F., commerce, trade.

merc-es, -ēdis [merx], F., hire, wages.

Mercūrī-us, -i, M., Mercury, a Roman god who presided over gain.

mēr-ō, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v.a., and **mēr-eor**, -ēri, -itus sum, v. dep., gain, earn, deserve.

mergo, mergēre, mersi, mersum, v.a., immerse, sink, overwhelm, destroy.

mēridiān-us, -a, -um [meridies], adj., at mid-day, or noon; **meridiano fere tempore**, about noon.

mēridi-es, -ei [medius+dies], M. mid-day; **ad meridiem spectat**, it faces the south (i.e., the sun at noon).

mērīt-um, -i [mereo], N., desert, merit, service.

meritus. See mereor.

mētior, mētiri, mensus sum, v. dep., measure, measure out.

mēto, mētēre, messūi, messum, v.a., reap.

mēt-ūō, -nēre, -ūi, no sup. [mētus], v.n., fear, be afraid.

mēt-us, -ūs, M., fear, dread.

mē-us, -a, -um [voc. sing. masc., meus or mi], adj., my, mine.

migr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.n. depart, emigrate, go away.

mil-es, Itis, M., soldier, foot-soldier.

militār-is, -e [miles], adj., of or belonging to a soldier or soldiers, military; **res militaris**, military science.

militī-a, -ae [miles], F., military service; **militiae**, abroad.

mille, adj., indecl., a thousand (p. 68, 5); **milia passuum**, thousands of paces, miles.

millia (milia), -ium, N., pl. (see mille), thousands.

mill-ies (-iens), adv. [mille], a thousand times.

Milo, ōnis, M., Milo, a friend of Cicero.

mīn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., threaten.

mīn-or, -is, adj., comp. of parvus; less; as a noun, **minores**, -um, supply natu, descendants.

mīnū-o, -ēre, -i, -ūtum [minor], lessen, diminish.

minus, adv. of minor; less; positive, parum; sup., minime; **si minus**, if not.

mirabil-is, -e [miror], adj., wonderful,

mīr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., admire, wonder at.

mīr-us, -a, -um [miror], adj., wonderful, strange marvellous.

mīs-er, -ēra, -ērum, adj., wretched, unfortunate.

mīsēricordi-a, -ae [miser+cor], F., pity, compassion.

mīsēr-ēor, -ēri, Itus sum, v. dep., feel pity for (with gen.; p. 146).

mīsēr-esco, -escēre, no perf., no sup., pity, feel pity, for (with gen.; p. 146).

mīsēr-et, -ēre, -itum est, impers, it distresses, excites pity; **me miseret**, it excites pity in me, i.e., I pity (p. 165).

mīsēr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., express pity for (with acc.; p. 146).

mīt-is, -e, adj., mild.

mōbilit-as, -ātis [=movibilitas, fr., movibilis, from moveo, move], F., activity, speed.

mitt-o, mittere, misi, missum, v.a., send, despatch.

mōd-er-or, -ārī, -ātus sum [modus], v. dep., check, manage, regulate.

mōdestī-a, -ae, [mōdus], F., self-control, modesty.

mōdī-us, -i [mōdus], M., a measure, bushel.

mōdō [modus], adv., only, merely; at all; **modo...modo**, now...now, at one moment...at another; **non modo...sed etiam**, not only...but also; with subj., **modo=dummodo**, if only, provided that (p. 194, 3).

mōd-us, -i, M., a measure, amount; manner, method; **fluminis modo**, in the manner of a river; **nullo modo**, by no means.

moen-la, -ium [mūnio, fortify] N., pl., walls of a city, fortifications.

mōleste [molestus, troublesome], adv., with trouble, annoyance; **moleste ferre**, be annoyed, vexed.

mōlest-us, -a, -um, adj., troublesome, annoying.

moll-is, -e, adj., smooth.

mōl-o, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v.a., grind.

Mōna, -ae, F., Mona, island of Anglesey, off the N.W. coast of Wales.

mōn-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v.a., warn, remind.

mon-s, -tis, masc., mountain; **summus mons**, the top of the mountain; **imus mons**, the bottom of the mountain; **medius mons**, the middle of the mountain (p. 59, 1, note).

monstr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., point out, show.

mōr-a, -ae, F., delay.

morb-us, -i, M., disease.

mordēo, mordēre, mōmordi, morsum, v.a., bite; hurt.

mōrior, mori, mortuus sum, v. dep., die.

mōr-or, -āri, -ātus sum [mora], v. dep., delay, stop, tarry, hinder.

mors, mortis [mori], F., death.

mōs, mōris, M., custom, usage; pl., customs, characters, manners.

mōt-us, -ūs [moveo], M., moving, motion.

mōvēo, mōvēre, mōvi, mōtum, v.a., move, set in motion, influence; arma mōvere, take up arms; bellum mōvere, undertake a war; castra mōvere, break up camp.

mox, adv., presently, soon, directly; then, afterwards.

mūl-a, -ae F., a she-mule (p. 6, 2).

mūli-er, -ēris, F., woman.

multitūd-o, -inis [multus], F., crowd, multitude.

multo or **multum** [multus], adv., much, by far, greatly; comp., plus; sup., plurimum.

mult-us, -a, -um, adj., much, many; comp., plus; sup., plurimus (p. 77, 6).

mund-us, -i, M., universe, world.

mūnificus, -a, -um [munus, gift + facio], lavish.

muniment-um, -i [munio], N., defence, fortification.

mūn-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, v.a., fortify, defend.

muniti-o, -ōnis [munio], F., a defence.

mūn-us, -ēris, N., duty, service; **munus militiae**, military service.

murm-ur, -ūris, N., murmur.

mūr-us, -i, M., wall.

mūs, mūris, M. or F., mouse.

musc-a, -ae, F., fly.

mūtil-us, -a, -um, adj., blunt, broken.

mūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., a change, exchange.

N.

nactus, -a, -um [see nanciscor], p.p., having obtained.

nam, conj., for.

namque [nam + que], conj., for indeed, for truly.

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum and nactus sum, v. dep., obtain, get, find, obtain.

narr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., tell.

nascor, nasci, natus sum, v. dep., be born, be produced, be descended from.

nātāl-is, -e [natus], adj., natal, birth; **dies natalis**, birth-day.

nāti-o, -ōnis [natus], F., tribe, people, nation.

nā-to, -tāre, -tāvi, -tātum, v.a., swim.

nā-tūra, -turae [nascor], F., nature, disposition, position, form; **naturā**, naturally.

na-tus, -ta, -tum [nascor], p.p. used as an adj., descended from, born from; **puer decem annos natus**, a boy ten years old (p. 69, 9).

nā-tus, -tūs [nascor], M., used only in abl. sing., by birth; **maiores natu**, ancestors, old men; **minores natu**, descendants.

naut-a, -ae [= nāvita, from navis, ship], M., a sailor.

nāvāl-is, -e [navis], adj., of or belonging to a ship, naval; **pugna navalis**, a sea fight.

nāvīg-i, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [navis+ago], v.n., sail.

nāvīg-i-um, -i [navigo], v.a., sailing-vessel, ship, boat.

nāv-is, -is [acc., navem or navim; abl., navi or navē], F., ship; **navis longa**, a war ship; **navis oneraria**, a transport.

nē (1) conj., that not, lest (p. 181, 3); that (after verbs of fearing, p. 185, 3); not to (after words of beseeching, ordering, commanding); **ne quis**, that no one (p. 183, 4).

(2) adv., not: (a) in **ne...quidem**, not...even; the word emphasised is always put between ne and quidem; (b) in negative imperative sentences: as, **ne discās**, do not learn.

-nē, interrogative and enclitic particle, whether. In single direct questions -ne is not to be translated except by laying stress on the word to which it is joined (p. 28); in double questions: **ne...an**, whether...or=utrum...an.

nec. See neque.

necessārio [necessārius], adv., necessarily, unavoidably.

necessār-i-us, -a, -um [necesse], adj., urgent, necessary.

necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, unavoidable, inevitable, needful.

sum and
et, find,

tell.

dep., be
rom.

l, birth;

, people,

a., swim.

, nature,
naturā,

p.p. used
rn from;
s, a boy

ed only in
es natu,
es natu,

om navis,

or belong-
navalis.

avis+ago].

a., sailing-

or navim;
p; navis
oneraria,

(p. 181, 3);
(p. 185, 3);
thing, order-
that no one

.quidem,
phased is
uidem; (b)
ces: as, ne

itic particle,
uestions -ne
pt by laying
it is joined
ne...an,

, adv., neces-

ecesse], adj.,

ecessary, un-
l.

necessit-as, -ātis [necesse], F., *necessity, need*.

necne, interrogative alternative in indirect question, or *not*; **annon** is used in direct.

nēc 3, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *put to death, kill, destroy*.

nēfari-us, -a, -um [nefas], adj., *wicked, atrocious*.

nēfas [ne + fas], N. indecl., *a crime (against divine law); impious deed; nefas est dictu, it is wrong to say (p. 173)*.

neg-ligo, -ligere, -lexi, -lectum [nec + lego], v.a., *slight, neglect, be indifferent to, despise*.

nēg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ne + aio], v.n., *deny, say no or not, refuse*; often = *dicit non*.

nēgōti-or, -āri, -ātus sum [negotium], v. dep., *do or carry on business*.

nēgōti-um, -i [nec + ōtium, *leisure*], N., *business, enterprise; nihil negotii or non quidquam negotii, no trouble*.

Nemēt-es, -um, pl. M., *Nemetes*, a German tribe living in Caesar's time west of the Rhine.

nēm-o, -inis [ne + homo], *no one, no body (p. 132, 2)*.

nēpō-s, -tis, M. and F., *grandson, nephew*; pl., *descendants*.

nequāquam [ne + quāquam, *anyway*], adv., *not at all, by no means*.

nēque or **nec** [ne + que]; in Caesar *nec* is not found before vowels; conj., *nor, and not*; **neque...neque, nec...nec, neither...nor**.

nēquidquam [ne + quidquam], adj., *in vain, to no purpose*.

nē-scio, -scire, -scivi, -scitum [ne + scio], v.a., *not to know*.

neu. See *neve*.

neu-ter, -tra, -tum, gen. *neutrius* [ne + uter], pron., *neither (p. 26)*.

nēve or **neu** [nē + ve, or], conj., *nor, and...not*; **nēve...neve, neither...nor (186, 6)**.

nex, *nēcis*, F. [nēcō, *kill*], v.a., *kill*.

nīg-er, -ra, -rum, adj., *black, dark*.

nīhil [ne + hilum, *a trifle*], indecl., N., *nothing, not at all*; **nīhil est quod, there is no reason that**; **non habeo quod, I have no reason that**; **non nīhil, something**.

nīhilo, (abl. of degree of difference from *nihilum*), *by nothing, none the; nihilominus, none the less, nevertheless*.

nīmis, adv., *too much, excessively*.

nīmī-us, -a, -um [nimis], adj., *excessive, too much, too great*.

nisi [ne + si], conj., *if not, unless, except*.

nītor, nīti, nīsus and nīxus sum, v., dep., *lean upon, endeavor, strive*.

nīx, nīvis, F., *snow*.

nōbīl-is, -e [nosco], adj., *noble, noted, famous*.

nōbīlī-tas, -tātis [nobilis], F., *nobility, the nobles*.

nōc-ens, -entis [pres. part. of nōceo used as an adj.], *guilty*; used as a noun, *a criminal*.

nōc-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v.a., *hurt, harm, injure, molest*.

noctu [nox], adv., *by night, at night*.

nocturn-us (nox), -a, -um, adj., *night*.

nōd-us, -i, M., *knot*.

nōlo, nolle, nōlūi [ne + volo], v. irreg., *be unwilling, not wish (p. 147)*.

nō-men, -minis [nosco], N., *name, title, reputation, account*; **suo nomine**, *on his (or their) account*.

nōminātīm [nominō], adv., *by name, expressly*.

nōmīn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [nomen], *name*.

non, adv., *not, no*.

Nōn-ae, -ārum, F., pl., *Nones*, the fifth day in every month of the year, except March, May, July, October, in which it was the seventh. It was so called because it was the 9th day from the Ides (*Idus*).

nōnāginta, num. adj., *ninety*.

nondum [non + dum], adv., *not yet*.

nonne, interrog. particle. See p. 29.

nonnīhil [non + nīhil], adv., *to some extent, somewhat*.

nonnullus, -a, -um [non + nullus], *some, several*.

nonnunquam [non + nunquam], adv., *sometimes*.

nōn-us, -a, -um [= novus, from novem], adj., *ninth*.

nos, pl. of *ego*.

nōsco [gnosco], noscēre, nōvi, nōtum, v.a., *obtain knowledge of, become acquainted with, learn*; the perfect has a present meaning, *know (p. 145)*.

nos-ter, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. pron., *our, our own, ours*; in pl., *nostri, our troops, our men*.

nostrum or **nostri**, gen. pl. of *ego* (p. 104, 2, note).

notiti-a, -ae [nosco], *knowledge*.
nōt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [nōta, a mark],
 v.a., *mark, indicate, designate*.
nō-tus, -ta, -tum [perf. part. of nosco,
 used as an adj.], *known, well-known*.
nōvem, num. adj., *nine*.
nōvi. See nosco.
nōv-us, -ā, -um, adj., *fresh, new,*
recent, strange; superl., *novissimus*;
 no comp.; **agmen novissimum**, *the*
rear; **res novae**, *a revolution*.
nox, noctis, F., *night*; *darkness*;
primā nocte, *at nightfall*; **multā**
nocte, *late at night*.
nox-i-a, -ae [noceo], F., *offence, crime*.
nūb-es, -is, F., *a cloud*.
nūbo, nūbēre, nupsī, nuptum [nubes],
 v.n., with dat., *veil one's self for* (used of a
 woman marrying a man), with dat.,
marry.
nūd-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.a., *strip,*
expose.
nūd-us, -a, -um, adj., *bare, destitute*
of, with abl. (p. 64, 4).
null-us, -a, -um, gen. nullius [ne +
 ullus], adj., *none, no one*.
num, interrog. particle; p. 29.
Nūm-a, -ae, M., *Numa* i.e., Numa
 Pompilius, the second king of Rome.
nū-men, -minis [nuo, nod], N.,
power, majesty (of the gods), *divinity*.
nūmēr-us, -ī, M., *number*; *regard*;
in aliquo numero esse, *to be held in*
any regard.
numm-us, -ī, M., *money*; **pro**
nummo utor, *I use as money*.
nunquam [ne + unquam], adv., *never*.
nunc, adv., *now*.
nuntī-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [nuntius],
 v.a., *announce, tell, narrate, report*;
nuntiat, *word is being brought*;
nuntiatum est, *word was brought*.
nuntī-us, -ī, M., *messenger, message,*
tidings.
nūper [= novum-per, from novus],
 adv., *lately, recently*.
nusquam [ne + usquam], adv., *no-*
where, in no place.
nūt-us, -ūs [nuo, nod], M., *nod, hint,*
command.

O.

Ō, interj., *O! Oh!*

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for*;
ob eam rem, *for this reason*; **quam**
ob rem, *wherefore, accordingly*.

ōbēdīo, -ēdire, -ēdīvi, -ēditum [ob +
 audio, heed], with dat., v.n., *give ear*
to, obey.

ōb-ēo, -īre, -īvi (or īi), -ītum [ob +
 eo, go], *go towards, attend, perform*;
mortem obire, *meet death*.

ōb-īcio, -īcēre, -īcī, -īectum [ob + iacio],
 v.a., *thrust or put in the way of, place in*
front.

ob-īectus, -īecta, -īectum [ob + iacio],
 p.p., *lying between, situated between, op-*
posite.

ob-litus. See obliviscor.

ob-liviscor, -livisci, -litus sum, v.
 dep., *forget* (with gen.; p. 145).

ob-sēcro, -sēcāre, -sēcāvi, -sēcātum
 [ob + sacer], v.a., *beseech, supplicate*.

ob-servo, -servāre, -servāvi, -servā-
 tum [ob + servo], v.a., *observe, regard,*
watch, obey.

ob-ses, -sidis, M. and F., *a hostage*.

ob-sessio, -sessiōnis [obsideo], F.,
siege, blockade.

ob-sīdeo, -sīdēre, -sīdī, -sessum [ob +
 sedeo], v.a., *besiege, occupy, blockade*.

ob-sīdio, -sīdiōnis [obsideo], F., *a*
siege, blockade.

ob-sisto, -sistēre, -stīti, -stitum [ob +
 sisto], v.n., *stand against, oppose, resist,*
withstand.

ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti, no sup., v.n.,
stand against, oppose, withstand.

ob-testor, -testāri, -testātus sum [ob
 + testis, witness], v. dep., *implore, ad-*
jure.

ob-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnī, -tentum [ob
 + teneo], v.a., *hold, possess, occupy*.

obviam [ob + via], adv., *on the way,*
towards; **obviam venire**, *to come to*
meet.

occāsī-o, -ōnis [ob + cado], F., *oppor-*
tunity, chance.

occās-us, -ūs [ob + cado], M., *a going*
down, setting; **occasus solis**, *sunset,*
the west.

oc-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cāsum [ob +
 cado], v.n., *fall, set*; *be killed*.

oc-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cīsum [ob +
 caedo], v.a., *kill, strike down*.

oc-culto, -cultāre, -cultāvi, -cultātum
 v.a., *cover, hide, conceal*.

oc-cult-us, -cultā, -cultum, adj.,
hidden, concealed.

oc-cūpo, -cūpāre, -cūpāvi, -cūpātum
 [ob + capio], v.a., *seize, take*.

oc-curo, -currēre -curri (rarely cū-

curri), -cursum, v.n., *run towards, run to meet; meet, oppose.*

ocēānus, -i, M., *the ocean.*

octāv-us, -a, -um [octo, *eight*], num. adj., *eighth.*

octīngentī, -ae, -a [octo + centum], *eight hundred.*

octo, indecl. adj., *eight.*

octodēcim, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*

ocūl-us, -i, M., *eye.*

odī, -isse, v. dep., *hate* (p. 145).

odī-um, -i [odi], N., *hatred; esse odio, to be hated* (p. 196, 7, note).

of-fendo, -fendēre, -fendi, fensum [ob + fendo, *strike, strike against, harm, hurt.*

offēro, offerre, obtuli, oblātum [ob + fero], v.a., *bring before, present, offer.*

offici-um, -i [ob + facio], N., *duty, allegiance; officium praestare, to do one's duty; in officio esse, be in allegiance.*

ol-ēo, -ēre, ūi, no sup., v.n., *smack, smell of.*

Olymp-us, -i, M., *Olympus, a mountain of Greece, the fabled home of the gods.*

ol-im [olle, old form for ille], adv., *at one time; formerly, hereafter.*

ō-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [ob + mitto], v.a., *let go, throw away, neglect.*

omnīnō [omnis], adv., *in all, altogether, in general; after negative, at all; nihil omnino, nothing at all; with numerals, in all; decem omnino, ten in all.*

omn-is, -e, adj., *all, every; pl., omnes, all persons; omnes ad unum, all to a man.*

ōnērārī-us, -a, -um [onus], adj., *of a burden; navis oneraria, a transport.*

ōnēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [onus], v.a., *load, overload.*

ōn-us, -ēris, N., *load, burden, weight.*

ōpēr-a, -ae, F., *work, toil; operam dare, to pay attention to; mea operā, by my aid.*

opīnī-o, -ōnis [opinor, *think*], F., *belief, notion, reputation; opinio timoris, impression of fear; iustitiae opinio, reputation for fair dealing; praeter opinionem, contrary to expectation; celerius omni opinione, sooner than anyone had expected.*

ōport-et, -ēre, -tūit, impers., *it is necessary, ought* (p. 162, 4).

oppidān-us, -a, -um [oppidum], *of a*

town; oppidāni (noun, pl.), *townspeople, inhabitants of a town.*

oppid-um, -i, N., *town.*

opportūnī-tas, -tātis [opportunus], F., *fitness, favorable condition or situation, advantage.*

opportūn-us, -a, -um [ob + portus, *at or near the port*], adj., *fit, suitable.*

op-primo, -primere, -pressi, -pressum [ob + premo], v.a., *weigh down, burden, crush, destroy.*

oppugnātī-o, -ōnis [ob + pugno], F., *assault, attack.*

oppugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ob + pugno], v.a., *storm, attack* (a city or camp).

(ops), nom. wanting; gen., opis, F., *might, power, help; pl., opes, wealth, resources, means* (see appendix, p. 278).

optīme. See bene.

optīmus. See bonus.

ōp-us, -ēris, N., *work, labor, fortification; magno opere* (or magnopere), *greatly, exceedingly; quanto opere, how greatly; tanto opere, or tant-opere, so much, so greatly.*

opus est. See 166, 2.

ōr-a, -ae, F., *coast, shore; ora maritima, sea coast.*

ōrātī-o, -ōnis [oro], F., *a speech.*

ōrāt-or, -ōris [oro], M., *speaker.*

orb-is, -is, M., *a circle; orbis terrarum, the whole world.*

orb-us, -a, -um, adj., *bereft of, deprived of.*

ord-o, -īnis, M., *an arranging, rank, line; ordines servare, to keep the ranks; extra ordinem, out of line, irregularly.*

Orgētōr-ix, -īgis, M., *Orgetorix, a Helvetian noble.*

Ōrest-es, -ae, M., *Orestes, son of Agamemnon.*

ōrien-s, -tis [pres. part. of orior, used as an adj.], *rising. As a noun, M., the east.*

ōrior, ōriri, ortus sum, v. dep., *rise, arise, begin; sol oriens, the rising sun; luce orta, at day-break.*

ornāment-um, -i [ornō], N., *an ornament.*

ornāt-us, -a, -um, -ūs [ornō], adj., *adorned, ornamented.*

ornat-us, -ūs [ornō], M., *ornament.*

orn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *adorn.*

or-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *pray for, beseech.*

os, ōris, N, mouth, face.

os-tendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tensum (or-tentum), [ob+tendo], v.a., show, display, declare.

ōtīōs-us, -a, -um [otium], adj., at leisure.

ōtī-um, -i, N., leisure, quiet.

ōv-is, -is, F., a sheep.

ōv-um, -i, N., egg.

P.

pābūlātī-o [pabulum]. F., foraging, getting fodder.

pābūlāt-or, -ōris [pabulum], M., forager.

pābūl-or, -āri, -ātus sum [pabulum], v. dep., forage, seek forage.

pābūlum, -i, N., fodder, forage.

pācā-tus, -ta, -tum [p.p. of paco, used as an adj.], peaceful, quiet.

pāc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pax], v.a., subdue, pacify.

pac-tum, -ti, N., agreement, bargain.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

pāg-us, -i, M., district, canton; the word still exists in French *pays*: as, Pays de Calais.

pālam, adv., openly, publicly.

pallid-us, -um, adj., pale.

palm-a, -ae, F., palm of the hand; hand.

pāl-us, -i, M., a stake.

pāl-us, -ūdis, F., marsh.

pando, pandere, pandi, pansum and passum, v.a., stretch, stretch out.

pān-is, -is, M., bread, loaf.

pār, pāris, adj., equal, equal to.

pārā-tus, -ta, -tum [p.p. of pārō, used as an adj.], prepared, ready.

parce [parcus], adv., sparingly.

parc-us, -a, -um [parco], adj., sparing, frugal, thrifty.

parco, parcere, pēperci (or parsi), no sup., v.a. (with dat.; p. 105, 9), spare.

pāren-s, -tis [pres. part. of pārō used as a noun], M. or F., parent, father or mother.

pār-ō, -ēre, ūi, -itum, v.n. (with dat.; p. 105, 9), obey.

pārō, pārere, pēperi, partum and pāritum, v.a., bring forth, produce, obtain.

pārī-ēs, -ētis, M., a wall.

pārīter [par], adv., equally, evenly.

pār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., prepare, get ready, equip.

pars, partis, F., part, portion, share, number; region, district; unā ex parte, on one side; in omnes partes, in all directions.

partim [pars], adv., partly.

partī-or, -īri, -itus sum [pars], v. dep., divide.

pārūm, adv., little, too little (p. 77).

parvūl-us, -a, -um [parvus], adj., very small, young; ab parvulo, from youth.

parv-us, -a, -um, adj., small, trifling; comp., minor; sup., minimus.

passer, -ēris, M., a sparrow.

passim [passus, from pando], adv., in all directions.

pass-us, -ūs, M., a step, pace; as a measure of length, reckoned from heel to same heel (like our two military steps) = five Roman feet = 4 ft. 10½ in. of English measurement; mille passuum = 5,000 Roman feet = 4854 English feet = 1618 yards, or 142 yards short of the English mile.

pastor, -ōris [pasco, feed], M., shepherd.

pātēfācio, -fācere, -fēci, -factum [pateo+facio], v.a., to open; pass., patefio, -fieri, -factus sum.

pāt-ens, -entis [pres. part. of pateo, used as an adj.], open.

pāt-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, no sup., v.a., be open, stand open, extend.

pāt-er, -tris [pasco, feed], M., father; pl., patrēs, fathers, senate; pater familias or familiae, father of a family.

pātīenter [patiens, pres. part. of patior, suffer, endure], adv., patiently.

pātīentī-a, -ae, [patior], F., endurance, forbearance.

pātior, pātī, passus sum, v. dep., endure, suffer, bear.

pātrī-a, -ae [pater], F., fatherland, one's native land.

pātrīcī-us, -a, -um [pater], adj., patrician, noble.

pauc-us, -a, -um, adj., some few; generally plural; pauci, a few persons; pauca, a few words.

paulātim [paulus], adv., a little, gradually.

paulisper [paulus], adv., for a short time.

paulo [properly abl. of degree of difference from paulus], adv., (by) a little, just a little.

paulūm [paulus], adv., a little, gradually.

paulum [properly neuter acc. of paulus], adv., *a little*.

paul-us, -a, -um, adj., *little*.

pauper, -eris, adj., *poor*; comp., pauperior; sup. pauperimus.

paupertas, -lātis [pauper], F., *poverty*.

pā-vor, vōris, M., *fear*.

pax, pācis, F., *peace*; pace tuā, *with your permission*; pace ūti, *to keep quiet*.

pecc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.n., *do wrong*.

pect-us, -ōris, N., *breast*.

pēcūnī-a, -ae, [pecus, cattle], F., *money, wealth, riches*.

pēc-us, -ōris, N., *cattle*.

pēc-us, -ūdis, F., *head of cattle*.

pēd-es, -itis [pes], M., *a foot soldier*; *infantry*.

pedes-ter, -tris, -tre (pes), *on foot, on land*.

pēditāt-us, -ūs [pedes], M., *infantry*.

pēior, -is [see malus], adj. comp., *worse*.

pell-is, -is, F., *skin, hide*.

pello, pellere, pēpuli, pulsum, v.a., *expel, drive out*.

pendeo, pendere, pēpendi, pensum, v.n., *hang, be suspended*.

pendo, pendere, pēpendi, pensum, v.a., *hang, weigh; pay*.

pēnes, prep. with acc. only, *in the power of; in possession of*.

pēnitus, adv., *within, entirely, completely*.

per, prep., with acc. only, *through, by means of, by; in composition, through, thoroughly, very*.

per-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [per + capio], v.a., *take in, learn, receive*.

percunctāti-o, -ōnis [percontor, inquire], F., *inquiry, questioning*.

per-curro, -currere, -cūcurri [or -curri], -cursum [per + curro], v.n., *run through, run along*.

per-disco, discere, -didici, no sup. [per + disco], v.a., *learn by heart*.

pēr-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or -ii), -itum [per + eo], v.n., *perish, die*.

pēr-ēquito, -ēquitare, -ēquitavi, -ēquitatum [per + equito, ride], v.n., *ride through*.

pēr-exigū-us, -a, -um [per + exiguus], adj., *very small*.

per-facil-is, -e [per + facilis], adj., *very easy*.

per-fēro, -ferre, -tāli, -lātum [per + fero], v.a., *carry, bring, repeat; endure*.

per-ficio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum [per + facio], v.a., *finish, complete, perform, furnish*.

perfidia, -ae [perfidus, faithless], F., *faithlessness, treachery*.

perfūg-a, -ae [perfūgio], M., *a deserter, run-away*.

per-fūgio, -fūgere, -fūgi, -fūgitum [per + fugio], *flee, escape, desert*.

perfūgi-um, -i [perfugio], N., *refuge*.

pergo, pergere, perrexī, perrectum [per + rego], v.a., *go on, advance*.

pēriculōs-us, -a, -um [periculum], adj., *full of danger, dangerous*.

pēricul-um, i, N., *danger, trial, attempt*.

pērit-us, -a, -um, adj., *skilled, practised (with genitive); rei militaris pēritus, skilled in military affairs*.

per-lēgo, -lēgere, -lēgi, -lectum [per + lego], v.a., *read through*.

per-lūo, -lūere, -lūi, -lūtum [per + luo, wash], v.a., *wash thoroughly, bathe*.

permagn-us, -a, -um [per + magnus], adj., *very large, very great*.

per-māneo, -mānere, -mansī, -mansum [per + maneo], *stay, remain, continue*.

per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [per + mitto], v.n., *entrust*.

per-mōveo, -mōvere, -mōvi, -mōtum [per + mōveo], v.a., *rouse, disturb, alarm, induce*.

per-nici-es, -ei [per + nex], F., *ruin, destruction*.

per-pauc-i, -ae, -a [per + paucus], adj., *very few*.

per-pētior, -pēti, -pessus sum [per + petior], v., dep., *bear, endure*.

per-pētūo [perpetuus], adv., *continually, constantly*.

per-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum [per + rumpo, break], v.a., *break through, demolish*.

per-saepe [per + saepe], adv., *very often*.

per-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [per + scribo], v.a., *write a full report of, report in full*.

per-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūtus (or sēcūtus) sum, v., dep., *follow up, pursue, avenge*.

persévēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *persist, persevere*.

per-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum [per + solvo], v.a., *pay in full*.

per-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [per + specio, look], v.a., *see, inspect, survey, ascertain, recognise*.

per-suādēō, -suādēre, -suāst, -suāsum [per+suadō, advise], v.a. and n., *persuade, convince, induce*; **mihi per-suadetur**, *I am persuaded* (164, 1.)

per-terreo, -terrēre, -terrūi, -territum [per+terreo, frighten], v.a., *greatly alarm, frighten, terrify*.

per-tināc-ia, -iae [per+teneo], F., *obstinacy*.

per-tinēō, -tinēre, -tinūi, no sup. [per+teneo], v.a., *reach out, extend, concern*.

per-turbāt-ō, -tōnis [per+turbo, disturb], F., *confusion*.

per-turb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [per+turbo], v.a., *disturb greatly, agitate*.

per-vēniō, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum [per+venio], v.n., *come, arrive, reach*.

pēs, pēdis, M., *foot*; **pedem referre**, *retreat*.

pēto, pētēre, pētīvi (or pētīf), pētītum, v.a., *aim at, attack*; *try to reach*; *ask, seek*.

phālan-x, -gis, F., *a band of soldiers in solid mass*.

philosōphi-a, -ae, F., *philosophy*.

philosōph-us, -i, M., *philosopher*.

piēt-as, -ātis [pius, dutiful], F., *duty to one's country or parents*; *loyalty, patriotism*.

pig-et, -ēre, -nīt or -itum est, impers., *it vexes, irks, troubles*; **piget me huius stultitiāe**, *I am vexed at this folly*.

pil-um, -i, N., *a kind of javelin, pike*.

pl-ū-is, -e, adj., *fat*.

pinn-a, -ae, F., *feather*.

pisc-is, -is, F., *fish*.

pix, picis, F., *pitch*.

plāc-ēō, -ēre, -nīt, -itum, v.a., *please, be agreeable to*; often used impersonally; **mihi placet**, *I am pleased*; *I am resolved*.

plācīdē [placidus], adv., *quietly, calmly*.

plāc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.a., *appease*.

plāg-a, -ae, F., *region, district*; pl., *a net*.

plāne [planus], adv., *clearly, entirely*.

plānītī-es, ei [planus], F., *plain, level ground*.

plān-us, -a, -um, adj., *plain, flat, level*.

plēbs, plebis, or plebes, plebēi, F., *the common people, populace*.

plēnē [plenus], adv., *fully, completely*.

plēn-us, -a, -um, adj., *full*; 61, 3.

plērumque [acc. of plēr-que], adv., *mostly, generally, usually*.

plēr-usque, -āque, -unique [plerus, very many], adj., *very many, most*; often used in the plural: **plerique**, *the most, the majority*.

plumbum, -i, N., *lead*; **album plumbum**, tin.

plures. See multus (p. 57, 4).

plurimus. See multus (p. 57, 4).

plus. See multus (p. 57, 4).

pōcūl-um, -i, N., *a drinking-cup*.

poen-a, -ae, F., *punishment, compensation, penalty*; **poenas dare**, *to pay the penalty, be punished*; **poenas pendere** or **persolvere**, *pay the penalty*.

poenīt-et, -ēre, -nīt, no sup., v. imp., *it repents*; **me facti poenitet**, *it repents me of the deed* (p. 165, 1).

pōēt-a, -ae, M., *a poet*.

pollic-ēor, -ēri, -itus sum, v. dep., *promise*; with fut. inf. (p. 110); **p. me hoc facturum esse**, *I promise to do this*.

Pompēius, -i, M., *Pompey*; **Gneius Pompeius Magnus**, a great Roman general, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, B.C. 48.

pōm-um, -i, N., *an apple*.

pond-us, -eris [pendo, weigh], N., *weight*.

pōno, pōnēre, pōnūi, pōsitum, v.a., *place, put, lay down*; **castra ponere**, *pitch a camp*.

pons, pontis, M., *bridge*.

pontī-fex, -ficis [pons + facere, sacrifice], M., *high priest, pontiff*.

pōpūlātī-o, -ōnis [populus, devastate], *devastation, ravaging*.

pōpūl-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. dep., *devastate, lay waste*.

pōpūl-us, -i, M., *people*.

port-a, -ae, F., *gate, door*.

port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.a., *carry*.

portōri-um, -i [portus], N., *harbor-dues, toll, tax, custom*.

port-us, -ūs, M., *harbor, port, haven*.

posco, poscēre, pōposci, no sup., v.a., *beg, demand, ask*.

possessī-o, -ōnis [possidēō], F., *possession*.

pos-sidēō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessum v.a., *hold, occupy, possess*.

possum, posse, pōtūi, no sup. [potis, able+sum, be], irreg. v., *be able, can* (p. 142); **multum posse**, *to have great power*; **plurimum posse**, *to have very great power*.

post, adv., *after, later*; often with abl.: **anno post**, *a year after*; **paucis annis post**, *a few years after* (p. 82, 3).

post, prep., with acc. only, *behind, after*: **post tergum**, *in the rear*; **post paucos annos**, *after a few years* (p. 82, 3).

postēā, [post+ea], adv., *afterwards*.
posteaquam [postea+quam], conj., *after that, after*.

postēr-us, -a, -um [post], adj., *the following, next*; comp., *posterior*; sup., *postremus*; pl. M., *postēr-i, -orum, posterity*.

posthoc [post+hoc], adv., *after this; hereafter, henceforth*.

post-pōno, -pōnere, -pōnū, -pōnitum [post+pono], v.a., *put after, esteem less, lay aside*.

postquam [post+quam], adj., *after that, after, when* (p. 200, 2).

postrēmō [abl. neut. of *postremus*, from *posterus*], adv., *at last, finally*.

postridiē [locative form of *posterus*+dies], adv., *the next day*.

postulāt-um, -i [postulo], N., *demand, request*.

postul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *ask, demand, request*.

pōten-s, -tis [pres. part. of *possum*, used as an adj.], *powerful*.

pōtenti-a, -ae [potens], F., *power, might, influence*.

pōtest-as, -tātis [potens], F., *might, power; opportunity*.

pōtior, pōtiri, pōtitus sum [potis, able], v. dep., *get possession of, become master of, acquire* (with abl. generally; p. 116).

pōtius [comp. of *potis, able*], adv., *rather, more, preferably*; sup., *potissimum, especially*.

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with, on account of*.

prae-ācūtus, -ācūta, -ācūtum [prae+acuō, sharpen, p.p., used as an adj.], *sharpened at the end, pointed*.

prae-bēo, -bēre, -būi, -bitum [prae+habeo], v.a., *offer, show, furnish*.

prae-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [prae+cedo], v.a., *go before, surpass*.

prae-ceps, -cipitis [prae+caput], adj., *headlong, steep, precipitous*.

prae-ceptor, -ceptoris [prae+capiō], M., *instructor*.

prae-ceptum, -cepti [praecipio], N., *teaching, counsel; order, command*.

prae-cipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum [prae+capiō], v.a., *order, direct, instruct*.

praecipuē, [praecipuus], adv., *especially, particularly*.

prae-clārus, adj., *very noted, very distinguished*.

prae-c-o, -ōnis, M., *herald, crier*.

prae-curro, -currere, -e-curri, (or curri), cursum [prae+curro], v.a., *run before, outstrip*.

praed-a, -ae F., *booty, spoil*.

praed-o, -ōnis, M., *robber, bandit*.

prae-dīco, -dicāre, -dicāvi, -dicātum [prae+dico], v.a. and n., *make known, assert, declare, proclaim* (prae-dico, foretell).

praedit-us, -a, -um, adj., *endowed with* (with abl.; p. 64, 4).

praed-or, -āri, -ātus sum [praeda], v. dep., *plunder, pillage, obtain booty*.

praefectus, -i, [praeficio], M., *officer, leader, commander*.

prae-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum [prae+fero], v. irreg., *put before, prefer*.

prae-ficio, -ficere, -fecī, -fectum [prae+facio], v.a., *put over, place in command of* (with acc. and dat.).

prae-figo, -figere, -fixi, -fixum [prae+figo fasten], *fix or place in front of; sudibus praefixis, by driving stakes in front*.

prae-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [prae+mitto], v.a., *send forward, send before or in advance*.

praemi-um, -i [prae+ēmo, take], N., *reward*.

praepār-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *prepare*.

prae-pōno, -pōnere, -pōnū, -pōnitum [prae+pono], v.a., *set over, place in command of*.

prae-ruptus, -rupta, -ruptum [perf. p. of *praerumpo*, used as an adj.], *steep, precipitous*.

prae-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [prae+scribo], v.a., *order, direct, command*.

praescriptum, -scripti [praescribo], N., *order, instruction*.

praesens, praesentis [pres. part. of *praesum* used as an adj.], *at hand, present*.

praesenti-a, -ae [praesens], F., *presence; in praesentia, for the time being, for the present*.

praesertim [prae+sero, join], *especially, particularly*.

praesidi-um, -i [praesens, guard], *guard, defence, garrison, fortress, redoubt*.

prae-sto, -stare, -stiti, -stitum [prae-sto], v.a., *show, display, perform*.

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, no sup. [prae-sum], v.n., *to be over, preside over, have command of*.

praeter, prep. with acc. only, *beyond, except, contrary to*.

praetērēa [praeter+en] adv., *beside*.

praetērēo, -īre, -ivi, -itum [praeter+eo], v.a. and n., *pass by, go by, pass over*.

praetērīt-us, -a, -um [praetereoi], p.p. used as an adj., *past*; **tempus praeteritum**, *past time*.

praeter-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -misum [praeter+mitto], v.a., *let pass, let slip*.

praeterquam [praeter+quam], adv., *except, beyond, besides*.

praeter-vēhor, -vēhī, -vectus sum [praeter+veho], v. dep., *be carried beyond, sail past, coast along*.

praet-or -ōris [for praetor, from praeco, one who goes before], M., *general, commander, praetor*.

praetōri-us, -a, -um [praetor], adj., *of or belonging to the praetor*; **cohors praetoria**, *general's body-guard*; **porta praetoria**, *gate near the general's tent in the camp*.

prāt-um, -i, N., *meadow*.

prēcī, prēcem, prēcē; in pl., prēcēs, precum, F., *prayer, request*. (Appendix, p. 279.)

prē-hendo, -hendēre, -hendi, -hensus, v.a., *seize, grasp, snatch, learn*.

prēmo, prēmēre, pressi, pressum, v.a., *press, harass, oppress*.

prendo, prendēre, prendi, prensum (seeprehendo).

prētī-um, -i, M., *price, value*.

prex, obsolete noun. See preci. (Appendix, p. 279.)

pridie [prior+die], adv., *the day before*.

primō [abl. of primus], adv., *at first, in the first instance*.

primum [acc. neut. of primus], adv., *first, in the first place*; **quam primum**, *as soon as possible*; **cum primum**, *as soon as*.

prim-us, -a, -um, adj. of superl. degree, *first*; comp. prior; no positive; **primā luce**, *at daybreak*; **primā nocte**, *at nightfall*.

prin-ceps, -cipis [primus+capiō], M., *chief man, chief, prince*.

princīpā-tus, -tūs [princeps], M., *chief authority, leadership*.

prior, prius, adj., *former, previous* (see primus).

pristin-us, -a, -um [prior], adj., *old, former*.

prius [prior], adv., *before, sooner, earlier*.

priusquam, [prius+quam], conj., *before, sooner than* (p. 201, 5).

privātum [privatus], adv., *privately, individually, as individuals*.

privāt-us, -a, -um [privo, set apart from the state], adj., *private*.

priv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *deprive*.

pro, prep., with abl. only, *in front of, before*; *for, on behalf of*; *in proportion to*; *as*.

probit-as, -ātis [probus], F., *uprightness*.

prob-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *make good, justify, approve*.

prob-us, -a, -um, adj., *good, excellent, upright*.

prō-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessi, -cessum [pro+cēdo], v.n., *advance, succeed*.

pro-cērus, -cēra, -cērum, adj., *tall, high*.

pro-clām-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pro+clamō], v.a., *proclaim, shout aloud*.

proconsul, -ūlis [pro+consul], M., *proconsul*, one who, having been a consul, has the government of a province assigned to him.

procul, adv., *from afar, at a distance, far off*.

prō-cumbo, -cumbēre, -cūbui, -cūbitum [pro+cumbo], v.a., *fall, sink down, lie down*.

pro-cūro, -cūrāre, -cūrāvī, -cūrātum [pro+curo], v.a., *have charge of, attend to*.

procurro, -currēre, -cūcurri (or -curri), -cursum, v.n. [pro+curo], *rush forward, hasten forward*.

prōd-ēo, -īre, -ivi (or -i), -itum [pro+eo], v.n., *go forward, advance*.

prodesse. See prōsum.

prōdītī-o, -ōnis [prōdo], F., *treachery, betraying*.

prōdīt-or, -ōris [prōdo], M., *traitor, betrayer*.

prō-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum [pro+do], v.a., *betray, surrender*.

prōdūco, -ducēre, -duxi, -ductum [pro+duco], v.a., *lead forth or forward*; *extend*.

proeli-or, -ārī, -ātus sum [proellum], v. dep., *fight*.

proeli-um, -i [proelior], N., battle, fight, engagement..

profecti-o, -ōnis [proficiscor], F., departure, setting out.

profecto [pro + factum, a fact], adv., indeed.

pro-fero, -ferre, -tāli, -lātum [pro + fero], v. irreg., carry forward, bring forth.

pro-ficio, -ficere, -fieri, -fectum [pro + facio], v.a., advance, effect, gain.

pro-ficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum, v, dep., set out, depart.

pro-fitēor, -fitēri, -fessus sum [pro + fateor], v. dep., profess, declare, confess.

pro-fugio, -fugere, -fūgi, -fūgitum [pro + fugio], v.a., flee, escape.

pro-fugus, -fūgi [pro + fugio], M., deserter, exile.

pro-gnātus, -a, -um [pro + (g)natus, from (g)nascor], adj., sprung from.

pro-grēdior, -grēdi, -gressus sum [pro + gradior, step], v. dep., advance, go forward.

pro-hibēo, -hibere, hībui, hībītum [pro + habeo], v.a., hold, restrain, prevent.

pro-icio, -icere, -icēi, -iectum [pro + iacio], v.a., throw, throw away.

pro-inde [pro + inde], adv., henceforth, therefore.

pro-miss-us, -a, -um [perf. p. of promitto, let go before], long, flowing; **capillus promissus**, long, flowing hair.

pro-mitto, -mittere, -misi, missum [pro + mitto], v.a., promise.

pro-mōvō, -mōvare, -mōvi, -mōtum [pro + moveo], v.a., move forward.

prompt-us, -um [perf. part. of promo, bring forward, used as an adj.], ready.

pro-mulg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pro + vulgus], v.a., enact a law.

prōnē [pronus], adv., headlong, leaning forward.

pro-nunti-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pro + nuntio], v.a., tell, announce, declare.

prope, adv., near, nearly, almost, followed by acc. or dat. or ad. with acc; **prope montem**, prope monti, prope ad montem, near the mountain; comp., propius; sup., proxime.

pro-pello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum [pro + pello], v.a., drive away, put to flight.

propër-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [propërus, quick], v.a. and n., hurry, hasten.

propinquitas, -tātis [propinquus], F., nearness, vicinity, relationship.

propinqu-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [propinquus], v.n., come near; approach.

propinqu-us, -a, -um [prope], adj., near, high; as a noun, propinquus, relation.

prōpi-or, -is [comparative from supposed prop-is, -e], nearer; superl., proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next; **proximā nocte**, on the last night.

propius. See prope.

prōpōno, -ponere, -posui, -positum [prō + pōno], v.a., put forward; set up; explain; raise; **vexillum proponere**, raise the flag (the sign of battle).

prōpri-us, -a, -um, adj., one's own, particular, peculiar.

propter, prep. with acc. only, on account of, in consequence of.

propterea [propter + ea], adv., for this reason, therefore.

pro-pugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pro + pugno], v.n., fight.

prō-puls-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pro + pello], v.a., drive off, ward off, repel.

pror-a, -ae, F., prow.

prō-sēquor, -sequi, -secutus or sequutus], sum, v. dep., follow after, pursue.

prō-spect-us, -ūs [prospicio], M., view, sight.

prospēr-us, -a, -um, adj., fortunate.

pro-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [pro + spicio], v.a., look, look out, provide for.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, no sup., v. irreg., to be of profit to, benefit.

prōtinus [pro + tenus, up to], adv., at once, forthwith, immediately.

pro-vēho, -vēhere, -vexi, -vectum [pro + vēho], v.a., carry forward; pass. often in sense of sail along.

pro-vidéo, -videre, -vidi, -visum [pro + video], v.a., foresee, perceive, provide.

prōvid-us, -a, -um [pro + video], adj., foreseeing.

prōvinci-a, -ae, F., province, duty.

prō-vōco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pro + voco], v.a., challenge, summon.

proxime. See prope.

proximus. See propior.

prūden-s, -tis [pro + video], adj., prudent, foreseeing.

prudenti-a, -ae [= providentia, from pro + video], F. foresight, prudence.

publicē [publicus], adv., in the name of the state, as a state.

public-us, -a, -um [*populicus*, from *populus*], *adj.*, of or belonging to the people, public, common; **res publica**, *n.*, commonwealth; politics.

pud-et, -ere, -it or -itum est, *v. impers.*, it causes shame (p. 165, 1).

pud-or, -oris [*pudet*], *M.*, shame.

puell-a, *ae* [*dim. fem. of puer*], *F.* a girl.

pū-or, -ōri, *M.*, child, boy.

pū-eril-is, -e [*puer*], *adj.*, of a child or boy; **puerili aetate**, during the age of childhood.

pugn-a, -ae, *F.*, fight, combat.

pugn-o, -āre, -avi, -atum, *v.n.*, fight; **pugnatum est**, the battle was fought (p. 164, 2, note 2.).

pul-cher, -ehra, -ehrum, *adj.*, beautiful.

pulv-is, -ōris, *M.*, dust.

pūn-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *v.a.*, punish.

pup-pis, -is, *F.*, stern of a vessel.

purg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [*purus + ago*], *v.a.*, clear, make clear, free from blame, excuse.

pūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *v.a. and n.*, think, consider, decide.

Pylād-es, -ae, *M.*, *Pylades*, a Greek, friend of Orestes.

Pyrēnaē-us, -a, *um*, generally in the pl. *montes Pyrenaei*, the Pyrenees, a mountain range between France and Spain.

Q.

quā [*abl. fem. of qui*, supply *viā* or *parte*], *adv.*, where; as far as.

quā, *nom. sing. fem. and neut. pl. of indef. pron. quis or qui* (p. 129).

quadrāgintā, *num. adj. indecl.*, forty.

quadrīngent-ī, -ae, -a [*quatuor + centum*], *adj.*, four hundred.

quaero, *quaerere*, *quaesivi*, *quaestum*, *v.a.*, seek, look for, ask, inquire.

quaest-īo, -īōnis [*quaero*], *examination*.

quaestor, *ōris* [*quaero*], *M.*, *quaestor* or *state treasurer*; *quarter-master* of the army.

quaest-us -ūs [*quaero*], *M.*, *gain*, *profit*.

quāl-is, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort? what sort?

quam, *adv.*, how much? how? **quam vetus**, how old? with superlative, with or without *possum*, as possible; **quam optimus**, as good as possible; *ac*

comparatives and comparative expressions, as, then; **puer melior quam tu**, a boy better than you; **post diem quartum quam venit**, the fourth day after he came.

quamdiū, *adv.*, as long as.

quamobrem, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, for which reason, wherefore, why.

quamquam, *conj.*, though, although, however, and yet (p. 196, 5).

quamvis [*quam + vis*, from *volo*], *adv.*, however; **quamvis pauci**, no matter how few; although (p. 196, 5).

quando, *interrog. or rel. adv.*, when, whenever, at any time.

quanto [*abl. of difference*, from *quantus*], *adv.*, by how much; **quanto . . . tanto**, as . . . so, the . . . the (p. 195, 4).

quantum [*acc. of quantus*], *adv.*, how much, how far, as far as.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *interrog. or rel.* (1) how great? how much? how large? (2) as great as.

quantusvis, *quantavis*, *quantumvis* [*quantus + volo*], *adj.*, however great.

quārē [*qua + re*], *adv.*, wherefore, why.

quart-us, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fourth.

quāsi [*quam, as + si, if*], *conj.*, as if.

quattuor, *num. indecl. adj.*, four.

quattuordecim [*quattuor + decem*], *num. indecl. adj.*, fourteen.

-que, *conj.*, and, always appended to another word which in construction belongs to it.

quemadmodum [*quem + ad + modum*], *adv.*, in what way, how.

quēror, *quēri*, *questus sum*, *v. dep.*, complain, lament.

quī, *quae*, *quod*, *rel. pron.*, who, which (p. 126); *since he* (p. 198, 4); *so that he* (p. 188, 4).

quī, *quae* or *qua*, *quod*, *interrog. or indef. pron.*, 1. who, 2. any.

quicquam. See *quisquam* (p. 132, 3).

quicumque, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever (p. 126, 2).

quidam, *quaedam*, *quoddam* or *quidam*, *indef. pron.*, a certain, a certain one; pl., some, certain.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at least; **ne . . . quidem**, . . . even; the word emphasised is always placed between *ne* and *quidem*.

quies, -tis, *F.*, rest, repose, quiet, peaceful.

quilibet, **quaelibet**, **quodlibet** [qui + libet], ind.-f. rel., *anyone* (p. 132).

quīn [old abl. of qui + ne], conj., *that not, but that, without*; after words expressing doubt or suspicion, *that* (p. 188, 6); after words of preventing, etc., trans. by *from* with verbal noun ending in -ing (p. 185, 2, note).

quīnam, **quaenam**, **quodnam**, interrog. pron., *who pray? who then?*

quīndecim [quinque + decem], num. adj., *fifteen*.

quīngenti, -i, -ae, -a [quinque + centum], adj., *five hundred*.

quīni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *five each, five a piece*.

quīnquagintā, indecl. num. adj., *fifty*.

quinque, indecl. num. adj., *five*.

quint-us, -a, -um [quinque], num. adj., *fifth*.

quippe, adv. conj., *surely, certainly*; **quippe qui** (p. 198, 4 note).

quis, **quae** or **qua**, **quid** or **quod**, indef. pron., *anyone, any* (p. 129, 1).

quispiam, **quaepiam**, **quodpiam** and **quidpiam**, indef. pron., *some, some one* (p. 132).

quisquam, **quaequam**, **quicquam** or **quidquam**, indef. pron., *anyone*, (p. 132, 3).

quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque** or **quodque**, indef. pron., *each, every, every one*; with superlatives in singular, **quisque** = *all*; **optimus quisque**, *all the best*.

quisquis, **quaequae** or **quaqua**, **quidquid** (**quicquid**) or **quodquod**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

quivis, **quaevis**, **quidvis** (or **quodvis**) [quod + volo], indef. pron., *anyone you please, any*.

quō [abl. of qui], adv. (1) relative and interrog. *whither*; (2), indef. after *si* or *ne*, *to any place, to any point, anywhere*.

quō [abl. of qui], final conj., used especially with comparatives and followed by the subjunctive, *in order that* (p. 183, 5).

quoad [quod + ad = ad + quod], *as long as, until, till*.

quod [acc. of qui], conj., *because, inasmuch as, supposing that, so far as*; **propterea quod**, *because*; **quod si**, *but if, now if* (p. 192, 1, note).

quōmīnus, conj., *that not*; often best rendered by *from* (after verbs of hindering, preventing) with a verbal noun in *ing* (p. 185, 2).

quōniam [quom (= quum) + iam], conj., *since, seeing that, because* (p. 198).

quōque, adv., following the emphatic word of a clause, *also, too*.

quot, indecl. adj., *how many*.

quōtannis [quot + annis, abl. pl. of annus], adv., *yearly, every year*.

quotidiān-us, -a, -um [quot + dies], adj., *daily, every day*.

quotidiē [quot + dies], adv., *every day*.

quōtīēs [quot], *how often, as often as*.

quot-us, -a, -um [quot], adv., *what in number?* **quota hora**, *what time is it?*

quum. See **cum**.

R.

rādix, **rādīcis**, F., *root*; **montis rādices**, *foot of the mountain*.

rado, **rādēre**, **rāsi**, **rāsum**, v.a., *shave*.

rām-us, -i, M., *branch, bough*.

rāpīd-us, -a, -um [rapio], adj., *swift, quick*.

rāpīn-a, ae [rapio], F., *robbery, plunder, booty*.

rāp-īo, ēre, -āi, -tum, v.a., *snatch, seize, hurry off*.

rār-us, -a, -um, adj., *few, scattered, in small parties*.

rāt-īo, -iōnis [reor], F., *reckoning, calculation, account*.

rāt-is, -is, F., *raft*.

rāt-us. See **reor**.

re, **red**, an inseparable particle used in comp., *again, back*.

rebell-īo, -iōnis [re + bellum], F., *renewal of the war, uprising*.

rēbell-c, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re + bellum], v.a., *renew a war*.

rētr-ā, -cōdēre, -cessi, -cessum [re + trahere], v.a., *draw back, withdraw*.

rēcens, -centis, adj., *recent, late, fresh*.

rē-ceptus, -ceptus [recipio], M., *drawing back, retreat*.

rē-cipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum [re + capio], v.a., *take back, recover, win*; **se recipere**, *retreat*; **in deditionem recipere**, *to admit to a surrender*.

rē-cito, -citāre, -citāvi, -citātum [re + cito, quote], v.a., *read aloud*.

rē-clīno, -clīnāre, -clīnāvi, -clīnātum [re + clino], v.a., *make to lean*.

rē-cordor, -cordāri, -cordātus sum [re + cor], v. dep., *call to mind*.

rectē [rectus], adv., *rightly*.

rectus, -a, um, adj., *right, straight*.

rēcūs-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re + causa], v.a., *refuse, decline, shrink*; when followed by quominus or quin with the subj., these are to be translated by to with inf.

rēd-a, -ae, F., *waggon* (with four wheels).

red-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum [re + do], v.a., *give back, restore, return*; *render*.

rēd-ēo, -īre, -īvi (or II), -itum [red + eo], v.n., *go back, return*.

rēd-īgo, -īgēre, -ēgi, -actum [red + ago], v.a., *drive back, reduce*; *render*.

rēd-īmo, -īmēre, -ēmī, -emtum [red + emo, buy], v.a., *buy back, purchase*.

rēd-intēgr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [red + integer, whole], v.a., *renew, revive*.

rēdit-us, -ūs [red + eo], *return*.

rē-dūco, -dūcēre, -duxī, -ductum [re + dūco], v.a., *lead back*.

rē-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum [re + fero], *bring or carry back*; *report, announce*; **pedem referre**, *retreat*; **gratiam referre**, *return thanks*.

rē-fert, -ferre, -tūlīt v. impers., *it concerns, it is of importance* (p. 166, 3).

rēficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum [re + facio], v.a., *repair, visit, refresh*.

rēfūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgī, -fūgitum [re + fugio], v.a. and n., *flee back or away, retreat, escape*.

rēgin-a, -ae [rēgo], F., *queen*.

rēgi-o, -ōnis [rēgo], F., *district, country*.

rēgi-us, -a, -um [rex], adj., *kingly, royal*; **domus regia** (or regia alone), *palace*.

regn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [rego], v.a. and n., *be king, reign, rule*.

regn-um, -ī [rego], N., *kingdom*; *absolute power*.

rēgo, rēgēre, rexī, rectum, v.a., *reign, rule*.

rē-grēdi-or, -grēdī, -gressus sum [re + gradi-or, step], v. dep., *retreat, withdraw*.

rēgul-a, -ae [rego], F., *rule, line of conduct*.

rē-īcio, -īcēre, -īcēcī, -īcētum [re + iacio], v.a., *hurl back, drive back, repulse*.

rēligi-o, -ōnis [re + ligo, bind], F., *religious scruples, religion*; pl., *rites of religion*.

rē-linquo, -linquēre -līquī, -lictum

[re + linquo, quit], v.a., *leave, leave behind*.

rēliqu-us, -a, -um [re + linquo, adj.], *remaining*; **nihil reliquiesse**, *nothing is left*; **in reliquum tempus**, *for all time to come*.

rē-māneo, -mānēre, -mansī, mansum [re + māneo], v.n., *remain, stay*.

rēm-ex, -īgis [It., rēmus + ago], M., *a rower*.

rēm-īgo, -īgāre, -īgāvi, -īgātum [re-mus + ago], v.a. and n., *row*.

rē-miniscor, -mīnīsci, no perf. [re + root men in mens], v. dep., *remember, recollect* (with genitive, p. 146, 7).

rē-missus, -missa, -missum [re + mitto], adj., *relaxed*.

rē-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, missum [re + mitto], v.a., *send back*.

rēmōt-us, -a, -um [perf. p. of removeo, used as an adj.], *remote, far off*.

rē-mōvēo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [re + moveo], v.a., *remove, dismiss, get rid of*.

rēm-us, -ī, M., *oar*.

Rēmus, -ī, M., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.

rēn-o, -ōnis, M., *a reindeer skin*.

rē-nuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re + nuntio], v.a., *bring back word, report*.

rēor, rēri, rātus sum, v. dep., *think*.

rē-pello, -pellēre, -pūlī, -pulsus [re + pello], v.a., *drive back, repulse*.

rēpente [repens, sudden], adv., *suddenly*.

rēpentino [repentinus], adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly*.

rēpentin-us, -a, -um [repens], adj., *nasty, sudden, unexpected*.

rē-pērio, -pērire, -pēri (also reppēri), -pertum [re + pario], v.a., *discover, find, ascertain*.

rē-pēto, -pētēre, -pētīvi (or pētī), -pētītum [re + peto], *seek again, demand*.

rē-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re + porto], v.a., *carry back*.

rē-prēhendo, -prēhendēre, -prēhendi, -prēhensum [re + prehendo], v.a., *hold back*; *blame, rebuke*.

rē-pūdī-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re + pudet], N., *reject*.

rē-pugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re + pugno], v.n., *oppose, resist*.

rēs, rēi, F., *matter, affair*; **rēs militaris**, *military science*; **rēs novae**, *revolution*; **rēs publica**, *state*; *politics*.

rē-scindo, scindere, -scīdi, -scissum [re+scindo], v.a., cut down, destroy.

rē-serv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re+servo], v.a., keep back, preserve, keep.

rē-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, no sup. [re+sisto, set], v.n., resist, oppose, withstand.

rē-spicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectrum [re+specio, look], v.a., look back, regard.

re-spondēo, -spondere, -spondi, -sponsum [re+spondeo], v.a., reply, answer.

respons-um, -i [respondeo], N., answer, reply.

respublica,, rēpublicae [res+publicus], F., the state, public interest.

restat, in pers., it remains, it remains that (p. 182, 4).

re-stitūo, -stitūere, -stitūi, -stitūtum [re+statuo], v.a., replace, restore, rebuild.

rēt-e, -is, N., net.

rē-tinēo, -tinere, -tīnī, -tentum [re+teneo], v.a., restrain, detain, keep back.

retro, a tv., back, backwards.

rē-us, -i [res, a case at law], M., a party to an action, defendant, prisoner; F., rea.

rēvertor, -verti, -versus sum, v. dep., tv., back, return.

re-vōco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re+voco], call back, recall.

rex, rēgis [rēgo], M., king.

rhēd-a, -ae. See rēda.

Rhēn-us, -i, M., Rhine.

ridēo, ridere, ridi, risum, v.a. and n., laugh at, laugh.

rip-a, -ae, F., bank.

riv-us, -i, M., a brook.

rōb-ur, -ōris, N., oak; strength.

Rō-ma, -ae, F., Rome.

rōg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., ask.

Rōmān-us, -a, -um [Roma], adj., Roman.

Rōmūl-us, -i, M., Romulus, founder of Rome.

rōs-a, -ae, F., rose.

rostr-um, -i [rodo, gnaw], N., beak; beak of a ship's prow, covered with iron and used as a ram; pl., rostra, ōrum, *hustings*. (Appendix, p. 279).

rōt-a, -ae, F., wheel.

rūbicund-us, -a, -um [rubeo, be red], adj., ruddy.

rūm-or, ōris, M., rumor, report.

rū-o, -ēre, -i, -rūtum, v.n., rush.

rūp-es, -is F., rock, cliff.

rursus [=reversus, turned back], back, again.

rūs, rūris, N., country. In pl., only rura is found; **ruri**, in the country; **rure**, from the country; **rus**, to the country (p. 85, 3).

S.

sācer, sācra, sācrum, adj., holy, sacred; as a noun, **sacra**, **sacrōrum**, sacred rites, sacrifice.

sācerdo-s, -tis [sacer], M., priest. **sacrāment-um**, -i [sacer], N., the military oath.

sacrificium, -i [sacer + facio], N., sacrifice.

saepe, adv., often; **minime saepe**, very seldom; comp., **saeptius**; sup., **saeptissime**.

sae-penūmērō [saepe + numero], adv., frequently, repeatedly.

saev-iō, -ire, -ivi, -itum [saevus], rage, be furious, or cruel.

saev-us, -a, -um, adj., fierce, cruel.

sāgitt-a, -ae, F., arrow.

sāgittārī-us, -i [sagitta], M., archer.

salt-us, -ūs, M., wood, forest, pasture, wooded defile.

sāl-us, -ūtis F., health, safety.

sālūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [salus], v.a., greet, salute.

salv-us, -a, -um, adj., safe, sound.

Sāmus, -i, F., Samos, an island on the western coast of Asia Minor.

sanc-iō, sancire, sanxi, sanctum, v.a., render sacred, ratify, confirm.

sanct-us, -a, -um [perf. part. of sancio, used as an adj.], hallowed, sacred.

sānē [sanus], adv., truly.

sangu-is, -inis, M., blood.

sānī-tas, -tātis [sanus], F., soundness of mind, good sense.

sān-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [sanus], v.a., make sound, cure, remedy.

sān-us, -a, -um, adj., sound, healthy.

sāpi-ens, -entis [sapio], adj., wise, judicious.

sāpienter [sapienter], adv., wisely.

sāpientī-a, -ae [sapienter], F., wisdom.

sāp-iō, -ēre, -ivi (or ii), no sup., v.a., taste, be sensible, understand.

sarcin-a, ae, F., *baggage of a soldier*.
sátell-es, -itis, M. or F., *attendant, guard*.

sátis, adv., *enough, sufficiently*.

satis-fácio, -fácere, -feci, -factum [satis + facio], v.n., *satisfy*. In pass. satis-flo.

sauci-us, a, -um, adj., *wounded*.

sax-um, -i, N., *rock, stone*.

scäl-a -ae [=scandla, from scando, climb], F., *ladder*.

scand-o, -äre, -i, scansum, *climb*.

scélérät-us, -a, -um [scelus], adj., *wicked*.

scäl-us, -äris, N., *wickedness, sin*.

schöl-a, ae, F., *school*.

scienti-a, -ae [scio], *skill, knowledge*.

scilicet [scire + licet], adv., *evidently; certainly, forsooth*.

scindo, scindere, scidi, scissum, v.a., *cut, tear, destroy*.

scio, scire, scivi, scitum, v.a., *know, understand*.

Scipi-o, önis, M., *Scipio*, a name of two noted Romans, one the conqueror of Hannibal at Zama, 202 B.C., and the other, destroyer of Karthage, 146 B.C.

scrib-a, -ae [scribo], M., *writer, clerk*.

scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, v.a., *write, compose; legem scribere, draw up a law*.

script-or, -öris [scribo], M., *write*.

scüt-um, -i, N., *shield*.

se. See sui (p. 105, 6).

sê-cerno, -cernere, -crëvi, -crëtum [se, apart + cerno, distinguish], v.a., *separate*.

sêco, -sêcare, -sêcui, sectum, v.a., *cut*.

sêcrêto [secretus], adv., *apart, separately*.

sêcrêt-us, -a, -um [perf. part. of secerno, used as an adj.], *separate, secret, private*.

sêcund-um [secundus], prep. with acc. only, *along, next to, according to*.

sêcund-us, a, -um [sequor], adj., *following; second; favorable*.

sêcür-is, -is [seco], F., *an axe*.

sed, conj., *but, yet*.

sêdê-cim [sex + decem], num., *sixteen*.

sêdêo, -sêdere, -sêdi, -sessum, v.n., *sit; be encamped, settle*.

sêd-ês, -is [sêdeo], F., *seat, abode, settlement*.

sêditi-o, -önis [sed, apart + eo, go], F., *dissension, discord*.

sêg-es, -ëtis, F., *crop, harvest*.

Segontiäc-i, -örum, M., pl., *Segontiaci*, a British tribe belonging to Hampshire.

sell-a, -ae [=sedla, from sedeo], F., *seat, chair*.

sêmel, num. adv., *once, once for all; non semel, not once, i.e., several times; semel atque iterum, once and again, repeatedly*.

sêmen, sêminis, N., *seed*.

sêment-is, -is [semen], F., *a sowing*.

sêmita, -ae, F., *path*.

semper, adv., *always, for ever*.

sênät-or, -öris [senex], M., *a senator*.

sênät-us, -üs [senex], M., *senate*.

sênec-tus, -tütis [senex], F., *old age*.

sênex, sênis, *an old man* (p. 46).

sên-i, -ae, -a [sex], distrib. num. adj. *six each, six*.

sênior, -is, adj. See p. 58, note.

sententi-a, -ae [sentio], F., *a thinking, opinion*.

sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, v.a., *think, know, observe*.

sêp-ês, -is, F., *heage*.

septem, num. adj., *seven*.

septentrion-es, -um [septem + trio, star], *the stars of the Great Bear; the north*.

septim-us, a, -um [septem], adj. num., *seventh*.

septuägintä, num. adj., *seventy*.

sêquor, -sêqui, sêcütus (or sêquütus) sum, v. dep., *follow, pursue*.

serm-o, -önis, M., *talk, language, speech, discourse*.

sêrô [serus, late], adv., *late, too late*.

sêro, sêrere, sêvi, sätum, v.a., *sow, plant*.

serp-ens, -entis [serpo, creep], M., *snake, serpent*.

servil-is, -e [servus], adj., *slavish, servile*.

serv-fo, -ire, ivi (or ii), -itum [servus], v.n., *be a slave*.

serv-itus, -itütis [servus], F., *slavery, servitude*.

serv-o, äre, -ävi, -ätum, v.a., *save, keep, preserve*.

serv-us, -i, M., *slave, servant*.

sese. See sui.

sestertī-us [semi + tertius, *the third a half*, i.e., two and a half asses], M., a *sestertius*, a coin worth about five cents.

seu. See *sive*.

sex, num. adj., *six*.

sexaginta, num. adj., *sixty*.

sexcentī, -ae, -a [sex + centum], num. adj., *six hundred*.

si, conj., *if, whether*.

sicc-us, a, um, adj., *dry*.

Sicili-a, -ae, F., *Sicily*.

sicut (also written *sic ut*), adv., *so as, just as, as, as if*.

sid-us, -eris, N., *star, constellation*.

sign-um, -i, N., a *mark, sign*; *military standard*.

silentī-um, -i [sileo, *be silent*], N., *silence*.

silv-a, -ae, F., *wood, forest*.

silvestr-is, -e [silva], adj., *wooded*.

simil-is, -e, adj., *like, similar*; comp., *similior*; sup., *simillimus* (p. 57, 2).

simul, adv., *at the same time*; **simul ac** (atque), *as soon as*.

simulacr-um, -i [similis], N., *image*.

simul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [similis], v. a., *pretend* (a thing is what it is not; *dissimulo*, to pretend a thing is not what it is).

sin, conj. [si + ne], *but if, if on the other hand*.

sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

singiliatim [singuli], adv., *one by one, singly*.

singulār-is, -e [singuli], adj., *matchless, extraordinary*.

singul-i, -ae, -a, num. eij., *one by one, one apiece*.

sinister, -tra, -rum, adj., *left*.

sinistrorsus [sinister + verito, *turn*], adj., *to the left*.

sino, *sincere*, *sivi*, *situm*, v. a., *allow, permit, let*.

siquidem [si + quidem], conj., *if only*.

sisto, *sistere*, *stiti*, *statum*, v. a., *set, place, stand*.

sive or **seu** [si + ve], or *if; sive* (seu) ... *sive* (seu), *whether ... or* (p. 191, 5).

socr, -i, M., a *father-in-law*.

societ-as, -ātis [socius], F., *alliance, league*.

socius, -i, M., a *companion, associate, ally*.

sol, *solis*, M., *sun*.

solēō, *solēre*, *solutus sum*, v. n., *be accustomed to, be wont*.

solitūd-o, -inis [solus], F., *solitude, loneliness; desert*.

sol-us, -a, -um [gen. solus] (p. 26), adj., *alone, only, single*.

solvo, *solvēre*, *solvi*, *solutum*, v. a., *loose, unbind; solve* *navem*, *set sail*.

sonit-us, -ūs [sono], M., *sound*.

sor-or, -ōris, F., *sister*.

sors, *sortis*, F., *lot, fate*.

spati-um, -i, N., *space, time*.

speci-es, -ei [gen. solus] (p. 26), not found; from *specio*, *see*, F., *show, appearance, form; view*.

spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. a., *look at, observe*.

spēcūlāt-or, -ōris [specio], M., *scout, spy*.

speculātōri-us, -a, um [specio, *look*], adj., *scouting, spying*; **navigia** *speculatoria*, *spy boats*.

spēcūl-or, -āri, -ātus sum [specio], v. dep., *watch*.

spēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. a., *hope, expect* (with fut. inf., p. 110, 1).

spēs, *spēi*, F., *hope, expectation*; in *spem venire*, *to have hopes, entertain hopes*.

spirīt-ūs, -ūs [spiro, *breathe*], M., *breath, air; pride, airs*.

splendēō, no perf., no sup., v. n., *shine*.

spōli-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [spolium, *booty*], v. a., *strip, despoil, plunder*.

spōli-um, -i, N., *spoils, booty*.

sponte [abl. of an obsolete, *spons*, F., used as an adv.], *of one's own accord, willingly*; **suā sponte**, *of one's own accord*.

stābili-tās, -tātis [stabilis, *steady*], F., *firmness, steadiness*.

stagn-um, -i [sto], N., *pool, pond*.

stātim [sto], adv., *instantly, at once, straightway*.

stāti-o, -ōnis [sto], F., *outpost, picket, guard*; in *statione esse*, *to be on guard*.

stāt-ūo, -ūere, -āvi, -ātum [sto], v. n., *place, determine; resolve*.

stātūr-a, -ae [sto], F., *height, size*.

stell-a, -ae, F., *star*.

stipendi-um, -i [stips, a coin, *pendo*, *pay*], N., *military tax, tribute*.

sto, *stāre*, *stēti*, *stātum*, v.n., *stand*; *cost* (with abl. of price, p. 150).

strēpit-us, -ūs, M., *noise*, *din*.

stūd-ēo, *ēre*, -ōi, no sup., *be eager about*; *aim at* (p. 105, 9).

stūdi-um, -i, [studeo], N., *zeal*, *devotion*.

stultiti-a, -ae [stultus, *foolish*], F., *foolishness*, *stupidity*.

stult-us, -a, -um, adj., *foolish*, *stupid*.

suādēo, *suādere*, *suāsi*, *suāsum*, v.n., *advise*, *exhort* (with dat., p. 105, 9).

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (p. 222, 2), *under*, *beneath*, *near*, *just before*, *at foot of*.

sub-dūco, -dūcere, -duxi, -ductum [sub+duco], v.a., *draw up on shore*; *navem subducere*, *beach a ship*.

sūb-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or ii), -itum [sub+eo], v.n., *come up*, *approach*, *enter*; *suffer*.

sūb-icō, -icere, -icēi, -iectum [sub+iacio], v.a., *throw from under*, *expose*, *subdue*.

sub-lectus, -a, -um [perf. part. of subicio, used as an adj.], *lying near*, *adjacent*.

sūb-igo, -igere, -ēgi -actum [sub+ago], v.a., *subdue*, *conquer*, *reduce to submission*.

sūb-ito [abl. of subitus], adv., *suddenly*, *on a sudden*.

subitūs, -a, -um [subeo], adv., *sudden*, *unexpected*.

sub-lēv-o, *āre*, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *relieve*.

sub-ministro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [sub+ministro, *serve*], v.a., *supply*, *provide*.

sub-mitto (or *summitto*), -mittere, -misi, -missum [sub+mitto], v.a., *send secretly*.

sub-mōveo, -mōvere, -mōvi, -mōtum [sub+moveo], v.a., *dislodge*, *draw off*.

sūb-ōlēs, -ōlis [sub+olesco, *begin to sprout*], a sprout; *posterity*, *race*.

sub-rūo, -rūere, -rui, -rātum [sub+ruo], v.n., *undermine*.

sub-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūsus (or sēcūsus) sum [sub+sequor], v. dep., *follow closely*, *follow*.

subsidi-um, -i [sub+sedeo], N., *auxiliary troops*, *reserve*, *aid*.

sub-sisto, -sistere, -stīti, no supine, [sub+sisto], v.n., *halt*, *make a stand*.

subter [sub], prep. with acc. and abl., *below*, *beneath*, *underneath*, *close by*.

sub-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum [sub+venio], v.a., *come under*; *come to one's aid*; *assist*, *succor*.

suc-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [sub+cedo], v.n., *approach*, *advance*, *prosper*, *succeed*.

suc-cēdo, -cēdere, -cēdi, -censum [sub+candeo, *shine*], v.a., *kindle*.

suc-censēo, -censēre, -censui, -censum [sub+censeo], v.n., *be angry with*.

suc-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum [sub+caedo], v.a., *cut down*.

suc-curro, -currere, -curri, -cursum [sub+curro], v.n., *run under*; *help aid* (with dat., p. 105, 9).

sūd-es, -is, F., *stake*.

sūd-or, -ōris, M., *sweat*.

suffragi-um, -i, N., *vote*.

sui, reflex. pron., *himself*, *herself*, etc. (p. 105, 6).

Sull-a, -ae, M., *L. Cornelius Sulla*, the great dictator, a supporter of the aristocracy, as his opponent Marius was of the democracy. He lived B.C. 133-78.

sum, esse, fui, *be* (p. 24).

summa, -ae [summus], F., *total*, *whole amount*, *main thing*; *general management*, *control*.

summ-us, -a, -um [superl. of superus], adj., *highest*, *greatest*, *very great*, *chief*; *mons summus*, *the top of the mountain*.

sūmo, sūmere, sumpsī, sumptum, v.a., *take*, *assume*, *spend*.

sumpt-us, -ūs [sumo], M., *expense*.

sūper, prep., *above* (p. 222, 2).

sūperbe [superbus], adv., *proudly*, *haughtily*.

sūperb-us, -a, -um, adv., *proud*, *haughty*.

sūpērior, -is [comp. of sūpērus], adj., *higher*, *upper*, *previous*; *nocte supēiore*, *on the previous night*.

sūpēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [super, *above*], v.a., *conquer*, *defeat*, *surpass*.

sūperstīti-o, -ōnis [super+sto], F., *superstition*.

sūper-sum, -esse, -fui [super, *above*+sum], v.n., *remain*, *survive*.

sūpēr-us, -a, -um [super], adj., *high*, *above*; comp., *superior*; sup., *supremus* or *summus*.

sup-plex, -plicis [sub, *under*+plico, *fold*], M., or F., *a suppliant*.

sup-plicāti-o, -ōnis [supplex], F., *a thanksgiving*.

sup-pliciter [supplex], adv., *humbly, suppliantly.*

sup-plicium, -i [supplex], N. *punishment, execution.*

suprā, adv. and prep. with acc. only, *above, over.*

sus, sūs, M. or F., *pig, swine.*

sus-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [sub + capio], v.a., *undertake.*

suspici-o, -ōnis [suspicio], F., *distrust, suspicion.*

suspīc-or, -ārī, -ātussum [sub + spēcio], v. dep., *suspect, mistrust, surmise.*

sus-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum [sub + teneo], v.a., *bear, hold up, check.*

sū-us, -a, -um, adj., pron., *his, her, its, their.*

T.

tabernacūl-um, -i, N., *a tent.*

tābūl-a, -ae, F., *a board, plank, tablet.*

tāc-ēo, -ēre, -ŭi, -itum, v.a. and n., *be silent, pass over in silence.*

tācīt-us -a, -um [taceo], adj., *silent.*

taed-et, -ēre, -uit (or taesum est), *impers., it disgusts, wearies; mē libri taedet, I am disgusted with the book (p. 165).*

tālē-a, -ae, F., *bar, rod.*

tālent-um, -i, N., *a talent, a Greek measure of weight equal to about fifty pounds; a sum of money equal to about £243, 15.*

tāl-is, -e, adj., *such.*

tām, adv., *so, so very.*

tāmen, adv., *yet, still, for all that, however, nevertheless.*

Tāmēs-is, -is [acc. Tamesin], M., *the Thames.*

tametsī [tamen + etsi], adv., *although.*

tandem, adv., *at length, finally; in questions, pray, now.*

tango, tangere, tēgī, tactum, v.a., *touch, border on.*

tantopere [=tanto + opere], adv., *vehemently.*

tantūl-us, -a, -um [diminutive of tantus], adj., *so very small, slight, trifling.*

tant-um [tantus], adv., *only, so much, so far, merely.*

tant-us, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so large, such.*

tarde [tardus], adv., *slowly.*

tard-o, -āre, āvi, ātum, v.a., *check, delay, impede, hinder.*

tard-us, -a, -um, adj., *slow.*

Tarquinī-us, -i, M., *Tarquin, the name of the last king of Rome.*

taur-us, i, M., *a bull.*

Tectōsāg-ēs, -um, M., *the Tectosages, a division of the Volcae who lived in the western part of the Roman Province of Gaul; their capital was Tolosa (now Toulouse).*

tect-um, i [tego], N., *a covering, hut, house.*

tēgiment-um, -i [tego], N., *a covering.*

tēgo, tēgere, texi, tectum, v.a., *cover, conceal; protect, guard.*

tēlum, -i, N., *a dart, javelin.*

tēmērārī-us, -a, -um [temere], adj., *rash, indiscreet.*

tēmēre, adv., *rashly, at random; non temere, not without a purpose.*

tēmērit-as, -ātis [temere], F., *rashness, temerity.*

tēm-o, -ōnis, M., *pole.*

temperanti-a, -ae [tempero], F., *self-control, moderation.*

temper-o, -āre, āvi, ātum, v.a., *control, restrain (with quin with subjunctive).*

tempērāt-us, -a, -um [tempero], adj., *temperate, mild.*

tempest-as, -ātis [tempus], F., *weather; bad weather, storm.*

templ-um, -i, N., *temple.*

tempt-o, -āre, āvi, ātum, v.a., *try, attempt, attack.*

temp-us, -ōris, N., *time, season, occasion; pro tempore, according to the emergency; in reliquum tempus, for the future; omni tempore, always.*

tēn-ax, -ācis [teneo, hold], adj., *holding fast, tenacious.*

tendo, tendere, tētendi, tensum and tentum, v.a., *stretch, extend.*

tēn-ēo, -ēre, -ŭi, -itum, v.a., *hold, possess.*

tēn-er, -ēra, -ērum, adj., *tender.*

tento. See tempto.

tēnū-is, -e, adj., *thin, weak.*

tēnus, prep. with abl. or gen., *up to, as far as.*

ter, adv., *thrice.*

tēr-es, -ētis, adj., *smooth.*

terg-um, -i, N., *back; a tergo,*

post tergum, *in the rear*; **terga** *vertere*, *flee*.

tern-ī, -ae, -a, adj., *three at a time*, *three*.

tēro, tērere, trivi, tritum, v.a., *wear*.

terr-a, -ae, F., *the earth, land, country*.

terr-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v.a., *frighten*, *terrify*, *alarm*.

terr-or, -ōris [terreo], M., *fear*, *dread*.

tertī-us, -a, -um [tres], adj., *third*.

testāment-um, -i [testis, a witness], N., *will*, *testament*.

test-is, -is, M., *a witness*.

testūd-o, -inis, F., *tortoise*; a covering formed by the shields of the soldiers which were held above their heads, overlapping so as to ward off the weapons hurled by the enemy; the term is also applied to the different kinds of sheds under which the soldiers worked when attacking a town.

Teutōn-es, -um, and Teutōn-i, -orum, M., *the Teutons*, a people of Germany.

Thēmistōcl-es, -is, M., Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian statesman.

Tibēr-is, -is, M. [acc. Tiberim, abl. Tiberi], *the Tiber*.

tign-um, -i, N., *beam*, *log*.

tim-eo, -ēre, -ūi, no. sup., v.a. and n., *fear*, *be afraid*.

tīmīde [timidus], adv., *fearfully*, *timidly*.

tīmīd-us, -a, -um [timeo], adj., *fearful*, *afraid*, *timid*.

tīmor, -ōris [timeo], M., *fear*, *dread*.

Tit-us, -i, M., *Titus*, a Roman name.

tōg-a, -ae [tego], F., *a gown*, *toga*.

tōlēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *bear*, *support*.

tollo, tollere, sustūli, sublātum, v.a., *lift*, *raise*.

torment-um, -i [torqueo, twist], N., *military engine for throwing missiles*; pl., *artillery*.

torreo, torrere, torrui, tostum, v.a., *burn*, *scorch*.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many*.

totīdem [tot], indecl. adj., *just as many*.

tōt-us, -a, -um [gen. totius; dat. toti; p. 26], adv., *whole*, *all*, *entire*; often with the adverbial force of *wholly*, *entirely*.

trābs, trābis, F., *beam*, *timber*.

trā-do, -dere, -didī, -ditum [trans+do], v.a., *hand over*, *give up*, *deliver*,

surrender; *hand down to posterity*: traditur, it is said; traditum est, the tradition is.

trā-duco, -ducere, -duxi, ductum [trans+duco], v.a., *lead across*, *transport*.

trāho, trāhere, traxi, tractum, v.a., *draw*, *drag*.

trā-icio, -icere, -ieci, -iectum [trans+iacio, throw], v.a., *throw or cast across*; *carry across*; *pierce*.

trā-lectus [transicio], M., *passage*, *crossing over*.

tranquillit-as, -ātis [tranquillus, calm], F., *calm weather*; **summa tranquillitas**, a profound calm.

trans, prep. with acc., *alone*, *across*, *over*, *beyond*, *on the other side*.

transduco. See traduco.

trans-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or ii), -itum [trans+eo], v.a., *cross over*, *cross*.

trans-fēro, -ferre, -tāli, -latum [trans+fero], v.a., *bear*, *bring*, *carry across*; *transport*.

trans-grēdiōr, -grēdi, -gressus sum [trans+gradiōr, step], v. dep., *go or pass over*, *cross*.

trans-itus, -itūs [trans+eo], M., *a going or crossing over*, *passage*, *crossing*.

trans-mārin-us, -a, -um [trans+mare], adj., *across or beyond the sea*.

trans-miss-us, -ūs [transmitto], M., *passing over*, *passage*.

trans-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [trans+mitto], v.a., *send across or over*.

trans-port-o, -āre -āvi, -ātum [trans+porto], v.a., *carry over*; *transport*.

trēcent-ī, -ae, -a [tres+centum], num. adj., *three hundred*.

trēdecim [tres+decem], num. adj., *thirteen*.

trēs, tria, num. adj. (p. 68), *three*.

Trēvir-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Treviri*, a people of Gallia Belgica, who dwelt between the Meuse and the Rhine.

tribūn-us, -i [tribus, a tribe], M., *a tribune*.

trib-ūo, -ūere, -ūi, -ūtum, v.a., *give*, *assign*, *ascribe*, *pay*.

tribūt-um [tribuo], N., *tribute*, *taxes*.

trib-us, -ūs, F., *a tribe*.

trīdū-um, [tres+dies], N., *a space of three days*.

trīennī-um, -i [tres+annus], N., *the space of three years*.

trigintā, num. adj. indecl., *thirty*.
Trinōbant-ēs, -um, M. pl., *the Trinobantes*, a people of England occupying Essex and part of Suffolk.

triplex, -plices [tres + plico], adj., *three-fold, triple*.

triquetr-us, -a, -um, adj., *three-cornered, triangular*.

trist-is, -e, adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected*.

tristiti-a, -ae [tristis], F., *sadness*.

Troi-a, -ae, F., *Troy*.

Troian-us, -a, -um, adj., *Trojan*.

trunc-us, -i, M., *trunk of a tree*.

tū, tūi, pl. vos, pers. pron., *thou, you*.

tūb-a, -ae, F., *trumpet*.

tūē-or, tūēri, tūtus or tutus sum, v. dep., *look at, behold, see; protect*.

tum, adv., *then*.

tūmult-us, -ūs [tumeo, *swell*], M., *disturbance, confusion, disorder*.

tūmulus, -i [tumeo, *swell*], a mound.

tunc, adv., *then, at that time*.

turma, -ae, F., *a troop or squadron of horse*.

turpis, -e, adj., *base, disgraceful*.

turpitud-o, -inis [turpis], F., *baseness, disgrace, dishonor*.

turr-is, -is, F., *tower*.

tuté [tutus], adv., *in safety, safely*.

tut-us, -a, -um [p.p. of tueur used as an adj.], *safe, out of danger, secure*.

tū-us, -a, -um [tu], adj. pron., *thy, your*.

U.

ūb-er, -ēris, N., *a teat, udder, breast*.

ūb-er, -ēris, adj., *rich, fruitful, fertile*.

ūbī, adv., *where, when; ubi primum, as soon as*.

ūbique [ubi + que], adv., *everywhere*.

ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, v. dep., *avenge, punish*.

ull-us, -a, -um [gen., ullius; dat., ulli], adj., *any* (p. 132, 3).

ulterior, -is [ultra], comp., *farther, beyond, more remote*.

ultim-us, -a, -um [superlative of ultra], *the farthest, most distant, last*.

ultrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *beyond; on the other side; ultra fidem, beyond belief*.

ultrō, adv., *beyond; of one's own accord*.

ultus, -a, -um [p.p. of ulciscor, used as an adj.], *having avenged or punished*.

umbr-a, -ae, F., *shade*.

ūmēr-us, (or humer-us), -i, M., *shoulder*.

umquam [unus + quum], adv., *at anytime, ever*.

unā [unus], adv., *at once, at the same time; in company, together; unā cum, along with, together with*.

unde, adv., *from which place, whence*.

undēcim [unus + decem], indecl. num. adj., *eleven*.

uncēcim-us, -a, -um [unus + decimus], num. adj., *eleventh*.

undique [unde + que], adv., *from all sides or parts, on all sides, everywhere*.

ūnivers-us, -a, -um [unus + verito], adj., *all together, all, the whole of, entire*.

unquam, *ever*.

un-us, -a, -um [gen., unus; dat., uni], *one alone, only one, sole, only; uno tempore, at one and the same time; omnes ad unum, all to a man*.

unus-quisque, una-quaque, unum-quodque, indef. adj. pron., *each, every*.

urbs, urbis, F., *city; often = the city, i.e., Rome*.

urg-eo, -ēre, urſi, no sup., v.a., *press, push home*.

urs-us, -i, a bear

ur-us, -i, M., *bison, wild ox*.

usquam, adv., *anywhere*.

usque, adv., *all the way, all the while, until; usque ab, all the way from; usque ad, even to, up to*.

ūs-us, -ūs [utor], M., 1. *use, experience, practice*.

2. *advantage*.

ūsus, indecl. noun; with est, *there is need* (with dat. of person and abl. of thing); **usus est mihi cibo**, *I have need of food* (p. 166, 2).

ut (or ūti), conj., *as, (with ind.); how; that, in order that* (with subj.; so that; although; **ut . . . ita**, *as . . . so*).

ūt-er, -ra, -rum, adj., pron. [gen., utrius; dat., ūtri], interrog. pron., *which of two* (p. 27).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj., pron., *each (of two), both; ex utraque parte, on both sides*.

ūti, See **ut**.

ūtil-is, -e [utor], adj., *useful, serviceable, fit, profitable*.

ūtilit-as, -ātis [utilis], F., *usefulness, advantage, service*.

ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, v. dep. (with abl., p. 116), v. dep., *use, employ, enjoy*.

utrimque [uterque], adv., *from or on both sides*.

utrum [uter], conj.; not translated in direct questions; **utrum**... *an, whether*... or; **utrum**... (annon) *neque, whether*... or not (p. 130, 6; 177, 5).

ux-or, -ōris, F., *wife*.

V.

vācātī-o, -ōnis [vāco], F., *freedom, exemption, immunity*.

vāc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. n., *be empty, be unoccupied, lie waste*.

vācū-us, -a, -um [vāco], adj., *empty, clear, free, vacant*.

vād-um, -i, N., *shoal, shallow, ford*.

vāg-or, -āri, -atus sum, v. dep. [vagus, wandering], *wander*.

vāl-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, no sup., v. a., *be powerful, strong; have power or influence*.

vālētūd-o, -inis [valeo], F., *state of health (good or bad), health*.

vall-is, -is, F., *valley*.

vall-um [vallus, a strike], N., *a rampart (set with stakes or palisades), wall, entrenchment*.

vall-us, -i, M., *stake, palisade*.

vāriēt-as, -ātis [varius], F., *variety; dappled or mottled appearance*.

vāri-us, -a, -um, adj. [varus, crooked], *varying, different, changing*.

vast-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. a., *lay waste, devastate*.

vast-us, -a, -um, adj., *vast*.

vectig-al, -ālis [veho], N., *tax, toll, revenue*.

vectigāl-is, -e [vectigal], adj., *tributary; as a noun pl., vectigales, those who pay tribute, tributaries*.

vectōrī-us, -a, -um [veho], adj., *adapted to carry; navigium vectorium, a transport ship*.

vēhēm-ens, -entis, adj., *eager, violent, vehement*.

vēhēmenter [vehemens], adj., *vigorously, violently, very*.

vēho, vēhēre, vexi, vectum, v. a., *bear, carry, convey*.

vel, conj., or; **vel**... **vel**, *either... or; even, indeed, with superlatives: vel optimus, the very best*.

vēlōcīt-as, -ātis [velox], F., *swiftness, speed*.

vēl-ox, -ōcis, adj., *swift, rapid, active*.

vēl-um, -i, N., *sail*.

velūt [vel+ut], adv., *just as; velut si, just as if*.

vēnāl-is, -e, [vēneo, be sold], adj., *for sale*.

vēnātī-o, -ōnis [vēnor, hunt], F., *hunting*.

vēnātor, -ōris [venor, hunt], M., *a hunter*.

ven-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum [vēnum, to sale+do, put], v. a., *sell, offer for sale*.

vēnī-a, -as, F., *favor, forgiveness*.

vēnī-o, vēnīre, vēnī, ventum, v. n., *come; in suspicionem venire, to be suspected*.

vent-us, -i, M., *wind*.

vēr, vēris, N., *spring; primo verō, at the beginning of spring; extremo verē, at the end of spring*.

verb-um, -i, N., *word; verba facere, speak*.

vērēcund-us, -a, -um [vereor], adj., *modest*.

vērēor, vērēri, vēritus sum, v. dep., *fear, dread, be afraid*.

vergo, vergēre, no perf., no sup., v. n., *incline, slope, lie*.

vērō [abl. of verus], adv., *in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, indeed*.

vers-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [frequentative of verto], v. n., *turn often, change*.

vers-or, -āri, -ātus sum [verso], v. dep., *turn one's self about; dwell in; be occupied or engaged in*.

vers-us, -ūs [verto], M., *line, verse*.

verto, vertēre, verti, versum, v. a., *turn, turn about, change; terga vertere, flee*.

vertor, verti, versus sum, v. a. and dep., *turn, change*.

vēr-us, -a, -um, adj., *true*.

vescor, vesci, no perf., no sup., v. dep. (with abl., p. 116), *feed, live upon*.

ves-per, -pēris or -pēri, M., *the evening*.

Vest-a, -ae, F., *Vesta, a Roman goddess, daughter of Saturn, protectress of flocks and herds and of the family hearth*.

ves-ter, -tra, -trum [vos], pers. pron., *your, yours*.

vestigī-um, -i, N., *footstep, footprint*.

vest-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [vestis], v. a., *clothe, cover*.

vest-is, -is [vestio], F., *clothing, dress*.

větērān-us, -a, -um [vctus], adj., *old*; as a noun: **veterani**, *veteran troops*.

vēto, vētare, vētūi, vētītum, v.a., *forbid, prevent*.

vētus, vētēris, adj., *old, ancient*.

vexill-um, -i, N., *standard, flag*.

vex-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [intensive of veho], v.a., *harass, plunder, waste*.

vī-a, -ae, F., *way, road, journey*.

viāt-or, -ōris [via], *traveller*.

vicēn-i, -ae, -a [viginti], distrib. num. adj., *twenty each*.

vicēsīm-us, -a, -um [viginti], num. adj., *twentieth*.

vicīēs [viginti], num. adj., *twenty times*.

vicinī-t-as, -ātis [vicinus, near], F., *neighborhood, neighbors*.

victīm-a, -ae [perhaps from vincio, bind], F., *sacrifice, victim*.

vict-or, -ōris [vinco], M., *a victor, conqueror*; as an adj., *victorious*.

victōrī-a, -ae [vinco], F., *victory*.

vict-us, -ūs [vivo], M. *living, mode of living; food*.

vidēlicet [vidēre + licet], adv., *manifestly, of course, forsooth*.

vic-us, -i, M., *village, hamlet*.

vidēo, vidēre, vīdi, visum, v.a., *see, perceive*; pass., **videor**, *seem, appear*.

vidū-a, -ae, F., *widow*.

vīgēo, vīgēre, no perf., no sup., v.a., *thrive, flourish, be vigorous*.

vīgillī-a, -ae, F., *watch, guard*.

vīginti, num. adj., *twenty*.

vī-men, -mīnis [vicio, bind], N., *twig, osier*.

vincio, vincire, vinxi, victum, v.a., *bind*.

vinco, vincere, vici, victum, v.a., *conquer, defeat, subdue*.

vincul-um, -i [vincio, bind], N., *chain, bond*.

vindic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [vis + dico = assert might], *claim, set free, punish*.

vinē-a, -ae, F., *vine*; a movable shed with a sloping roof of planks and sides of wickerwork covered over with hides. It was usually 8 ft. high and 16 ft. long. Under it the soldiers advanced to the walls and worked the battering ram.

vin-um, N., *wine*.

viōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., (vis), *violate, injure, harm*.

vir, viri, M., *a man, husband*.

viridit-as, -ātis [vireo, be green], F., *vigor*.

vir-go, -gīnis [vireo, to bloom], F., *a maid, virgin*.

viril-is, -e [vir], adj., *manly*.

vir-tus, -tūtis, F., *manliness, virtue, valor; worth*.

vis, F. (for declension, see p. 45); *strength, power; vim facere, to offer violence; vi or per vim expugnare, to take by storm; pl. vires, virium, strength*.

vīt-a, -ae [vivo], F., *life*.

vīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *shun, avoid*.

vit-r-um, -i, N., *woad, a plant used for dying blue*.

vivo, vivēre, vixi, victum, v.n., *live*.

viv-us, -a, -um [vivo], adj., *alive, living*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely*.

vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *call for, summon*.

vōlo, velle, vōlūi, no sup., v. irreg., *be willing, wish, desire* (p. 147).

vōl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.a., *fly, hasten*.

vōlū-to, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [frequentative of volo, fly], *flit about*.

vōluntāri-us, -a, -um [volo], adj., *willing, voluntary*; as a noun, *volunteer*.

vōlunt-as, -ātis [volo], F., *willingness, wish, good will; voluntate suā, of one's own accord*.

vōlupt-as, -ātis, F., *pleasure; in pl., sport, pleasure*.

vōvēo, vōvēre, vōvī, vōtūm, v.a., *vow, promise solemnly, consecrate*.

vos. See tu (p. 104).

vōx, vōcis [voco], F., *a voice, sound*.

vulgō [abl. of vulgus, used as an adv.], *generally, commonly*.

vulg-us, -i, N. (rarely Masc.), *common people, multitude*.

vulnēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [vulnus], v.a., *wound, hurt*.

vuln-us, -ōris, N., *wound*.

vulpes, -is, F., *a fox*.

vult-ur, -ūris, M., *a vulture*.

vult-us, -ūs, M., *expression, countenance, looks*.

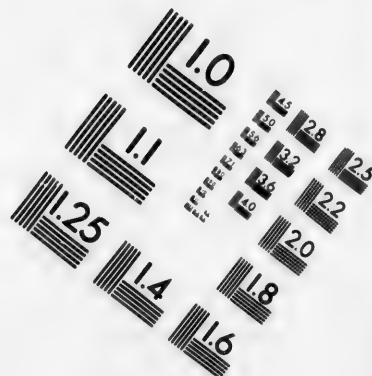
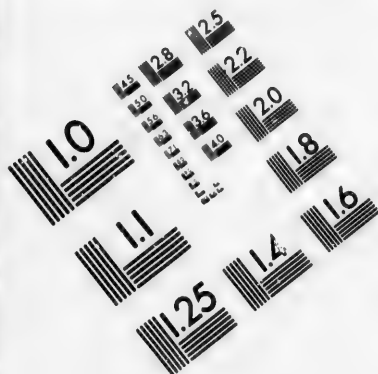
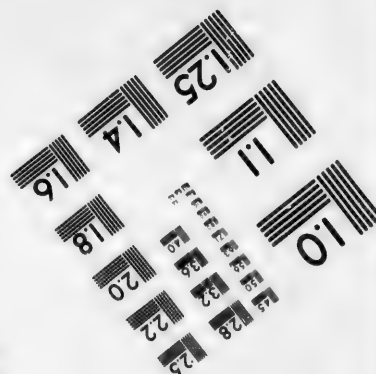
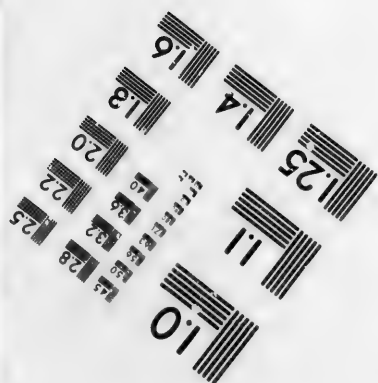
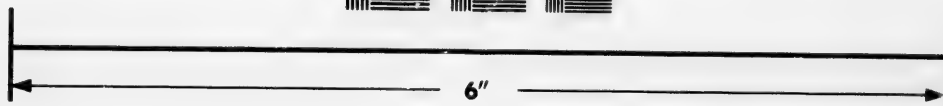
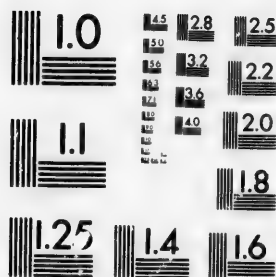


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 2.8 2.5
1.8 3.2 2.2
2.0 2.0 1.8

1.0

h

st

pe

h

wi

h

for

ab

a

a.,

fro

a

to

die

a

ac

tum

ac

dat.

ac

den

ac

-feci,

tum.

ac

propt

ac

ac

F.

acc

acc

solutus

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

a, generally untranslated; when **a** is equivalent to **a certain**, translated by *quidam, quaedam, quoddam*; by *aliquis, aliqua, aliquid* (p. 132), if = **some**; or, if meaning **one**, by *unus* (p. 27).

abandon, *mīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (p. 150, 1, note.)

abide by, *I, sto* (with *abl.*); **I abide by the decision** *iudicio sto*.

ability, *ingenium, -i, N.*

able, *adj., potens*; **I am able**, *possum, posse, potui*.

abode, *domicilium, -i, N.*

about, *adv., circa, circiter*; *fere, paene*; **about** (in the neighborhood of) *Roma, circa Roman*; **about two hundred**, *circiter ducenti*; **about** (=almost) *fere* with *adj.* and *adv.*, *paene* with *verb.*

about (concerning), *prep., de* (p. 222).

abroad, *militiae* (p. 86); *foris* or *foras*.

absence, *absentia, -ae, F.*; **in my absence**, *me absente* (p. 100, 5).

absent, *adj., abens, absenti*; **I am, a.**, *absūm, abesse, abfui*; **I am absent from**, *absūm ab*.

abundance, *cōpi-a, -ae, F.*

abuse, *v., ab-ūtor, -ūti, -ūsus sum*; = **to speak ill of**, *malē-dico, dicere, dixi, dictum*.

abuse, *n., maledictum, -i, N.*

accept, *ac-cipio, -cipere, -cepī, -cep-tum*.

acceptable to, *grāt-us, -a, -um* (with *dat.*)

accident, *cāsus, ūs, M.*; **by accident**, *cāsū*.

accomplish, *I, con-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum*; *ef-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fec-tum*.

account (on account of), *prep., ob, propter* (with *acc.*)

account, on no, nullo modo.

account (=reckoning), *rāti-o, -ōnis, F.*

accuse, *accūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

accustomed, I am, *sōleo, solere, sōlitus sum*.

acquit, *ab-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum* (167).

across, *prep., trans* (with *acc.*); **go across** *transeo, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itum* (*acc.*)

act, *v., ago, agere, egi, actum*; *facio, facere, feci, factum*.

active, *adj., alacer alacris, alacere; strenuus*.

address, *n., orātī-o, -ōnis, F.*; *v., verba facio*; **I address you**, *apud vos verba facio*.

admire, *admīr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum*.

admit, all, inter omnes constat (162, 3); *conceditur*.

admonish, *ad-mōneo, -mōnere, -mōnui, -mōnitum*.

adorn, *v., orn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *dēcor-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

Adrumētum, *Adrumēt-um, -i, N.*

advance, *progrēdior, -grēdi, -gressus sum*; *pro-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum*.

advantage, *commodum, -i, N.*

advantage, it is of, interest, refer (p. 166, 3); *prodest* (**great**=*multum*).

adverse, *advers-us, -a, -um*.

adversity, *res adversae*.

advise, *mōneo, -ere, -āvī, -ātum*.

Aedui, *Aedū-i, -ōrum, M., pl.*

Aegina, *Aegin-a, -ae, F.*

affair, *res*.

afraid, be, *tīm-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, no sup.*; *metuo, -ere, ūī, no sup.*; *verē-or, -ēri, -ītus sum*; with *ut* or *ne* and subjunctive (p. 185, 3).

after, *prep., post* (with *acc.*; p. 222, 4); *adv., post, postea* (p. 82, 3).

after (with verbal nouns), *post+pf. part.*; **after the founding of the city**, *post urbem conditam*; or use *abl. abs.*, or **after that**.

after that, *postquam* (p. 201, 5).

afterwards, *adv., postea*.

again, *adv., rursus*; *iterum* (a second time); **again and again**, *saepe, saepissime*.

against, *contrā* (*acc.*), *in* (*acc.*).

Agamemnon, *Agamemnon, -is, M.*

age (time of life), *aet-as, -ātis, F.*

age (old), *sēnect-us, -itis*.
age, those of his own, *acquies*.
agitate, *perturb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.
ago, *abine*: ten years ago, *ab-hinc decem annos* or *annis* (abl.)
agree, *I, consentio*; agreed by all, it is, *constat inter omnes* (p. 162, 3); *con-venit*.
aid, *n., auxili-um, -i*; come to a., p. 134, 1; *v., ad-iūco, -iūcare, -iūvi, -iūtum* (with acc.); *sub-venio, -venire, -veni, -ventum* (with dat.)
air, *aēr, aēris, M.*
alarm, *pāv-or, -ōris, M.*
all, *omnis, -e*; *cunctus, -a, -um*; *uni-versus, -a, -um*; *totus, -a, -um*.
allow, *I, sīno, sīnere, sivi, sītum*; *con-cēdo, -cēdere, -cēssi, -cessum*; *I am allowed, mihi licet* (p. 163, 5).
ally, *soci-us, -i, M.*
almost, *fēre, pae-ne*.
alone, *sol-us, -a, -um*.
along with, *unā cum*.
Alps, *Alp-es, -ium, F.*
already, *iam, adv.*
also, *etiam* (adv.), *quōque* (adv.); *idem* (123, 5).
although, *quamquam, quamvis, licet, ut* (p. 193, 5-7).
always, *semper, adv.*
ambassador, *lēgāt-us, -i, M.*
ambition, *ambiti-o, -ōnis, F.*
among, *inter* (prep. with acc.); *apud* (prep. with acc.); *in* (prep. with abl.)
amount, *what*; use *quantum* + gen.
ambush, *ambuscade, insidi-ae*.
ancestors, *maiōr-es, -um*.
ancient, *antiqu-us, -a, -um*; *vetus, -eris; prisceus*.
Ancus, *Ancus, -i, M.*
and, *et, -que, atque, ac*.
anger, *ira, -ae, F.*
angry (be), *irascor, irasci, irātus sum; suc-censeo, -censere, -censui, -censum* (with = dat.)
animal, *ānim-al, -ālis, N.*

¹*Omnis*, all without exception, opposed to *nemo* or *unus*; *cunctus*, a stronger term than *omnis*, "all together"; *uni-versus*, all in a body, opposed to *singuli*; *totus*, the whole, as opposed to a part.

²*Antiquus*, old and no longer existing; *vetus*, old and still existing; *prisceus*, old-fashioned; *pristinus*, belonging to an earlier age.

annihilate, *dēl-ēo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum*.
announce, *nūnti-o, -āre, -avi, -ātum*.
another, *āli-us, -a, -ud* (p. 26); *one another, inter se* (p. 223).
answer, *n., respons-a, -i, N.*; *v., res-pondēo, -ēre, respondi, responsum*.
Antonius, *Antonius, -i*.
anxious, *be, cūpio, cūpēre, cupīvi (ū), cūpitum*.
any (after negatives), *quisquam, quid-quam; ull-us, -a, -um* (132, 3); (affirma-tive) *quivis, quaevis, quidvis; quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet; quis, after si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto* (p. 188, 6, note).
anyone, 132, 3.
anywhere, *usquam, adv.*
apiece, distributive numeral [p. 69, 8, (a)].
appeal to, *I, obtest-or, -āri, -ātus sum; I appeal to you not to do this, te obtestor ne hoc facias*.
appear, *I (seem), vidēor, vidēri, vīsus sum*.
appear, *I (come in sight), ap-pāreo, -pārere, -pāruī, -pāritum* (used as pass. of video).
applaud, *I, plaudo, plaudere, plau-si, plausum* (dat.).
apple, *pōm-um, -i, N.*
appoint, *dico, dicere, dixi, dictum*; *appoint over, praeficio, -ficere, feci, -fectum*; *I appoint an officer over the camp, lēgātum castris* (dat.) *praeficio*.
apprehension, *mēt-us, -ūs*.
approach, *v., advent-us, -ūs, M.*; *adit-us, -us, M.*; *v., appropinqu-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum* (with dat., or ad. with acc.); *ag-gredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; ad-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or -ū), -itum*.
approved, *spectāt-us, -a, -um; pro-bāt-us, -a, -um*.
ardor, *for, stūdiū, -i, N.* (with gen.).
aright, *recte* (adv.).
Arriovist-us, *-i, M.*, *Arriovistus*.
aristocratic party, *optimā-tes, -tium, M. pl.*
arise, *orior, oriri, ortus sum*.
arm, *n., brachi-um, -i, N.*; *v., arm-o, -āre, etc.*
armed, *armāt-us, -a, -um*; *p.p. of armo*; *light a.*; see next word.
armor, *troops of light, mīnies levis armaturae*.
armor-bearer, *armig-er, -eri*.

arms, *arm-a*, -*orum* (pl.)
army, *exercit-us*, -*ūs* (in training);
agmen, *agminis* (on the march); *acies*,
ei (in line).

around, *circā*, *circum* (prep. + acc.).

arouse, *incit-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

arrival, *advent-us*, -*ūs*, M.

arrive, *ad-vēno*, -*vēnīre*, *vēnī*, -*ventum*.

arrive, *at*, *pervēno*, -*vēnīre*, -*vēnī*,
-ventum (ad with acc.)

arrow, *sagitt-a*, *ae*, F.

art, *ars*, *artis*, F.

as (p. 127, 2); (in place of), *pro*; **as**....
so, *ut* with *ita* in the main clause; **as**....
as, *tan*....*quam*; **such**....*as*, *tālis*
*qualis*; **as if**, *velut si*, (195, 3).

as, as though, *tantum*, *quasi* (p.
 195, 3).

as (= while), *dum* (p. 201, 3).

as many as, *tot quot*.

as many as possible, *quam plu-*
rimī.

as much as, *tantum quantum*.

as often as, *quoties*, *cum* (204, 4).

as soon as, *simul ac* (or *atque*).

ascertain, *cognosco*, *cognoscere*, *cog-*
novi, *cognitum*.

ashamed, *be*, *pudet*, *erc*, *ūit* (or
-itum est); **I am ashamed of my**
folly, *me stultitiae meae pudet* (p.
 165, 1).

Asia, *Asi-a*, -*ae*, F.

ask, **I** (you a question), *te rogo* or *in-*
terrogo; *ex* or *a te quaero* (*quaerere*, *quae-*
sivi, *quaesitum*).

ask, **I** (request, beg, you), *te rogo*, *oro*,
(-āre, -āvī, -ātum); *abs te pēto* (*pētēre*,
pētivi, *pētītum*).

ask for, **I**, *posco*, *poscere*, *pōposci*.

assault, *oppugn-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

assemble, *v.a.*, *convoc-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*,
-ātum; *v.n.*, *convēnio*, -*vēnīre*, -*vēnī*,
-ventum (intr.)

assembly, *conti-o*, -*ōnis*; *concent-*
us, -*ūs*, M.; *concili-um*, -*i*, N.

assert (as a fact), *affirmo*, -*āre*, -*āvī*,
-ātum.

assist, *sublāv-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* (acc.),
sub-vēno, -*vēnīre*, -*vēnī*, -*ventum* (dat.):
ad-iūvo, -*iūvāre*, -*iūvī*, -*iūtum* (acc.)

at, *ad* (prep. with acc.); *apud* (prep.
 with acc.); or *locative*. See p. 85, 3. After
 verb of motion, say *to* (p. 85, 1): **come**
to me at Rome, *me Roman vēni*; of
 time, use *abl*.

Athenians, *Athēniens-es*, -*ium*, M.

Athens, *Athēn-ae*, -*ārum*, F.

attack, *v.*, *ag-grēdiar*, -*grēdi*, -*gressus*
sum; (suddenly), *ad-oriar*, -*ōriri*, -*ortus*
sum; (a city), *oppugn-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*;
n., *impetus*, -*ūs* (on = in + acc.)

attain to, *pervēno*, -*vēnīre*, -*vēnī*,
-ventum (ad).

attempt, *v.*, *cōn-or*, -*ārī*, -*ātus sum*;
tempt-o or *tent-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*; *nitor*,
niti, *nitus* or *nictus sum*; *n.*, *incept-um*,
-ī, N; *conāt-us*, -*ūs*, M; *cōnāt-um*, -*i*, N.

attribute, *attrib-ūo*, -*ūere*, -*ūī*, -*ūtum*;
tribūo, *tribūere*, *tribūī*, *tribūtum*.

authority, *pōtest-as*, -*ātis*, F.; *auc-*
torit-us, -*ātis*, F.

autumn, *auctumn-us*, -*i*, M.

auxiliaries, *auxili-a*, -*ōrum* (pl.)

avarice, *āvariti-a*, -*ae*, F.

avenge, *ulciscor*, *ulcisci*, *ultus sum*.

avert from, **I**, *prōhib-ēo*, -*ēre*, -*āvī*,
-ātum.

avoid, **I**, *dēfūgiō*, -*fūgere*, -*fūgi*,
fūgitum (acc.)

avoid, **I**, (a danger), *vit-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*,
-ātum.

away from, *ā* or *ab*, with *abl*.

B.

backs, to turn their backs in flight,
terga in fugam dare [do, dare, dedi,
dātum].

bad, *māl-us*, -*a*, -*um* (comp., *pēior*;
 sup., *pessimus*); *imprōb-us*, -*a*, -*um*.

baggage, *impēdi-ment-a*, -*ōrum*, N. pl.

bane, *pernici-es*, *ei*, F.

banish, **I**, *civitate pello* or *expello*;
in exilium pello (*pellere*, *pēpālī*, *pulsam*).

banishment, *exili-um*, -*i*, N.

bank, *rip-a*, -*ae*, F.

banquet, *epul-um*, -*i*.

barbarian, *barbār-us*, -*a*, -*um* (adj.
 and n.)

barbarous, *crudēl-is*, *e*.

bark, *v.*, *latr-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*; *n.*,
cortex, *corticis*, M.; *liber*, *libri*, M.

base, *turp-is*, *e*.

baseness, *turpitūd-o*, -*inis*.

battle, *proeli-um*, -*i*, N.; *pugn-a*,
-ae, F.; **to begin a battle**, *proelium*
committere; **in battle**, **in b. array**,
in acie.

be, *sum*, *esse*, *fūī* (p. 24).

beam, *trabs*, *trābis*, F.

bear, *n.*, *urs-us*, -i, *M.*; *v.*, *fero*, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*; *port-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

beautiful, *pulch-er*, -*ra*, -*rum* [comp., *pulchrior*; sup., *pulcherrimus*]; *amoenus*, -*a*, -*um* (of scenery).

because, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* (p. 198); often expressed by part. (p. 220, 1).

become, *fiō*, *fiērī*, *factus sum*.

becomes, *it*, *dēcet*, *dēcēre*, *dēcūt* (acc.); *est* with gen. (p. 124, 1).

beech, *fāgus*, -i, *F.*

before, *ante* (prep. with acc.); conj., *antequam*, *priusquam* (p. 201, 5); adv., *ante*, *antēa*, *antehāc* (p. 82, 3).

beg, *I*, *rōg-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*. See ask.

begin, *I*, *in-cēpto*, -*cēpēre*, -*cēpī*, -*cep-tum*; *coep-i*, -*is*; **begin a battle**, *proelium committere*.

beginning, the, *inīti-um*, -i, *N.*; **at the beginning of winter**, *primā hieme*; *inīta hieme*.

behalf of, *on*, *pro* (prep. with abl.)

behold, *aspicō*, *aspicere*, *aspexi* *aspectum*.

behind, *post*, prep. with acc.

Belgae, *Belg-ae*, -*arum*.

belief, *opin-i-o*, -*ōnis*, *F.*

believe, *I*, *crēd-o*, -*ere*, -*idi*, -*itum*, with dat. (p. 105, 9).

belong, *per-tinēo*, -*tinēre*, -*tinūi*, no sup.; 121, 1; **belonging**: say *which* belonged.

beloved, *cārus*, -*a*, -*um* (with dat.; = dear to).

beneficial, *sālūtār-is*, -*e*; *ūtil-is*, -*e*.

benefit you, *I*, *tibi prōsum* (*prodesse*, *profui*).

besiege, *I*, (by blockade), *ob-sulēo*, -*sulēre*, -*sulēti*, -*sessum*; (by attack), *op-pugn-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

best, p. 57, 4.

bestow, *larg-i-or*, -*irī*, -*itus sum*.

betake myself to, *I*, *me confero ad*.

betray, *I*, *pro-do*, -*dere*, -*didi*, -*ditum*.

better, *melior* (comp. of bonus); **it would have been better**, *satius* or *melius fuit*.

between, *inter* (acc.).

beyond, prep., *ultrā*, *trans*, *extrā* (with acc.)

bid, *iūbēo*, *iūbēre*, *iussī*, *iussum*.

bill, *rōgiati-o*, -*ōnis*, *F.*

bird, *āv-is*, -*is*, *M.* or *F.*

bitter, *acerb-us*.

black, *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*; *āter*, *ātra*, *ātrum*.

blame, *n.*, *culp-a*, -*ae*; *v.*, *culp-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*atum*; *vītūpēr-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*atum*.

blessing, *bēnūm*, -i, *N.*

blind, *caec-us*, -*a*, -*um*.

blood, *sangu-is*, -*inis*, *M.*; *crū-or*, -*orī*.

bloody, *crūent-us*, -*a*, -*um*.

blot out, *dēl-ēo*, -*ēre*, -*ēvī*, -*ētum*.

boat, *linter*, *lintris*, *F.*

body, *corp-us*, -*oris*, *M.*

body-guard, *sātell-es*, -*itis*, *M.* (in plu.)

bold, *audax*, *audācis*, adj.

boldly, *audāciter* or *audacter*, adv.

bond, *vincul-um*, -i, *N.*

book, *liber*, *libri*, *M.*

booty, *praed-a*, -*ae*.

born, *be*, *nascor*, *nasci*, *natus sum*; pass. of *gigno*, *gignere*, *gēnūi*, *gēnītum*.

both, *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque* (p. 132); *ambo*, *ambae*, *ambo* (like duo, 68, 4).

both...and, *et...et*, *que...que*.

bound (in a geographical sense), *con-tineo*, -*tinēre*, -*tinui*, *tentum*.

boundaries, *finēs*, -*um* (pl.), *M.*

boy, *puer*, *M.*; **from a boy**, *a pūero*.

bow, *arcus*, -*ūs*, *M.*

branch, *rām-us*, -i, *M.*

brandish, *iact-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

brave, *fort-is*, -*e*; **bravely**, *fortiter*.

bravery, *fortitūd-o*, -*inis*, *F.*

break, *frango*, *frangere*, *frēgi*, *frac-tum*; **b. through**, *per-fringo*, -*fringere*, -*frēgi*, -*fractum*; **b. one's word**, *fidem fallo* (*fallere*, *fefelli*, *falsum*).

bridge, *pons*, *pontis*, *M.*

briefly, *brēviter*; **as b. as possible**, *quam brevissime*.

brigand, *latro*, -*ōnis*, *M.*

bright, *clār-us*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

bring, *I*, *dūco*, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum* (a person); *affero*, *afferre*, *attuli*, *allatum* (a thing); **bring up**, *erūdo*, -*ire*, -*ivi*, -*itum*; **bring back word**, *rēnūti-o*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*; **bring a person before you**, *ad te aliquem adducere*; **bring forward a bill**, *rogationem fero* (*ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*).

Britain, *Britannia*.

Britons, *Britann-i*, -*ōrum*.

broad, *lātus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

brother, *frāter*, *frātris*, *M.*

Brundisium, *Brundisi-um*, -i.
Brutus, *Brut-us*, -i, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

build, *aedific-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

building, *aedifici-um*, -i, N.

burden, *onus*, *oneris*, N.

burdensome, *molest-us*, -a, -um; *grāv-is*, -e.

burn, *crem-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *incendo*, *incendēre*, *incendi*, *incensum*.

bushel, *mōdi-us*, -i, M.

business (the), *rēs*, *rēi*, F.; *nēgōtium*, -i, N.

but, *sed*; *verum* (emphatic); (only), *tantum*, *mōdo*; (unless), *nisi*; (except), *praeter* (prep. with acc.)

butcher, *trucid-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

buy, *emo*, *emēre*, *emī*, *emptum*.

by (of a person after a passive verb), *ā* or *ab*, (p. 71, 2); dat. of agent (173, 4); abl. of means (p. 71, 3); *per* (prep. with acc.), of indir. agent; **by day**, *interdiū*; **by night**, *noctū*.

C.

Caesar, *Caes-ar*, -āris, M.

calamity, *cālāmit-as*, -ātis, F.

call, *vōc-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **call together**, *convōc-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

calling (after *forbid*), use inf.

call out, *evōc-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;

call by name, *appell-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

calm, adj., *tranquill-us*, -a, -um.

calmness, *tranquillit-as*, -ātis, F.

camp, *castra*, -ōrum (pl., N.)

can, *possum*, *posse*, *pōtūi* (p. 142); (=may), *licet*, impers. with a dat., (p. 102, 3; 163, 5); 130, (a) (in deliberative questions).

candid, *lib-er*, -ēra, -ērum, adj.

candidate for, I am a, *pēt-o*, -ēre, -ēvi, -itum.

candidly, *libere*, *aperte*, adv.

Cannae, *Cann-ae*, -ārum (pl.), F.

cannot, *non possum*; *nequ-eo*, -īre, -ēvi (or *ēi*), *itum*.

capital, *caput*, *capitis*, N.

caprice, *libid-o*, -inis, F.

capture. Use take.

care, *cūr-a*, -ae, F.

careful for, I am, *cāreo* (*cāvēre*, *cāvi*, *cautum*); I am careful for you, *tibi caveo*,

carefully, *diligenter*, adv.

carry (=bear), *fero*, *ferre*, *tālī*, *tālūm*; *port-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **carry on war**, *bellum gēro* (*gerēre*, *gessi*, *gestum*); **carry out**, *exsequor*, -sequi, -secutus sum; *conficio*, -ficere, *feci*, *fectum*; **carry across**, *transport-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **carry out of the country**, *ex port-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Cassius, *Cassi-us*, -i.

cast, *con-icito*, -icere, -icēi, -iectum; **cast away**, *ab-icito*, -icere, -icēi, -iectum.

Casticus, *Casti-cus*, -i.

catch, *cāpio*, *cāpere*, *cēpi*, *captum*.

cattle (in general), *pēc-us*, -ōris, N.; (of a single head), *pēcus*, *pēcūdis*, F.

cause, n., *caus-a*, -ae, F.; v., *efficio*, -ficere, *feci*, -fectum; with *ut*+subj. for Eng. to (p. 181, 3).

cavalry, *equit-es*, -um, M. pl; adj., *equest-er*, -ris, -re.

cave, *antr-um*, -i, N.; *cāv-um*, -i, N.

cease, I, *dē-sino*, -sinere, -sivi (st), -situm; *desisto*, -sistere, -stiti, no sup. (with abl.; p. 158, 2).

Cecrops, *Cecrops*, *Cecrōpis*, M.

celebrated, *clār-us*, -a, -um; *in-signis*, -e; **the celebrated Cicero**, *Cicero*, *vir clarissimus* or *ille C.* (adjs. not added to proper names.)

central, *medi-us*, -a, -um; **a central place**, *locus medius*.

centurion, *centūrī-o*, -ōnis, M.

century, *centūrī-a*, -ae, F.

certain (sure), *certus*, -a, -um, adj.

certain (one), a, *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*.

chain, *catēn-a*, -ae, F.; *vincul-um*.

chance, *cās-us*, -ūs, M; *fortūn-a*, -ae, F.; **by chance**, *forte*, *cāsū*.

change, I, *mūt-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; n., *commutāti-o*, -ōnis, F.

character, turned by a dependent clause (p. 181, 1).

character (natural), *ingēni-um*, -i, N.; *indol-es*, -is, F.

character (good), *virt-us*, -ūtis, F.

character (mode of life), *mōr-es*, -um, M., pl.; **the highest character**, *mores optimi*.

character, of the same c. as, *talis...qualis*.

characteristic of, it is; (seep. 124, 1).

charge (accusation), *crimen*, -inis, N.

charge (of troops), *impēt-us*, M.; **make a charge**, *in-vado*, -vadere, -vāsi, -vasum; *impetum facere* (on=in).

charged, I am (with), *in crimen venio* (*venire, vëni, ventum*); with gen.

chariot, *essëdum*; *curr-us, -us, M.*

charioteer, *essëdäri-us, -i, M.*

check, *môdër-or, -äri, -ätus sum* (with dative); *temper-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum* (with dative); *coere-eo, -ere, -äi, -ätum*.

cheer, n., *clëm-or, -oris, M.*

cheer, v.a., *hort-or, -äri, -ätus sum*.

cheerful, *hîlär-is, -e; ülac-er, -ris, -re*.

cheerfully, *facile, adv.*

cherish, *tüör, tüëri, tüütus sum*.

chief, princeps, principis, M. (n. and adj.)

child, *püer, püëri, M.*

children, *pueri, M.; libër-i, -örum*.

choose, I (like), *mihi libet* (impers.)

choose I, *eligo, eligëre, elegi, electum*; *crë-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum*.

Cicero, *Cicë-r-o, -önis, M.*

Cimon, *Cim-on, -önis*.

circumstances, res, rëi, F.; I yield to circumstances, *tempör-i cedo*.

citadel, *arx, arcis, F.*

citizen, *civ-is, -is*.

city, *urbs, urbis, F.*

civil, *civilis*.

civilisation, *hümanüt as, -ütis*.

civilised, *hüman-us, -a, -um*.

clamor for, *flügüt-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum* (acc.)

class, *gën-us, -ëris, N.*

clear, cert-us, a, -um; manifest-us, -a, -um.

clear, it is, *appär-et, -ëre, -uit*; *manifestum est* (p. 109, 1); **I clear myself of the charge**; *me de crimine* (or simply *crimine*) *purgo*.

clemency, *clëment-i-a, -ae, F.*

clerk, *scrüb-a, -ae, M.*

client, my, hic (p. 118, 2).

cloak, tog-a, -ae, F.; the military

cloak, *päludament-um, -i, N.*

close, I, *claudo, claudëre, clausi, clausum*; **close up**, *inter-cludo, -clüd-ëre, -clüsi, -clüsum*.

close to, *prope ad* (acc.)

close at hand, *prope, iuxtä*.

clothe, *vesti-o, -äre, -ävi (ü), -ätum*.

clothing, *vestit-us, -üs, M.; vest-is, is, F.*

cloud, *nüb-ës, -is, F.*

coast, n., *ör-a, -ae*; **sea coast**, *ora maritima*; *lit-us, -oris, n.*

coast along, *v., praeter-vehor, -vëhi, -vectus sum* (with acc.)

cohort, *cöhor-s, -tis, F.*

cold, *frigid-us, -a, -um, adj.; n., frig-us, -oris, N.*

colleague, *collëg-a, -ae, M.*

collect, *compär-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum*.

colony, *cölöni-a, -ae, F.*

column, *cölumn-a, -ae, F.*

come, *venio, venire, vëni, ventum*;
C. awa *discedo, cëdëre, -cessi, -cessum*.

command, n., *impër-i-um, -i, N.; imperatum*.

command, I, *impër-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum* (with dat.); (be at head of), *praesum* (with dat.).

commander, *impërät-or, -oris, M.; praefect-us, -i, M.; duæ, duëis, M.*

commence, in-cipio, -cëpëre, -cëpi, -ceptum; coep-i, -isse.

commencement, *initt-i-um, -i, M.*

commit, I (a crime), *facinus admitt-o* (*-mittëre, -misi, -missum*).

common, *commün-is, -e*.

commonwealth, *respublica, reipublicae, F.*

communicate, I (=impart to), *communico, -äre, -ävi, -ätum* (cum).

companion, *söc-us, -i, M.; södäl-is -is; cöm-es, -itis*.

company with, in, cum (prep. with abl.).

compare, *con-fëro, -ferre, -tuli, collatum*.

compassion, *misëricordi-a, -ae, F.*

compel, *cögo, cögëre, cöëgi, cöactum*.

complain, *quëror, quëri, questus sum*.

complaint, p. 219, (g).

comrade, *commilit-o, -önis, M.*

conceal, *cël-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum* (92, 3).

concerning, *de* (prep. with abl.)

concerns, it, *pertinet ad* (with acc.); p. 106, 3.

condemn, *condemn-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum* (for=gen.).

condition (lot), *fortüna, -ae, F.;* (terms), *condict-o, -önis, F.*

conference, I have a, *collöquor, -löqui, -locutus sum*.

confess, *fätëor, fätëri, fassus sum; confitëor, -fiteri, -fessus sum*.

confidence, *fiducia*, -ae, F.; *fides*, -is, F.

confidence in, I have, *confido*, -*fidere*, *fianus sum*; *fidem alicui habeo*.

congratulate, I c. you on this, *hoc* (acc.), *ob hanc rem*, *de hac re tibi gratulor* (-*ari*, -*atus sum*).

conquer, *vinco*, *vincere*, *vici*, *victum*; *super o*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atum*.

conquered, *victus*, -a, -um (p.p. of *vinco*),

conqueror, *victor*, -*oris*, M.

consciousness, *sens-us*, -us, M.; *conscientia*, -ae.

consequence, it is of c. to me, *mea interest* or *refert* (p. 166, 3).

consider, I *arbitror*, -*ari*, -*atus sum*; (hold, think), *habeo*, *duco*.

consist of, *consist-o*, -*ire*, -*isti* (in + abl.)

consolation to me, it is a great, *magno solatio mihi est* (p. 134, 1).

conspiracy, *coniuratio*, -*onis*, F.

conspire, *coniuro*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atum*

consul, *consul*, -*ulis*, M.

consulship, *consulatus*, -*us*; in the c. of Caesar, *Caesare consule*.

consult, *consulo*, *consulere*, *consului*, *consultum* (with acc.)

content(ed), *content-us*, -a, -um (with abl.)

continent, *continens*, -*tis* (supply *terra*).

contrary to, *contra*, prep. with acc.

conversation, *sermo*, -*onis*, M.; I have a conversation with you, *tecum colloquor*.

convoke, *convoco*, -*are*, etc.

Corinth, *Corinthus*, -*i*, F.

corn, *frumentum*, -*i*, N.

costs, it, *stat* (p. 150, 1).

cottage, *casa*, -*ae*, F.

council, *concili-um*, -*i*, F.

could. See **can**; (p. 163, 5, note).

count, I (= I number), *numero*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atum*; (= I hold), *habeo*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*atum*; *duco*, *ducere*, *duxi*, *ductum*.

country, one's, *patri-a*, -*ae*, F.

country, the (= the state), *republica*, *reipublicae*, F.; *civitas*, -*atis*, F.

country (as distinct from the town), *ruris*, -*ruris*, N.; from the country, *rure* (abl.); to the country, *rur* (acc.); in the country, *ruri* (locative; p. 86).

countryman, *civ-is*, -*is*, M.

courage, *virt-us*, -*utis*, F.; *fortitud-o*, -*inis*, F.

course, I take this, *haec facio*.

court, *aul-a*, -*ae*; *iudici-um*, -*i*, F.

cover, *tego*, *tigere*, *texi*, *tectum*.

coward, *cowardly*, *ignave-us*, -a, -um; *timid-us*, -a, -um.

cowardice, *ignavia*, -*ae*, F.

crave for, I, *desider-o*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atum*.

credible, it is scarcely, *vix credi potest*.

credit, *fama*, -*ae*.

crime, *facin-us*, -*oris*, N.; *scel-us*, -*eris*, N.

criminal, *sceleratus*, -a, -um.

crisis, *discrim-en*, -*inis*, N.; *temp-us*, -*oris*.

cross. I, *trans-eo*, -*ire*, -*ivi* (or *ii*), -*itum* (acc.)

crowd, n., *multitud-o*, -*inis*, F.; *turb-a*, -*ae*, F.; v., *circum fundo*, -*fundere*, -*fudi*, -*fusus* (se).

crown, *coron-a*, -*ae*, F.; (= a kingdom), *regnum*, -*i*, N. (p. 231, 6).

cruel, *crudel-is*, -e; *saev-us*, -a, -um.

cruelly, *crudeliter*; *saeve*.

cruelty, *crudelit-as*, -*atis*, F.; *saevitia*, -*ae*, F.

cry, n., *clam-or*, -*oris*; v., *clam-o*, -*are*, -*avi*, -*atum*.

cultivate, *colo*, *collere*, *colui*, *cultum*.

culture, *cult-us*, -*us*, N.; *humanit-as*, -*atis*, F.

Cures, *Cur-es*, -*ium*, F.

Curius, *Curius*, -*i*, M.

custom, *mos*, *moris*, M.; *consuetud-o*, -*inis*, F.

cut, *seco*, *secare*, *secai*, *sectum*.

D.

dagger, *pugi-o*, -*onis*, M.; *sic-a*, -*ae*, F.

daily, *quotidie*; with comparatives or words denoting increase or diminution, *in dies*.

danger, *pericul-um*, -*i*, M.

dangerous, *periculos-us*, -a, -um.

dare, *aud-eo*, *audere*, *ausus sum*.

daring, *audax*, *audacia*.

dark (metaphorically applied to crime), *atrox*, *atrocis*.

dark (literally), *ater*, *atra*, *atrum*; *obscur-us*, -a, -um.

dart, *tāl-um*, -i; *iācūl-um*, -i.
daughter, *filī-a*, -ae, F.; (p. 6, 2).
day (opposed to night), *diēs*, *diēi*, M. or F.; (opposed to darkness), *lux*, *lucis*, F.; **daybreak**, *prima lux*; **day after day**, *diem ex die*; **the day before**, *pridie*; **for the day**, *in diem*.
deadly, *mortī-fer*, -fēra, -fērum.
dear, *cār-us*, a, -um.
death, *mors*, *mortis*, F.
debt, *aes aliēnum*; gen., *aeris alieni*.
deceive, I, *de-cipio*, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum.
decide on, I, (resolve), *constitūo*, -stituere, -stitūi, -stitutum (inf.); *statuo*, -statuere, -statūi, -statutum; (pass judgment on), *iudic-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *de-cerno*, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum (de).
decision, *iudici-um*, -i.
declare, *dico*, *dicere*, *dixi*, *dictum*.
declare (war), I, *indico*, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum.
decree, I, v., *dē-cerno*, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum; n., *dēcrētum*, i, N.
deed, *fāct-us*, -ōris, N.; *fāct-um*, i.
deep, *alt-us*, -a, -um.
defeat, n., *clād-es*, -is, F.
defeat, v., *vinco*, *vincere*, *vici*, *victum*; *supēr-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
defend, *defendo*, *defendere*, *defendi*, *defensum*.
defile, n., *angustī-ae*, ārum, F. (pl.); *salt-us*, ūs, M.
delay, v., *mōr-or*, -ārī, -ātus sum (tr. and intr.); *cunctor*, -ārī, -ātus sum; n., *mōra*, -ae.
deliberate, *delibēr-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deliberation, there is need of, *opus est consulto* (p. 106, 2).
delight, I, *delect-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (trans.); *gaudēo*, *gaudēre*, *gāvīsus sum* (intr.).
delightful, *amoenus*, -a, -um (of scenery); *pulch-er*, -ra, -rum.
deliver (hand down), *trādo*, *trādere*, *trādidi*, *traditum*; *reddo*, -dēre, -didī, -dītum; (free), *libēr-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **deliver a speech**, *orātionem habere*; **after the speech was d.**, abl. abs. (220).
Delphi, *Delph-i*, -ōrum.
demand, *postūl-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *flēgito*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *posco*, *poscere*, *pōposci*, no sup. (p. 92, 3).
Demosthenes, *Demosthēnes*, -is, M.

dense, *dens-us*, a, -um.
deny, I, *nēg-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
depart, I (=go away), *ab-eo*, -ire, -ivi (-iī), -itum; *dis-cēdo*, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum.
descend, *descendo*, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum.
desert, *deserō*, -serere, -serāi, -sertum.
deserter, *transfūg-a*, -ae, M.; *per-fūg-a*, -ae, M.
deserve, I, *mērēor*, *mēreri*, *meritus sum*; *mērēo*, *mērere*, *mērui*, *mēritum*.
deserving of, *dignus*, -a, -um (with abl.).
design, n., *consili-um*, -i, N.
designedly, *consulto*, adv.
desire, I, *cūpio*, *cūpere*, *cūpivi* (iī), *cūpitum*.
desirous, be d. of, *cūp-io*, -ere, -ivi (iī), -itum (+inf.).
despair of, I, *despēr-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).
despatch, n., *litter-ac*, -ārum (pl. F.); v., *mitto*.
despise, *con-temno*, -temnere; *temp-si*, -temptum; *de-spicio*, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum.
despoil, *spōli-o*, -āre, &c.
despot, *dōmīn-us*, i, M.
despotism, *dōmīnāt-us*, -ūs, M.
destined, *fātāl-is*, e.
destiny, *fātum*, -i, N.
destitution, *ēgest-es*, -ātis, F.
destroy, *dēl-ēo*, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum; *vast-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
destruction, *exiti-um*, -i, N.; *per-nici-es*, -ei, F.
detain, *rē-tīnēo*, -tīnere, -tīnui, -ten-tum.
deter, *deterr-eo*, -ere, -vi, -itum.
determine, *constitūo*, -stituere, -stitūi, -stitutum (+inf.).
devastate, *vast-o*, -are, -āvī, -ātum.
devote myself to, I, *operam do* (with dat.).
devour, *dēvoro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
dictator, *dictātōr*, -ōris, M.
did; see do.
did the boy wound? use perf of wound.
die, *mōrīor*, *mōrī*, *mortuus sum*.
differ, *diffēro*, *differre*, *distūli*, no sup.; **to differ from each other**, *inter se differre*.

difference to us, it makes no, *nihil nostrā interest* (p. 166, 3).

differently from, *aliter ac*.

difficult, *difficilis, -e*.

difficulty, *difficultas, -tis, F.*

diligence, *diligentia, -ae, F.*

diligent, *diligen-s, -tis*.

diligently, *diligenter*.

din, *strepit-us, -ūs, M*

dinner, *cēna, -ae, F.*

direct, *iūbo, iūbere, iussī, iussum* (acc.); *impēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (dat.).

directions, in both, *utrimque*; in different d., *diverse*; in all d., *undique*.

disagree, *I, dis-sentio, -sentire, -sensi, -sensum*.

disagreement, *dissenat-o, -ōnis, F.*

disaster, *cāsus, -ūs, M.*; *cālamit-as, -ātis, F.*

discharge the duties of, *I, fungor, fungī, functus sum* (p. 116).

discipline, *disciplina, -ae, F.*

discourse, *serm-o, -ōnis, M.*

discover, say ascertain.

disease, *morb-us, -i, M.*

disembark, *I* (act.), *ex-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsui, -pōsitum*; neut., *ēgrēdior, ēgrēdī, ēgressus sum*.

disgrace, *ignōmīnī-a, -ae, F.*; *turpītūd-o, F., -ātis*.

disgraceful, *turp-is, -e*.

dismay, *pāvor, -ōris*.

dismiss, *di-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum*.

displease, *dis-plicō, -plicere, -plicui, -plicitum*.

disposition, *ingēnī-um, i, N.*; *indol-es, -is, F.*

dissatisfied, *I am d. with myself, mei me poenitet* (p. 165, 1).

dissemble, *dissimul-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

dissension, *dissensi-o, -ōnis, F.*

distance, *spātī-um, -i, N.*

distance from, *I am at a, ab-sum, -esse, -fui (ab)*.

distant, *longinqu-us, -a, -um*; *be d., absum*.

distinguished, *clār-us, -a, -um*.

district, *rēgiō, -ōnis, F.*; *locus, -i, M.*; *pl., loca, -ōrum, N.*

distrust, *dif-fido, -fidere, -fusus sum* (with a dat.)

disturb, *turb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

ditch, *foss-a, -ae, F.*

Divico, *Divic-o, -ōnis, M.*

divide, *di-vido, -videre, -vixi, -visum*.

divine, *divin-us, -a, -um*.

Divitiacus, *Divitiac-us, -i, M.*

do, *fācio, fācere, feci, factum*; p. 216, 1.

dog, *cānis, -is, M. or F*

doom, *fāt-um, -i, N.*

door, *iānū-a, -ae, F.*

doubt, *v., dubit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; there is no doubt that, *non est dubium quin* (p. 188, 6).

doubtful, *dubī-us, -a, -um*.

drag, *I, trāho, trāhere, traxi, tractum*.

draw, *I, trāho*. See above.

draw up a law, *I, legem scribo, (scribere, scriptum, scriptum)*.

draw up an army, *I, aciem instruo (instruere, instruam, instructum)*; after the army was drawn up, *acie instructa*.

dread, *I, réformid-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

dreadful, *atrox, atrocis*.

dress, *vest-is, -is, F.*; *vestit-us, -ūs, M.*

drink, *bib-o, -ere, bibi*.

drinking, good for, *utilis bibendo* (p. 60, 2).

drive, *pello, pellere, pepuli, pulsum*; *āgo, āgere, ēgi, actum*

due, use pass. of *dēb-ēo, ēre, -ui, -itum*.

during (= in), *abl. (82, 1)*; (all through), *acc., 82, 4*; *d. the reign, 100, 5*.

dust, *pulv-is, -ēris, M.*

duty, *offici-um, -i, N.*; see p. 124.

dwell, *habit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

dwelling, *aedifici-um*; *tectum*.

E.

each (one), *quisque* (never first in sentence), *quaeque, quodque* (adj.) and *quidque* (subst.); *unusquisque*; (of two), *uterque, utraque, utrumque* (p. 132); *inter se* (p. 223).

each other, *alius... alius*; *alter... alter* (p. 26); *inter se* (p. 223).

eager for, *avidus, -a, -um* (with gen.)

eagle, *āquil-a, -ae, F.*

eagle-bearer, *āquilifer, -ēri, M.*

early, *mātūr-us, -a, -um*; in e. spring, *vēre novo*.

earth, the, *terr-a, -ae*.

easily, *facile*.
 east wind, *Eurus*, *i*, M.
 easy, *facilis*, -e (p. 57, 2).
 eat; p. 160.
 educate, *educ-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 effort, *cōnit-us*, -ūs, M.; *cōnit-um*, *i*.
 Egypt, *Aegypt-us*, -i, F.
 eight, *octo*.
 eighteen, *duo-deviginti*.
 either . . . or, aut . . . aut; ³ vel . . . vel.
 elect, *er-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; be
 elected, *fi-o*, *fi-eri*, *factus sum*.
 elephant, *elephant-us*, -i.
 eloquence, *eloquenti-a*, -ae, F.
 eloquent, *eloquens* (-quentior, -quen-
 tissimus).
 else, or, aut.
 embark (trans), *in navem imponere*;
 (intr.) *navem conscendere*.
 emergency, *temp-us*, -ōris, N.
 empire, *imp-eri-um*, -i, N.
 employ, *ūtor*, *ūti*, *ūsus sum*.
 empty, *inānis*, -e; *vacuus*.
 encamp, *castra pōno* (*pōn-ere*, *pōsi*,
pōsitum); *castra loco* (*āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*).
 enact (a law), *promulg-o*, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum.
 encourage, *adhort-or*, -āri, -ātus
sum.
 end, n., *fin-is*, -is, M.; at the e. of
 summer, *extremā aestate*; v., *con-*
fic-ō, *fic-ere*, *fici*, *fectum* (tr.); *fin-īo*,
fin-ire, *fin-iri*, *fin-itum* (tr. and intr.).
 endeavor, I, *cōn-or*, -āri, -ātus sum;
nitor, *niti*, *nitus* or *nixus sum*; p. 216, 3.
 endowed with, *praedit-us*, -a, -um
 (with abl.).
 endure, *tōl-er-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 enemy (private), *inimic-us*, -i; (pub-
 lic), *host-is*, -is, M.
 engage in battle, *proelium com-*
mitto, *mitt-ere*, *mis-i*, *missum*.
 engine (of war), *tormentum*.
 enjoy, *frūor*, *frūi*, *fructus sum* (with
 abl.); p. 116; (= to have), *habeo*.
 enmity, *inimicitia*, -ae, F.

¹One alternative excluding the other:
 as, aut scribit aut legit, he is either
 writing or reading.

²Giving a choice: as, par erat vel mōri-
 bus vel fortuna, he was equal either
 in character or in fortune.

enough, *satis*, adv.
 enquire. See inquire.
 enquiry, gerund of enquire.
 enroll (soldiers), *conscrib-o*, -scrib-ere,
 -scripsi, -scriptum.
 enter, *in-ēo*, -ire, -ivī, -itum (acc.)
 enterprise, *res*, *rēi*, F.
 entirely, *tot-us*, -a, -um (p. 26, 1).
 entrust, *per-mitto*, -mitt-ere, -misi,
 -missum.
 enumerate, *enūmer-o*, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum.
 envoy, *lēgātus*, -i.
 envy, n., *invidi-a*, -ae, F.; *invid-ēo*,
vid-ere, *vid-i*, *visum* (dat.)
 Ephesus, *Eph-es-us*, -i, F.
 equal, *aqu-e-us*, -a, -um; *pār*, *pāris*
 (= equal to); I make e., *aqu-o*, *āre*,
āvī, *ātum*.
 err, I, *err-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 error, *err-or*, -ōris, M.
 escape, *ef-fūg-ō*, -fūg-ere, -fūg-i, -fūg-
 tum.
 establish, *confirm-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
stāt-ūo, *stāt-ūere*, *stāt-ūi*, *stātutum*.
 estimate, *aestim-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 estimation, *aestimati-o*, -ōnis, F.
 eternal, *sempitern-us*, -a, -um.
 even, *etiam*; *quodque* (used after an
 emphatic word); before an adj., *vel*; not
 .. even, *ne . . . quidem* (with the empha-
 sized word put between); *ne unus quidem*,
 not even one.
 evening, *vesp-er*, -ēris, M.; in the
 evening, *vesp-erī* (or -e).
 ever, *unquam*.
 every (=all), *omn-is*, -e; *quisque*,
quaeque, *quidque* or *quodque* (p. 132).
 every day. See daily.
 evident, *manifest-us*, -a, -um; it
 is e., *appār-et*, *ēre*, *ait*.
 exact (punishment), *sūmo*, *sūm-ere*,
sumpsi, *sumptum*.
 excellent, *optim-us*, -a, -um; *excel-*
len-s, -tis.
 except, *praeter* (acc)
 except (to), *nisi* (ut).
 excessive, *nim-i-us*, -a, -um.
 exchange for, I, *mūt-o*, -āre, -āvi,
ātum (p. 150, 1, note).
 excite, *excito*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 execute, *confic-ō*, *fic-ere*, *fici*,
fectum.
 exercise, v., *exerc-ēo*, -ēre, -āi, -ātum.

exhort, *hort-or, -ārī, -ātus sum*.
exile, *ex-ul, -ūlis, M.*; *exili-um*,
I, N. (of a condition).
exist, *I, sum, esse, fūi*.
expect, *ex-spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*;
spēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
expedient, *util-is, -e*; *be e.*, 163, 6.
expediency, *utilit-as, -ātis, F.*
expel, *pello, -ēre, pepuli, pulsum*.
experience, *ūs-us, -ūs*; *experienti-a*,
-ae, F.
explain, *ex-pōno, -pōnere, -pōnui*,
-pōsitum.
extent (p. 69, 9).
extortion, *repetund-as, -arum* [lit.
of things that should be got back (*repēto*) ;
supply *rerum*].
extreme, *extrēm-us, -a, -um*.
exult, *exult-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
eye, *ocul-us, -i, M.*; *I saw it with*
my own eyes, ipse id vidi.

F.

face, *ōs, ōris, N*; *faci-es, -ei, F.*; *vult-*
us, -ūs, M.
fact, *rēs, rēi, F.*; p. 181, 2.
faction, *facti-o, -ōnis, F.*
fail, *de-ficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum*
(used with or without acc.); *de-sum*,
-esse, fūi (with dat.).
fair, *pulch-er, -ra, -rum*; *amoen-us*,
-a, -um (of scenery).
faith, *fid-es, -ei, F.*; *I put faith in*
you, tibi fidem habeo.
faithful, *fidēl-is, -e*.
faithfulness, *fid-es, -ei, F.*
fall, *cādo, cādere, cecidi, cāsum*; *fall*
in battle, pēr-ēo, -ire, -ivi (or ī), -itum;
fall into, in-cido, -cidere, -cidi (with in
and acc.); *fall headlong, praecipit-o*,
-āre, -āvī, -ātum; *fall into ruin, cor-*
ruo, corrūere, corrui.
false (of persons), *mend-ax, -ācis*;
(of things), *fals-us, -a, -um*; *fict-us, -a*,
-um.
falsehood, *mendaci-um, -i, N.*; *to*
tell a falsehood, mentior, mentiri,
mentitus sum.
falsely, *speak, mentior, -ārī, -itus*
sum.
fame, *fāma, -ae, F.*; *glōri-a, F.*
family, *n., famili-a, -ae, F.*
family, *adj., domesti-cus, -ca, -cum*.
famine, *fāmes, -is, F.*
famous, *praeclār-us, -a, -um*.

far (= distant), *longinqu-us, -a, -um*.
far, *by, multo*.
far off, *adv., procul, longe*.
far and wide, *late*.
farmer, *agricol-a, -ae, M.*
farm-house, *vill-a, -ae, F.*
farther, *ulterior, -is* (from *ultra*).
fate, *fortūna, -ae, F.*; *sor-s, -tis, F.*
fatal, *perniciōs-us, -a, -um*.
father, *pater, patris, M.*
father-in-law, *socer, soceri, M.*
fault, *n., culp-a, -ae*; *viti-um*.
fault, *I find f. with, culp-o, -āre*,
-āvī, -ātum.
fault, *I commit a, pecc-o, -āre, -āvī*,
-ātum.
favor (= kindness), *benefici-um, -i*.
favor, *I, fāveo, fāvere, fāvi, fautum*
(with dat.).
fear, *n., met-us, -ūs*; *tim-or, -ōris*.
fear, *I, v., metūo, metūere, metui, no*
supine; *timēo, timēre, timui, no sup*;
verēor, verēri, veritus sum.
feast, *cen-a, -ae*; *epul-um, i, N.*;
pl., epulae, -arum.
feather, *pinn-a, -ae, F.*
features, *vult-us, -ūs*.
feel, *sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum*.
feeling, *anim-us, -i*.
fellow-citizen, *civ-is, -is, M.*
fertile, *fertil-is, -e*.
fertility, *cōpia, -ae, F.*
fetters, *caten-ae, -arum, F.* (pl.).
few, *pauc-i, -ae, -a*; **very few**, *per-*
pauc-i, -ae, -a.
field, *ager, agrī, M.*
field of battle, *acies, aciei, F.*
field, *in the*, (opposed to "at home"),
militiae (p. 86).
fierce (spirited), *fērox, -ōcis; atrox*,
atrōcis; *saev-us, -a, -um*.
fiercely, *ferōciter*; *atrōciter*; *saere*.
fifteen, *quindécim*.
fifth, *quin-tus, -a, -um*.
fifty, *quingūginta*.
fight, *n., pugn-a, -ae, F.*; *proeli-um*,
-i; *v., pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *dimic-o*,
-āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fill, *com-plēo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum*;
replēo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum.
find (after a search), *reperto, reperire*,

repéri, repertum; (come on suddenly),
inventio, -venire, -veni, -ventum.

find fault with, *culpo, -are, etc., vituper-o, -are, -avi, -atum.*

find out, *reperio* (see *find*).

fine, *pulch-er, -ra, -rum.*

finish, *confic-o, -ficere, -feci, -fectum*;
fin-to, -ire, -ivi, -itum.

fir, *abies, abietis, F.*

fire, *ign-is, -is, M.*

fire and sword, with, *ferro et igni.*

firm, *firmus, -a, -um*; (of character),
fort-is, -e.

first, *prim-us, -a, -um*; **I was the first to do it**, *hoc primus feci* (p. 246, Lesson 18, note, 7).

fit for, *apt-us, -a, -um* (with dat.; p. 60, 2).

five, *quingv.*

flag, *sign-um, -i.*

flank, *lat-us, -eris, N.*

flash, *fulg-ur, -uris, N.*

flee, *vól-o, -are, -avi, -atum*; *fúg-o, -ere, -fúgi, -fúgitum.*

flee to, *advól-o, -are, -avi, -atum* (acc.).

fleet, *class-is, -is, F.*

flesh, *cár-o, carnis, F.*

flight, *fúg-a, -ae.*

fling at, *pro-ic-o, -icere, -icci, -iectum*;
f. away, *ab-ic-o, -icere, -icci, -iectum.*

flock, *grex, grégis, M.*

flourishing in wealth, *ópulent-us.*

flow, *flú-o, -uere, -fluxi, -fluxum*;
flow down, *de-flú-o, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxum.*

flower, *flos, flóris, M.*

fly, *vól-o, -are, -avi, -atum*; *fúg-o, -ere, -fúgi, -fúgitum.*

foe (public), *host-is, -is, M. or F.*;
(private), *inimic-us, -i.*

follow, *sequor, sequi, secutus sum*;
it follows that, *sequit-ur ut.*

follower, use pres. part. of *sequor*.

following day, *dies postérus*; **on the following day**, *die postero*;
postridie.

folly, *stultiti-a, -ae, F.*

fond, *avidus.*

food, *vict-us, -us; cib-us, -i, M.*

foolish, *stult-us, -a, -um.*

foot, *pes, pedis, M.*; **on f.**, use abl. pl.;

foot of hill, tree, etc., use *imus* (p. 59, 1, note).

foot-soldier, *pédes, peditis, M.*

for, prep., *pro* (with abl.; p. 224); (on account of), *prae* (abl.); of time, 60, 9.

for gold, abl. (p. 150, 1).

for, conj., *nam*; *enim* (after first emphatic word); 231, 2.

for some time past, *iamdudum* [p. 216, 2, (b)].

forage, *pábúl-or, -ari, -átus sum.*

forbid, *veto, vetare, vetui, vetitum.*

force, *u., vis, F.* (p. 45); (army),
=**forces**; *v., cogo, cogere, cogen, coactum.*

forces, *copiae, -arum, F.*

forefathers, *maior-es, -um.*

foreign, *extern-us, -a, -um.*

foreigner, *peregrin-us, -i.*

foremost, *prim-us, -a, -um.*

foresce, *pro-spicio, -spicere, -specti, -spectum.*

forest, *silv-a, -ae.*

foretell, *prae-dico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum.*

forget, *obliscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum* (p. 146, 7).

form a plan, *consilium in-eo* [-ire, -ivi (or ii), -itum].

form a league, *foedus ferre.*

form a line of battle, *aciem instruo* (-struere, struxi, -structum).

former, *pri-or, pri-us*; **of former days**, *pristin-us, -a, -um.*

formerly, *olim.*

fort, *castell-um, -i, N.*

fortify, *mún-to, -ire, -ivi, -itum.*

fortress, *arx, arcis, F.*; *castell-um, i.*

fortunate, *féliz, felicitis*; *fortunatus.*

fortune, *fortuna, -ae, F.*

foul, *foed-us, -a, -um.*

foully, *nefarie.*

found, *con-do, -dere, -didi, -ditum.*

fourteen, *quattuordecim.*

fourth, *quart-us, -a, -um.*

free, adj., *liber, -era, -erum*; *expers, expertis* (with abl.; p. 64, 4); *v., libero, -are, -avi, -atum.*

freedom, *libert-as, -atis, F.*

freed woman, *libert-a, -ae, F.*

fresh, *recens, recentis.*

friend, *amic-us, -i, M.*

friendly, *amicus*, -a, -um.
 friendship, *amiciti-a*, -ae, F.
 frequent, *creber*, *crebra*, *crebrum*.
 frog, *rāna*, *rānae*, F.
 from, *a* or *ab* (with abl.); *de* (abl.); p. 158, 2.
 front, *frons*, *frontis*, F.; on the (in) front, *a fronte*.
 fruit, *fruct-us*, -ūs, M.; *frūg-es*, -um, F., pl.
 fugitive, *fūgitiv-us*, -i, M.
 full, *plēn-us*, -a, -um (with gen. or abl.)
 funeral, *fūn-us*, -eris, N.
 further, adj., *ullēri-or*, -ōris.
 fury, *ir-a*, -ae, F.
 future, the, *fūtūr-a*, -orum (n. pl.)
 future, in, or for the, *in futūrū*; *in postērū*.

G.

gain, *emōlūment-um*, -i, N.; *lucr-um*, -i, N.
 gain, possession of, *pōtior*, *pōtiri*, *pōtītus sum* (with abl.).
 games, *lūd-i*, -ōrum, M.
 garden, *hort-us*, -i, M.
 Garonne, *Garunn-a*, -ae.
 garrison, *praesidi-um*, -i, N.
 gate, *port-a*, -ae, F.
 gather together, (trans.), *compār-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (intr.), *con-venio*, -venire, -veni, -ventum.
 Gaul, a, *Galli-a*, -ae, F.
 Gaul, *Gall-us*, -i.
 gaze at or on, *spect-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 general, *dux*, *dūcis*, M.; *impērāt-or*, -ōris, M.
 Geneva, *Genēv-a*, -ae, F.
 gentle, *mīl-is*, -e; *lēn-is*, -e.
 gently, *lētiter*.
 German, *German-us*, -a, -um.
 get, *ac-quirō*, -quirere, -quisivī -quisivī; *as-sēquor*, -sequi, -secūlus sum.
 gift, *dōn-um*, -i, N.
 girl, *puell-a*, -ae, F.
 give, *dōn-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *dō*, *dāre*, *dēdi*, *dātum*; *g. notice*, say in-form; *give up* (=surrender), *dē-do*, *dēre*, *dēdi*, *dētum*; (=hand down), *trū-do*, *dēre*, *dēdi*, *dītum*.

glad, *laet-us*, -a, -um; *liben-s*, *liben-tis*; I am g. to do it, *hoc libenter facio*.
 gladly, *laete*, *libenter*.
 globe, *orbis terrārum*.
 glorious, *praecūr-us*, -a, -um.
 glory, *glōri-a*, -ae, F.
 go, *eo*, *ire*, *ivi* (-i), *itum*; (be about to), p. 174, 1.
 go away, *ab-eo*, -ire, -ivi (-i), -itum.
 go out, *ex-cēdo*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; *ex-ēo*, -ire, -ivi (or *ii*), -itum.
 God, *Dēus*, *dēi* (p. 13, 2).
 goddess, *dēa*, -ae, F. (p. 6, 2).
 gold, *aur-um*, -i; for g., 150, 1.
 golden (gold), *aurē-us*, -a, -um.
 good, *bonus*, -a, -um (p. 20); comp., *melior*; sup., *optimus*.
 goods, *merx*, *mercis*, F.
 govern, *rēgo*, *rēgere*, *rexī*, *rectum*; *gubern-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 governor, *praefect-us*, -i, M.
 gradually, *paulatim*.
 grandfather, *avus*, *avī*, M.
 Granicus, *Grānic-us*, -i, M.
 grateful, *grāt-us*, -a, -um.
 grain, *frūment-um*, -i, N.
 gratitude, *grātia*, -ae, F.; I show gratitude, *gratiam refero* (*refero*, *retuli*, *relatum*); I feel g., *gratiam hab-eo* (-ere, -ui, -itum).
 great, *magn-us*, -a, -um; of great size, *ingens*, *ingentis*; so g., *tantus*.
 greatly, *magnopere* (adv.); comp., *māgis*; sup., *maxime*.
 Greece, *Graec-a*, -ae.
 greedy, *avid-us*, -a, -um; *avar-us*, -a, -um.
 Greek, *Graec-us*, -a, -um.
 greenness, *viridit-as*, -atis, F.
 grief, *dol-or*, -ōris, M.
 groan, *gem-o*, -ere, -ui, -itum.
 ground, *hūm-us*, -i, F.; on the ground, *hūmī*.
 grow, *cre-sc-o*, -ere, *crevi*, *cretum*; *vir-ēo*, *vir-ēre*, no perf., no sup.
 guard, *custōd-i-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; n., see next word.
 guardian, *cust-os*, -odis, M.
 guide, n., *dux*, *dūcis*, v., *gubern-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 guilt, *scēl-us*, -eris, N.
 guilty, *noxī-us*, -a, -um; be g. of, *in se admitto* (acc.)

H.

habit of, I am in the, *solēo, solēre, solitus sum (+inf.)*

hair, *cōm-a, -ae, F.; cāpill-us, -i, M.*

hall, *aul-a, -ae, F.*

halt, come to a halt, *con-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum.*

Hamilcar, Hamilc-ar, -āris, M.

hand, *mān-us, -ūs, F.*

hand, I am at, *ad-sum, -esse, -fui.*

hand over to, per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum; mand-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

hand-maid(en), *ancill-a, -ae.*

Hannibal, Hannib-al, -ālis, M.

happens, it, accidit, accidere, accidit, no sup.; contingit, contingere, contingit, no sup.; evenit, evenire, evenit, no sup.

happiness, beate vivere (p. 108, 4).

happy, beat-us, -a, -um; lucky, felix, felix.

harbor, portus, -ūs, M.

hard, adj., durus, -a, -um.

hard, press, premo, premere, pressi, pressum.

hard to say, or tell, it is, difficile est dictu.

hardly, vix (adv.)

hardship, lab-or, -ōris.

harsh, asper, aspera, asperum.

harvest, messis, -is, F.

haste, celerit-as, -ātis, F.; there is need of h, opus est properato (p. 196 2).

hasten, propere-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; motus-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; festino, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

hate, odi-um, -i, N.

hate, I, odi, odisse; I am hated, odio sum (p. 196, 7, note).

haughty, superb-us, -a, -um.

he; p. 168, 3.

he himself, ipse (p. 123, 6).

head, caput, capitis, N.; in the h., p. 98, 3.

head of, I am at the, prae-sum, -esse, -fui (with dat).

headlong, prae-ceps, -cipitis.

heal, medeor, mederi, no perf., no sup.

health, I am in good, valeo, valere, valui, valitum.

hear, audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.

heart, cor, cordis, N.; (feelings), animus.

heat, aestus, -ūs, M.

heaven, cael-um, -i, N.; pl. M., cael-i, -orum.

heavy, grav-is, -e.

heir, heres, -dis, M.

help, iuvo, iuvare, iuvi, iutum; adiuvo, iuvare, iuvi, -itum; n., auxili-um, -i, N.

Helvetians (Helvetii), Helveti-i, -orum, M.

hem in, con-tineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum.

hence, henceforth, proinde, hinc.

herald, praeco, -onis, M.

here, hic.

here, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.

hesitate, dubito, -are, -avi, -atum.

hidden, occult-us, -a, -um.

hide, cel-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum.

high, alt-us, -a, -um.

highest, summ-us, -a, -um; with interest, use magni (p. 166, 3); of price, p. 150, 2.

highly, I value, magni aestimo (p. 150, 2).

hill, coll-is, -is, M.; mons, montis, M.

him; p. 168, 3.

himself, se; ipse, ipsa, ipsum (168, 3).

hinder, impedi-o, -ire, -ivi, -itum; ob-sto, -stare, -stiti, -statum (dat.)

his, eius, suus (p. 168, 3); often omitted; 169, 5, note 2.

historian, rerum scriptor (-oris, M.)

hither, ulter-ior, -ioris.

hold, habeo, habere, habui, habitum; teneo, tenere, tenui, tentum; capio, capere, cepi, captum (=contain).

home, dom-us, domus, F.; at home, domi; (to) home, domum; from home, domo.

Homer, Homēr-us, -i, M.

honest, prob-us, -a, -um.

honor, fides, fidei (good faith), F.; hon-or, -oris, M. (distinction).

hope, spes, spei, F.

hope, hope for, I, sper-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

horse, equus, equi, M.

horseman, eques, equitis, M.

host (opposed to guest), hospes, hospit-is, M.

host (a multitude), multitud-o, -inis, F.

hostage, *obses, obsidēs*, M.
 hour, *hor-a*, -ae, F.
 house, *dōm-us*, -ūs, F. (62, 6).
 how, *quam* (p. 176, 3).
 however; 196, 7, note; *autem, vero*.
 how many, *quot*.
 how much, *quantum*; with comparatives, *quā*.
 how often, *quoties*.
 human, *humān-us*, -a, -um.
 humble, *humil-is*, -e.
 hundred, *a*, *centum*.
 hunger, *fāmes, fāmīs*, F.
 hurl, *con-icio*, -icere, -iecti, -iectum (at = in + acc.)
 hurry to, *contendo*, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, (ad with acc.)
 husband, *vir, viri*, M.

I.

I, ego (p. 104).
 if, *si* (p. 190); if...not, *nisi*, *si...*
non (p. 190, 3); unless, *nisi* (p. 190, 3).
 ignorant of, I am, *ignor-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *ne-scio*, -scire, -scivi, -scitum.
 ill, I am, *aegrōt-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 illustrious, *praeclār-us*, -a, -um.
 ill-will, *mālevolenti-a*, -ae, F.
 imitate, *imit-or*, -āri, -ātus sum.
 immediately (adv.), *stātīm*, *confestim*.
 immediately after the battle, *confestim a proelio*.
 immortal, *im-mortal-is*, -e.
 impart I, *commūnic-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 impiety, *impiet-as*, -ātis, F.
 implore, *implōr-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 importance, it is of; p. 166, 3.
 important to me, it is, *meū interest* (p. 166, 3).
 important, *grāv-is*, -e; *magnus*.
 impunity, with, *impūne*.
 impute, this to you as a fault, *I, hoc tibi vitio verto*.
 in, prep., *in* (with abl. or acc.; p. 222, 2); in company with, *cum*; in the power of, *penes* (with acc.); in turn, *invicem*; in order that, *ut*; in order that not, *ne* (p. 183, 2).
 inasmuch as, *quoniam* (+subj.; 203, 1); *quā* (196, 5).

inclination, *vōlunt-as*, -ātis, F.
 inconsistent with, *aliēnus*, *a*, -um (ab + abl.)
 increase (trans.), *augēo*, *augēre*, *auxi*, *auctum*; (intrans), *cresco*, *crescere*, *crevi*, *cretum*.
 incredible, *incredibilis* (p. 175).
 indecisive, *anceps*, *incipitis*.
 inexperienced, *impērit-us*, -a, -um.
 infant, *infans*, *infantis*, M. or F.
 infantry, *pedit-es*, -um, M. pl.
 influence, *auctorit-as*, -ātis, F.
 inform, *certiorem facere* (ol = de).
 inform, him about these matters, *I, ego eum certiorem de his rebus facio*.
 inhabitant, *incolā*, -ae, M.; 1. of a town, *oppidanus*.
 injure, *nōcēo*, *nōcēre*, *nōcui*, -ātum (with dat.)
 injury, *iniuriā*, -ae, F.; *damnum*, -i, N.
 innocence, *innocenti-a*, -is, F.
 innocent, *innocens*, *innocentis*.
 inquire, *quaero*, *quaerere*, *quaesivi*, *quaesitum*; *rōgo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 insist on, *flagit-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 instantly, *continuo*.
 institution, *institut-um*, -i, N.
 instruct, *ērdio*, -āre, -āvī, -itum.
 insult, *contumēlia*, -ae, F.
 intellect, *mens*, *mentis*, F.
 intend; p. 174, 1.
 intentionally, *consulto*.
 interest, it is of, *inter-est*, -esse, -fui (166, 3); (high = magni or multum).
 interpreter, *interpres*, *interpretis*, M.
 into, *in* (with acc.)
 intrust, *I, per-mitto*, -mittere, -misi, -missum; *mand-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 invade, *I, bellum infēro* (*inferre*, *intuli*, *illatum*).
 inventor, *invent-or*, -ōris, M.
 invite, *I, invit-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 irruption, *an*, *incursi-o*, -ōnis, F.
 island, *insul-a*, -ae, F.
 issue, *event-us*, -ūs, M.
 it. See *he*.
 Italy, *Itali-a*, -ae, F.
 its, *eius*; referring to subject, *suus*, *sua*, *suum* (169, 5).
 itself, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*.

J.

January (adj.; *mensis* being understood), *ianuāri-us*, -a, -um.

javelin, *tēl-um*, i, N.; *pil-um*, -i, N.

jealous of you, I am, *tibi in-videō* (-*vidēre*, -*vidi*, -*visum*).

join, *iungo*, *iungere*, *iunxi*, *iunctum*.

joint, *art-us*, -ūs.

journey, *iter*, *itinēris*, N.

joy, *gaudi-um*, -i, N.; *laetiti-a*, -ae.

joyful, *laet-us*, -a, -um.

judge, n., *iudex*, *iudicia*, M.; v., *iudic-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *arbitr-or*, -āri, -ātus sum.

judgment, *iudici-um*, -i, N.; *arbitri-um*, -i, N.

June (month of), *Iūni-us*, -a, -um.

Jupiter, *Iūpiter*, *Iōvis*, M.

jury, *iudic-es*, -um, M. pl.

just, *aqu-us*; *iust-us*, -a, -um.

just then, *iam tum*.

just as though; say as if.

justice, *iustitia*, -ae, F.

justly, *iure* [abl. of *ius* (*iuris*), used adverbially].

Jura, *Iur-a* -ae, F.

K.

Karthage, *Karthāg-o*, -inis.

Karthaginians, *Karthaginienses*.

keen, *ac-er*, *acris*, *ācre*.

keep, *serv-o* -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **k. promises**, *promissis sto* (*stāre*, *stēti*, *stātum*).

keep my word, *fidem serv-o* (-āre, -āvi, -ātum); *fidem praesto* (-*stāre*, -*stīti*).

keep back, *arc-eo*, -ēre, -āvī, -itum.

keep back from, *prohib-ēo*, -ēre, -āvī, -itum; *arceo*, *arcēre*, *arcuī* (+abl.).

keep off, *defen-do*, -dēre, -dī, -sum.

kill, *inter-ficio*, *ficcere*, -fēcī, -fectum; *oc-cido*, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum.

kind, n., *gēn-us*, -eris, N.

kind, adj., *bēnēvol-us*, -a, -um; comp., *benevolentior*; sup., *bēnēvolētissimus*.

kind deed, a, *bēnēfici-um*, -i, N.; *officiūm*, -i, N.

kind, of every, *omnis*, -e; *omnis gēnēris*.

kind of man, the, *use qualis* (p. 181, 1).

kind of this, *hūiusmodi*; of that kind, *eiusmodi*; *talis*.

kindness, *bēnēfici-um*, -i, N.

king, *rex*, *rēgis*; **king's**, *rēgi-us*, -a, -um.

knee, *gen-u*, -ūs, N.

know, *scio*, *scire*, *scivi*, *scītum* (a fact); *nosc-o*, -ēre, *nōvi*, *nōtum* (a person).

knowledge, *sciētī-a*, -ae, F.; (learning), *doctrin-a*, -ae, F.

L.

Labienus, *Lābiēn-us*, -i, M.

Lacedaemon, *Lācēdaem-on*, -ōnis, F.

Lacedaemonian, *Lācēdaemōni-us*.

lack, I, *mihi deest*.

lacking, *expers*, *expert-is* (with abl.; p. 64, 4).

lake, *lac-us*, -ūs, M.

lame, *claud-us*, -a, -um.

lament, *liment-or*, -ārī, -ātus sum; *dolēo*, *dolēre*, *dolui*, no sup.

land (the soil), *ager*, *agri*, M.; (a country), *terr-a*, -ae, F.; **native land**, *pātri-a*, -ae, F.; **by sea and land**, *terrā mārīque*.

land troops, *mīlites in terram expōno* (-*pōnēre*, -*pōsui*, -*pōsitum*.)

language (tongue), *lingu-a*, -ae, F.; (conversation), *serm-o*, -ōnis, M.

large, *ir-gn-us*, -a, -um; *ingen-s*, -tis; so l., *lātus*.

last (of a number), *ultim-us*, -a, -um; (nearest; as, last night), *proxim-us*, -a, -um; **most remote**, *extrēm-us*, -a, -um; **at last**, *dēmum* (= then and not till then); *tandem*.

late (recent), adj., *rēcens*, *recentis*.

late, too l., adv., *sēro*.

lately, *nūper*; sup. *nūperīme*.

law, *lex*, *lēgis*, F.

lay waste, *vast-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lead, *dūco*, *dūcere*, *duxi*, *ductum*; **lead across** or **through**, *trans-dūco*, *dūcere*, *duxi*, *ductum*; **lead back**, *rē-dūco*, *dūcere*, *duxi*, *ductum*; **lead out**, *ēdūco*, *dūcere*, *duxi*, *ductum*.

lead, *plumb-um*, -i, N.

leader, *dux*, *ducis*, M.

learn, *disco*, *discere*, *didici*, no sup.; (ascertain), *cognosc-o*, *ēre*, *cognōvi*, *cognitum*.

learned, *doctus* (p.p. of *dōceo*, teach).

learning, *doctrin-a*, -ae, F.

least, at *saltem*; I at least, *ego certe*.

leave, *re-linguo, -linguere, -liqui, -lictum*; (a place) *ex-cēdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum* (with abl. or with ex.); *dis-cēdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum* (ex); *prō-fici-scor, profici-sci, profectus sum*.

left, *sinist-er, -ra, -rum*.

legion, *lég-i-o, -ōnis, F.*

leisure, *ōti-um, -i, N.*; at leisure, *ōtiōs-us, -a, -um*.

less (adv.), *minus*; less than two hundred fell, *minus ducenti perierunt*. *Minus*, with numerals (like *amplius*, more) has no effect upon the construction.

less, adj., *minor, minus* (p. 57, 4)

lest, *nē* (p. 185, 3).

et, *sino, sinere, sivi, situm*; or use *et* (183, 5).

letter, *ēpistōl-a, -ae, F.*; *littēr-ae, -arum, F.* (pl.).

levy, n., *delect-us, -us, M.*; I hold a levy, *delectum habeo*.

liar, *mendax, mendacis*.

liberality, *liberalit-as, -atis, F.*

liberate, *libēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

liberty, *libert-as, -atis, F.*

lie, *dic-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum*; (speak falsely) *mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum*.

lieutenant, *legātus, -i, M.*

life, *vit-a, -ae, F.*

light, *lux, lucis, F.*; *lūmen, lūminis, N.*

lightning, *fulgur, fulgūris, N.*

like, *simil-is, -e*; comp., *similior*; sup., *simillimus* (dat.)

likely; use 174, 1.

line of battle, *decies, decies, F.*; **line of march**, *iter, itinēris, N.*

lion, *leo, leōnis, M.*

listen to, *aud-to, -ire, -ivi, -itum* (acc).

live, *vivo, vivere, vixi, -victum*; I live on milk, *lacte vescor* (*vesci*, no perf., no sup.).

living, be; say live.

load, n., *onus, onēris, N.*

load v., *onēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

locality, *loc-a, -arum*; pl. of *locus*.

lofty, *alt-us, -a, -um*; *excels-us*.

long, *long-us, -a, -um*; for a long time, *diu, iampridem* (216, 2, b).

look at, *spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

look down on, *de-spici-o, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum*.

look for, *expect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

lord, *domin-us, -i*.

lose, *am-itto, -mittere, -misi, -missum*; **lose an opportunity**, *occasionem amitto*.

loss, *damn-um, -i*; *calāmīt-as, -atis, F.*

lot, *sors, sortis, F.*; *fortūn-a, -ae, F.*

lot, it falls to my, *mihī accidit*; *mihī contingit*.

loud, *magnus*.

love, *ām-o -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; *dilig-o, diligere, dilexi, dilectum*.

lovely, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*.

lover, *amans, amantis*

low(ly), *hūmīlis, -s*.

lowest, *im-us, -a, -um* (59, 1).

loyal, *fidel-is, -e*.

loyalty, *fides, fidēi, F.*

Lucca, *Lucc-a, -ae*.

luxury, *luxuri-a, -ae*.

M.

mad, I am, *furo, furere, no perf., no sup.*

made, I am being, *fio, fieri, factus sum*.

magnitude, use *quantus* (see p. 181, 1).

maiden, *puell-a, -ae*; *virg-o, -inis*.

maintain, *sus-tinēo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum*; *vindic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

make, *fācio, facere, feci, factum*; (a magistrate), *crē-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; (war upon), *bellum in-fero, inferre, intuli, illatum* (dat.); (an attack), *impetum facio* (*facere, feci, factum*), or simply *aggredior, -grēdi, -gressus sum* (acc.)

Malta, *Melit-a, -ae, F.*

man, *vir, viri, M.* (an adult male; opposed to *mulier, woman*); *hōmo, hōmīnis, M.* or *F.* (a human being).

maniple, *mānpul-us, -i, M.*

manners, *mōres, mōrum* (pl.), *M.*

many, *mult-i, -ae, -a* (pl.); **many good men**, *multi et boni homines*.

marble, n., *marm-or, -ōris, N.*

marble, adj., *marmōreus, -a, -um*.

march, *iter, itinēris, N.*; to make a march, *iter facio* (*facere feci, factum*).

Marcus, *Marc-us, -i, M.*, a Roman name.

Mārius, *Māri-us*, -i.
market-place, *for-um*, -i, N.
Marseilles, *Massili-a*, -ae, F.
marsh, *pāl-us*, -ūdis, F.
Massilla, *Massili-a*, -ae.
master (of boys), *magist-er*, -ri, M.; (of slaves), *dōmīn-us*, -i, M.
matter, *res*, *rēs*, F.
matters little, *it*, *parvi interest* or *refert*, (p. 166, 3).
may, *licet*, *licēre*, *licēt* (or *licitum est*) (p. 163, 5); *possum*, *posse*, *pōtūi* (p. 142); in final clauses, *ut* + subj. (p. 183); of a wish, (p. 138, 4, c).
May (month of), *Mai-us*, -a, -um, adj. (*mensis* being understood).
meal, *cēn-a*, -ae; *epul-ae*, -arum.
mean, v., *sibi volo* (*velle*, *volui*)
means of, *by*, *abl.* (p. 71, 3).
meanwhile, *intērim*.
measure, *mēti-or*, *mētiri*, *mensus sum*.
Medes, *Mēd-i*, *ōrum* (pl.), M.
meet an enemy, *obviā hostibus* (dat.) *ire*.
meet death, *mortem ob-ēo* [*ire*, *ivi* (or *ii*), *itum*].
meeting, *concili-um*, -i, N.; *con-vent-us*, -ūs, M.
memory, *mēmōri-a*, -ae, F.
merchant, *mercāt-or*, -ōris, M.
merchantman, *navis oneraria*.
Mercury, *Mercūri-us*, -i, M.
mercy, *misericordi-a*, -ae, F.
mere, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum* (p. 123).
message, *nunti-us*, -i, N.
messenger, *nunti-us*, -i, M.
midday, *mēridi-es*, -ei, M.; *tempus mēridiānum*.
middle of, *mēdi-us*, -a, -um; **in the middle of the plain**, *in mediā planitie*; **in the middle of the night**, *mediū nocte*.
midst of, *in the*, *inter* (with acc.).
might; use *licet* (163, 5).
mile, *mille passuum*; **two miles**, *duo millia passuum* (p. 69, 10).
milk, *lac*, -tis, N.
mind, *anim-us*, -i, M.; *mens*, *mentis*, F.
miserable, *miser*, *misēra*, *misērum*.
modesty, *mōdesti-a*, -ae.
money, *pecūni-a*, -ae, F.
month, *mens-is*, -is, M.

moon, *lūna*, *lūnae*, F.
morals, *mōres*, *mōrum*, M.
more, *plus* (p. 57, 4), of amount; *magis*, of degree (p. 77, 6); **more than**, *magis quam*.
moreover, *praetērā*, adv.
morning, *in the*, *māne*, adv.
mortal (dying), *mortāl-is*, -e; (deadly), *mortifer*, -fēra, -fērum.
most, *plērique*, *plēraequae*, *plērāque*.
most part, *for the*, *maxime*.
mound, *ag-ger*, -gēris, M.
mount, v., *a-scendo*, -scendēre, -scendi, -scensum.
mountain, *mons*, *montis*, M.
mourn over, *lūgeo*, *lūgēre*, *lūxi*, *luctum*.
mouth, *os*, *ōris*, N.
move, *mōv-ēo*, *mōv-ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*; **move forward**, *pro-mōv-ēo*.
much, *mult-us*, -a, -um; with comparative, *multo*; **m. time**, *multum temporis*.
multitude, *multitūd-o*, -inis, F.
murder, *caed-es*, -is, F.; **after the murder of Caesar**, *Caesāre interfecto*.
must; p. 172, 2; 173, 5.
my, *me-us*, -a, -um.
myself (emphatic), *ipse*.

N.

name, *nōm-en*, -inis, N.
name (good), *fām-a*, -ae, F.
Naples, *Nēāpōl-is*, -is, F.
nation, *pōpūl-us*; *civit-as*, -ātis, F.; *nāti-o*, -ōnis, F. (of foreign nations).
native land or country, *pātri-a*, -ae, F.
nature, *nātūr-a*, -ae, F.
near, *prōpe*, *ad*, or *apud* (with acc.); **be n.**, *adsum* (dat.).
nearest, *proximus*, -a, -um.
nearly, *paene*, *fere* (adv.).
necessary, *necessāri-us*, -a, -um
necessity, *necessit-as*, -ātis, F.
need, *opus est* (p. 166, 2); **I have need of food**, *opus est mihi cibo* (abl.); *eg-ēo*, *eg-ēre*, *eg-ūi* (+abl. or gen.)
needy, *eg-ēnus* (57, 3, note).
neglect, *negligo*, -lig-ēre, *lexi*, *lectum*.
neighbor, *vicin-us*, -i, M.; *fīnitimus*.

neighboring, *finitim-us*, -a, -um.
neither . . . nor; *neque . . . neque*;
nec . . . nec.

neither (of two), *neuter*, *neutra*,
neutrum (p. 26).

nest, *nid-us*, -i.

never, *nunquam*.

new, *novus*, -a, -um.

news of, there is, *nuntiatur* (p.
 164, 2, note 2).

next, the, *proxim-us*, -a, -um; **next
 day**, *dies posterus*; **on the next
 day**, *die postero, postridie eius diei*.

night, *nox, noctis*, F.

no (p. 20, 4, note).

noble, *praectar-us*, -a, -um; *nobil-is*.

noon, noonday, *meridi-es*, -ei.

no one, *nemo* (gen., *nullius*; p. 132, 2);
nullus, -a, -um; **and no one**, *nec
 quisquam* (132, 3).

nor, *neque, nec*; owing to the Latin
 love of connectives, used instead of *non*
 to introduce a sentence (p. 231, 2); **nor**
 . . . **any**, p. 132, 3.

not, non; with imperat., p. 138, 4 (b).

not yet, *nondum*.

nothing, *nihil*.

nourish, *nutr-ō, -ire, -ivi, -itum*; *ālō*,
ālere, ālui, ālitum (or *altum*).

now (of time up to the present), *iam*;
 (at the present moment), *nunc*; (= to-day)
hodie.

no-where, *nusquam*.

number, *numēr-us*, -i, M.; p. 181, 1.

O.

O, interjection, *O*; omitted usually
 with vocative; **O! that**, *utinam*; see
 p. 138, 4.

oak-tree, *querc-us*, -ūs, F.

obey, *pār-ō, -ere, -i, -itum* (dat.);
obtemperō, -ēdīre, -ēdīvi (ēdī), -ēditum (dat.);
 p. 164).

object, v., *rēcūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

object, n., **have an o. in view**,
āgo, āgere, ēgi, actum.

obscure, *obscurus*.

obtain, I, *ādīpiscor, -ādīpisci, āde-
 ptus sum*; *pōtior, pōtiri, pōtitus sum*;
 (a request), *impētro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

occupy, I (hold), *tēn-ō, -ere, -i, -itum*.

ocean, *ocēān-us*, -i, M.

Octaviānus, *Octāviān-us*, -i

of, expressed by gen. or abl.; *dē*, prep.
 with abl.

offence, *peccāt-um*, -i, N.

offer, I, *de-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum*.

office, *māgistrāt-us, -ūs, M.*; I hold

office, *magistratum habeo* or *obtineo*.

officers, the military, *tribūni
 militum*.

often, *saepe*; **so often**, *tōties*.

old, *antiqu-us, -a, -um*; *vētus, vētēris*;

oldest, *maximū nātū*; (see ancient).

old age, *sēnect-us, -ūtis*, F.

old man, *sēnex, sēnis*.

Olympus, *Olymp-us, -i, M.*

on (of rest), *in* (abl.); (of motion), *in*
 (acc.); of time, abl.; **on this side**,
citrā (prep. with acc.); **on this ac-
 count**, *ob eam causam*; **on the side
 of, ab** (with abl.)

once, *semel*; **more than once**,
semel ac saepius.

once (formerly), *quondam*; *olim*; **at
 O., stātim**.

one (numeral), *ūn-us, -a, -um*; **one
 of the soldiers**, *unus e militibus*.

one, some, *āliquis, āliqua, āliquid*
 or *āliquod*; *quidam, quaedam, quoddam*
 or *quiddam* (p. 132).

one, not, *nemo*, gen. *nullius* (p. 132, 2);
ne unus quidem.

one . . the other, *alius . . alius*; *alter
 . . alter* (of two).

one and all, *cunct-i, -ae, -a*; *omnēs,
 omnium*.

one day, *āliquando*.

only, *tantum*; *solum*; *mōdo* (all
 placed after the words qualified); **not
 only**, *non solum, non mōdo* (but also
 = *sed etiam*).

onset, *impēt-us, -us, M.*

open, (trans.), *pātē-fācio, -fācere,
 -fēcī, -factum*; (intr.), *pātēo, pātēre,
 pātui*, no sup.; **open ranks**, *ordines
 lazare*.

openly, *pālam*.

opinion, *sententi-a, -ae*.

opportunity, *occās-iō, -iōis*, F.

oppose, *occurro, -currere, -curri,
 cursum* (with dative); *ob-sto, -stāre,
 -stīti*, no sup. (with dat.)

oppress, *vex-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*;
op-primo, -primere, -pressi, -pressum.

or, cut; *vel*.

or not, anon in the second part of a
 principal alternative question (130, 6,
 note); *neque*, in a dependent alternative
 question (p. 177, 5).

oration, *orātī-o, -ōnis*, F.
 orator, *orāt-or, -ōris*, M.
 order, v., *iūbēo, iūbēre, iussi, iussum* (with acc.); *imper-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (with cat.)
 order, n., *mandāt-um, -ī*, N.; *praecept-um, -ī*, N.
 order that, in, *ut* (p. 183, 2; p. 185, 5).
 origin, *gēn-us, -ēris*, N.; of humble origin, *humili loco natus*.
 other, the (of two), *alter*; others, *aliī*; other men (=the rest), *ceterī*.
 ought, *dēbēo, -ēre, -iī, -itum* (of moral obligation); *impers, oport-et, -ēre, -iit* (p. 162, 4); p. 173, 6.
 our, ours, *nost-er, ra, -rum*.
 ourselves, *nos*; p. 104, 5.
 out of, *e, ex* (with abl.); *ex* before vowels and consonants, *e* before consonants only.
 outward, *extēr-us, -a, -um*.
 over, *sūper* (prep. with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2); *trans* (acc.).
 overcome, *sūp-er-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *vinco, vincēre, vici, victum*.
 overthrow, *evert-o, -ēre, -ī, -sum*.
 Ovid, *Ovidius, -ī*, M.
 owe, *dēbēo, -ēre, -iī, -itum*.
 own, gen. of *ipse*; my own book, *meus ipsius liber* (123, 6); v., p. 120, 3.
 ox, *bos, bovis*.

P.

pacify, I, *plac-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 pain, *dōlor, -ōris*, M.
 panic, *pavor, pavoris*, M.
 pardon, n., *venīa, -ae*, F.
 pardon, v., *ignosco, ignoscere, ignōvī, ignōtum* (dat.)
 parent, *pārens*, M. or F.
 part, *pars, partis*, F.; it is the p. of, p. 124.
 pass (a law), *promulg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *fero*.
 pass by, *praeter-eo, -īre, -iī, -itum*.
 pass over, *trans-eo, -īre, -iī, -itum*.
 pass the winter, *hiem-o, -iī, -iī, -itum*.
 passion (anger), *ira, -ae*, F.
 passionate, *iracund-us, -a, -um*.
 passionateness, *iracundī-a, -ae*, F.
 past, *praeterit-us, -a, -um*; the past, *tempus praeteritum*.
 patiently, *pātenter*.
 pay, *pendo, pendēre, pependi, pensum*.

pay, n., *merces, mercēdis*, F.
 pearl, *margarit-a, -ae*.
 peace, *pax, pacis*, F.
 Peligni, *Pelignī, -ī, -orum*.
 penalty, *poen-a, -ae*, F.; *supplic-um, -ī*, N.
 people, (a), *pōpūl-us, -ī, -ī*; (men), *hōmīnes* (pl.); 164, 2.
 perceive, *intelligo, -līgēre, -lēxi, -lectum*; *sentiō, sentire, sensi, sensum*.
 perform, *facio*; *con-ficō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum*.
 Pericles, *Péricles, -is*, M.
 perish, *pēr-eo, -īre, -iī* (or *ī*), *-itum*.
 permit. See allow; you p. me, *mihi per te licet* (p. 163, 5).
 permitted, I am, *mihi licet* (p. 163, 5).
 Persian, *Medus, -ī*.
 persuade, *per-suādēo, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum* (dat.)
 Philippi, *Philippī, -ī, -orum*.
 philosopher, *philōsōph-us, -ī*, M.
 philosophy, *philōsōphī-a, -ae*, F.
 pick, pick out, *lēgo, līgēre, lēgi, lectum*.
 pine, *pin-us, -ās*, F.
 pirate, *praed-o, -ōnis*.
 pitch a camp, *castra locāre* or *pōnere*.
 pity, n., *misericordi-a, -ae*, F.
 pity, v., *misēreor, misēreri, misēritus sum*, with gen.; I pity you, *me tuī miseret* (165, 1).
 place, n., *loc-us, -ī*, M.; pl., *loci*, M., and *loca*, N.
 place, v., *loc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (acc.); *pōno, pōnere, pōsui, pōsitum*; place over; *prae-ficō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum*.
 plain, *campus, -ī*, M.; *plāniti-es, -ēs*, F.
 plain (evident), *mānifest-us, -a, -um*.
 plan, *consill-um, -ī*, N. (form = *ineo*).
 play, *lūd-us, -ī*, M.; *lūs-us, -us*, M.; v., *lūd-o, -ēre, -iī, -itum*.
 pleasant, *iucund-us, -a, -um*; *grāt-us, -a, -um*.
 please, *delect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (acc.); *placēo, placēre, placui, placitum* (with dat.).
 please, I (i.e., choose), *mihi libet, libuit, libitum est*.
 pleasing. See pleasant.
 pleasure, *volupt-as, -ātis*, F.

plough, n., *arātr-um*, -i, N.
 plough, v., *ār-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 ploughed land, *arvum*, *arvī*, N.
 pluck, *carpo*, *carpēre*, *carpsi*, *carptum*.
 plunder, *praed-a*, -ae, F.
 poet, *pōet-a*, -ae, M.
 point out, *monstr-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
ostendo, *ostendēre*, *ostendī*, *ostentum*.
 poison, *venen-um*, -i, N.
 pool, *stagnum*, -i, N.
 poor, *pauper*, *paupēris*.
 populace, *plebs*, *plebis*, F.
 possession, obtain or gain, *pōtior*,
potiri, *potitus sum* (p. 116).
 possible, use *possum*; all p., *omnes*
quas potest; as many as p., *quam*
plurimi (p. 143, note).
 poverty, *paupert-as*, -ātis, F.
 power, *impēri-um*, -i, N.; *pōtest-as*,
ātis, F.; *pōtenti-a*, -ae, F. (undue power).
 powerful, *pōtens*, *pōtentis*.
 practice, *usus*, -ūs, M.
 praise, n., *laus*, *laudis*, F.
 praise, v., *laud-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 praiseworthy, *laudābil-is*, -e.
 pray for, *or-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 prayers, *præces*, -um, F.
 prefer (wish rather), *mālo*, *malle*,
mālūi, no sup.; *antepōno*, *pōnēre*, -*pōs*-
ūi, *pōsitum* (with acc. and dat.); *præ-*
fero, -*ferre*, -*tūli*, -*lātum*.
 prepare, *pār-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 present, a, *dōnūm*, -i, N.
 present, I am, *ad-sum*, -*esse*, -*fūi*;
inter-sum, -*esse*, -*fūi* (at=dat.)
 presently, *mox*, *brevi*.
 preserve, *conservo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
servo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 pretend, *simul-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
diestmālo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 prevent, *ob-sto*, -*stāre*, -*stitti*; *prō-*
hibeo, -*hibere*, -*hibui*, -*hibitum*; prevent
 him from doing, I, *prohibeo eum*
quominus faciat (p. 185, 2).
 previous, *pror*, *prūs*.
 price, *prētī-um*, -i, N.; p. 150.
 pride, *superbia*, -ae.
 prince, *princeps*, *principis*, M.
 prison, *carcer*, *carceris*, M.
 prisoner (of war), *captiv-us*, -i, M.
 private person, *privat-us*.
 prize, *praemi-um*, -i, N.

promise, *pro-mitto*, *mittere*, -*missi*,
missum; *pol-litor*, -*licere*, -*licitus sum*
 (with fut. inf.; 110, 1).
 promise, *promiss-um*, -i, N.
 proof, *indict-um*, -i, N.
 property, *bōna*, N. pl.; *fortunae*,
 F. pl.; *res*, *rēi*, F.
 proud, *sūperb-us*, -a, -um.
 provide for, I, *prō-vidēo*, -*vidēre*,
-vidi, -*visum*.
 providence, *providenti-a*, -ae, F.
 provided that, *mōdo*, *dummōdo*
 (191, 8).
 province, *provinci-a*, -ae, F.
 provoke, *lācesso*, *lācessere*, *lācessi*,
lācessitum.
 prudence, *prudenti-a*, -ae, F.
 punish, *pūn-o*, -*ire*, -*ivi*, -*itum*.
 punishment, *poena*, *poenae*, F.;
supplic-um, -i, N.
 pupil, *discipulus*, -i.
 purpose, for the p. of, *causa*
 (171, 6).
 purposely, *consulto*.
 pursue, *sēquor*, *sēqui*, *secutus sum*.
 pursue, *studī-um*, -i.
 put, *pōno*, *pōnere*, *pōsi*, *pōsitum*.
 put to death, *inter-ficio*, -*ficere*,
-feci, *fectum*.
 Pyrenees, *Pyrēnaei Montes*.

Q.

quaestor, *quaest-or*, -*ōris*, M.
 quantity, *cōpi-a*, -ae, F.; *vis*, F.
 queen, *rēgin-a*, ae, F.
 question, I ask a, *rō-go*, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum (92, 3); I ask you this ques-
 tion, *hōc tē rōgo*.
 quickly, *celeriter*.
 quiet, adj., *quēt-us*, -a, -um; n.,
quies, *quētis*, F.

R.

race (kind), *gēn-us*, -*eris*, N.; the
 human race, *gēnus hūmānum*; r. of
 men, *gēnus hōminum*.
 rage, *ir-a*, -ae, F.; *fūr-or*, -*ōris*, M.
 rain, *plūvi-a*, -ae, F.; *im-ber*, -*bris*, M.
 raise, *tollo*, *tollere*, *sustūli*, *sublātum*.
 rank, *ord-o*, *tnis*, M. (military term).
 rather, *pōtius*.
 Ravenna, *Ravenn-a*, -ae.
 reach, *pēvenio*, -*venire*, -*veni*, -*ven-*
tum (ad with acc.)

read, *lego, legere, legi, lectum*.
 read aloud, *recit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 ready, *parāt-us, -a, -um* (with *inf.*, *dat.*, or *ad* and *acc.*).
 really, *verō; vērē verā* (in truth).
 rear, *terg-um, -i, N.*; from or in the rear, *a tergo*.
 reason, *caus-a, -ae, F.*; p. 181, 1 (use *cur*).
 receive, *accipio*.
 recent, *recens, recentis*.
 recover, *(intr.) se recipio*.
 refrain, *de-sisto, -sistēre, -stiti, -stitum* (*abl.*, or *abl.* with *a*).
 refuse, *nōlo, nolle, nōlū; recūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 regard, *habeo*.
 reign, *v., regn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *n., impēri-um, -i, N.*; during the r., see p. 100, 5.
 reject, *rēpudi-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 rejoice, *gaud-eo, -ēre, gāvīus sum*.
 relate, *narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; it is related, *narrātur*; it is related by tradition, *traditum est*.
 relying on, *frēt-us, -a, -um* (with *abl.*).
 remain, *mān-ēo, -ēre, -sī, -sum*; *re-mān-eo, -ēre, -sī, -sum*.
 remarkable, *insign-is, -e; extimī-us*.
 remember; p. 145; 146, 7.
 remind, *admōn-eo, -ēre, -uī, -ātum*; *commone-facio, -facere, -feci, -factum* (p. 187).
 repent of my folly, *I, me meae stultitiæ poenitet* (p. 165, 1).
 reply, *v., re-spondēo, -spondēre, -spondi, -sponsum*; *n., respons-um, -i*.
 report, *nunti-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 republic, *respublica, rēpublicae, F.*
 resist, *re-sisto, -sistēre, -stiti, -stitum*, (*dat.*)
 resolve, *con-stitūo, -stitūere, -stitūi, -stitūtum*.
 rest, *quies, -ētis*; the r., *rēliqui, cēteri*.
 retake, *recipio*.
 retreat, *se recipere*.
 return (go back), *rēd-ēo, -āre, -āvī* (or *-ī*), *-ātum*; (give back) *red-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum*.
 revile, *māledico, -dicere, -dixi, -dicitum* (*dat.*)

reward, *praemi-um, -i, M.*
 Rhine, *Rhēn-us, -i, M.*
 Rhone, *Rhōdān-us, -i, M.*
 rich, *dis, ditis*; *dices, divitis*; *opulentus, -a, -um*; *cōpiōs-us, -a, -um*.
 right, *iust-us, -a, -um*; *aequ-us, -a, -um*.
 right (=on the right hand), *dex-ter, -tra, -trum*; right hand, *manus dextra*.
 right, *n., ius*; *fas*.
 ripe, *mātūr-us, -a, -um*.
 rising, *orien-s, -tis*.
 risk, *pericul-um, -i, N.*; *discrim-en, -inis, N.*
 river, *flūm-en, -inis, N.*; *flūv-us, -i, M.*; *riv-us, -i, M.*; *amn-is, -is, M.*
 road, *vi-a, -ae, F.*; *iter, itinēris, N.*
 rock, *sax-um, -i, N.*; *rūp-es, -is, F.*; *scōpul-us, -i, M.*
 Roman, *Rōmān-us, -a, -um*.
 Rome, *Rōm-a, -ae, F.*
 Romulus, *Rōmūl-us, -i, M.*
 root, *rād-ix, -icis, F.*
 rose, *rōs-a, -ae, F.*
 rough, *asp-er, -ēra, -ērum*.
 route, *vi-a, -ae, F.*; *iter, itinēris, N.*
 ruin, *exiti-um, -i, N.*; *pernici-es, -ēi, F.*
 rule, *v., regn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *gubern-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *n., regn-um, -i*; *impēri-um, -i, N.*
 run, *curro, currere, cucurri, cursum*; (a wall), *duco*.
 run away, *adfūgio, -fūgere, -fūgi, -fūgitum*.

S.

sacred, *sāc-er, -ra, -rum*; *sanct-us*.
 sad, *maest-us, -a, -um*; *trist-is, -e*.
 safe, *tūt-us, -a, -um*; *salv-us, -a, -um*; *incōlūm-is, -e, (securus=free from care)*.
 safety, *sāl-us, -ūtis, F.*
 said, it is; p. 184, 3.
 sail, *n. velum, -i, N.*
 sail, *v., nāvīg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 sailor, *naut-a, -ae, M.*
 sake of, for the, *causā* (+gen.); for my sake, *meā causā*; for the sake of plundering, *praedandi causā* (p. 171, 6).
 sally, *erupti-o, -ōnis*; make a s., *erumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum*.
 salt, *sal-, sālis, M.*

salute, v., *sālūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 same, *idem, eādem, idem*; same as, 127, 2.
 satisfy, *sātis-fācto, -fācere, -fēcī, -fāctum* (with dat.; p. 105, 9).
 savage (wild), *fēr-us, -a, -um*.
 savage (cruel), *sāev-us, -a, -um*; *crūdēlis, e*.
 save, *serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 say, *dico, dicere, dixi, dictum*; s. not, *neg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 scholar, *discipul-us, -i*.
 school, *schol-a, -ae, F*.
 science, *doctrīn-a, -ae, F*; *scienti-a, -ae, F*.
 Scipio, *Scipi-o, -ōnis*.
 scout, *explōrāt-or, -ōris, M*; *spēcūlāt-or, -ōris, M*.
 sea, *mare, māris, N*.
 sea, of the, *maritim-us, -a, -um*; the sea coast, *ora maritima, litus*.
 season, *tempes-as, -ātis, F*; *anni tempus (temporis)*.
 seat, *sēd-es, sēdis, F*; *sella, sellae, F*.
 second, *secund-us, -a, -um*; *alter*.
 secret, *occult-us, -a, -um*.
 see, *vidēo, vidēre, vidi, visum*; *cerno, cernere, crēvi, cretum*; *spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 seed, *sēmen, sēmnis, N*.
 seek, *quaero, quaerēre, quaesivī, quaesitum*.
 seem, *vidēor, vidēri, visus sum*; it seems that he was good, *ille videtur bonus fuisse* (p. 164, 3).
 seize, *occup-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (a place); *arripio, arripere, arripuī, arreptum* (a person).
 select, *delig-o, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectum*.
 sell, *ven-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum*; to be sold, *venēo, venire, venivī (-ti), ventum*.
 senate, *sēnat-us, -ūs, M*.
 send, *mitto, mittēre, misī, missum*.
 send forward, *prae-mitto, -mittere, misī, -missum*.
 Sequāni, *Sēquānī, -ōrum, M*. (pl.)
 serpent, *serpens, -tis, M*.
 servant, *serv-us, -i, M*.
 service, *utilit-as, -ātis, F*; be of s., *prodesse*; 143, 2 (great=*multum*).
 sesterce or sestertius, *sesterti-us, -i, M*.
 set (of sun), *sōlis occāsus (-ūs, M)*.
 set out *prae-ficior, -fici, -fectus sum* (for=ad)

severe, *grāvīs, -a*.
 severely, *grāviter*.
 shade, *umbr-a, -ae, F*.
 shall, sign of fut.; (in deliberative question), 139, (a).
 sharp, *acer, acris, acere*; *acūt-us, -a, -um*.
 ship, *nāv-is, -is, F*; *nāvigī-um, -i, M*.
 s. of war, *navis longa*.
 shore, *ōr-a, -ae, F*; *lit-us, -ōris, N*.
 short, *brēvis, -e*.
 shortly, *brevi*.
 should (ought), p. 173, 5.
 shout, *n., clam-or, -ōris, M*.
 shout, raise a s., v., *clam-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; p. 164, 2, note.
 shudder at, *horr-eo, -ēre, -ti* (acc.)
 Sicily, *Sicili-a, -ae, F*.
 sick, *aeg-r, -ra, -rum*.
 sick, I am, *aegrōt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.
 side, *pars, partis, F*; *lātus, latēris, N*; on all sides, *undique*; on both sides, *utrinque*; on this s. of, *citrā* (acc.).
 sight, *conspect-us, -ūs, M*.
 signal, *sign-um, -i*.
 silence, *silentium*.
 silent, I am, *tācēo, tācēre, tācui, tāciturum*.
 silent, *tācēt-us, -a, -um*.
 silver, *argent-um, -i, N*.
 silver, of, *argent-ūs, -a, -um*.
 since, adv., *abhinc, -ten years*
 since, *abhinc decem annos* (or annis).
 since, conj., *quum, cum* (p. 203); *quoniam, quia* (p. 198); p. 199, 5.
 sing, *cant-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *cān-o, cānere, cēcini, cantum*.
 single, not a, *ne unus quidem*.
 sister, *sōr-or, -ōris*.
 sit, *sēdēo, sēdēre, sēdī, sessum*.
 six, *sex*.
 six hundred, *sexcentī, -ae, -a*.
 size, *magnitūd-o, -inis, F*; use *quantus* (181, 1).
 skilful, *perīt-us, -a, -um* (with genitive).
 skill, *scienti-a, -ae, F*.
 skilled, *peritus* (in=gen.).
 skin, *pell-is, -is, F*.
 sky, *cael-um, -i, N*.
 slave, *serv-us, -i, F*.
 slavery, *servit-us, -ūtis*.

slay, *interficere, -ficere, -feci, -fectum; trucid-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.*

sleep, *n., somn-us, -i, M.; v., dorm-to, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.*

slip, *lābor, labi, lapsus sum.*

sloth, *ignāvi-a, -ae, F.*

small, *parv-us, -a, -um (p. 57, 4); exigū-us, -a, -um.*

smile at, *rideo, ridere, risi, risum (acc.).*

snow, *nix, nivis, F.*

so, *adv., adeo (with adjs.); ita, sic (in this way); so as. ita ut; so that, ut (p. 187); dum, dummodo (p. 194, 3); so much, tantum, tantopere; so great, tant-us, -a, -um; so long, tamdiu; so many, tot.*

Socrates, *Socrāt-es, -is, M.*

soil, *söl-um, -i, N.; ager, agri, M.*

solace, *sölāt-um, -i, N.*

sold, *be, ven-ēo, -äre, -ävi (ii), -ätum.*

soldier, *mīl-es, -itis, M.*

some, *aliquis, qua, aliquod (p. 132); quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam (p. 132); some others, alii alii; sometimes, interdum.*

some, there are; p. 188, 5, (a).

son, *fil-ius, -ii, or -i, M.*

son-in-law, *gēn-er, -eri, M.*

soon, *stātim, confestim; mox, brevi.*

sooner, *mātūrius (comp. of mātūre, early).*

Sophocles, *Sophocl-es, -is.*

sorrow, *döl-ör, -öris, M.*

soul, *ānīm-us, -i, M.; ānīm-a, -ae, F.*

sound, *n., sönit-us, -ūs; v., sōno, sönäre, sönui, sönitum.*

sovereignty, *regnum.*

sow, *sēro, sērere, sēvi, sätum.*

space, *spāt-um, -i, N.; within the space of two days, biduo.*

spare, *parco, parcere, pēperci, parci-tum or parsum (with dative; p. 105, 9).*

sparrow, *pāsser, pāssēris, M.*

speak, *loquor, dico.*

speaking, *dicere (inf. used as a noun; 108, 4); ars dicendi.*

spear, *hast-a, -ae.*

speech, *örāt-ō, -ōnis, F.*

speed, *cēlēr-it-as, -ätis, F.*

spend, *consumo.*

spit, *ver-u, -ūs, N.*

splendid, *splendīdus.*

sport, *n., lūd-us, -i, M.; lūs-us, -ūs, M.; v., ludo, ludere, lusi, lūsum.*

spot, *loc-us, -i.*

spread, *spargo, spargere, sparsi, sparsum; sterno, sternere, strāvi, strātum.*

spring, *ver, vēr-is, N.*

spy, *spēculāt-or, -öris, M.; explorāt-or, -öris, M.*

stand, *sto, stāre, steti, stātum; s. for, pōt-o, -äre, -ävi (ii), -ätum; s. near, ad-sto, -stāre, -stīti.*

star, *stell-a, -ae.*

start. See **set out**.

state, *civīl-as, -ätis.*

stay. See **remain**.

step, *pass-us, -ūs, M.*

still, *tranquill-us, -a, -um; (nevertheless) tāmen; (even now), adhuc.*

stone, *lāpis, lapidis, M.*

stork, *eleōt-a, -ae, F.*

storm, *tempest-as, -ätis, F.*

story, *fābul-a, -ae, F.*

stream, *riv-us, -i, M.; fluv-ius, i, M.; amnis, -is, M.; flūm-en, -inis, N.*

strength, *rōb-ur, -öris; vīres, virtum, F. (pl. of vis; p. 45).*

strive, *cōn-or, -āri, -ātus sum; nitor, niti, nīsus or nixus sum.*

subdue, *sūp-er-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; vinco, vincere, vici, victum.*

such, *tālis, -e; of such a kind, eiusmodi (in contempt).*

sue; p. 185, 5.

suffer, *pātior, pati, passus sum.*

suffering, *lāb-or, -öris, M.; döl-or, -öris, M.*

suitable, *aptus, -a, um; idoneus.*

Sulmo, *Sulm-o, -ōnis, M.*

summer, *aest-as, -ätis, F.*

summon, *convoco, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; arcesso, cessere, cessivi, cessitum.*

sun, *sol, solis, M.*

sunset, *solis occasus (-ūs).*

sure, *certus.*

surpass, *sūp-er-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum; vinco, vincere, vici, victum.*

surrender, *trād-o, -dēre, -didī, -ditum; de-do, -dēre, -didī, -ditum (tr.).*

sway, *imp-er-ium, -i, N.*

swift, *cēl-er, cēl-er-is, cēlere; rapidus, -a, -um; swifter, cōtor, octus.*

swim, *nāt-o, -äre, -ävi, -ätum.*

sword, *glādī-us, -i, M.; ferrum, -i, N.*

T.

table, mens-a, -ae, F.

take, cāpio, cāpere, cēpi, captum;
take by storm, expugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

talent, ingēnt-um, -i, N.; (a weight or a sum of money), tālent-um, -i, N.

tall, altus, -a, -um; prōcer-us, -a, -um; ingens, ingentis.

teach, doc-ēo, -ēre, -āi, -tum.

tear, lārim-a, -ae, F.

tell, narr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; dico, dicere, dixi, dictum.

temple, templ-um, -i, N.; aed-es, -is, F.

ten, decem; **tenth**, decim-us, -a, -um.

terrify, terre-o, -ēre, -āi, -ātum.

territory, fin-es, -ium (pl. M.); āger, āgri, M.

terror, terr-or, -ōris, M.

than (after comparatives), quam (p. 55, 5).

thank, grāτίας agere (dat.)

that; p. 109, 1; ut (183; 187).

the, p. 4, 11, note; (emphatic), p. 188, 4.

theft, furt-um, -i, N.

their, p. 169, 5; often omitted, p. 169, 5, note 2.

them, they; 168, 3.

then, tum.

there, ibi, -be t., adum.

thick, dens-us, -a, -um.

thing, res, rei, F.

think (fancy), pīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (reflect), cōgito, āre, -āvi, -ātum; (hold as an opinion), cens-eo, -ēre, -ui, -sum; (judge), arbitror, āri, -ātus sum.

this, hic, haec, hoc (p. 117).

though; 196, 5.

thousand, mille, indecl. in sing.; in the pl., millia, millium, millibus (p. 68, 5).

three, trēs, tria.

three hundred, trēcent-i, -ae, -a.

threshold, lim-en, -inis, N.

through, per (acc).

throw, v., iac-o, iacere, ieci, iactum;
throw away, ab-ic-o, -icere, -ieci, -iectum.

throw, n., iact-us, -ūs, M.

thy, thine, tū-us, -a, -um.

till, p. 201, 4.

timber, mātēri-a, -ae, F.

time, temp-us, -ōris, N.

timid, timidus.

to, prep., ad or in with acc.; (of purpose), 185, 5; **to no purpose**, frustra, nequidquam.

to-day, hodie.

to-morrow, cras.

tongue, lingu-a, -ae, F.

too (with compar.), p. 188, 5, (c); **too great to be told**, say **greater than which can be told**; 188, 5, (c).

top, culm-en, -inis, N.; fastigi-um, -i, N.; **the top of the hill**, collis summus; **the top of the mountain**, mons summus.

torn, lā-cer, -cēra, -cērum.

touch, tango, tangere, tetigi, tactum;
t. the heart, animum moveo.

tower, turr-is, -is, F.; arx, arcis, F.

town, oppid-um, -i, N.

track, vestigi-um, -i, N.

traitor, prodit-or, -ōris, M.

treachery, perfid-a, -ae, F.; prōditi-o, -onis, F.

treaty, foed-us, -ēris, N.

tree, arbor, arbōris, F.

tribe, trib-us, -ūs, F.

troops, cōpi-ae, -arum, F. (pl.)

Troy, Trōi-a, -ae, F.

Trojan, Trōiān-us, -a, -um.

true, vēr-us, -a, -um.

trust, fido, fidere, fideus sum; confido, fidere, fideus sum (with dat.; p. 105, 9).

truth, vēr-it-as, -ātis, F.; vēr-a (n. pl.)

try, cōn-or, -āri, ātus sum; nitor, nīli, nīsus or nīzus sum; p. 216, 3, note 1.

twelve, duōdecim.

twenty, viginti; **twenty at a time**, vicēni, -ae, -a; **twenty times**, vicies.

two, duo, duae, duo (68, 4).

two hundred, ducent-i, -ae, -a.

U.

unable, I am, non possum (posse, potui); negō-eo, -ire, -ui (-it), -itum.

uncertain, incert-us, -a, -um.

undertake, suscipio, cāpere, cēpi, -ceptum; **I undertake to do this**, suscipio me hoc facturum esse (p. 110, 1).

undertaking, negōti-um, -i, N.

understand, intel-lego, -lēgere, -lexi, -lectum (literally = pick up).

undying, *immortalis*.

unfortunate, *in-felix, -felicia*.

ungrateful, *ingrāt-us, -a, -um*.

unhappy, *in-felix, -felicia*.

unlike, *dis-similis, -simile* (dat.)

until, p. 201, 4.

unwilling, *invol-us, -a, -um*; I am u., *nōlo, nolle, nōlūi* (p. 147).

unworthy, *indignus* (64, 4).

upon, in (+abl., of rest; +acc., of motion).

use, *utor, ūti, ūsus sum* (116).

used; p. 216, 3, note 1.

useful, *ūtil-is, -e*.

V.

valley, *vall-is, -is, F.*

valor, *virt-us, -utis, F.*

value, I, *aestim-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

value, the, *aestimatiō-o, -ōnis, F.*

Verres, *Verr-es, -is, M.*

Vergil, *Vergil-i-us, -i, M.*

very, expressed by superlatives before an adj. or adj. (p. 58, 5); before a noun, *ipse*: the very man, *ipse vir*.

Vesontio, *Vesonti-o, -ōnis*.

veteran, *veterānus*.

vice, *viti-um, -i; scel-us, -eris*.

victory, *victori-a, -ae, F.*

view, *conspici-us, -iis, M.; v., spect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; your v. of the matter, say, what you think (*sentio*) of (de) the matter (181, 1); (*sentio*, I hold a view).

vigor, *vig-or, -ōris*.

vigorously, *vehementer*.

village, *vic-us, -i*.

violation, use *violō* (-āre, etc.); p. 219, (b).

violent, *violentus*.

virtue, *virt-us, -utis, F.*

visit, *ad-eo, -āre, -āvi, (II), -ātum* (acc.)

voice, *vox, vocis, F.*

vote, *sententi-a, -ae, F.*

W

wage, *géro, gerere, gessi, gestum*.

waggon, *plastr-um, -i*.

wait, *expect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

walk, *ambul-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

wall, *mūr-us, -i, M.; moeni-a, -um, N.* (defence); *pari-es, -etis, F.* (of a house).

wander, *err-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

war, *bell-um, -i, N.*; carry on w., *bellum gerere*.

ward off; say keep off.

warlike, *bellicōs-us, -a, -um*.

warm, *calid-us, -a, -um*.

warn, *monéo* (of = de).

waste, lay waste, *vast-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; w. time, *tempus consumi-re*.

watch, v., *observ-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; *custod-i-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*.

watch, n., *custō-s, -dis, M.; vigili-a, -ae*.

water, *aqu-a, -ae, F.*

wave, *fluct-us, -ūs, M.,*

waxen, *cere-us, -a, -um*.

way, *vi-a, -ae, F.*; iter, *itin-eris, N.*; in no w., *nullo modo*.

wealth, *op-es, -um* (pl.), F.; *diviti-ae, -arum* (pl.), F.

wealthy, *opul-ent-us, -a, -um*; *dives, divitis*.

weep, *lacrīm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*; *fl-éo, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum*.

weeping, *flēt-us, -ūs, M.*; adj., *flens, flentis*.

weight, *pond-us, -eris, N.*

welcome, *grāt-us, -a, -um*.

well, *bēne*; comp., *melius*; superl., *optime*; be w., *bēne*.

well-known, *nōtus*.

what (interrog.), *quid*; (rel.), *id quod*.

when, *quum* (p. 203); often expressed by part. (p. 220, i): as, when the news was reported, *re nuntiata*; interrog., *quando* (never, *quum*).

whenever, p. 204, 4.

where, *ubi*; w. from, *unde*.

whether, *num*; whether... or, *utrum... an* (p. 180, 6; 177, 5).

which, *quis, quae, quid* (interrog.); (of two), *uter, utra, utrum*; (rel.), see p. 126.

while, *dum* (p. 201); *quum* (p. 203, 2).

white, *alb-us, -a, -um*.

who (rel.), *qui*, (p. 126); (interrog.), *quis* (p. 129).

why, *cur, quāre*.

wicked, *scelérat-us, -a, -um*; w. deed, say crime.

wide, *lāt-us, -a, -um*.

wife, *uxor, uxōris, F.*

wild, *fer-us, -a, -um*.

will, sign of fut.; *volo* (of intention), or p. 174.

will, *vōlunt-as, -ātis*, F.; **against** my w., *me invito*.

willing, I am, *vōlo, vellē, vōlūt*.

wind, *vent-us, -i*.

winding, *curv-us, -a, -um*.

wine, *vin-um, -i*, N.

wing, *āl-a, -ae*, F.; corn -u, -ūs.

winged, *vōlūt-er, -ris, -re*.

winter, v., *hiem-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

winter, n., *hiem-s, -is*, F.; **that w.**, p. 82, 1; **all w.**, acc.

wisdom, *sāptentī-a, -ae*, F.

wise, *sāpten-s, -tis*.

wish, n., *vōlunt-as, -ātis*; v., *volo, velle, vōlūt*.

with, *cum*, prep. with abl.; written after personal and rel. pronouns; *mecum, quibuscum* (105, 8; 126, 8, note 2); (of military accompaniment), p. 236, note 11.

withdraw, *se abduco*.

within, p. 82, 2; *intrā* (acc.)

without, *extrā* (prep. with acc.); p. 220, 3; **be without**, *expers esse* (abl.)

withstand, *resisto, -sistere, -stīti, -stītum*; *ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti, -stītum* (dat.).

wolf, *lūp-us, -i*, M.

woman, *mūller, -is*, F.

wood, *lign-um, -i*, N.

wood, a, *silv-a, -ae*, F.

woody, *silvest-er, -ris, -re*.

word, *verb-um, -i*, N.; (promise), *fides, -is*; **keep one's w.**, *fidem praesto* (-stāre, stīti, stītum).

work, *op-us, -eris*, N.

workman, *fāb-er, -bri*, M.

workmen, *opērae*, M. (pl.); *fābri*.

world, *mund-us, -i*.

worse, *pēior, pēius*; *dētēri-or, -us*.

worst; p. 57, 4.

worthy, *dign-us, -a, -um* (p. 64, 4).

wound, n., *vuln-us, -eris*, N.

wound, v., *vulnēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

would; see *will*; **what you w. do**, p. 174, 1.

would that, *āttnam* (with subj.; p. 138, 4).

wretched, *in, ēli-x, -icis*; *miser, -a, -um*.

write, *scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum*.

wrong, *iniūri-a, -ae*, F.; *nefas*, N., indecl.

wrongdoing, *mālefact-um, -i*, N.

X.

Xenophon, *Xenōph-on, -ontis*.

Y.

year, *ann-us, -i*, M.

yearly, *annu-us, -a, -um*; (every year), *quotannis*.

yes; p. 29, 4.

yesterday, *heri*; *dies hesternus*.

yet, *tāmen, vērum*; **as yet**, *adhuc*; **not yet**, *nondum*.

yield, *cēdo, cēdere, cessi, cessum*; (surrender), *se dēdo, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditum*.

yoke, *iūg-um, -i*, N.

yonder, *ille, illa, illud* (p. 118, 4).

you, *tu* (the Latins used the sing. to refer to one person; not, like us, the plural: *as, You are calling, boy, tu, puer, vocas*); pl., *vos* (p. 104); **you yourself**, *tu ipse*.

young man, *iūvenis*; *adōlescens, adōlescentis* (also written *adulescens*).

younger, *iūnior* (p. 58, note).

your, yours, *tu-us, -a, -um* (referring to one); *vest-er, -ra, -rum* (referring to more than one); p. 118, 3.

youth, *iūvent-us, -ūtis* (body of); *iūvent-a, -ae*, F. (time of).

youthful, *pūeril-is, -e*.

Z.

Zāma, *Zām-a, -ae*, F.

8
8
8
8
8
8
8

8
A
8
A

Δ
Δ

INDEX.

The figures refer to the pages and sections of the book.

- Aorab** (prep.), 222, 4, 5; with *pēto*, 93, note; with abl. of agent, 71, 2; with gerundive, 173, 6, note.
- Ablative**, defined, 3, 7; in *abus*, 6, 2; in *ūbus*, 42, 5; of cause, manner, instrument, 71, 3; of difference, 58, 6; of price, 150, 1; of source, 156, 4; of separation, 158, 2; of quality, 131, 9; of time when, 74; 82, 1; of time within which, 82, 2; with *after* and *before*, 82, 3; with *ago*, 82, 5; with adjs., 64, 4; with *opus*, 166, 2; with *fruer*, etc., 116.
- Ablative absolute**, 100, 5; 203, 3, note; 219, (e).
- Abstract Nouns**, 108, 4, note; 181, 1; 219, 2, (b); 219, (g); 231, 5.
- abus*, in dat. and abl. pl. of 1st decl., 6, 2.
- accent**, 298.
- accidit**, inflection of, 162, 3; syntax of 182, 4.
- accompaniment**, 12, 3; military, 236, note 11.
- accusative**, defined, 3, 5; object acc., 5, 3; with verbs of feeling, 165, 1; verbs with two acc., 90, 2; 92, 3; acc. of duration and extent, 69, 9; of specification or nearer definition, 93, 3; acc. with inf., 109, 1; of exclamation, 199, 5, note; cognate, 95, 1; with prep. in comp., 96, 2.
- accusing and acquitting**, verbs of, 167.
- Active Periphrastic Conjugation**, 174, 1.
- ad**, prep., 222, 4; 222, 5.
- Adjective**, agreement of, 19, 1; in -us, 20, 2; in -er, 22; adjs. in -er that retain -e, 23, 2; irreg. adjs. in -us and -er, 26, 1; adjs. of 3rd decl., 49; of one termination, 52; predic. adj. with *licet*, 163, 6; comparison of, 54; construction with comparative, 55, 5; irreg. comparison, 56, 59; adverbial comparison, 60; adjs. in -quus, 60, 1; adjs. with dat., 60, 2; adjs. with gen., 61, 3; adjs. with abl., 64, 4; adjs. as nouns, 20, 4; numeral adjs., 65.
- Adverbs**, how formed, 75, 1; comparison of, 76, 5; irreg. advs., 77, 6.
- Adverbial clauses**, 183, 1.
- agent**, abl. of with *a* or *ab*, 71, 2; dat. of, 173, 4; 219, (h).
- āio*, 288.
- aliquis**, 132, 1.
- alius**, 26, 1.
- alphabet**, 289.
- alter**, 26, 1.
- alternative questions**, direct, 130, 6; indirect, 177, 5.
- although**, 196, 5.
- an**, *annon*, 130, 6, and note; 139, (a); with *nescio*, 177, 5, note.
- answer**, form of, 29, 4, note.
- ante**, with *quam*, 201, 5.
- antecedent**, 126, 3.
- antepernult**, p. 292, foot of page.
- antequam**, 201, 5.
- apposition**, 36, 2.
- article**, 4, 11, note.
- as**, after *same*, 127, 2.
- asking**, verbs of, 181, 3.
- ax**, adjs. in., 305, (d).
- bam**, tense-ending, 301.
- because**, 198.
- belli**, locative, 86 (first line).
- bo**, tense-ending, 301.
- bonus**, declined, 20.
- bos**, declined, 45.
- can**, possum, 142.
- cardinal numbers**, 65.
- cases**, 3.
- causā**, with gen., 171, 6.
- causal clauses**, 198; *qui* causal, 198, 4; conjunctions, 198, 2.
- characteristic**, of conjugations, 1, 2-5.
- clauses**, classified, 176, 1; dependent cl. in indir. narration, 206, 4; conditional, 190; final, 183; consecutive, 187; causal, 198; concessive, 196; temporal, 200; comparative, 195; noun-clauses, 176, 2 (indir. question); introduced by *ut*, 181, 3, 4; by *quod*, 181, 2.
- cognate accusative**, 95, 1.

- command**, 138, 4, (b); in indir. narration, 207, 5.
- comparative**, declension of, 50, 4; formation of, 54; syntax of, 55, 5; comparative clauses, 195, 4.
- comparison**, of adjs. 54; irreg. comparison, 56-59; adverbial, 60; of adjs. in *-quus* 60, 1; syntax of, 55, 5.
- concessive**, clauses, 196.
- concord**, 19, 1; 126, 3; 253, Lesson 27, note 4.
- condemning**, verbs of, 167.
- conditional**, sentences, 190; classification of, 192; exception to rules, 193, 2; in indir. narration, 209, 2.
- conjugations**, tables of regular, 281.
- connectives**, 231, 2.
- consecutive clause**, 187; exception in sequence, 187, 2, note 1; consecutive phrases, 187, 3.
- consonants**, classification of, 290.
- consonant stems**, 30, 4.
- constat**, 162, 3.
- continued act**, 216, 3.
- correlatives**, 127, 1.
- cum**, prep., 12, 3; 222, 3; written after case, 105, 8; 126, 3, note 2; conjunction, see *quum*.
- dative**, defined, 3, 4; in *abus*, 6, 2; in *abus*, 62, 5; of indirect object, 5, 4; with adjs., 60, 2; with *opus est*, 166, 2; with verbs, 105, 9; 106, 10; 120, 1; of possession, 120, 3; of purpose, 134, 1; for gen., 134, 2; passive of verbs that govern dat., 164, 1, 2, note 1; with gerundive, 173, 4; with participle, 219, (h).
- declension**, 1st, 4, 6; 2nd, 9, 11, 13; of adjs. in *us*, 20; of adjs. in *er*, 22; irreg. adjs. in *us* and *er*, 26, 3rd decl., 30; adjs. of 3rd, 49; irreg. nouns of 3rd, 45; of comparative, 50, 4.
- defective nouns**, 277, 278.
- defective verbs**, 145.
- deliberative subjunctive**, 139, (a).
- demonstratives**, declined, 117; use of, 118; in indirect narration, 200, 1, (3).
- deponents**, 113.
- derivation**, 302.
- dic**, imperat., 156, foot-note.
- dies**, declined, 64; gender of, 64, 2.
- difficilis**, comparison of, 57, 2.
- dignus**, 64, 4.
- direct object**, 5, 3.
- dissimilis**, comparison of, 57, 2.
- distance**, acc. of, 69, 9.
- distributive numerals**, 66; 69, 8.
- do, go**, fem. endings, 48, 2.
- domi**, locative, 86 (first line).
- domus**, declined, 62, 6.
- dubito an**, 177, 5, note.
- duc**, imperat., 156, foot-note.
- dum**, 201, 4; 202, 6.
- dummodo**, 194, 3.
- duo**, 68, 4.
- duration**, 66, 3.
- dus**, particip. in, 102; 170, 3.
- duty**, how expressed, 172, 2; 173, 5.
- E, or ex**, prep., 222, 3; 223.
- édo**, inflected, 160.
- effecting**, verbs of, 181, 3.
- ego**, declined, 104.
- emphasis**, influence on order, 231, 7.
- enclitic**, 299 (accentuation).
- English method**, of pronunciation, 297.
- eo**, inflected, 157.
- esse**, inf. of sum, 107, 1.
- etsi**, 196, 5 and 7.
- euphonic change**, 291.
- euphony**, influence on order, 231, 7.
- événit**, 182, 4.
- exclamation**, acc. of, 199, 5, note; inf. of, 220, 3, note.
- fac**, imperat., 156, foot-note.
- facilis**, comparison of, 57, 2.
- facio**, 156, 2; compounds of, 156, 3.
- fari**, 289.
- fas**, with supine, 175.
- fearing**, verbs of, 185, 3, 4.
- feminine**, rules for gender, 18; 47; 275.
- fer**, imperat., 156, foot-note.
- fero**, inflected, 152; compounds of, 154, 2.
- fido**, 105, 9, note.
- fifth declension**, 63.
- final clauses**, 183.
- fio**, inflected, 155.
- for**, 289.
- fore ut**, 217, 5.
- forgetting**, verbs of, 146, 7.
- fourth decl.**, 62.
- frētus**, 64, 4.
- fruo**, 114.
- fungor**, 116.
- fut. perf.**, for Eng. pres., 193 (top of p.)

futurum sit ut, 217, 6.

gender, rules for, 18, exceptions to rules for, 275.

genitive, of nouns in *ius*, 13, 1, with adjs., 61, 3; partitive, 69, 10; with sum (meaning *belong to*, *mark of*, etc.), 124; of quality, 130, 7, 8; with verbs, 146, 7; of price, 150, 2; of charge, 167; with verbs of feeling (*miseret*), etc., 165, 1; with *interest*, 166, 3.

gerund, 170; nom. of, 170, 2, note.

gerundive, 170, 3; when not used, 172, 1; expressing duty, etc., 172, 3; 173, 5; agent with, 173, 4; with *causa*, 171, 6; with *do*, etc., 173, 7.

Greek nouns, declined, 273.

hendiadys, 238, note 13.

heteroclitics, 279.

heterogeneous nouns, 280.

hic, declined, 117, 1; use of, 118, 2.

hindering, verbs of, 185, 2.

historic inf., 216, 3, note 2.

historical pres., 216, 2, (a).

historical tenses, 178, 1.

hoping, verbs of, 110, 1.

hortative, subjun., 138, 4, (a).

I stems, 40.

idem, declined, 122, 2; with *qui*, 127, 2.

idoneus, 188, 5, (b).

ille, declined, 118; use of, 118, 4.

imperative, forms for, 138, 4, (b).

imperfect, of 1st conjug., 8, 1; 216, 3.

impersonal, verbs, 161; use of verbs with dat. 164, 1.

in, prep., 222, 2.

indeclinable nouns, 277.

indefinite pronouns, 132.

indirect narration, defined, 205, 1; tense of inf. in, 206, 3; dependent clauses in, 206, 4; pronouns in, 209, 1, (3); imperat. in, 207, 5; questions in, 207, 6; conditional sentence in, 209, 2; use of, without verb expressed, 207, 8; summary of rules for, 209, 1.

indirect object, 5, 4.

indirect question, 176, 2.

infinitive, forms, 107, 2, 3; acc. with, 109, 1; with verbs of *hoping*, 110, 1; tense of with verb of *saying*, 109, 3; 111; fut. inf. expressed by *fore ut*, 217, 5; historic, 216, 3, note 2; of exclamation, 220, 3, note.

inflection, 299.

inquam, 146, 6; 289.

inter se, see *inter*, 223.

interest, 166, 3.

interrogative, forms, 28; 176, 3; pronouns, 129; double questions (direct), 130, 6; indirect question, 176, 2; double tenses in question (indirect), 177, 5; sequence of indir. quest., 178.

io, fem. ending, 48, 2.

ipse, declined, 122; use of, 123, 6.

irregular, nouns of the 3rd decl., 45.

is, declined, 122; use of, 122, 4.

iste, declined, 118; use of, 118, 3.

laedo, with acc., 105, 9, note.

letters, classification of, 290.

licet, inflected, 162, 3; use of, 163, 5.

locative, rules for place where, 85, 3.

making, verbs of, 90, 2.

mālo, inflection of, 147.

may, 163, 5.

means, 71, 3.

memini, inflected, 145; syntax of, 146, 7.

meridies, gender of, 64, 2.

mille, 68, 5.

militiae, locative, 86 (top of p.)

minus, with numerals, 381 (under *less*).

miseror, with gen., 146, 7.

miseret, 165, 1.

modal, verbs, 310, 42.

mōdo, for *dummōdo*, 194, 3.

motion, to, 85, 1.

mutis, 290.

ne, with hortative subjun., 138, 4, (a); commands, 138, 4, (b); with wishes, 138, 4, (c); final clauses, 183, 2; verbs of *fearing*, 185, 3.

ne, enclitic (interrog.), 23, 2.

necessity, how to express, 172, 2; 173, 5.

nefas, with supine, 175.

nego, for *dico non*, 208, 9.

nescio an, 177, 5, note.

neuter nouns, 13, 3, note; terminations of, in 3rd decl., 48, 3.

neve, 186, 6.

ni, nisi, 190, 3.

nōlo, 147.

non dubito quin, 188, 6.

nonne, 28, 3.

non quod, non quo, non quin, 199, 6.

nostri, or nostrum, 104, 2, note.

nouns, Greek, 273; defective, 277; indeclinable, 277; irregular, 45; heteroclite, 279; heterogeneous, 280; with two meanings (*aedes* &c.), 278.

noun clause, 181, 182.

nullus, 26, 1.

num, 29, 4; 176, 4.

numeral, 65.

object, 5.

oblique, of cases, 50, 2, note; narration, 205.

odi, 145; passive of 196, 7, note.

oportet, 162, 4.

opus est, 166, 2.

oratio obliqua. See indirect narration.

order, of words in Latin, 231, 7.

ordinals, 65.

participle, nature of, 100, 1; act. forms of, 100, 3; pass. forms of, 101, 1.

pres., part. declined, 53; use of, 180, 4; often used in Eng. for perf., 219, (c); expresses abstract nouns, 219, (g); cannot be joined with demonstrative, 219, (f); has force of a finite clause, 220, (i).

perf. part., formation of, 73, 2, note; substitutes for, pt. part. act., 203, 3, note; used for Eng. noun, 219, (b); used with *habeo*, 219, (d); pres. and perf. often used with abl. abs., 100, 5; 102, 2; 219, (e); part. often becomes main verb in English, 219, (a).

penult, 292, note.

per, 222, 4; 223.

perfect stems, of 3rd. conjug., 87.

perfect tense, 178, 1, note.

periphrastic conjugation, pass., 172, 3; act. 174, 1; in conditional sentence, 194, (a).

petitio obliqua. See indirect question.

peto, with *a* or *ab*, 93, note.

piget, 165, 1.

place, to which, 85, 1; from which, 85, 2; in which (place where), 85, 3.

plus, inflection of, 51.

poenitet, 165, 1.

posse, possum, 142.

postquam, 200, 2.

postulo, with *a* or *ab*, 93, note.

potior, with abl., 116.

predicate, dat. with *esse*, 163, 6.

prefixes (inseparable), 306.

prepositions, 221; in composition, 306.

present tense, idiomatic uses of, 216, 2.

prevent. See hinder.

price, 150.

primary tenses, 178, 1.

primus, as adv., 246, note 7.

principal parts, of a verb, 73, 3, note.

priusquam, 201, 5.

pro, 222, 3; 224.

prohibitions, 138, 4, (b).

promising, 110, 1.

pronouns, personal and reflexive, 104, and 105; 168; demonstrative, 117; is, idem, ipse, 122; relative, 125; correlatives, 127; interrogative, 129; indefinite, 132; in indir. narration, 209, 1, (3).

pronunciation, Roman method, 294; English method, 297.

prosum, 143, 2.

pudet, 165, 1.

pugnatum est, how to translate, 164, 2, note 2.

purpose, how expressed, 185, 5.

quam, with compar., 55, 5; with superl., 143, note.

quamvis, 196, 5 and 7.

quantity, rules of, 298.

questions, direct, 28; indirect, 176, 2; in indir. narration, 207, 6; double, 130, 6 and 177, 5.

qui, relative, declined, 126; agreement of, 126, 3; qui final, 184, 1; qui consecutive, 188, 4 and 5; qui concessive, 96, 8; qui causal, 198, 4.

qui, interrog., 129, 3.

quicumque, 126, 2.

quia, 198, 2.

quidam, 132, 1.

quin, 185, 2, note; 188, 6.

quippe, 198, 4, note.

quis, declined, 129, 1; indef., 132, 1; for any, 188, 6, note.

quisnam, 129, 3, note.

quisquam, 132, 1, 2, 3

quisquis, 126, 2.

quivis, 132, 1.

quo=ut, 183, 5.

quod, to introduce noun clause, 181, 2; because, 198, 2.

quod si, 192, 1, note.

quominus, 185, 2.

quoniam, 198, 2.

quum, 203.

- rather, 58, 5.
 reciprocal (*each other*), 223 (*inter se*).
 reduplication, to form perf., 87, 2.
 refert, 166, 3.
 reflexives, 104, 5; 105, 6; 168, 3.
 relative. See *qui*.
 res, how to translate, 247, note 17.
 respublica, how to translate, 249, note 7 (Lesson 21).
 remember, 146, 7.
 remind, 167.
 result, clause of. See *consecutive*.
 rhetorical questions, in indir. narration, 207, 6.
 root, 299.
 rus, to the country, 85, 1.
 se, 105, 6.
 second, conjugation, 78; decl., 9, 11, 13.
 secondary tense, 178, 1.
 senex, declined, 46.
 sentiendi, verba. See *acc with inf.*
 separation, abl. of, 158, 2.
 sequence, of tenses, 178, 2.
 si, 190, 2.
 similis, 57, 2.
 simul ac, 200, 2.
 si quis, 191, 4.
 solus, 246, note 7.
 specification, 98, 3.
 stem, 299.
 sub, 222, 2; 224; in composition, 307.
 subjunctive, defined, 137, 3; of exhortation 138, 4; of command 138, 4; of wish, 138, 4; deliberative, 139, (a); of concession, 139, (b); inflection of subj. of *sum*, 136; of four conjugations, 137; in indir. narrative 206, 4; 207, 5; in indir. question, 176, 2; sequence of tenses of, 178, 2.
 substantive, clause, see *noun clause*.
 sum, inflection of, 24; subjunctive of, 136, 1; inf. of, 107; imperat. of, 288.
 summus, 59, 1, and note.
 sunt qui, 188, 5.
 super, 222, 2.
 superlative, formation of, 54, 2; 56.
 supine, 174, 2 and 3.
 syllabication, 292.
 syntax, summary of rules, 307.
 taedet, 165, 1.
 tanquam (*si*), 195, 3.
 teaching, verbs of, 92, 3.
 temporal clauses, 200; conjunctions (*postquam*, *dum*, *priusquam*, *quum*), 200, 203.
 tenses, classification of, 178.
 third conjugation, 83.
 though. See *although*.
 time, when, 82, 1; how long, 82, 4.
 trans, 222, 4.
 tres, inflection of, 68, 4.
 tu, 104.
 ubi, temporal, 200, 2.
 ubus, nouns with dat. pl. in, 62, 5.
 ullus, 26, 1.
 unus, inflection of, 27.
 unusquisque, 132, 2.
 ut, final, 183; consecutive, 187; to introduce a noun clause, 181, 3; temporal (*when*, *as*), 200, 2.
 uter, inflection of, 27; 130, 4.
 uterque, 132, 1, 2.
 utinam, 138, 4.
 utor, 116.
 utrum, 130, 6; 177, 5.
 velut (*si*), 195, 3.
 verbs, of perceiving, declaring, &c., 109, 1; tables of, 281.
 vescor, 116.
 veto, 181, 3, note 1.
 vetus, declined, 53.
 vis, declined, 45.
 vocative, 3, 6.
 volo, inflected, 147.
 vowels, scale of, 290; changes of, 291.
 wish, expression of, 138, 4, (c).
 without, 220, 3.